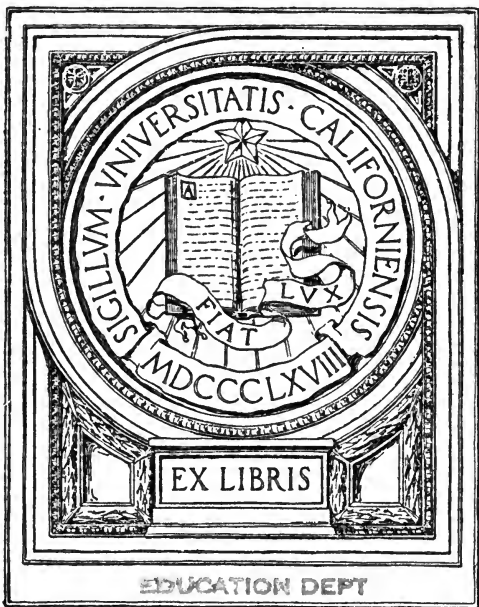


UC-NRLF



\$B 306 769

GIFT OF
Dr. Horace Ivie



760
M12.7
Educ
Dept

66

17

J. S. Adams

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2008 with funding from
Microsoft Corporation





A

FIRST BOOK IN LATIN;

CONTAINING

GRAMMAR, EXERCISES, AND VOCABULARIES,

ON THE METHOD OF

CONSTANT IMITATION AND REPETITION.

BY

JOHN M'CLINTOCK, A.M.,

PROFESSOR OF LANGUAGES,

AND

GEORGE R. CROOKS, A.M.,

ADJUNCT PROFESSOR OF LANGUAGES IN DICKINSON COLLEGE.

SEVENTH EDITION.

HARPER & BROTHERS, PUBLISHERS

82 CLIFF STREET, NEW YORK.

1852.

GIFT OF

Dr. Horace Ivis

Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1846,
By HARPER & BROTHERS,
In the Clerk's Office of the Southern District of New York.

EDUCATION DEPT.

P R E F A C E.

THIS book is designed, as the title-page states, to contain within itself Grammar, Exercises, Reading-book, and Dictionary; in short, all that the pupil will need before commencing the regular reading of Cæsar or any other easy Latin author. It has been prepared, as far as possible, on the following principles:

1. The object of studying languages is twofold: (1), the acquisition of the languages themselves; and (2), the mental discipline gained in acquiring them.

2. No language can be thoroughly acquired without the outlay of much labour and time. All schemes which promise to dispense with such outlay must be pronounced visionary and chimerical.

3. But labour without fruit does not contribute to mental cultivation. Labour and pain are not necessary companions: learning should not be "wrung from poor striplings like blood from the nose, or the plucking of untimely fruit."*

4. The grammar of a language cannot be understood until the language itself is at least partially acquired.

5. The vernacular may be learned, so far as its use is concerned, without grammar: a foreign living language may be so learned, but never so thoroughly, nor even so rapidly, as with grammatical aids. In the study of a dead language grammar is indispensable.

6. "A grammar intended for beginners should be formed altogether differently from one intended for

* Milton.

the higher classes, both in the distribution of the matter and in the mode of presenting it. Those who think that the pupil should use the same grammar from the beginning of his course to the end, are quite in error."*

7. In elementary books, or in teaching, no etymological form nor grammatical principle should be presented to the pupil without an immediate application thereof to *practice*, which should be kept up, both orally and in writing, from the very first lesson.

8. The all-important rule of practice, in the acquisition of language, is *imitation* and *repetition*. This is no new invention; all good teachers have known and used it; but yet it has been but slightly employed in elementary books heretofore.

9. Models for imitation should be simple at first, and gradually made more complicated; but they should always be selected from pure authors, say, in Latin, from Cicero and Cæsar.

10. The pupil's ear should be trained to correctness from the beginning, and the simplest rules of prosody learned and applied as soon as possible. For this purpose, the quantity of all syllables should be marked in elementary books, and attention to it should be strictly enforced by the teacher.

11. The foreign idiom, both as to the use and arrangement of words, should be made familiar to the pupil by constant practice. Nothing can be more hurtful than exercises in which foreign words are used in the idiom, and according to the arrangement of the vernacular.

How far we have been successful in carrying out these principles, the book itself must show.

We have aimed to combine the advantages of constant repetition and imitation of Latin sentences from the beginning, with a more thorough drilling in etymological forms than is common. In order to effect this combination, we have necessarily deviated from the ordinary grammatical course to some extent; but we trust that experienced teachers will find, from an examination of the table of contents alone, that our arrangement is not devoid of systematic and even logical order.

While we have not gone out of our way to bring in novelties, we have yet adopted every new method which we have deemed to be an improvement. None of the class-books of any repute in England or Germany have escaped our notice in the preparation of this work; and we have made free use of them all, without slavish adherence to any. Perhaps the most marked peculiarity of the etymological part of the book will be found to be the doctrine of the genders of nouns of the third declension, which we have reduced, for the first time, to a form at once philosophical, we hope, and practical.* Some steps toward the method here presented have been taken by MADVIG, WEISSENBORN, and others in Germany; but none of these writers has brought out a clear exposition of the doctrine, adapted to the actual purposes of instruction. The arrangement, also, of the verbs,† according to the formation of the perfect-stem, founded mainly upon the classification of GROTEFEND (better set forth by ALLEN), will be found, we trust, to be an improvement upon any yet offered.

* The summary of rules, with all the exceptions, will be found to occupy two pages only, viz., p. 132, 133.

† Lessons lxii.-lxix., and p. 268-279.

The Syntax, in its details, generally follows ZUMPT, but in the arrangement, especially of Part II., we have approached nearer to the plan of BILLROTH. The admirable syntax of BECKER, adopted by KÜHNER in his Greek and Latin Grammars, we deem too difficult for beginners.

The Exercises are selected, as far as possible, from Cæsar's Gallic War. Although we have laboured hard to keep out bad Latin, we do not hope that all our sentences will escape criticism. We have found, from actual experiment in our classes, that the exercises to be rendered from English into Latin are within the capacity of any student of ordinary industry who studies the book in order; and we do not know that this can be said of any book of the kind, of equal extent, in use among us.

A few words as to the use of the book may not be out of place. Our own method has been to employ the lessons, for a considerable time at least, entirely in oral instruction, the teacher pronouncing first the Latin sentences distinctly, and requiring the pupil to give the corresponding English without book; and then pronouncing the English sentences, and requiring the pupil to give the corresponding Latin. As the quantities are marked (in Part I.) in all syllables except those to which the general rules apply, we require the pupil to observe quantity in his pronunciation from the very beginning, so that he learns prosody by practice before the rules are given. For the purpose of review, the summary of Etymology (Part III.), which contains, in short compass, all that is necessary to be learned by heart, will be found very convenient. After the student has passed

through Parts I. and II., he will find little difficulty in committing accurately the Rules of Syntax (Part IV.), with most of which he will be already familiar. The Reading Lessons at the end will give him easy practice in the syntax and in word-building. For the convenience of those who may need it, we have condensed into a few pages, in Appendix I., all of Prosody that is essential for the understanding of hexameter verse.

The preparation of this book was originally suggested by our sense of the inadequacy of the ordinary modes of instruction, and especially by the advantage which we ourselves had derived from the use of OLLENDORFF'S method in the study of the German language. Finding that Rev. T. K. ARNOLD had prepared a series of books on the same principle, we used them in our own classes for some time, with a view to revising them for republication. They were found unsuited to our purpose in many respects, and we therefore formed the design of preparing an entirely new series, adapted to the use of American schools. The first of these is now presented to the public.

Dickinson College, April 7, 1846.

. In Part I. the quantity is marked on all syllables except those to which the general rules apply. At the beginning of Part II, additional rules of quantity are given, and the marks are subsequently omitted on many syllables, in order to afford the pupil exercise upon the rules. In the Syntax and Reading Lessons they are omitted almost entirely. Great pains have been taken to ensure accuracy in the marks of quantity, but we cannot hope to have avoided error entirely.

PREFACE TO SECOND EDITION.

IN this edition, a number of errors in the marks of quantity, which had crept into the first, are corrected. We have also placed a series of Examination Questions at the end of the book, which will add, we hope, to its practical value.

Carlisle, November, 1846.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

INTRODUCTION.

	Page
§ 1. Division of the Letters	1
§ 2. Syllables, Quantity, Accent	1
§ 3. Pronunciation	3
§ 4. Division of Words	4

PART I.

PARTIAL EXHIBITION OF THE FORMS OF WORDS.

<i>Summary of Essential Points</i>	8
§ 5. <i>First Declension of Nouns.—First Conjugation of Verbs. (I.—V.)</i>	10
First Declension of Nouns, Nominative, Vocative, and Genitive Cases	10
First Conjugation of Verbs, <i>Intransitive</i>	14
First Declension of Nouns, Accusative Case.—First Conjugation of Verbs, <i>Transitive</i>	17
First Declension of Nouns, Dative and Ablative Cases	19
§ 6. <i>Second Declension of Nouns.—Second Conjugation of Verbs. (VI.—VIII.)</i>	22
Second Declension, <i>Masculine</i>	22
Second Declension, <i>Neuter</i> .—Second Conjugation of Verbs	26
§ 7. <i>Adjectives of First Class, Three Endings. (IX.—X.)</i>	28
Forms of Adjectives in <i>us, a, um</i>	28
Some forms of <i>Esse, to be</i>	30
§ 8. <i>Third and Fourth Conjugations of Verbs. (XI.)</i>	33
§ 9. <i>Passive Verbs. (XII.—XIII.)</i>	36
§ 10. <i>Third Declension of Nouns, Partial Treatment. (XIV.—XV.)</i>	40
§ 11. <i>Adjectives of Second Class, Two Endings. (XVI.)</i>	44
§ 12. <i>Adjectives of Third Class, One Ending. (XVII.)</i>	46
§ 13. <i>Fourth Declension of Nouns. (XVIII.)</i>	48
§ 14. <i>Fifth Declension of Nouns. (XIX.)</i>	51
§ 15. <i>Pronouns. (XX.—XXXI.)</i>	53
Pronoun, <i>Personal</i> , 1st Person. Verb, 1st Person	53
Pronoun, <i>Personal</i> , 2d Person. Verb, 2d Person	57
Pronoun, <i>Personal</i> , 3d Person	61
Pronouns, <i>Demonstrative</i>	63
Pronoun, <i>Relative</i>	68
Pronoun, <i>Interrogative</i>	70

	Pronouns, <i>Indefinite</i>	Page 72
	Pronouns, <i>Correlative</i>	74
§ 16.	<i>Numerals.</i> (XXXII.—XXXIII.)	77
§ 17.	<i>Verbs of Third Conjugation in io.</i> (XXXIV.)	81
§ 8.	<i>Verbs, Deponent.</i> (XXXV.)	83
§ 19.	<i>Adverbs.</i> (XXXVI.)	85
§ 20.	<i>Prepositions.</i> (XXXVII.—XXXVIII.)	88
§ 21.	<i>Analysis of Tense-formations.</i> (XXXIX.—XLI.)	92

PART II.

FULLER EXHIBITION OF THE FORMS OF WORDS.

§ 1.	<i>Additional Rules of Quantity</i>	99
§ 2.	<i>Tenses of Verbs for Completed Action, Partial Treatment.</i> (XLIII.—XLVI.)	102
	Perfect Tenses of <i>Esse</i>	102
	Perfect Tenses of 1st, 2d, and 4th Conjugations	104
	Perfect Tenses of 3d Conjugation	106
§ 3.	<i>Third Declension of Nouns, Fuller Treatment.</i> (XLVII. —LVII.)	110
	Irregular Nouns	129
	Summary of Rules of Gender, Third Declension	132
§ 4.	<i>Comparison of Adjectives.</i> (LVIII.—LX.)	134
§ 5.	<i>Comparison of Adverbs</i>	140
§ 6.	<i>Supine.</i> (LXI.)	141
§ 7.	<i>Tenses of Verbs for Completed Action, Active Voice. Fuller Treatment.</i> (LXII.—LXIX.)	144
	Forms of Perfect Stem, 1st Conjugation	144
	Forms of Perfect Stem, 2d Conjugation	146
	Forms of Perfect Stem, 3d Conjugation	149
	Forms of Perfect Stem, 4th Conjugation	159
§ 8.	<i>Tenses for Completed Action, Passive Voice.</i> (LXX.)	162
§ 9.	<i>Participles.</i> (LXXI.—LXXV.)	165
	Present Participle Active	165
	Future Participle Active	168
	Perfect Participle Passive	170
	Ablative Absolute	172
§ 10.	<i>Infinitive.</i> (LXXVI.—LXXIX.)	176
	Forms of Infinitive	176
	Accusative with Infinitive	178
§ 11.	<i>Gerund.</i> (LXXX.)	184
§ 12.	<i>Gerundive.</i> (LXXXI.—LXXXII.)	187
	Gerundive used for Gerund	187
	Gerundive used to express Duty or Necessity	189
§ 13.	<i>Imperative Mood.</i> (LXXXIII.)	192
§ 14.	<i>Sentences</i>	194
§ 15.	<i>Conjunctions.</i> (LXXXIV.—LXXXV.)	195

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

xi

	Page
§ 16. <i>Subjunctive Mood.</i> (LXXXVI.—XCIII.)	199
Subjunctive Present	199
Subjunctive Perfect	202
Subjunctive Imperfect and Pluperfect. Conditional Sentences	205
Subjunctive with <i>ut, ne</i> (<i>Purpose</i>)	209
Subjunctive with <i>ut</i> (<i>Consequence</i>). Succession of Tenses	212
Subjunctive with <i>quin, quo, quominus</i> . Periphrastic Forms	214
Subjunctive with <i>quum</i>	217
Subjunctive in Relative Sentences	220
§ 17. <i>Oratio Obliqua.</i> (XCIV.)	223
§ 18. <i>Impersonal Verbs.</i> (XCV.—XCVI.)	226
§ 19. <i>Irregular Verbs.</i> (XCVII.—CI.)	230
<i>Posse</i>	230
<i>Velle, Nolle, Malle</i>	232
<i>Ferre</i>	234
<i>Fieri, Edere</i>	236
<i>Ire, Quire, Nequire</i>	238
§ 20. <i>Defective Verbs.</i> (CII.)	241

PART III.

SUMMARY OF ETYMOLOGY.

§ 1. <i>Letters, Quantity, &c.</i>	247
§ 2. <i>Noun</i>	248
§ 3. <i>Adjective</i>	251
§ 4. <i>Numerals</i>	254
§ 5. <i>Pronoun</i>	255
§ 6. <i>Verb</i>	258
1. Classes of Verbs	258
2. Parts of the Verb	258
3. Conjugation	259
4. The Auxiliary <i>Esse, to be</i>	260
5. Paradigms of Regular Verbs	261
6. Verbs in <i>io</i> of the 3d Conjugation	266
7. Deponent Verbs	266
8. Periphrastic Conjugation	266
9. Formation of Perfect Stem	267
10. Lists of Verbs, with various Perfects and Supines	268
First Conjugation	268
Second Conjugation	269
Third Conjugation	271
Fourth Conjugation	276
Deponent Verbs	277
Inchoative Verbs	279
11. Irregular Verbs, Paradigms	279
12. Defective Verbs	282

13. Impersonal Verbs	Page 283
§ 7. <i>Adverb</i>	285
§ 8. <i>Preposition</i>	288
§ 9. <i>Conjunction</i>	289
§ 10. <i>Interjection</i>	290

PART IV.

SUMMARY OF SYNTAX.

PART I. SIMPLE SENTENCES.

I. Subject and Predicate	293
II. Use of Cases	295
<i>Nominative</i>	295
<i>Genitive</i>	295
<i>Dative</i>	298
<i>Accusative</i>	300
<i>Ablative</i>	302
III. Use of the Indefinite Verb	306
<i>Infinitive</i>	306
<i>Participle</i>	307
<i>Gerund</i>	308
<i>Gerundive</i>	308
<i>Supine</i>	309

PART II. COMPOUND SENTENCES.

I. Co-ordinate Sentences	310
II. Subordinate Sentences	310
A. <i>Participial Sentences</i>	311
B. <i>Accusative with Infinitive</i>	312
C. <i>Conjunctive Sentences</i>	313
D. <i>Relative Sentences</i>	316
E. <i>Interrogative Sentences</i>	318
<i>Oratio Obliqua</i>	319

APPENDIX I. Prosody	323
APPENDIX II. Greek Nouns	326
APPENDIX III. The Calendar	327
APPENDIX IV. Abbreviations	329
WORD-BUILDING	333
READING LESSONS	340
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY	355
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY	383

INTRODUCTION.*

§ 1. DIVISION OF THE LETTERS.

(1.) THE letters are the same as in English, with the omission of *w*; *k* is used in but few words, and *y* and *z* only in words borrowed from the Greek.

(2.) Six are *vowels*,¹ viz., *a, e, i, o, u, y*: the remaining nineteen are *consonants*.²

¹ Sounds formed by an *uninterrupted* emission of the air from the throat. Called *vowels* (*vocales* = sounding letters), because capable of being sounded by themselves.

² Sounds formed by *interrupting* the emission of air from the throat. Called *consonants* (*con-sonare* = to sound together), because incapable of being sounded by themselves.

(3.) The consonants are divided into

(a) Liquids,³ *l, m, n, r*;

(b) Spirants,³ *h, s, j*;

(c) Mutes,³ *b, c, d, f, g, k, p, q, t, v*;

³ The *Liquids* are formed by a *partial* interruption of the voice; the *Spirants* chiefly by the breath; and the *Mutes* by a more complete interruption of the passage of the air from the throat. *H* is regarded, indeed, simply as an aspiration, though in many words it fills the place of a consonant.

(d) Double consonants,⁴ *x, z*.

⁴ *X* is compounded of *c, s, g, s*, and *z* (occurring only in Greek words) of *d, s*.

(4.) The union of two vowels into one syllable forms a *diphthong*. These are, in Latin, *a u, e u, a e, o e* (generally written *æ, œ*), and, in a few words, *ei, oi, ui*.

§ 2. SYLLABLES, QUANTITY, ACCENT.

(5.) Every word contains as many syllables as vowels; e. g., *miles*, a soldier, is not pronounced in one syllable, as the English word *miles*, but in two, *mī-les*.

(6.) The quantity of syllables (that is, their *length*

* This Introduction may be omitted by *very young pupils* in their first study of the work; but the references to it in the subsequent lessons should be carefully attended to.

or *shortness*) depends upon that of the vowels which they contain. The dash (—) placed over a vowel denotes that it is *long*; the semicircle (◌), that it is *short*. A vowel that may be used either as long or short is marked (◌), and is said to be *common*.


(7.) The following rules for the quantity of syllables must be carefully observed:

(a) All diphthongs are *long*; e. g., mens-ǣ, tables; ā ū-rum, *gold*.

(b) A vowel followed by another vowel is *short*; e. g., Dĕus, *God*.

This rule applies, even though *h* intervene between the two vowels, as *h* is not regarded as a consonant (3, *b*, n. 3); e. g., trāho, věho.

(c) A vowel followed by two consonants, or a double one (3, *d*), is *long by position*; e. g., in amānt, the *a* before *nt* is long by position.

 [Every syllable to which none of these three rules is applicable will be marked with its proper quantity in the following pages, until other rules are given.]

(8.) A word of but one syllable is called a *Monosyllable*; of two, a *Dissyllable*; of more than two, a *Polysyllable*. Thus, *lex* is a monosyllable; *lēgīs*, a dissyllable; *incōlās*, a polysyllable.

(9.) The last syllable of a word is called the *ultimate*; the next to the last, the *penult*; the second from the last, the *antepenult*. Thus, in the word *incōlās*, the syllable *lās* is the ultimate, *cō*, the penult, and in the antepenult.

(10.) The *accent* of a syllable is a stress or elevation of the voice in pronouncing it. Observe the following rules:

(a) Every *dissyllable* is accented on the *penult*; e. g., bŏnus, pŏno.

(b) Every *polysyllable* is accented,

1. On the *penult*, when the penult is *long*; e. g., āmāré.

2. On the *antepenult*, when the penult is *short*;
e. g., *ánimŭs*.

§ 3. PRONUNCIATION.

(11.) [Almost every modern nation has its own way of pronouncing Latin. But as the vowels have nearly the same sounds in all the different countries of *Continental* Europe, there is something approaching to uniformity in their pronounciation; the English, however, give peculiar sounds to some of the vowels, and they pronounce Latin, therefore, unlike all the rest of the world. In this country two methods prevail, which, for convenience' sake, may be called the *Continental* and the *English*. We give them both, stating, at the same time, our decided preference for the first, both on the score of consistency and convenience. In both methods the consonants are pronounced nearly as in English.]

(a) *The Continental Method.*

Table of Vowel Sounds.

Short <i>ă</i> , as in hat.	Long <i>ī</i> , as in machine.
Long <i>ā</i> , as in father.	Short <i>ō</i> , as in not.
Short <i>ĕ</i> , as in net.	Long <i>ō</i> , as in no.
Long <i>ē</i> , as in there.	Short <i>ŭ</i> , as in tub.
Short <i>ĭ</i> , as in sit.	Long <i>ū</i> , as in full.

Diphthongs.

æ or *œ*, as *e* in there.
au, as *ou* in our.
eu, as *eu* in feud.
ei (rarely occurring), as *i* in nice.

(b) *The English Method.*

The vowels have the English *long* or *short* sounds.
 Exc. A final, in words of more than one syllable, has a *broad* sound; as, *fama* (fame-ah).

Monosyllables.

In monosyllables, if the vowel be the *last* letter, it has the *long* sound; as *mē*, *dō*; if any *other* letter, the *short* sound; as *ĕt*, *ōb*.

Dissyllables and Polysyllables.

(1.) The vowel of an *accented penult* has the *long* sound,

(a) Before another vowel ; as, Déus.

(b) Before a single consonant ; as, Jóvis.

It has the *short* sound,

(a) Before two consonants, or a double consonant ; as, múnus, réxit.

(2.) The vowel of an *accented antepenult* has the *short* sound ; as, régibus.

(3.) An *accented* vowel before a mute and liquid has usually the *long* sound ; as, sácræ.

§ 4. DIVISION OF WORDS.

(12.) I. Words are divided, according to their *signification*, into *eight* classes, called Parts of Speech, viz., Noun, Adjective, Pronoun, Verb, Adverb, Preposition, Conjunction, Interjection.

(13.) The *Noun* is the name of an object (person, or thing) ; e. g., *John, man, house*.

Nouns are divided into,

(a) Proper, denoting *individual* objects ; e. g., *John, Cæsar, Rome*.

(b) Common, denoting one or more of a *class* of objects ; e. g., *man, house, horses*.


(c) Abstract, denoting a *quality* ; e. g., *goodness, haste, virtue*.

(14.) The *Adjective* expresses a quality or property belonging to an object ; e. g., *good, small* ; as, a *good* boy, a *small* house.

(15.) The *Pronoun* is a substitute for the noun ; e. g., *he, she, it*, are substitutes for *man, woman, book*.

(16.) The *Verb* declares something of a person or thing.

E. g., the boy *dances*; the boy *sleeps*; the boy *is* good. (In this last case the quality "good" is affirmed of "boy," by means of the verb *is*.)

 *Participles, Gerunds, and Supines* are words partaking in the meaning of the verb, and in the form of the noun.

(17.) The *Adverb* qualifies the meaning of a verb, adjective, or other adverb; *e. g.*, the boy learns *rapidly*; the boy is *remarkably* faithful; the boy learns *very* rapidly.

(18.) *Prepositions* express the relations of objects simply; *e. g.*, *from* me; *in* the house.

(19.) *Conjunctions* connect words and sentences; *e. g.*, Thomas *and* John went to town; Thomas went, *but* John remained.

(20.) *Interjections* are merely signs of emotion; *e. g.*, *alas*!

(21.) II. Words are divided, according to their form, into,

(1) Four *inflected*, viz., Noun, Adjective, Pronoun, Verb.

(2) Four *uninflected*, viz., Adverb, Preposition, Conjunction, Interjection.

Rem. Inflection is the variation of a word to express different relations; *e. g.*, boy, boys, the boy's hat; I love, I am loved, &c. The inflection of Nouns is called *Declension*; of Verbs, *Conjugation*. The Latin language makes much more use of inflection than the English.

(22.) III. Words are divided, according to their formation, into,

(1) *Derivative*, *i. e.*, derived from other words.

(2) *Primitive*, *i. e.*, not derived from other words.

E. g., *manly, manhood*, are derivatives from the primitive *man*.

(3) *Compound*, *i. e.*, made up by the union of two or more words.

(4.) *Simple*, *i. e.*, not so made up.

E. g., *man-kind* is a compound, made up of the two simple words *man* and *kind*.



PART I.

PARTIAL EXHIBITION OF THE FORMS OF WORDS,

INCLUDING

TENSES OF VERBS FOR INCOMPLETE ACTION

SUMMARY.

[THE rules and statements on this page and the following are to be thoroughly learned, as they must be applied constantly.]

(23.) OF THE LETTERS.

- (1) Six are *vowels*, *a, e, i, o, u, y*;
- (2) Four *liquids*, *l, m, n, r*;
- (3) Three *c-sounds*, *c, g, q*;
- (4) Two *p-sounds*, *b, p*;
- (5) Two *t-sounds*, *d, t*;
- (6) Two double consonants, *x, z*.
- (7) The diphthongs are *au, eu, ae, oe* (and rarely *ei, oi, ui*).

(24.) GENERAL RULES OF QUANTITY.

- (1) A vowel before another is *short*; *e. g.*, *vīa*.
- (2) A vowel before two consonants, or a double one, is *long by position*; *e. g.*, *am ā nt*.

[As a mute followed by a liquid causes some exceptions to this rule, we shall mark the quantity, in that case, *doubtful*; thus, *ā gri*.]

- (3) All diphthongs are *long*; *e. g.*, *mens āe, āu-rum*.

[In the following pages of Part I., the quantity of all syllables is marked, except those which are covered by the above rules.]

(25.) GENERAL RULES OF GENDER.

[In English, gender is determined by sex alone; *e. g.*, *man* is masculine, *woman* feminine. But in Latin, gender is determined partly by the *meaning* of nouns, and partly by their *endings*. The general rules here given from the *meanings* apply to nouns of all the declensions.]

- I. MASCULINES : Names of *male beings* ; of most *rivers, winds, mountains, months, and nations.*
- II. FEMININES : Names of *female beings, cities, countries, trees, plants, and islands.*
- III. NEUTERS : All *indeclinable* words.
- IV. COMMON : Such as have but one form for masculine and feminine ; *e. g., ex ù l, an exile* (male or female).
- [These four rules are contained in the following verses.]

(25. a.) *Males, rivers, winds, and mountains* most we find
 With *months and nations* MASCULINE declined ;
 But *females, cities, countries, trees* we name,
 AS FEMININE ; most *islands, too, the same.*
 COMMON are such as *both* the genders take,
 And NEUTER all words undeclined we make.

[There are many exceptions from these rules, which must be learned by observation.]

EXPLANATION OF MARKS AND ABBREVIATIONS.

The mark \smile indicates a *short* vowel.

“ “ — indicates a *long* vowel.

“ “ = indicates that two words or phrases are *equivalent* to each other.

“ “ + between two words shows that they are *compounded* together.

e. g. means, *for example* (exempli gratia).

Passages in brackets [] are not meant to be committed to memory.

In the Exercises, words in parentheses () are not meant to be translated.

The References are made to *paragraphs*, not to pages.
 In a reference, R. means *Remark* ; N. means *foot-note*.

FIRST DECLENSION OF NOUNS.—FIRST CONJUGATION OF VERBS. (I.—V.)

LESSON I.

First Declension of Nouns.—Nominative, Vocative, and Genitive Cases.

(26.) *Examples.*

(a) <i>Shade or shadow,</i>	U mbră.
(b) <i>Of the shade,</i>	U mbræ.
(c) <i>The wood,</i>	Sylvă.
(d) <i>Of the wood,</i>	Sylvæ.

(27.) The Latin has *no article*. U mbră may be a shade, or *the shade*, according to its connection with other words.

(28.) The words umbră and sylvă are names of things belonging to certain *classes*, and are, therefore, *common nouns* (13, b).

(29.) In English, certain words (of, with, by, &c.) are generally placed before nouns, to express their relations to other words; *e. g.*, *of the wood*, &c.; but in Latin these relations are commonly indicated by different *endings* of the noun (21, (2), R.); *e. g.*, sylv-ă, *the wood*; sylv-æ, *of the wood*.

(30.) That part of the noun to which the *ending* is added is called the *stem*; *e. g.*, sylv- is the stem of sylv-ă; terr- is the stem of terr-ă, *the earth*.

(31.) There are in Latin *six endings*, which, added to the stem, form *six cases*, the *Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Vocative, Ablative*.

(32.) And as we may speak of objects as *one* or *more*, there are two numbers, the *singular* and *plural*.

distinguished by their endings; *e. g.*, umbră, *the shadow*; umbræ, *the shadows*. ✕

(33.) In this lesson we shall use but three cases, the nominative, vocative, and genitive.

(a) The *nominative* answers to the question *who?* or *what?* and gives the simple name of the thing spoken of. In the example (26, a), umbră, *shade*, is in the nominative.

(b) The *same* form of the noun, when spoken to, is called the vocative; *e. g.*, umbră, *shade*; *O shade!*

(c) The *genitive* expresses, in general, those relations which are expressed in English by the possessive case, or by the preposition *of*, and answers to the question *whose?* of *whom?* of *what?* *e. g.*, umbră, *the shade* (of *what?*), sylvæ (of *the wood*). Here sylvæ is in the genitive.

(34.) There are *five* declensions of nouns, distinguished from each other by the endings of the *genitive singular*. In this lesson we shall use only nouns of the

FIRST DECLENSION.

Case-Endings and Paradigm.—Nominative and Genitive.

(35.) (a)

ENDINGS.

	Sing.	Plur.
Nom. and Voc.	ă	æ
Gen.	æ	ărüm.

(b) By adding these endings to the stem sylv-, we get the following

PARTIAL PARADIGM.

	Sing.	Plur.
Nom. and Voc.	sylv-ă, <i>the wood</i> ; <i>O wood!</i>	sylv-æ, <i>the woods</i> ; <i>O woods!</i>
Gen.	sylv-æ, <i>of the wood</i> .	sylv-ărüm, <i>of the woods</i> .

(36.) (a) Thus, nouns of the first declension have the *nom. and voc. ending* ă (*short*), and the *gen. ending* æ (*long*, 24, 3).

(b) The penult *a* of the gen. pl. is long. (c) They are of the feminine gender, except the names of *men* or *male* beings, or *rivers*: thus, *sylv-ă* is fem.; but *naut-ă*, a *sailor*, *poet-ă*, a *poet*, and the like, are masc.

[A few *Greek* nouns of this declension end in *e* fem., and *as, es*, masc. See Appendix.]

(37.)

EXERCISE.

[In the Vocabularies, the *nom. case* is always given, with the *genitive ending* subjoined.]

I. Vocabulary.

Queen, *rēgină*, æ.
Crown, *cōrōnă*, æ.
Wing, *ălă*, æ.
Dove, *cōlumbă*, æ.
Feather, *plumă*, æ.
Daughter, *filiă*, æ.
A Celt, *Celtă*, æ.
Farmer, *ăgricōlă*, æ. (m.)
Rose, *rōsă*, æ.
Maid-servant, *ancillă*, æ.

Galba, *Galbă*, æ. (m.)
Flight, *fugă*, æ.
Province, *prōvinciă*, æ.
Memory, recollection, *mēmōriă*, æ.
Gaul, *Galliă*, æ.
Eagle, *ăquilă*, æ.
A Belgian, *Belgă*, æ.
Injury, *injuriă*, æ.
Language, *linguă*, æ.

II. Translate into Latin.

Of a crown.—Of a queen.—O Galba!—Of crowns.—Of a feather.—Of eagles.—Of the Celt.—Wings.—Roses.—Of doves.—Of injuries.—Of a daughter.—O daughter!—Of the province.—Languages.—Provinces.—Belgians.—Of the provinces.—Of the maid-servant.—O maid-servant!—The farmers.—O farmer!—Of memory.—O Belgian!—Of Gaul.—The eagles.

III. Answer the questions in the foot-note.*

[A few questions are subjoined in the foot-notes, merely as specimens to the first lessons.]

LESSON II.

First Declension of Nouns.—Nominative, Vocative, and Genitive Cases.

(38.) Examples.

(a) The queen's crown. | *Cōrōnă rēginæ*.

* What is the quantity of *u* in *umbră*? (24, 2.) Of *æ* in *sylv-æ*? (24, 3.) Of *u* in *cōlumbă*? (24, 2.) Of the penult (9) in *filiă*? (24, 1.) Of *i* in *linguă*? Of *i* in *ancillă*? (24, 2.)

- (a) *Rule of Position*.—The genitive (when *unemphatic*) stands *after* the noun on which it depends; e. g., *rēgīnæ* in (a) stands *after* *cōrōnā*.
- (b) The *queen's* crown (i. e., | *Rēgīnæ cōrōnā*.
not the *king's*).
- (b) *Rule of Position*.—The genitive (when *emphatic*) stands *before* the noun on which it depends; e. g., in (b) *rēgīnæ* stands *before* *cōrōnā*.
- [Words in the exercises considered *emphatic* are in *italics*.]

(39.)

EXERCISE.

I. Translate into English.

Ālā cōlumbæ.	Rōsā ancillæ.	Fūgā Belgārūm.
Plūmā āquilæ.	Galbæ fūgā.	Plūmæ āquilārūm.
Ō rēgīnā (voc.).	Prōvinciā Galliæ.	Injūriārūm mēmōriā.
Filiā āgricōlæ.	Mēmōriā fūgæ.	Linguā Celtārūm.
<i>Rēgīnæ</i> filiā.	Ō filiā!	Filiæ rēgīnārūm.
Cōlumbæ plūmā.	Āquilārūm fūgā.	Linguā Belgārūm.

II. Answer the questions in the foot-note.*

III. Translate into Latin.

The queen's dove.	The wings of eagles.
The farmer's eagle.	O eagle.
The flight of doves.	Galba's daughter.
The <i>girl's</i> rose.	The shades of the woods.
The queen's rose.	The memory of <i>the queen</i> .
The flight of the Celts.	The girl's dove.
The wings of the doves.	The language of the province.
The recollection of <i>an injury</i> .	O Belgians!
O Celts!	The flight of the queen.

* 1. What is the quantity of the ultimate (9) of *ancillæ*? Why? (24, 3.) Of its penult? (9.) Why? (24, 2.) Of the penult of *Galliæ*? Why? (24, 1.)

2. What is the quantity of *a* in *injuriarum*? (36, *b*.) in *memoria*? (36, *a*.)

3. What is the stem of *columba*, *ala*, *rosa*? &c. (30.)

4. What is the *gender* of *rosa*, *ala*, *fuga*? &c. (36, *c*.) What is the *gender* of *Galba*, *agricola*? (25, *a*.)

5. What is the *case* of *rosa*, *provinciæ*, *injuriarum*, *memoria*? What their number?

6. How many cases have Latin nouns? (31.) What are they? (31.)

LESSON III.

First Declension of Nouns.—Nominative and Genitive Cases.—First Conjugation of Verbs.—Intransitives.

(40.) *Examples.*

<i>To fly,</i>	völārě.
<i>To dance,</i>	saltārě.
(a) <i>The eagle flies,</i>	ăquilă vőlăt.
(b) <i>The girl dances,</i>	püellă saltăt.

(41.) SUBJECT AND PREDICATE.

(a.) Every sentence (*e. g., the eagle flies*) consists of two parts:

1. The *subject*, *i. e.*, that of which something is declared (a noun, or some word used instead of a noun); *e. g., eagle*.

2. The *predicate*, *i. e.*, that which is declared of the subject (generally a verb); *e. g., flies*.

Rem. The predicate is frequently an adjective or participle connected with the subject by the verb *is*; *e. g., the rose is sweet*.

(b.) The verb in the predicate agrees with the subject in number and person; *e. g., the eagle flies*: here *flies* is in the *third person singular*, to agree with *eagle*.

(42.) ACTIVE VERBS are those which express activity; *e. g., the eagle flies, the boy dances*. Active verbs are either

(a) *Transitive*, *i. e.*, such as require an *object* to complete their meaning; *e. g., the boy killed (whom? or what?) the squirrel*. Here *killed* is a transitive verb.

(b) *Intransitive*, *i. e.*, such as *do not* require an object; *e. g., the birds fly; the boy dances*.

[All the verbs used in this lesson are intransitives.]

(43.) (a) The *infinitive* form of a verb expresses its action indefinitely, without reference to person or time; *e. g., to dance, to plough*.

(b) The *indicative* mood of a verb expresses its action *definitely*, as a fact or question ; e. g., he *ploughs*.
Does he dance?

[The *imperative* and *subjunctive* moods are treated of hereafter.]

(44.) TENSES.

(a) The *present* tense expresses *incomplete* action in *present* time ; e. g., *I am ploughing, I plough*.

(b) The *imperfect* tense expresses *incomplete* action in *past* time ; e. g., *I was ploughing, I ploughed*.

(c) The *future* tense expresses *incomplete* action in *future* time ; e. g., *I shall be ploughing, I shall plough*.

[*Rem.* As these three forms all express *imperfect* or *incomplete* action, they should be called *Present Imperfect, Past Imperfect, Future Imperfect*. But as the present names are fixed by almost universal usage, we retain them ; advising the student to fix distinctly in his mind the principle that these forms properly express action as *continuing* or *incomplete*. The tense-forms for *completed* action will be given hereafter.]

(45.) CONJUGATIONS.

(a) In Latin, the different moods, tenses, numbers, and persons of verbs are expressed by various endings ; and the affixing of these to the proper *stem* of the verb is called conjugation. (21, Rem.)

(b) There are *four conjugations* of verbs, distinguished by their *infinitive-endings*.

(c) The infinitive-ending of the *first conjugation* is *ārē* (a long) ; e. g., *vōl-ārē, to fly ; ār-ārē, to plough*.

(d) To find the *stem* of any verb, strike off the *infinitive-ending* ; e. g., *vōl-ārē*, stem *vōl-* ; *ār-ārē*, stem *ār-*. To form any mood, tense, &c., of a verb, affix the proper ending to the stem thus found.

(46.) SOME ENDINGS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

INFINITIVE, <i>ārē</i> .			
INDICATIVE.			
3d Sing.	Present. <i>āt.</i>	Imperfect. <i>ābāt.</i>	Future. <i>ābit.</i>
3d Plural.	<i>ant.</i>	<i>ābant.</i>	<i>ābunt.</i>

(47.) By affixing these endings to the stem *vōl-*, we get the following

PARTIAL PARADIGM.

INFINITIVE, <i>vōl-ārē</i> , <i>to fly</i> .			
INDICATIVE.			
3d Sing.	Present. <i>vōl-āt, he, she, it flies.</i>	Imperfect. <i>vōl-ābāt, he, she, it was flying.</i>	Future. <i>vōl-ābit, he, she, it will fly.</i>
3d Plur.	<i>vōl-ant, they fly.</i>	<i>vōl-ābant, they were flying.</i>	<i>vōl-ābunt, they will fly.</i>

Rem. In Latin we need not use the personal pronouns *he, she, it, or they*, with the verb, as in English, because the person-endings *t* and *nt* indicate the person sufficiently.*

(48.) EXERCISE.

I. Vocabulary.

Girl, *puellā*, æ.

Forces, *cōpiæ*, † *ārum* (pl.).

Sailor, *nautā*, æ (m.).

A Belgian, *Belgā*, æ.

To hasten, *festin-ārē*.

To watch, *vigil-ārē*.

Galba, *Galbā*, æ.

To fly, *vōl-ārē*.

To dance, *salt-ārē*.

To cry out, *exclām-ārē*.

To sup, *cæn-ārē*.

To walk, *ambul-ārē*.

II. Example.

The eagle flies. | *Āquīlā vōlāt.*

Rule of Position.—The subject nominative generally precedes the verb; *e. g.*, in the above example, *āquīlā* precedes *vōlāt*.

[In the above example, which word is the subject? Why? (41, a, 1.) Which the predicate? Why? (41, a, 2.) How does *vōlāt* agree with *āquīlā*? Why? (41, b.)]

III. Translate into English.

Cōlumbæ vōlant.—*Ancillā saltāt.*—*Puellæ exclāmant.*—*Rēgīnā cænābāt.*—*Puellā ambulābāt.*—*Cōpiæ festinant.*—*Āquīlæ vōlābant.*—*Galbā festinābīt.*—*Rēgīnā saltāt.*—*Nautæ vīgīlābant.*—*Filiā rēgīnæ saltābīt.*—*Belgæ festinant.*—*Filiā Gal-*

* But when a new subject is introduced, or emphasis is required, the personal pronoun must be used in Latin.

† *Cōpiā*, in the singular, means *abundance*; in the plural, *forces*

bæ exclāmāt.—Puellæ ambülābant.—Cōpiæ Belgārūm festinā bunt.—Saltābant.—Ambülābant.—Cœnābunt.—Nautā ambülā. bīt.—Vīgīlābunt.—Nautæ saltant.—Agricōlā cœnābīt.

IV. Answer the questions in the foot-note.*

V. Translate into Latin.

The dove flies.—The girl walks.—The maid-servant hastens.—The sailors dance.—The queen's maid-servant cries out.—The farmer was supping.—The queen will sup.—The sailor was watching.—The farmer's daughter will dance.—The girl's dove will fly.—The queen's maid-servant will walk.—She was hastening.—They were watching.—He (or she) was supping.—The eagles were flying.—Galba was hastening.—The forces of the Belgians will hasten.—Eagles will fly.—The sailors were crying out.—The queen was walking.

LESSON IV.

First Declension of Nouns, Accusative Case.—First Conjugation of Verbs, Transitives.

(49.)	To love,	ām-ārē.
	Queen,	rēgīnā.
	Daughter,	filiā.

(a) The queen loves her daughter.	Rēgīnā filiām āmāt. The queen her-daughter loves.
-----------------------------------	--

Rem. The possessives, *his, her, &c.*, are not expressed in Latin, except for the sake of perspicuity or emphasis.

(50.) (a) It has been stated (41) that every sentence consists of two parts, *subject* and *predicate*; so the English sentence (49, a) contains the subject, *queen*, and the predicate, *loves*. But this predicate is *limited* by

* What is the quantity of the ultimate of *Cōlumbæ*? Why? (24, 3.) Of the penult? Why? (24, 2.) Of the ultimate *a* of *puella*? (36, a.) Of the penult? (24, 2.) Why? Of the antepenult? Why? (24, 1.) What kind of action does *vōlant* express? (44, a.) In what time? What kind does *ambülābāt*? (44, b.) In what time? In what tenses may incomplete action be expressed? (Pres., past, and fut.) What is the stem of *vōlant*? Of *exclāmant*? Of *cœnābant*? [The stem may be found by striking off any tense-ending.] Why can the personal pronoun be omitted in Latin? (47, Rem.) When must it be used? (47, Rem., N.)

the word *daughter*, which is called the *direct object* of the verb. So, in the Latin sentence (49, *a*), we have,

<i>Subject.</i>	<i>Direct object.</i>	<i>Predicate.</i>
Rēginā.	filīām.	āmāt.

(*b*) A verb thus taking an object is called a *Transitive* verb (42, *a*), and its direct object is said to be in the *Objective* case in English (*e. g.*, daughter), and in the *Accusative* case in Latin (*e. g.*, filīām). We have thus the following:

(51.) *Rules of Syntax.*

(*a*) The Accusative is the case of the *direct object*.

(*b*) Transitive verbs govern the *accusative*.

(52.) The accusative-endings of the first declension are,
Sing. ā m; *e. g.*, filī-am, rēgin-am, *daughter, queen*.
Plur. ā s; *e. g.*, filī-ās, rēgin-as, *daughters, queens*.

(53.)

EXERCISE.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Moon, lūnā, æ.

To delight, dēlectārē.

Medicine, mēdicīnā, æ.

To prepare, pārārē.

Shade or } umbrā, æ.

Shadow, }

To obscure, obscurārē.

To arm, armārē.

Through (prep.), pēr (with acc.).

To take possession of; } occupārē
or, to seize,

Island, insulā, æ.

To call, vōcārē.

To (prep.), ad. (with accus.).

Poet, poētā, æ.

To praise, laudārē.

To love, āmārē.

Earth, terrā, æ.

II. *Example.*

The poet praises the queen. | Poētā rēginām laudāt.

Rule of Position.—The object accusative stands before the transitive verb; *e. g.*, in the above example, the object rēginām stands before the transitive verb laudāt.

III. *Translate into English.*

Lūnā nautās dēlectāt.—Agrīcōlā filīās āmāt.—Ancillæ mēdicīnām pārant.—Umbrā terræ (33, *c*) lūnām obscurāt.—Nautæ rēginām laudant.—Galbā cōpiās armābāt.—Umbrā sylvārūm agrīcōlās dēlectāt.—Galbā sylvās occupāt.—Cōpiæ Belgārūm sylvās occupābant.—Cōlumbæ pēr sylvās vōlābant.—Rēginā ancillās vōcāt.—Ancillæ rēginām āmant.—Agrīcōlā filīām vōcā-

bāt.—Rēgīnā poētām laudābīt.—Rōsæ ancillās dēlectant.—Cōpiās armābunt (47, Rem.).—Sylvās occūpābunt (47 Rem.).

IV. *Answer the questions in the foot-note.**

V. *Translate into Latin.*

The moon delights the farmer.—The farmer's daughter (38, b) prepares the medicine.—The eagle's feathers delight the queen.—The Belgians arm (their) forces.—The shade of the wood delights the poet.—Galba will take possession of the wood.—(They) walk through the woods.—(They) take possession of the island.—The farmer loves (his) daughter.—The farmer's daughter praises the poet.—The queen will call the maid-servants.—The queen loves (her) maid-servants.—The shadow of the earth will obscure the moon.—The poet will praise the sailors.

LESSON V.

First Declension.—Dative and Ablative Cases.

(54.) THE *dative* case of nouns expresses the object *to* or *for* which any thing is done; *e. g.*, the man gives (*to*) the boy a book. Here *boy* is in the dative case.

Rem. The accusative case, *book*, is the *direct* object of the verb *gives*; the dative, *boy*, the *remote* object.

(55.) (a) The *ablative* case of nouns expresses the person or thing *with*, *from*, *in*, or *by* which any thing is done; *e. g.*, he filled the cup *with* wine. Here, *with* wine would be expressed in Latin by one word, in the ablative.

(b) The ablative is also governed by prepositions expressing the relations *with*, *from*, *by*, &c.

(56.) The Dative endings are, *Sing.* æ : *Plur.* is (*long*).

* (1.) What pronouns are not expressed in Latin? (47, R., 49, R.) For what purpose are they sometimes used? (2.) By what is the transitive verb limited? (By a direct object.) What is the case of the direct object in Latin? (51, a.) What is the direct object of *āmāt*, *laudāt*? &c.

The Ablative endings are, *Sing.* ā (*long*) . *Plur.* is (*long*).

(57.)

FIRST DECLENSION.

CASE-ENDINGS AND PARADIGM COMPLETE.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	ā.	æ.
Gen.	æ.	ārūm.
Dat.	æ.	īs.
Acc.	ām.	ās.
Voc.	ā.	æ.
Abl.	ā.	īs.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	sylv-ā, <i>a wood.</i>	sylv-æ, <i>woods.</i>
Gen.	sylv-æ, <i>of a wood.</i>	sylv-ārūm, <i>of woods.</i>
Dat.	sylv-æ, <i>to a wood.</i>	sylv-īs, <i>to woods.</i>
Acc.	sylv-ām, <i>a wood.</i>	sylv-ās, <i>woods.</i>
Voc.	sylv-ā, <i>O wood!</i>	sylv-æ, <i>O woods!</i>
Abl.	sylv-ā, <i>with, &c., a wood.</i>	sylv-īs, <i>with, &c., woods.</i>

Rem. Some nouns of this declension are used only in the *plural*; viz., *dīvitiæ*, *riches*; *nuptiæ*, *a marriage*; *insīdiæ*, *an ambush*.

(58.)

EXERCISE.

I. Vocabulary.

Way, viā, æ.*To show*, monstrārē.*Ambush*, or *snares*, insīdiæ, ārum
(used only in the pl.).*Wild beast*, fērā, æ.*To give*, dārē.**To beseech*, obsēcrārē.*Letter*, littēræ, ārum.†*Friendship*, āmicitiā.*To establish*, } confirmārē.
To strengthen, }*With* (prep.), cūm (governing the ablative case).*To abound*, ābundārē, (with abl.).*Deserter*, perfūgā, æ.*Tear*, lācrȳmā, æ.*Inhabitant*, incōlā, æ (25, IV.).

II. Examples.

- (a) *The farmer shows the way to the girls.* | Agrīcōlā puellīs viām monstrāt.

Rule of Position.—The remote object usually precedes the direct; e. g., in example (a), *puellīs* precedes *viām*.

- (b) *The queen walks with the maid-servants.* | Rēginā cūm ancillīs ambūlāt.

Rule of Position.—The preposition and its noun precede the verb; e. g., in example (b), the words *cūm ancillīs* precede *ambūlāt*.

* Dārē has ā *short* before rē.

† Littērā, *sing.*, means a letter (as of the alphabet); littēræ, *plur.*, a letter = an epistle.

III. *Translate into English.*

Galbā insīdiās pārāt.—Galbā Belgīs (54) insīdiās pārāt.—Belgæ āmīcītiām confirmant.—Belgæ cum rēginā āmīcītiām confirmant.—Insūlā fērīs* ābundāt.—Poētā rēginæ (dat., 54) rōsam dābāt.—Cōpiæ pēr insulām festīnant.—Pērfūgæ rēginām obsēcrābant.—Pērfūgæ cūm lācrīmīs rēginām obsēcrābant.—Pērfūga rēginæ (dat., 54) littērās dābāt.—Incōlæ rēginām obsēcrābant.

IV. *Translate into Latin.*

The poet praises the queen.—Galba establishes friendship.—Galba establishes friendship with the Belgians.—The Belgians will prepare snares.—The Belgians will prepare snares for the inhabitants (54).—The islands abound (in) herbs (58, III., note).—Poets give roses to queens (54).—The Belgians are beseeching Galba.—The Belgians are beseeching Galba with tears.—The queen will establish friendship.—The queen will establish friendship with the Belgians.—The deserters will beseech the queen.—The deserters will beseech the queen with tears.—The Belgians were preparing snares.—The Belgians were preparing snares for the deserters (54).

* Fērīs is the abl. *Rule of Syntax.*—The *abl.* case is used with all verbs and adjectives of *abounding* and *wanting*.

§ 6.

SECOND DECLENSION OF NOUNS.—SECOND CONJUGATION OF VERBS. (VI.—VIII).

LESSON VI.

Nouns.—Second Declension, Masculine.

(59.) *Examples.*

<i>Crassus,</i> <i>Messenger,</i> <i>To hasten,</i>	<i>Crass-ūs.</i> <i>nunti-ūs.</i> <i>festināre.</i>	<i>Of Crassus,</i> <i>messengers,</i>	<i>Crass-ī.</i> <i>nunti-ī.</i>
<i>The messenger of Crassus</i> <i>hastens.</i>		<i>Nunti-ūs Crass-ī festināt.</i>	
<i>The messengers hasten.</i>		<i>Nunti-ī festinant.</i>	

(60.) The *Second Declension* comprises all nouns whose gen. sing. ending is *ī* (*long*). The nom. has two endings, *ūs* for masc. gender, and *ūm* for the neut.

(61.) The *case-endings* for the masculine gender are as follows :

	Sing.		Plur.
Nom.	ūs.	Nom.	ī.
Gen.	ī.	Gen.	ōrūm.
Dat.	ō.	Dat.	īs.
Acc.	ūm.	Acc.	ōs.
Voc.	ē.	Voc.	ī.
Abl.	ō.	Abl.	īs.

Rem. The nouns in *ūs* of this declension are the only Latin nouns in which the vocative-ending differs from the nominative.

(62.) By adding these endings to the stem *serv-* of the noun *serv-ūs* (a slave), we get the

PARADIGM.

	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	<i>serv-ūs, a slave.</i>	<i>serv-ī, slaves.</i>
Gen.	<i>serv-ī, of a slave.</i>	<i>serv-ōrūm, of slaves.</i>
Dat.	<i>serv-ō, to or for a slave.</i>	<i>serv-īs, to or for slaves.</i>
Acc.	<i>serv-ūm, a slave.</i>	<i>serv-ōs, slaves.</i>
Voc.	<i>serv-ē, O slave!</i>	<i>serv-ī, O slaves!</i>
Abl.	<i>serv-ō, with, by, &c., a slave.</i>	<i>serv-īs, with, by, &c., slaves.</i>

[*Rem. 1.* Nearly all nouns in *ūs* are *masc.*; but the names of *trees, plants, &c.*, are *fem.* by the general rule (25, a). The four nouns, *alvūs*, *belly*; *cōlūs*, *distaff*; *hūmūs*, *ground*; *vannūs*, *fan*, are also *fem.* *Virūs*, *juice*; *pēlāgūs*, *the sea*; *vulgūs*, *the common people*, are *neuter*.

Rem. 2. *Filiūs*, *son*, and proper names in *iūs*, take *i* for the vocative-ending; e. g., *filī*, *O son!* *Tullī*, *O Tully!*

Rem. 3. *Dēūs*, *God*, has *deūs* for *voc. sing.*; and in the plural *N.* and *V.* *diī*, *G. deōrūm*, *D.* and *Abl.* *diīs*, *Acc.* *deōs*.]


[For Greek nouns of this declension, see Appendix.]

(63.)

EXERCISE.

I. Vocabulary.

Master (of a family or of slaves), <i>dō-</i>	<i>Captive</i> , <i>captīv-ūs</i> , <i>i</i> .
<i>min-ūs</i> , <i>i</i> .	<i>A German</i> , <i>Germān-ūs</i> , <i>i</i> .
Slave, <i>serv-ūs</i> , <i>i</i> .	<i>To call</i> , <i>vōcārē</i> .
Village, <i>vīc-ūs</i> , <i>i</i> .	<i>To recall</i> , <i>rēvōcārē</i> .*
Ambassador, or lieutenant, <i>lēgāt-ūs</i> , <i>i</i> .	<i>To call together</i> , <i>convōcārē</i> .*
Garden, <i>hort-ūs</i> , <i>i</i> .	<i>An Æduan</i> , <i>Ædu-ūs</i> , <i>i</i> .
To, <i>ad</i> (prep. with acc.).	<i>To flog</i> , <i>vērbērārē</i> .
In, <i>in</i> (prep. with abl.).	<i>To ride</i> (on horseback), <i>ēquitārē</i> .

 He rides to the village, *ad vīcūm ēquitāt*. When *to* implies motion, it must be translated by *ad* with the accusative.

II. Translate into English.

Dōminūs servūm vōcāt.—*Servūs dōminō* (54) *mēdicinām pār-āt*.—*Crassūs vīcūm occūpāt*.—*Nuntiūs Crassī vīgīlāt*.—*Servī ad vīcūm festinant*.—*Nuntiūs lēgātō* (54) *viām monstrāt*.—*Servī dōminōs laudant*.—*Āgrīcōlā ad vīcūm ēquitāt*.—*Captīvī festinābunt*.—*Galbā copīās* (48, I.) *Germānōrūm convōcāt**.—*Nuntiūs captīvōs rēvōcāt*.—*Servī in hortō ambulābunt*.—*Æduī Crassō* (54) *insīdiās pārābant*.—*Nuntiūs cōpiās Æduōrūm rēvōcābāt*.—*Dōminūs servōs verbērāt*.

III. Translate into Latin.

[Recollect that words in parentheses () * are not to be translated.]

The messengers call-together the Æduans.—The slaves prepare medicines for (their) master (dat., 54).—The Æduans take-possession-of the woods.—The master praises (his) slaves.—The slave is hastening to (*ad, with acc.*) the woods.—The ambassadors ride to the village.—Crassus will prepare an ambush for the

* The prefix *con* gives the verb the additional meaning of *together*; the prefix *re* of *back*, as in *rēvōcārē* and *convōcārē*.

Æduans.—The lieutenant calls together the Germans.—The messenger will show the way to the captives (54).—The slaves are watching.—The master flogs (his) slave.—Galba will recall the lieutenant.—The Germans were preparing an ambush for Galba (54).—The slave was showing the way to the messenger (54).—The messenger was hastening to the village.—The slaves are watching in the garden.

LESSON VII.

Nouns.—Second Declension, Masculines continued.

(64.) ALL nouns of the second declension whose stem ends in *r* reject the ending *ūs* in the nom. and *ē* in the voc.; e. g., N. and V. *āgēr*, *field*, instead of *āgēr-ūs*, *āgēr-ē*. Moreover, most of those which have *e* in the nominative drop it in the oblique* cases; e. g., N. *āgēr*, G. *āgrī* instead of *āgēr-ī*.

(65.) Learn the following

PARADIGM.

SINGULAR.			
Nom.	āgēr, <i>field</i> (m).	puēr (m.), <i>boy</i> .	vīr, <i>man</i> .
Ge .	āgr-ī, <i>of the field</i> .	puēr-ī, <i>of the boy</i> .	vīr-ī, <i>of the man</i> .
Dat.	āgr-ō, <i>to or for field</i> .	puēr-ō, <i>to or for</i> .	vīr-ō, <i>to or for</i> .
Acc.	āgr-ūm, <i>field</i> .	puēr-ūm, <i>boy</i> .	vīr-ūm, <i>man</i> .
Voc.	āgēr, <i>O field!</i>	puēr, <i>O boy!</i>	vīr, <i>O man!</i>
Abl.	āgr-ō, <i>with, by, &c., field</i> .	puēr-ō, <i>with, by, &c.</i>	vīr-ō, <i>with, by, &c.</i>
PLURAL.			
Nom.	āgr-ī, <i>fields</i> .	puēr-ī, <i>boys</i> .	vīr-ī, <i>men</i> .
Gen.	āgr-ōrūm, <i>of fields</i> .	puēr-ōrūm, <i>of boys</i> .	vīr-ōrūm, <i>of men</i> .
Dat.	āgr-īs, <i>to or for fields</i> .	puēr-īs, <i>to or for</i> .	vīr-īs, <i>to or for</i> .
Acc.	āgr-ōs, <i>fields</i> .	puēr-ōs, <i>boys</i> .	vīr-ōs, <i>men</i> .
Voc.	āgr-ī, <i>O fields!</i>	puēr-ī, <i>O boys!</i>	vīr-ī, <i>O men!</i>
Abl.	āgr-īs, <i>with fields</i> .	puēr-īs, <i>with, by, &c.</i>	vīr-īs, <i>with, by, &c.</i>

Rem. Only the following nouns keep the *e* in all the cases, viz., *ādultēr*, *adulterer*; *puēr*, *boy*; *sōcēr*, *father-in-law*; *gēnēr*, *son-in-law*; *vespēr*, *evening*; *libērī* (used only in plural), *children*; with the compounds of *fēr* and *gēr*; e. g., *Lūcīfēr*, *Lucifer*; *cornīgēr*, *horned*.

* The oblique cases include all the cases except the nominative and vocative.

(66.)

EXERCISE.

I. Vocabulary.

Boy, puēr, ī.

Master (of a school), māgistēr, trī (64).

Father-in-law, sōcēr, ī (65, R.).

Herb, herbā, æ.

Scholar, discipul-ūs, ī.

Son, fili-ūs, ī (62, R. 2).

Man, vīr, ī.

Game, lūd-ūs, ī.

Son-in-law, gēnēr, ī (65, R.).

Children, libērī, orum (rarely used in singular).

Field, āgēr, āgrī (64).

II. Example.

(a) *The wood abounds in wild beasts.* Sylvā fērīs ābundāt.

The wood in-wild-beasts abounds.

(a) *Rule of Syntax.*—The ablative case is used with adjectives and verbs of *abounding* and *wanting*.

III. Translate into English.

Puēr māgistrūm āmāt.—Rēgīnā sōcērūm āmābit.—Puērī in āgrō ambulābunt.—Āgrī herbīs (abl., 66, II., a) ābundant.—Āgrīcōlā pēr āgrōs (58, II., b) ēquitāt.—Āgrīcōlā sōcērūm vōcāt.—Pūellæ māgistrūm laudant.—Vīrī in āgrīs ambulābant.—Lūdī puērōs delectant.—Rēgīnā gēnērōs āmābit.—Vīrī ad vicūm festinābant.—Āgrīcōlā libērōs āmāt.—Māgistēr discipulōs convōcāt.

IV. Translate into Latin.

The girls walk in the fields.—The field abounds in herbs (66, II., a).—The sailor calls back the boys.—The queen loves (her) son-in-law.—The queen gives (her) son-in-law (dat., 54) a rose.—The scholars love (their) master.—The fields abound in herbs (66, II., a).—The farmers were walking through the fields.—The son of the master calls the boys.—The master walks in the garden with (his) sons.—The herbs of the field delight the poet.—Games delight girls.—The farmer shows the way to the boy.—The master will praise (his) scholars.—The master will flog (his) scholars.

LESSON VIII.

Nouns.—Second Declension, Neuter.—Verbs, Second Conjugation.

(67.)	<i>Slave.</i>	servūs (masc.).
	<i>Cup.</i>	pōcŭlŭm (neut.).
	<i>To fill.</i>	implērē.
<i>The slave fills his master's cup.</i>		Servūs pōcŭlŭm dōmīni implēt.
		<i>The slave the-cup of-his-master fills.</i>

(68.) The case-endings of the second declension for the neuter gender are,

Nom. Acc., Voc.	Sing. ŭm.	Plur. ā.
Gen.	ī.	ōrŭm.
Dat., Abl.	ō.	īs.

Rem. The endings of the nom., acc., and voc. are *always* the same in neuter nouns. In this declension, those of dat. and abl. are alike also.

(69.) By adding these endings to the stem pōcŭl-, we get the

PARADIGM.

	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	pōcŭl-ŭm, <i>a cup.</i>	pōcŭl-ā, <i>cups.</i>
Gen.	pōcŭl-ī, <i>of a cup.</i>	pōcŭl-ōrŭm, <i>of cups.</i>
Dat.	pōcŭl-ō, <i>to or for a cup.</i>	pōcŭl-īs, <i>to or for cups.</i>
Acc.	pōcŭl-ŭm, <i>a cup.</i>	pōcŭl-ā, <i>cups.</i>
Voc.	pōcŭl-ŭm, <i>O cup!</i>	pōcŭl-ā, <i>O cups!</i>
Abl.	pōcŭl-ō, <i>with, by, &c., a cup.</i>	pōcŭl-īs, <i>with, from, &c., cups.</i>

THE SECOND CONJUGATION OF VERBS.

(70.) The second conjugation comprises all verbs whose infinitive-ending is ērē (*e long before rē*); *e. g.*, mōn-ērē, *to advise*; dōc-ērē, *to teach*.

(71.) SOME ENDINGS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION OF VERBS.

INFINITIVE, ērē.			
INDICATIVE.			
3d Sing.	Present. ēt.	Imperfect. ēbāt.	Future. ēbīt.
3d Plural.	ent.	ēbant.	ēbunt.

(72.) By affixing these endings to the stem *m ōn-*, we get the following

PARTIAL PARADIGM.

INFINITIVE, <i>mon-ērē</i> , to advise.			
INDICATIVE.			
	Present.	Imperfect.	Future.
3d Sing.	<i>mōn-ēt, he, she, &c., advises.</i>	<i>mōn-ēbāt, he, she, &c., was advising.</i>	<i>mōn-ēbit, he, she, &c., will advise.</i>
3d Plur.	<i>mōn-ent, they advise.</i>	<i>mōn-ēbant, they were advising.</i>	<i>mōn-ēbunt, they will advise.</i>

(73.)

EXERCISE.

I. Vocabulary.

Assistance, auxiliūm, ī (68).

To ask, entreat, rōgārē.

Camp, castrā, ōrūm (pl.)

To move, mōvērē (70).

Cup, pōcūlūm, ī.

Wine, vinūm, ī.

To fill, implērē (70).


Danger, pēricūlūm, ī.

To fear, tīmērē (70).


Forum, fōrūm, ī.

Town, oppidūm, ī.

II. Translate into English.

I. lēgātūs auxiliūm rōgāt.—Galbā cōpiās ād (63, I., ) castrā rēvocāt.—*Servūs pōcūlūm vinō* (55, a) *implēt.*—*Crassūs castrā mōvēt.*—*Cōpiæ ād oppidūm festinābant.*—*Āgricōlā oppidūm laudāt.*—*Cōpiæ Germānōrūm ād castrā festinābunt.*—*Nuntiūs pēricūlūm tīmēt.*—*Puerī pēr fōrūm ambulānt.*—*Germānī pēriculā nōn timent.*—*Lēgātī pēr oppidūm ambulābunt.*—*Āgricōlā oppidā Ædūōrūm laudābāt.*—*Crassūs oppidūm occūpābāt.*—*Servī pōcūlā implēbant.*

III. Translate into Latin.

The Æduans were asking assistance.—The Germans will move (their) camp.—The Germans were praising the town.—The ambassadors of the Æduans hasten to (63, I., ) the camp.—The forces of the Belgians fear the danger.—The messenger will recall the ambassadors to the camp.—Galba's messenger will recall the Germans to the town.—The ambassadors praise the towns of the Germans.—The farmers were walking through the forum.—The boy walks through the town.—The sailors will not fear the danger.—Crassus will not move (his) camp.—The Germans were-taking-possession-of the town.—The servant was filling the cup.

§ 7.

ADJECTIVES OF FIRST CLASS. (IX.—X.)

LESSON IX.

Adjectives.—Class I, ũ s, ă, ũ m.

(74.) THE *Adjective* (14), in Latin, agrees with the noun in *gender, number, and case*, and therefore has *endings* to distinguish these; *e. g.*, *puēr* b ō n-ũ s, a good boy; *pŭellā* b ō n-ă, a good girl; *dōnum* b ō n-ũ m, a good gift.

(75.) We divide adjectives into *three* classes, according to their endings. Those of the *first class* have the *fem.* ending of the first decl. of nouns, and the *masc.* and *neut.* endings of the second. Thus,

(76.) ENDINGS.

PARADIGM.

SINGULAR.						
N.	M. ũs.	F. ă.	N. ũm.	M. bŏn-ũs.	F. bŏn-ă.	N. bŏn-ũm.
G.	ī.	æ.	ī.	bŏn-ī.	bŏn-æ.	bŏn-ī.
D.	ō.	æ.	ō.	bŏn-ō.	bŏn-æ.	bŏn-ō.
A.	ũm.	ăm.	ũm.	bŏn-ũm.	bŏn-ăm.	bŏn-ũm.
V.	ě.	ă.	ũm.	bŏn-ě.	bŏn-ă.	bŏn-ũm.
A.	ō.	ă.	ō.	bŏn-ō.	bŏn-ă.	bon-ō.
PLURAL.						
N.	ī.	æ.	ă.	bŏn-ī.	bŏn-æ.	bŏn-ă.
G.	ōrum.	ărum.	ōrũm.	bŏn-ōrum.	bŏn-ărum.	bŏn-ōrũm.
D.	īs.	īs.	īs.	bŏn-īs.	bŏn-īs.	bŏn-īs.
A.	ōs.	ăs.	ă.	bŏn-ōs.	bŏn-ăs.	bŏn-ă.
V.	ī.	æ.	ă.	bŏn-ī.	bŏn-æ.	bŏn-ă.
A.	īs.	īs.	īs.	bŏn-īs.	bŏn-īs.	bŏn-īs.

(77.) Adjectives whose stem ends in *ěr* do not take the endings *ũ s* of the nominative and *ě* of the vocative.

(a) Most of them drop the *ě* in inflection; *e. g.*,
pulchěr, *pulchr-ă*, *pulchr-ũm*, *beautiful*;
pulchr-ī, *pulchr-æ*, *pulchr-ī*, &c.

(b) But aspēr, rough; lăcēr, torn; libēr, free; mīsēr, miserable; prospēr, fortunate; tēnēr, tender (and the compounds of gēr and fēr; e. g., cornīgēr, flammīfēr), retain it; e. g.,

mīsēr, mīsēr-ă, mīsēr-ŭm,
mīsēr-ī, mīsēr-æ, mīsēr-ī, &c.

(78.)

EXERCISE.

I. Vocabulary.

Good, bōn-ŭs, ă, ŭm.

Great, magn-ŭs, ă, ŭm.

Many, mult-ŭs, ă, ŭm.

Thick, dens-ŭs, ă, ŭm.

Broad, wide, lăt-ŭs, ă, ŭm.

My, mē-ŭs, ă, ŭm.

Thy, tŭ-ŭs, ă, ŭm.

His, hers, its (own), su-ŭs, ă, ŭm.

To see, vīdērē.

Master (of slaves), hērŭs, ī.

To have, hăbērē.

Example, exemplŭm, ī.

River, flŭviŭs, ī.

To frighten, terrērē.

II. Examples.

(a) *The slave fills the large cup.* | Servŭs pōcŭlŭm magnŭm implēt.

Rule of Position.—(a) The adjective, unless emphatic, follows the noun; e. g., in the above example, magnŭm follows pōcŭlŭm.

(b) *The slave fills the queen's large cup.* | Servŭs magnŭm rēginæ pōcŭlŭm implēt.

Rule of Position.—(b) When the noun governs another in the genitive, the adjective stands first, and the genitive between it and its noun; e. g., in example (b), magnŭm rēginæ pōcŭlŭm.

III. Translate into English.

Rēgină filiām suām āmăt.—Servŭs pōcŭlŭm meŭm implēt.—Servī pōcŭlă magnă implent.—Puērī māgistrŭm bōnŭm āmant.—Belgæ vicōs multōs hăbent.—Āgrīcŏlă bōnŭs viām monstrăt.—Māgister puērōs bōnōs dŏcēbit.—Māgistrī bŏnī exemplă bŏnă puērīs (54) dant.—Lēgātŭs magnăm rēgină (78, II., b) cŏrŏnăm vīdēt.—Perfŭgæ ād flŭviŭm lătŭm festinant.—Servŭs magnŭm puērī (78, II., b) pōcŭlŭm implēbăt.—Sylvæ densæ nuntiōs terrent.—Puērī sylvām densām tīmēbunt.—Servŭs bōnŭs hērŭm āmăt.

IV. Translate into Latin.

The Æduans have many villages.—The queen loves (her)

good son.—The farmer shows the thick wood.—Good slaves love (their) masters.—Good masters love (their) slaves.—The Belgians have many towns.—The broad rivers frighten the deserters.—The boy sees the large town.—Crassus recalls the good lieutenant.—The son praises the great queen.—The Germans have large villages.—He praises thy slave.—He loves thy daughter.—He will praise *his own* daughter.—The deserters were hastening to the broad river.—The slave will fill the large cup of his master (78, II., *b*).—The lieutenant will see many villages of the Belgians (78, II., *b*).—The thick wood will frighten the boys.

LESSON X.

Some Forms of Esse.—Adjectives continued.

(79.) Learn the following forms of the irregular verb *Esse*, to be :

INFINITIVE, <i>esse</i> , to be.			
INDICATIVE.			
	Present.	Imperfect.	Future.
3d Sing.	ēst, <i>is</i> .	ērāt, <i>was</i> .	ērīt, <i>he, she, it will be</i> .
3d Plur.	sunt, <i>are</i> .	ērant, <i>were</i> .	ērunt, <i>they will be</i> .

(80.) (a) *Indolence is a vice.* | Īnertiā vītium est.
Indolence a vice is.

Here Īnertiā is the *subject* of the sentence; vītium is the *predicate*; both in the nominative.

Rule of Syntax.—(a) The *noun* in the predicate must be in the same case as the subject, when it denotes the same person or thing.

(81.) (b) *The rose is beautiful.* | Rōsă pulchră est.
The rose beautiful is.

Here rōsă is the *subject*, and pulchră the *predicate*; both in nom. sing. fem.

Rule of Syntax.—(b) The *adjective* in the predicate agrees with the subject in gender, number, and case.

[As a general rule, a sentence should not end with a *monosyllable*; but in short passages, such as the above, especially when the word before *est* ends in a vowel, or *m*, it is admissible.]

(82.)

EXERCISE.

[Refer to Rules of Position (78, II.) and to Rem. on adjectives ending in *ēr* (77).]

I. Vocabulary.

Happy, *beātūs*, ā, ūm.

True, *vērūs*, ā, ūm.

Friendship, *āmicitia*, æ.

Everlasting, *sempiternūs*, ā, ūm.

Labiennus, *Lābiennūs*, ī.

Foolish, *stultūs*, ā, ūm.

Tender, *tēnēr*, ā, ūm (77, b).

Flame, *flammā*, æ.

Red, ruddy, *rūbēr*, ā, ūm (77, a).

A leaf, *fōliūm*, ī.

Bull, *taurūs*, ī.

Horned, *corniger*, ā, ūm (77, b).

Lamb, *agnūs*, ī.

Miserable, *mīser*, a, um (77, b).

Europe, *Eurōpā*, æ.

Peninsula, *pēninsulā*, æ.

Anger, *īra*, æ.

Illustrious, *clārūs*, ā, ūm.

Crow, *corvūs*, ī.

Black, *nīgēr*, ā, ūm (77, a).

Not, *nōn* (always placed before the word which it qualifies)

Always, *sempēr* (adv.).

Cow, *vaccā*, æ.

Attica, *Atticā*, æ.

Britain, *Brītanīā*, æ.

Ireland, *Hiberniā*, æ.

Rem. In such phrases as *the good, the wise, &c.*, the noun (*men*) is omitted in Latin, as in English; *e. g.*, *good men* = *bōnī*; *fools* = *stultī*; *the happy* = *beātī*. Also, *many things* = *multā* (neut.); *all things* = *omniā*.

II. Examples.

The good are always happy.

Bōnī sempēr beātī sunt.

True friendships are everlasting.

Vēræ āmicitiae sempiternæ sunt.

Labiennus was a lieutenant.

Lābiennūs lēgātūs ērāt.

The foolish are not happy.

Stultī nōn sunt beātī.

III. Translate into English.

Puellā pulchrā est (81, b).—*Herbæ āgrōrūm tēnēræ sunt* (81, b).—*Ālæ āquīlārūm māgnæ sunt*.—*Flammā rubrā est*.—*Fōliā rōsārūm pulchrā sunt*.—*Taurī cornīgērī sunt*.—*Āgnī tēnērī īn āgrīs sunt*.—*Rēgīnā pulchrā īn hortō ambulābāt*.—*Puēr āgnōs pulchrōs vidēt*.—*Vērā āmicitia sempiternā est*.—*Stultī mīserī sunt*.—*Eurōpā pēninsulā* (80, a) *est*.—*Atticā pēninsulā est*.—*Īrā vitium est magnūm*.—*Crassūs lēgātūs ērāt*.—*Labiennūs lēgātūs clārūs ērāt*.—*Corvūs plūmās nīgrās hābēt*.—*Stultī nōn sunt beātī*.—*Bōnūs sempēr beātūs est*.

IV. Translate into Latin.

The queen was beautiful.—The queen's daughter was beau-

tiful.—The beautiful daughter walks in the garden.—The fields abound in tender herbs (66, II., *a*).—The feathers of doves are beautiful.—The feathers of crows are black.—The flames were ruddy.—The leaves of roses are tender.—Cows are horned.—The queen walks in the garden with (*cūm*) her beautiful daughters (*fīliābūs**).—The girl will see the tender lambs in the fields.—The good are not always happy.—Fools are not always miserable.—Crassus was a great lieutenant.—Britain is an island.—Ireland is an island.—Geneva is a large town.—Anger is always a vice.—Everlasting friendships are true.—Friendships are not always everlasting.

* *Filiā*, daughter, and *deā*, goddess, have abl. pl. in *ābūs*, instead of *is*, to distinguish them from *filiīs*, sons, *diīs*, gods.

§ 8.

THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS OF VERBS.

LESSON XI.

Verbs.—Third and Fourth Conjugations.

(83.) THE *Third Conjugation* comprises all verbs whose infinitive ending is ěr ě (*ě short before r ě*); e. g., scrib-ěr ě, *to write*.

(84.) SOME ENDINGS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

INFINITIVE, ěre.			
INDICATIVE.			
Singular.	Present. ĭt.	Imperfect. ěbat.	Future. ět.
Plural.	unt.	ěbant.	ent.

(85.) By affixing these endings to the stem scrib-, we get the following

PARTIAL PARADIGM.

INFINITIVE, scrib-ěre, <i>to write</i> .			
INDICATIVE.			
	Present.	Imperfect.	Future.
3d Sing.	scrib-it, <i>he, she, &c., writes.</i>	scrib-ěbat, <i>he, she, &c., was writing.</i>	scrib-ět, <i>he, she, &c., will write.</i>
3d Plur.	scrib-unt, <i>they write.</i>	scrib-ěbant, <i>they were writing.</i>	scrib-ent, <i>they will write.</i>

THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

(86.) The *Fourth Conjugation* comprises all verbs whose infinitive-ending is ĭr ě (*ĭ long before r ě*); e. g., aud-ĭr ě, *to hear*.

(87.) SOME ENDINGS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

INFINITIVE, ĭre.			
INDICATIVE.			
3d Sing.	Present. ĭt.	Imperfect. ĭbat.	Future. ĭt.
3d Plur.	ĭunt.	ĭebant.	ient.

(88.) By affixing these endings to the stem aud-, we have the following

PARTIAL PARADIGM.

INFINITIVE, aud-ire, to hear.			
INDICATIVE.			
	Present.	Imperfect.	Future.
3d Sing.	aud-īt, <i>he, she, &c., hears.</i>	aud-iēbat, <i>he, she, &c., was hearing.</i>	aud-iēt, <i>he, she, &c., will hear.</i>
3d Plur.	aud-iunt, <i>they hear.</i>	aud-iēbant, <i>they were hearing.</i>	aud-ient, <i>they will hear.</i>

(89.)

EXERCISE.

I. Vocabulary.

To send, mittērē (83).*In* (prep.), in.**To sleep*, dormirē (86).*Bed-chamber*, cūbiculūm, ī.*To run*, currērē (83).*To rule*, rēgērē (83).*A Gaul*, Gallūs, ī.*Tower*, castellūm, ī.*Small*, parvūs, ā, ūm.*To come*, venirē (86).*A Roman*, Rōmānūs, ī.*To lead*, dūcērē (83).*World*, mundūs, ī.*To conquer*, vincērē (83).*To fortify*, mūnirē (86).*Divitiacus*, Divitiācūs, ī.

II. Example.


Crassus comes to the large town. | Crassūs magnūm ād oppidūm venīt.

Rule of Position.—The adjective belonging to a noun governed by a preposition is frequently placed *before* the preposition, *e. g.*, magnūm in the example.

III. Translate into English.

Belgæ lēgātōs mittunt.—Belgæ lēgātōs ād Crassūm mittunt.—Puērī in cūbiculō dormiunt.—Puellæ parvō (89, II.) in cūbiculō dormiēbant.—Rēginā magnūm ād oppidūm veniēt.—Galbā cōpiās Rōmānōrūm dūcīt.—Dī (62, R., 3) mundūm rēgunt.—Deūs mundūm sempēr rēgīt.—Rōmānī Gallōs vincēbant.—Lēgātūs castellā mūniēbāt.—Æduī nuntiūm ad Labiēnūm mittunt.—Cōpiæ Belgārūm ād oppidūm venient.—Divitiācūs cōpiās Æduōrūm dūcēbāt.

IV. Translate into Latin.

The horse runs.—The boy sleeps.—The boy was running.—The slave comes.—Crassus fortifies many towers.—The slave was coming to (63, I., ) his master.—The beautiful boy will sleep in a little bed-chamber (89, II.).—The gods always govern

* *In*, signifying *into* or *unto*, governs the *accusative*; signifying *in* governs the *ablative*.

the world.—The Romans are coming to the large town.—The farmer was sleeping in the field.—Divitiacus was leading the forces of the *Æduans*.—The Belgians send messengers to Crassus.—Crassus sends a messenger to the Belgians.—The girls will sleep in a little bed-chamber.—Crassus will fortify the towers.—The Romans take-possession-of the towers of Gaul.

§ 9.

PASSIVE VERBS. (XII.—XIII.)

LESSON XII.

Verbs.—Passive Voice.—First and Second Conjugations.

(90.) THE endings of the third persons of verbs, in the tenses for *incomplete* or *continued* action (44), are the same in the passive as in the active voice, with the addition of the syllable *ür*. Thus, we have in the

(91.) FIRST CONJUGATION.

PRESENT.		
	Active.	Passive.
3d Sing.	ām-āt, <i>he, she, it, loves.</i>	am-āt-ür, <i>he, she, it is loved.*</i>
3d Plur.	ām-ant, <i>they love.</i>	ām-ant-ür, <i>they are loved.</i>
IMPERFECT.		
3d Sing.	ām-ābāt, <i>he was loving.</i>	ām-ābāt-ür, <i>he was loved.</i>
3d Plur.	am-ābant, <i>they were loving.</i>	ām-ābant-ür, <i>they were loved.</i>
FUTURE.		
3d Sing.	ām-ābīt, <i>he shall or will love.</i>	ām-ābīt-ür, <i>he shall or will be loved.</i>
3d Plur.	ām-ābunt, <i>they shall or will love.</i>	ām-ābunt-ür, <i>they shall or will be loved.</i>

(92.) SECOND CONJUGATION.

PRESENT.		
	Active.	Passive.
3d Sing.	mōn-ēt, <i>he advises.</i>	mōn-ēt-ür, <i>he is advised.</i>
3d Plur.	mōn-ent, <i>they advise.</i>	mōn-ent-ür, <i>they are advised.</i>
IMPERFECT.		
3d Sing.	mōn-ēbāt, <i>he was advising.</i>	mōn-ēbāt-ür, <i>he was advised.</i>
3d Plur.	mōn-ēbant, <i>they were advising.</i>	mōn-ēbant-ür, <i>they were advised.</i>
FUTURE.		
3d Sing.	mōn-ēbīt, <i>he will advise.</i>	mōn-ēbīt-ür, <i>he will be advised.</i>
3d Plur.	mōn-ēbunt, <i>they will advise.</i>	mōn-ēbunt-ür, <i>they will be advised.</i>

* The English language has no forms for incomplete action in the passive voice. *He is loved, he was loved, &c., the house is built, &c.,* properly express action complete. An awkward periphrasis—*he is being loved,*

(93.)

EXERCISE.

I. Vocabulary.

Game, sport, lūdus, i.
To delight, delectārē.

To teach, dōcēre.
Seize, occupārē.

II. Examples.

- | | |
|--|---------------------------|
| (a) Crassus calls the lieutenant. | Crassus lēgātum vōcāt. |
| (b) The lieutenant is called by Crassus. | Lēgātus ā Crassō vōcātūr. |

In these examples, the same action is expressed (viz., the calling of the lieutenant) in (a) by the active form, in (b) by the passive. Every sentence in which a transitive verb occurs may thus be changed into the passive form. The agent (Crassus) is the subject nominative in (a); and in (b) is expressed by the ablative (Crassō) with the preposition ā, by.

Rem. If the subject be a thing, not a person, nor considered as a person, the preposition is omitted; e. g., Pōcūlum vīnō implētūr, the cup is filled with wine. (This is the abl. of cause or means.)

III. Translate into English.

Auxiliū ā lēgātō rōgātūr.—Auxiliū ā lēgātō rōgābātūr.—Auxiliū ā lēgātō rogabitur.—Cōpiā ā Galbā rēvōcantūr.—Pōcūlū ā servō implēbātūr.—Oppidā ā Crassō occupābantūr.—Mēdicinā āb ancillis pārābītūr.—Puērī bōnī ā māgistrō laudantūr.—Cōpiā Germānōrū ā Labiēnō rēvōcābuntūr.—Pōcūlā vīnō (93, II., R.) implentūr.—Puērī lūdīs (93, II., R.) delectantūr.

IV. Translate into Latin.

The master is loved by (his) scholars.—The master will be loved by (his) good scholars.—The cups will be filled (with) wine (93, II., R.).—The Germans were called together by Crassus.—The villages were seized by the Romans.—The towns will be seized by the Æduans.—Medicines are prepared by the slaves.—Good boys will be praised by their masters.—The good boys will be advised by their masters.—The scholars are taught by their master.—The scholar was taught by his

the house is *being built*—is sometimes employed, but is not to be approved. The house is *building* is a form sanctioned by usage, but in many verbs it would be ambiguous. The pupil must remember, then, that in the exercises in the First Part, the forms *is loved, is advised, was advised, &c.*, are used to express incomplete action.

38 PASSIVES OF THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS.

master.—The girls are delighted with games (93, II., R.).—The slaves will be delighted with games.—The queen is praised by (her) maid-servant.—The queen was praised by (her) maid-servant.—The queen will be praised by (her) maid-servant.

LESSON XIII.

Verbs.—Passive Voice.—Third and Fourth Conjugations.

(94.)

THIRD CONJUGATION.

PRESENT.			
	Active.		Passive.
3d Sing.	rēg-īt, he, she, it rules.	rēgīt-ūr, he, she, it is ruled.	
3d Plur.	rēg-unt, they rule.	rēgunt-ūr, they are ruled.	
IMPERFECT.			
3d Sing.	rēg-ēbāt, he was ruling.	rēgēbāt-ūr, he was ruled.	
3d Plur.	rēg-ēbant, they were ruling.	rēgēbant-ūr, they were ruled.	
FUTURE.			
3d Sing.	rēg-ēt, he shall or will rule.	rēgēt-ūr, he shall or will be ruled.	
3d Plur.	rēg-ent, they shall or will rule.	rēgent-ūr, they shall or will be ruled.	

(95.)

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

PRESENT.			
	Active.		Passive.
3d Sing.	aud-īt, he hears.	audīt-ūr, he is heard.	
3d Plur.	aud-iunt, they hear.	audiunt-ūr, they are heard.	
IMPERFECT.			
3d Sing.	aud-iēbāt, he was hearing.	audiēbāt-ūr, he was heard.	
3d Plur.	aud-iēbant, they were hearing.	audiēbant-ūr, they were heard.	
FUTURE.			
3d Sing.	aud-iēt, he shall or will hear.	aud-iēt-ūr, he shall or will be heard.	
3d Plur.	aud-ient, they shall or will hear.	audient-ūr, they shall or will be heard.	

(96.)

EXERCISE.

I. Vocabulary.

A Roman, Rōmānūs, I.
To lay aside, dēpōnērē.
Garrison, præsidiūm, I.

A Gaul, Gallūs, I.
To distribute, } dispōnērē.
arrange, }

II. Translate into English.

Lēgātī ā Belgīs mittuntūr.—Mundūs ā Deō rēgītūr.—Cōpiæ

Rōmānōrūm ā Galbā dūcuntūr.—Gallī a Rōmānīs vincuntūr.—
 Irā ā rēgīnā dēpōnītūr.—Castellūm ā Labiēnō mūnītūr.—Præsī-
 diā ā lēgātō dispōnuntūr.—Lēgātī ād Æduōs mittēbantūr.—Cō-
 piæ Æduōrūm ad vicūm dūcentūr.—Epistōlā ā rēgīnā scrībītūr.—
 Oppidā Belgārūm muniēbantūr.—Nuntiū ād Crassūm mittentūr.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

Galba is conquered by the Belgians.—The camp is fortified by Crassus.—The forces of Crassus are led to the camp.—The forces of the Ædui are sent to the village.—Anger will be laid aside by the queen.—Galba was conquered by the Gauls.—Letters will be written by the queen.—Letters are written to (ad) Crassus.—The garrisons are not distributed by Crassus.—The towers are not fortified by the Belgians.—The world is always governed by God.—The Germans are ruled by a lieutenant.—A letter will be written by the queen.

THIRD DECLENSION OF NOUNS.—PARTIAL TREATMENT. (XIV.—XV.)

LESSON XIV.

Nouns.—Third Declension.

(97.) THE *Third Declension* comprises all nouns whose *gen. sing.* ends in *īs*.

Rem. To find the stem of any noun of this declension, strike off *īs* from the *gen. sing.*; e. g., *gen. hōmīnis* (of a man), stem *hōmīn*.

(98.) The case-endings are as follows:

Singular.			Plural.		
N.	M. & F.	Neut.	N.	M. & F.	Neut.
G.	īs.	īs.	G.	ēs.	ā (iā).
D.	ī.	ī	D.	ūm (iūm).	ūm (iūm).
A.	ēm (īm).	like N.	A.	ībūs.	ībūs.
V.	like N.	like N.	V.	ēs.	ā (iā).
A.	ē (i).	ē (i).	A.	ībūs.	ībūs.

Rem. 1. The *nom.* ending is not given, because of the many forms in which that case occurs. Of the changes to which the stem is subject, see hereafter (Part II.).

2. Of the endings *īm*, *ī* (in *acc.* and *abl. sing.*), and *iā*, *iūm* (*plur.*), see hereafter (Part II.).

3. The *genders* of all nouns of this declension are marked in the vocabularies. The general rules of gender (25, a) of course apply to this declension: special rules are given (355). We give here only (99.) *Partial Rule of Gender*.—Most nouns which add *s* to the stem to form the nominative are feminine.

(100.) PARADIGMS—MASCULINE AND FEMININE FORMS.

Sing.	Speech (m.).	Honour (m.).	City (f.).	Nation (race), f.	Law (f.).
N. and V.	sermō.	hōnōr.	urb-s.	gens (gents).	lex (legs).
Gen.	sermōn-īs.	hōnōr-īs.	urb-īs.	gent-īs.	lēg-īs.
Dat.	sermōn-ī.	hōnōr-ī.	urb-ī.	gent-ī.	lēg-ī.
Acc.	sermōn-ēm.	hōnōr-ēm.	urb-ēm.	gent-ēm.	lēg-ēm.
Abl.	sermōn-ē.	hōnōr-ē.	urb-ē.	gent-ē.	lēg-ē.
Plur.	Speeches.	Honours.	Cities.	Races.	Laws.
N., A., V.	sermōn-ēs.	hōnōr-ēs.	urb-ēs.	gent-ēs.	lēg-ēs.
Gen.	sermōn-ūm.	hōnōr-ūm.	urb-ūm.	gent-iūm.	lēg-ūm.
D. and A.	sermōn-ībūs.	hōnōr-ībūs.	urb-ībūs.	gent-ībūs.	lēg-ībūs.

Rem. 1. Observe that *d* or *t* in the stem is *dropped* in the nom. before *s*; and *c* or *g* combined with *s* to form *x*; e. g., laus=laud-*s*; arx=arc-*s*; lex=leg-*s*; gens=gent-*s*.

2. All the endings are *short* but *ī* (dat. sing.) and *ēs* (N., A., V. plur.).

(101.)

EXERCISE.

I. Vocabulary.

[In the following vocabularies, the *stem* of every noun of the third declension is placed immediately *after* the nominative form, and *before* the genitive ending.]

King, rēx, (rēg) is, m.

Law, lēx, (lēg) is, f.

To abrogate, ābrōgāre.

Just, justūs, ā, ūm.

Worthy, dignūs, ā, ūm.

Part, pars, (part) is, f.

Common-people, plebs, (plēb) is, f.

To leave, rēlinquēre.

Rock, pētrā, æ.

Tree, arbōr, (arbōr) is, f.

To build a nest, nīdificāre.

Cæsar, Cæsār, (Cæsār) is.

And, et (conj.).

Consul, consūl, (consūl) is, m.

General, impērātōr, (impērātōr) is, m.

A Helvetian, Helvētiūs, ī.

II. Translate into English.

Rex lēg-ēs ābrōgāt.—Cōpiæ ād urb-ēm festīnant.—Lēg-ēs justæ sunt.—Pars plēb-īs urb-ēm rēlinquīt.—Magnā pars plēb-īs urb-ēm rēlinquīt.—Āquilæ īn pētrīs et arbōr-ībūs nīdificānt.—Lēg-ēs ā rēg-ē ābrōgantūr.—Cōpiæ ād urb-ēm rēvōcantūr.—Helvētīi ād Cæsār-ēm lēgātōs mittunt.—Nuntīūs sermōn-ēm consūl-īs laudāt.—Impērātōr nuntīōs rēvōcāt.—Rex dignīs (54, and 82, I., R.) hōnōr-ēs dābīt.—Cōpiæ Belgārūm urb-ēm rēlinquēbant.—Cæsār ād vicōs festīnābāt.—Lēgātī ād impērātōr-ēm mittuntūr.—Impērātōr nuntīōs ād urb-ēm mittēt.—Lēgātūs part-ēm cōpiārūm rēvōcābīt.

III. Translate into Latin.

The laws were just.—The king will revoke the laws.—The general will leave the village.—The consuls send ambassadors.—The consuls recall the ambassadors.—Doves build their nests in gardens and trees.—The consuls are praised.—The city is fortified.—Honours will be given.—Honours are given to the worthy (82, I., R.).—Ambassadors will be sent to the consuls.—Honours are given to Cæsar (54).—The speech of the consul is praised.—Honours are given to the general.—A great part of the common-people will leave the city.—The consuls will recall the common-people.—The ambassadors will leave the city.—The general will be sent.—Cæsar will be recalled.—The laws were unjust.

LESSON XV.

Nouns.—Third Declension, continued.

(102.)

PARADIGMS.—NEUTER FORMS.

Sing.	Sea (n.).	Song (n.).	Work (n.).	Animal (n.).
N., A., V.	mār-ē.	carmēn.	ōpūs.	ānīmāl.
G.	mār-īā.	carmīn-is.	ōpēr-is.	ānīmāl-is.
D.	mār-ī.	carmīn-ī.	ōpēr-ī.	ānīmāl-ī.
Abl.	mār-ī.	carmīn-ē.	ōpēr-ē.	ānīmāl-ī.
Plur.	Seas.	Songs.	Works.	Animals.
N., A., V.	mār-īā.	carmīn-ā.	ōpēr-ā.	ānīmāl-īā.
G.	mār-īūm.	carmīn-ūm.	ōpēr-ūm.	ānīmāl-īūm.
D., Abl.	mār-ībūs.	carmīn-ībūs.	ōpēr-ībūs.	ānīmāl-ībūs.

Rem. 1. Neuters whose nom. ends in *al*, *ar*, or *e*, take *ī* for abl. sing. ending; *īā*, nom. plur., and *īūm*, gen. plur.

2. Partial Rule of Gender.—Nouns whose stems end in *al* or *ar* are neuter.

(103.)

EXERCISE.

I. Vocabulary.

Name, nōmēn, (nōmīn) *is* (n.).

To enrol, conscribērē.

Treaty, fœdūs, (fœdēr) *is* (n.).

To violate, violārē.

Spoil or booty, prædā, æ.

Ally, sōciūs, ī.

Summer, æstās, (æstāt) *is* (f.).

Cold, frīgūs, (frīgōr) *is* (n.).

Burden, ōnūs, (ōnēr) *is* (n.).

To carry, portārē.

Wound, vulnūs, (vulnēr) *is* (n.).

To cure, heal, sãnārē.

To mitigate, mītīgārē.

River, flūmēn, (flūmīn) *is* (n.).

To swim across, transnārē (gov. acc.).

Work, ōpūs, (ōpēr) *is* (n.).

Fish, piscis, (pisc) *is* (m.).

Time, tempūs, (tempōr) *is* (n.).

To change, mūtārē.

Man, hōmō, (hōmīn) *is* (m.).

Stormy, turbid, turbidūs, ā, ūm.

II. Translate into English.

Consul nōmīnā conscribīt.—Cæsār fœdūs (acc.) violābāt, et prædām sōciīs (54) dābāt.—Æstās frīgūs (acc.) mītīgāt.—Perfūgæ flūmēn (acc.) transnābant.—Magnūm ōpūs est.—Flūmēn piscībūs ābundāt (66, I., a).—Tempūs hōmīnēs mūtāt.—Tempōrā mūtāntūr.—Frīgūs æstātē (93, II., R.) mītīgābītūr.—Cōpiæ Belgārūm flūmīnā transnābant.—Servūs ōnūs (acc.) magnūm portāt.—Cæsār nōmīnā nōn conscribēt.—Ōnūs magnūm est.—Mēdicīnā vulnūs sãnāt.—Carmīnā puellās delectant.—Nōmīnā hōmīnūm mūtābuntūr.—Māriā turbidā sunt.—Flūmēn magnūm erat turbidūm.—Magnā sunt ōnērā captīvōrūm.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

The Germans violate treaties.—The consuls will not enrol the names.—The slaves were carrying great burdens.—The messenger was-swimming-across the river.—The boy swims-across the river.—Great burdens are carried.—The burden will be carried by the slave.—The rivers abound in fish (66, II., *a*).—The wounds are healed.—The burdens are great.—The lieutenant will not violate the treaty.—The names are enrolled by the consuls (93, II.).—The treaty is violated.—The treaty is violated by Cæsar.—The treaty will be violated, and the spoil will be given to the allies (*dat.*).—The consul enrols the names of the deserters.—The names of the deserters will be enrolled.

The wounds of the prisoners will be healed.

§ 11.

ADJECTIVES OF THE SECOND CLASS.

LESSON XVI.

Adjectives.—Second Class.—Two Endings.

(104.) ADJECTIVES of the *Second Class* have *īs* in the nom. sing. for *masc.* and *fem.* endings, and *ě* for the *neuter*. They are declined throughout like the third declension of nouns; *e. g.*, *brěvīs*, *short*.

(105.)

PARADIGM.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N. V.	brěv-īs.	brěv-īs.	brěv-ě.	brěv-ēs.	brěv-ēs.	brěv-īā.
G.	brěv-īs.	brěv-īs.	brěv-īs.	brěv-iūm.	brěv-iūm.	brěv-iūm.
D.	brěv-ī.	brěv-ī.	brěv-ī.	brěv-ībūs.	brěv-ībūs.	brěv-ībūs.
Acc.	brěv-ēm.	brěv-ēm.	brěv-ě.	brěv-ēs.	brěv-ēs.	brěv-īā.
Abl.	brěv-ī.	brěv-ī.	brěv-ī.	brěv-ībūs.	brěv-ībūs.	brěv-ībūs.

Rem. 1. Twelve adjectives* of this class take *ěr* for the ending of the nom. sing. masc. instead of *īs*; *e. g.*, *ācěr*, *ācrys*, *ācřě*; *čělěběr*, *čelěbrīs*, *čelěbrě*.

Rem. 2. The abl. has *ě* instead of *ī* in *jůvėnīs*, *a youth*; *edīlīs*, *edile*. The gen. pl. has *ūm* instead of *iūm* in *čělěr*, *swift*.

(106.)

EXERCISE.

I. Vocabulary.

Father, *pătěr*, (patr) *īs*.

Noble, *nōbīlīs*, *ě*.

Every, } *omnīs*, *ě*.

All, the whole, }

Sweet, *dulcīs*, *ě*.

To demand, *poscěrě*.

Soldier, *mīlēs*, (milit) *īs* (m.).

Study, zeal, *stūdīum*, *ī*.

Kind, *bėnignīs*, *a. um*.

Dog, *cānīs*, (cān) *īs* (c., 25, IV.).

To endure, *tōlěrārě*.

Hostage, *ōbsēs*, (ōbsīd) *īs* (c., 25, IV.).

Uncertain, *incertūs*, *ā, ūm*.

Useful, *ūtīlīs*, *ě*.

Iron, *ferrūm*, *ī*.

Gold, *aurūm*, *ī*.

Severe, heavy, *grāvīs*, *ě*.

Life, *vītā*, *æ* (f.).

Brave, *fortīs*, *ě*.

Patiently, *pătientěr* (adv.).

Wolf, *lŭpūs*, *ī* (m.).

Like, *sīmīlīs*, *ě*.

A chief, princeps, (princĭp) *īs* (c., 25, IV.).

* *Ācěr*, *sharp*.

Ālēcěr, *cheerful*.

Campeštěr, *of the plain*.

Cělěběr, *famous*.

Cělěr, *swift*.

Ėquestěr, *equestrian*.

Pālustěr, *marshy*.

Pědestěr, *pedestrian*.

Sālŭběr, *salubrious*.

Sylvestěr, *woody*.

Terrestěr, *terrestrial*.

Vŏlŭcěr, *swift*.

II. *Examples.*

(a) *The father is kind to his son.* | Pătēr filiō bēnignūs est.

(b) *The dog is like (to) the wolf.* | Cānis lūpō sīmīlis est.

(c) *Rule of Syntax.*—The dative case is used with all adjectives that are followed by the words *to* or *for* in English: hence with adjectives expressing (a) *advantage* or *disadvantage*, (b) *likeness* or *unlikeness*.

[Adjectives of *likeness* or *unlikeness* also take the gen.]

III. *Translate into English.*

Militēs omnēs pēriculū timent.—Impērātōr fortis militēs omnēs convocat.—Vitā brevīs est.—Vitā est brevīs et incertā.—Vinū est dulcē.—Princīpēs fortēs oppidā omniā muniēbant.—Cāsār obsidēs nobilēs poscit.—Tempūs brevē est.—Nōn omnēs militēs sunt fortēs.—Ferrū utilē est.—Aurū et ferrū sunt utilia hominibus (106, II., c).—Miles vulnūs gravē patienter tolerat.—Consul fortis periculū nōn timēbit.—Ferrū utilē hominibus (106, II., c) est.—Militēs fortēs vulnerā graviā patienter tolerābunt.—Studiū est pueris (106, II., c) utilē.—Impērātōr militibus (106, II., c) benignus erit.—Canis lupō similis est.

IV. *Translate into Latin.*

The noble queen comes to the city.—The brave lieutenant endures patiently (his) severe wound.—All the soldiers hasten to the camp.—The brave chiefs will fortify many towns.—The noble hostages come to Cæsar (63, I., § 4).—The time is uncertain.—Soldiers are not always useful.—Towns are useful for men (106, II., c).—Noble ambassadors are sent.—Many hostages are demanded by the consuls (93, II.).—All the soldiers will be called together.—Not all chiefs are noble.—Wine is sweet and iron is useful.—The dangers are not feared by the brave soldiers (93, II.).—The brave lieutenant praises the noble chief.—Dogs are like wolves (106, II.).—The study of *letters* (litterarū) is useful for all (106, II.).—The soldiers are kind to the prisoners (106, II.).—Gold is heavy.—Iron is not like gold (106, II.).

Even in these, the ending *is* is sometimes found in nom. sing. masc.; e. g., *tumultus equestris*, Liv., xxix., 35.

§ 12.

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD CLASS.

LESSON XVII.

Adjectives.—Third Class.—One Ending.

(107.) ADJECTIVES of the *Third Class* have but one ending in the nominative for all three genders; *e. g.*, *fēlīx* (m., f., n.), *happy*; *audāx* (m., f., n.), *bold*; *paupēr* (m., f., n.), *poor*.

(108.) PARADIGM.—*Fēlīx*, *happy*.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N. V.	fēlīx.	fēlīx.	fēlīx.	fēlīc-ēs.	fēlīc-ēs.	fēlīc-īā.
G.	fēlīc-īs.	fēlīc-īs.	fēlīc-īs.	fēlīc-īūm.	fēlīc-īūm.	fēlīc-īūm.
D.	fēlīc-ī.	fēlīc-ī.	fēlīc-ī.	fēlīc-ībūs.	fēlīc-ībūs.	fēlīc-ībūs.
Acc.	fēlīc-ēm.	fēlīc-ēm.	fēlīx.	fēlīc-ēs.	fēlīc-ēs.	fēlīc-īā.
Abl.	fēlīc-ī.	fēlīc-ī.	fēlīc-ī.	fēlīc-ībūs.	fēlīc-ībūs.	fēlīc-ībūs.

[*Rem. 1.* The abl. has *ē* instead of *ī* (*a*) in *paupēr*, *poor*; *sēnex*, *old* (gen. *sēnīs*); *princeps*, *chief*; *compos*, *possessed of*, and most ending in *ēs*; *e. g.*, *hospēs*, *guest*; *pubēs*, *grown up*, &c. Also in the compounds of *corpūs*, *cōlōr*, and *pēs*.

(*b*) Participles in *ns* have, as participles, *ē*, but as *adjectives* *ī*; *e. g.*, *flōrentē rōsā*, *the rose blooming*; *flōrentī rōsā*, *in a blooming rose*.

(*c*) Adjectives used as nouns take *ē*; *e. g.*, *sāpiens*, *a wise man*, abl. *sāpientē*.

Rem. 2. The gen. pl. takes *ūm* instead of *īūm* in *vētūs*, *old* (*vētērūm*); *consors*, *partaking of*; *dēgēnēr*, *degenerate*; *dīvēs*, *rich*; *īnops*, *helpless*; *mēmōr*, *mindful*; *immēmōr*, *unmindful*; *supplex*, *suppliant*; *ūbēr*, *rich*; *vīgīl*, *watching*. Also in all which take *ē* in the abl.; *e. g.*, *princeps*, *prīncipē*, *prīncipūm*.]

(109.)

EXERCISE.

I. Vocabulary.

War, bellūm, ī.*Fierce*, ātrōx, (ātrōc) īs (107).*To wage, carry on*, gērērē.*Horse-soldier*, ēquēs, (ēquīt) īs (m.).*Tenacious*, tēnax, (tēnāc) īs (107).*Wise*, sāpiens, (sāpient) īs (107).*Death*, mors, (mort) īs (f.).*To renew*, rēdintēgrārē.*Rich*, divēs, (divīt) īs (107).*To terrify*, terrērē.*Stag*, cervūs, ī.*Powerful*, pōtens, (pōtent) īs (107).*Scout, explorator*, īs (m.).*To kill*, occīdērē.*Battle*, praeliūm, ī.*And*, ēt (conj.).*Swift*, vēlox, (vēlōc) īs.*Horse*, ēquus, ī.*Citizen*, civīs, (civ) īs (c., 25, IV.).

II. Example.

The inhabitants carry on a fierce war. | Incōlæ bellūm ātrox gērunt.
[Refer to 78, II., a.]

III. Translate into English.

Incōlæ bellā magnā ēt ātrōciā gērunt.—Nuntiūs vēlox ād castrā vēnit.—Equitēs vēlōcēs ād sylvā festinant.—Vir sāpiens mortēm nōn timēt.—Discipulūs mēmōriām tenācēm hābēt.—Mēmōriā īn puērīs est tēnax.—Impērātōr nuntiūm vēlōcēm mittēt.—Principēs fortēs praeliūm ātrox redintegrābunt.—Cervūs vēlox est.—Equūs vēlox currīt.—Cānēs sunt vēlōcēs.—Sāpiens (82, I., R.) nōn sempēr divēs est.—Divītēs nōn sempēr beātī sunt.—Princeps pōtens lēgātōs mittit.—Principēs pōtentēs captīvōs occīdunt.—Impērātōr principēs omnēs convōcāt.

IV. Translate into Latin.

The thick woods terrify the swift messenger.—The fierce battle terrifies all the inhabitants.—The noble general was praising the swift messenger.—The illustrious consul sends ambassadors to (63, I., 13) the powerful chief.—The powerful chief will kill all the prisoners.—Rich (men) are not always wise.—The wise (man) does not fear the fierce battle.—The soldiers praise the rich citizen.—The memory in boys is always tenacious.—Dogs and horses are swift.—The consul will not renew the fierce battle.—The illustrious general will recall the swift horse-soldiers.—Rich citizens fear fierce wars.—The fierce battles were terrifying all the hostages.—The wise general calls-together all the ambassadors.—The fierce battle will be renewed.—All the prisoners will be killed by the powerful chiefs (93, II.).—The swift messengers are frightened.—Great wars are carried on.—Rich citizens are killed.

§ 13.

FOURTH DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

LESSON XVIII.

Nouns.—Fourth Declension.

(110.) THE *Fourth Declension* comprises all nouns whose gen. sing. ends in ūs (*long*). The nom. ending for *masculines* is ūs, and for *neuters* ū; *e. g.*, fruct-ūs, *fruit*, masc.; corn-ū, *horn*, neut.

(111.) The case-endings are as follows:

Sing.	Masc.	Neut.	Plur.	Masc.	Neut.
N. and V.	ūs.	ū.	N. and V.	ūs.	ūā.
Gen.	ūs.	ūs or ū.	Gen.	ūūm.	ūūm.
Dat.	ūī.	ū.	Dat.	ībūs.	ībūs.
Acc.	ūm.	ū.	Acc.	ūs.	ūā.
Abl.	ū.	ū.	Abl.	ībūs.	ībūs.

(112.) By adding these endings to the stems *fruct-* and *corn-*, we get the

PARADIGM.*

	Sing., fruit (m.).	Plur., fruit.		Sing., horn (n.).	Plur., horns.
N. and V.	fruct-ūs.	fruct-ūs.	N., A., V.	corn-ū.	corn-ūā.
Gen.	fruct-ūs.	fruct-ūūm.	Gen.	corn-ūs, or ū.	corn-ūūm.
Dat.	fruct-ūī.	fruct-ībūs.	Dat., Abl.	corn-ū.	corn-ībūs.
Acc.	fruct-ūm.	fruct-ūs.			
Abl.	fruct-ū.	fruct-ībūs.			

[Rem. 1. The following take ūbūs in dat. and abl. plur. instead of ībūs, viz., ācūs (f.), *needle*; arcūs (m.), *bow*; artūs (m.), *joint*; fīcūs (f.), *fig-tree*; lācūs (m.), *lake*; partūs (m.), *birth*; portūs (m.), *harbor*; quercūs (f.), *oak*; spēcūs (m.), *den*; tribūs (f.), *tribe*; pēcū (n.), *cattle*; vērū (n.), *a spit*.†]

2. The *feminine* nouns of this declension are, ācūs, *needle*; anūs,

* The fourth declension is only a contracted form of the third: thus,

N. fruct-us.
G. fruct-ūis, contr. fructūs.
D. fruct-ūī.
Acc. fruct-ūim, contr. fructūm, &c.

† The following verses embrace these:

Arcūs, ācūs, portūs, vērū,
Fīcūs, lācūs, artūs,
Spēcūs, quercūs; also, pēcū,
Tribūs too, and partūs.

old woman; dōmūs, *house*; ficūs, *fig*; mănūs, *hand*; nūrūs, *daughter-in-law*; porticūs, *gallery*; tribūs, *tribe*; quercūs, *oak*. Also, Īdūs, -ūm (used only in plural), *the Ides*.*

3. Dōmūs (f.), *house*, is thus declined:

	N., V.	G.	D.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	dōm-ūs.	-ūs. } -ī.	-uī.	-ūm.	-ō.
Plur.	dōm-ūs.	-uūm. } -ōrum.	-ībūs.	-ōs, } -ūs (rarely).	-ībūs.

4. The gen. dōmī is used only in the sense of *at home*; e. g., dōmī mēæ, *at my home, at my house*.

(113.) EXERCISE.

I. Vocabulary.

<i>To lead over, or across</i> , transdūcērē.	<i>Grief</i> , luctūs, ūst (m.).
<i>Approach</i> , adventūs, ūs (m.).	<i>To lay aside</i> , depōnērē.
<i>To await</i> , expectārē.	<i>Sadness</i> , mœrōr, ōrist (m.).
<i>Singing</i> , cantūs, ūs (m.).	<i>Tempest</i> , prœcellā, æ.
<i>Fruit</i> , fructūs, ūs (m.).	<i>To raise</i> , tollērē.
<i>To adorn</i> , ornārē.	<i>Wave</i> , fluctūs, ūs (m.).
<i>Four</i> , quattuor (indeclin.).	<i>Star</i> , sīdūs, (sīdēr) īs (n.) (102).
<i>To build</i> , ædificārē.	<i>Shore</i> , littūs, (littōr) īs (n.) (102).
<i>Horn</i> , cornū, ūs (n.).	<i>Wind</i> , ventūs, ī (m.).
<i>Army</i> , exercītūs, ūs (m.).	<i>Roll</i> , volvērē.
<i>Harbour</i> , portūs, ūs (m.).	<i>Boundary</i> , fīnīs, (fīn) īs (m.).
<i>Enemy</i> , hostīs, (host) īs (c., 25, IV.).	<i>The Rhine</i> , Rhēnūs, ī.
<i>Bird</i> , āvis, (āv) īs (f.).	<i>Ship</i> , nāvīs, (nāv) īs (f.).

II. Examples.

(a) <i>The Helvetians lead part of their forces across the Rhine.</i>	Helvētīi partēm cōpiārūm Rhēnūm transdūcunt.
(b) <i>Cæsar leads a great army of Germans across the Rhine.</i>	Cæsār magnūm Germānōrūm exercītūm trans Rhēnūm transdūcīt.

Rule of Syntax.—(a) Verbs compounded with the preposition *trans* are generally followed by *two accusatives*; e. g., *partem* and *Rhenum* in (a).

(b) But sometimes the preposition is repeated; e. g., *trans* in (b).

III. Translate into English.

Helvētīi Cæsārīs (38, b) adventūm expectābant.—Adventū


* Ācūs, mănūs, tribūs, dōmūs, porticūs, and Īdūs. The rest are fem. by the general rule (25, II.).

† Mœrōr = *silent grief*; luctūs = *mourning*.

(abl., 55, *a*) Cæsāris hostēs terrentūr.—Āvis puellām cantū (55, *a*) dēlectāt.—Fructūs arbōrēs (*acc. pl.*) ornant.—Fructūs terræ āgrīcōlām dēlectant.—Pātēr dōmūs (*acc. pl.*) quāttūōr ædificābit.—Nāvēs in portū sunt.—Rēginā luctūm dēpōnīt.—Sāpientēs luctūm ēt mārōrēm dēpōnunt.—Prōcellā *magnōs* fluctūs (*acc. pl.*) tollēbāt.—Prōcellā fluctūs (*acc. pl.*) ād sīdērā tollīt.—Puēr taurūm cornū (abl., 55, *a*) tēnēt.—Cornuā cervī magnā sunt.—Fluctūs magnī ventīs (55, *a*) voluntūr.—Lēgātūs exercitūm dūcīt.—Lēgātūs āb Æduīs (from the Æduans; *i. e.*, their country) exercitūm dūcīt.—Āgrīcōlā taurūm cornībūs (55, *a*) tēnēbāt.—Adventūs patrīs puellām dēlectābit.—Cæsār exercitūm flūmēn transdūcīt (113, II., *a*).—Lēgātūs pēr finēs Helvētiōrūm exercitūm dūcēt.—Ariōvistūs Germānōs trans Rhēnūm transdūcīt (113, II., *b*).

Rem. *Home* is translated by dōmūm, the *acc.* of domus; thus, *The sailor leads the boy home*—Nautā puērūm dōmūm dūcīt.

IV. *Translate into Latin.*

My father will build four houses.—The tempest is rolling great waves to the shores (63, I., )—Vast waves are raised to the stars by tempests.—The turbid sea is rolling vast waves to the shores.—The farmer leads the girls home from (*ab*) the city.—Cæsar will lead the army over the turbid river.—Cassius leads the army through the boundaries of the Æduans and Helvetians.—The Helvetians await the coming of Cæsar.—The boy will hold the bull by the horns (55, *a*).—The farmer is delighted by the fruits (55, *a*) of the earth.—The king lays aside his griefs and sadness.—The singing of the birds (*āviūm*) will delight the soldiers.—The trees are adorned by many fruits.—There are many large ships in the harbour.—The winds raise the great waves to the stars.—The lieutenant was leading the army of the Æduans across the Rhine. (Repeat *trans* (113, II., *b*)).—The horns of bulls are large.—The queen will lay aside her grief and sadness.—The master sends his slaves home

FIFTH DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

LESSON XIX.

Nouns.—Fifth Declension.

(114.) THE *Fifth Declension* comprises all nouns whose *gen. ending* is *ĕi*. The *nom. ending* is *ĕs*.

(115.) There are but few nouns of this declension, and they are all *feminine* except *diĕs*, *day*, and *meridiĕs*, *mid-day*; and even *diĕs* is *fem.* in the *sing.* when it means a *fixed day*.

(116.) The case-endings are as follows:

	N. V.	G.	D.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	ĕs.	ĕi.	ĕi.	ĕm.	ĕ.
Plur.	ĕs.	ĕrŭm.	ĕbŭs.	ĕs.	ĕbŭs.

Rem. In the *gen.* and *dat.* the *e* in *ei* is *long* when a vowel stands before it; *e. g.*, *dī-ĕi*: *short* when a consonant stands before it; *e. g.*, *fīd-ĕi*.

(117.) By adding the endings to the stems *r-* and *dī-*, we get the

PARADIGMS.

Thing (f.).	N. V.	G.	D.	Acc.	Abl.
Singular.	r-ĕs.	r-ĕi.	r-ĕi.	r-ĕm.	r-ĕ.
Plural.	r-ĕs.	r-ĕrŭm.	r-ĕbŭs.	r-ĕs.	r-ĕbus.
Day (m.).					
Singular.	dī-ĕs.	dī-ĕi.	dī-ĕi.	dī-ĕm.	dī-ĕ.
Plural.	dī-ĕs.	dī-ĕrŭm.	dī-ĕbŭs.	dī-ĕs.	dī-ĕbŭs.

Rem. Only *rĕs*, *diĕs*, *spĕciĕs*, have the *plur.* complete; the *gen.*, *dat.*, and *abl. plur.* are wanting in all others.

(118.) EXERCISE.

I. Vocabulary.

Hope, *spĕs*, *ĕi*.

Day, *dīĕs*, *ĕi* (m.).

To appoint, *constitŭĕrĕ*.

To lead out, *ĕdŭcĕrĕ*.

To lead back, *rĕdŭcĕrĕ*.

Line of battle, *āctĕs*, *ĕi*.

To draw up, *instrŭĕrĕ*.

About, *cīrcītĕr* (*prep.* with *acc.*).

About mid-day, *cīrcītĕr meridiĕm*.

Victory, *victōriā*, *ĕ.*

Mid-day, *mĕridiĕs*, *ĕi* (m.).

Sixth, *sextŭs*, *ā*, *ŭm*.

Reward, *prāmiŭm*, *i*.

Sun, *sōl*, (*sōl*) *is* (m.).

Setting, *occāsŭs*, *ŭs*.

Seventh, *septīmŭs*, *ā*, *ŭm*.

Out of, *ĕ* or *ex* (*prep.* with *ablative*).

Faith, *promise*, *fīdĕs*, *ĕi*.

The next, *postĕrŭs*, *ā*, *ŭm*

To fight, *pugnārĕ*.

II. *Examples.*

- (a) *Cæsar draws up the line of battle.* | Cæsär äciëm instrüit.
 (b) *The next day they move the camp.* | Postëro dië casträ mövent.
 (c) *Rule of Syntax.*—The point of time at which any thing occurs is expressed by the ablative; *e. g.*, in (b) *postero die.*—*At sun-set* = sölis occäsü.

III. *Translate into English.*

Spës victoriæ milîtës dëlectät.—Milîtës spë (93, II., R.) vic toriæ dëlectantür.—Diës vënît.—Cæsär diëm constitüit.—Cæsär diëm cüm lëgätis constitüit.—Impërätör fortis exercitüm ëducît, ët äciëm instrüit.—Circitër mëridiëm pignant.—Cæsär, circitër mëridiëm, exercitüm in casträ rëducît.—Sextö dië (118, II., c) Cæsär exercitüm ex castris ëducît.—Spës præmiörüm püërös dëlectät.—Püëri spë præmiörüm dëlectantur.—Sölis occäsü Helvëtiï casträ mövëbant.—Septimö dië Belgæ cöpiäs omnës ex castris ëducëbant.—Sölis occäsü Ariovistüs äciëm instrüit.—Circitër mëridiëm proliüm rëdintëgräbunt.—Consül clärüs diëm cüm lëgätis constitüit.—Principës nobilës fidëm viölant.

IV. *Translate into Latin.*

The hope of victory delights the noble chiefs.—The consul about mid-day leads out the army and renews the fierce battle.—The powerful chiefs, at the-setting of-the-sun (118, II., c), kill all the prisoners.—The day will come.—The consul, at the setting of the sun, will renew the great battle.—At the setting of the sun the great battle will be renewed.—On the sixth day all the forces will be led back to the camp.—The Germans appoint a day with Cæsar.—The next day the Germans move (their) camp.—Ariovistus, on the next day, draws out the line of battle.—Cæsar appoints the mid-day with the ambassadors.—About mid-day the messengers come.—About mid-day the consul will come.—Cæsar will not violate (his) promise.

§ 15.

PRONOUNS. (XX.—XXXI.)

LESSON XX.

Pronouns.—Substantive-Personal and Adjective-Personal.—Verbs, First Person.

(119.) THE three pronouns *ĕgō, I; tū, thou; suī, of himself, herself, itself*, are called *Substantive*, because they are used as substantives, not as adjectives; and *Personal*, because they express the person *speaking*, the person *spoken to*, and the person *spoken of*.

(120.) The *Substantive-Personal* Pronoun of the *first* person is thus declined:

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	ĕgō, <i>I.</i>	mēī, <i>of me.</i>	mīhī, <i>to me.</i>	mē, <i>me.</i>	mē, <i>by me, &c.</i>
Plur.	nōs, <i>we.</i>	nostrī, } <i>of us.</i> nostrūm, }	nōbīs, <i>to us.</i>	nōs, <i>us.</i>	nōbīs, <i>by us, &c.</i>

(121.) Derived from the *Substantive-Personal* Pronouns are the *Adjective-Personal* or *Possessive* Pronouns; called *Adjective*, because they agree with nouns; and *Possessive*, because they express possession (*my, thy, his, &c.*).

(122.) The *Adjective-Personal* Pronouns of the *first* person are declined, in both sing. and plur., like adjectives of the *First Class* (76, 77, a). They are,

(a)	Derived from mēī,	N. mēūs, mēā, mēūm, <i>my, mine.</i>
		G. mēī, mēæ, mēī, <i>of my</i> (voc. masc. mī). &c. &c. (like bōnūs, 76.)
(b)	" from nostrī,	N. nostrēr, nostrā, nostrum, <i>our, ours.</i>
		G. nostrī, nostræ, nostrī, <i>of our.</i> &c. &c. (like pulchēr, 77, a).

(123.) The following forms of *Verbs in the first person* must now be learned:

FIRST CONJUGATION : FIRST PERSON ENDINGS.

INFIN. ACT., <i>ārē</i> .		INFIN. PASS., <i>ārī</i> .				
Indic. present.		Imperfect.		Future.		
	Act.	Pass.	Act.	Pass.	Act.	Pass.
1st Sing.	ō,	ōr.	ābām.	ābār.	ābō.	ābōr.
1st Plur.	āmūs.	āmūr.	ābāmūs.	ābāmūr.	ābīmūs.	ābīmūr.

(124.) Thus, from the stem *ām*, of *ām-ārē*, to love, we have :

INFIN. ACT., <i>āmārē</i> , to love.				INFIN. PASS., <i>āmārī</i> , to be loved.			
Indic. Pres.		Imperfect.		Future.			
Act.	Pass.	Act.	Pass.	Act.	Pass.	Act.	Pass.
ām-ō,	ām-ōr,	ām-ābām,	ām-ābār,	ām-ābō,	ām-ābōr,	ām-ābīmūs,	ām-ābīmūr,
<i>I love.</i>	<i>I am loved.</i>	<i>I was loving.</i>	<i>I was loved.</i>	<i>I shall love.</i>	<i>I shall be loved.</i>		
ām-āmūs,	ām-āmūr,	ām-ābāmūs,	ām-ābāmūr,	ām-ābīmūs,	ām-ābīmūr,		
<i>we love.</i>	<i>we are loved.</i>	<i>we were loving.</i>	<i>we were loved.</i>	<i>we shall love.</i>	<i>we shall be loved.</i>		

[*Rem.* The student will learn the *passive* endings readily by observing that *r* is the passive characteristic, which is added to the active; the consonant ending of the active, where it has one, being dropped.]

(125.) EXERCISE.

I. Vocabulary.

Book, *libēr*, *brī* (m.). (64).

Friend, *āmīcūs*, *ī* (m.).

Brother, *frātēr*, (fratr) *īs* (m.).

Cicero, *Cīcērō*, (*Cīcērōn*) *īs* (m.).

Sister, *sōrōr*, (*sōrōr*) *īs* (f.).

With (i. e., at one's house), *āpūd* (prep. acc.).

Fault, *culpā*, *æ*.

Yesterday, *hērī* (adv.).

All my (possessions), *omniā meā* (neut. pl.).

Five, *quīnquē*.

Sharply, *ācrītēr*.

To-morrow, *crās* (adv.).

Very much, greatly, *valdē* (adv.).

To blame, *vītūpērārē*.

To sing, *cantārē*.

Three, *trēs*, *triā* (adj. of Class II.).

II. Examples.

(a) *I have a book.*

Est mīhī libēr (i. e., there is a book to me).

Rule of Syntax.—The dative case is used with *est* or *sunt*, to denote the person who *has* or *possesses* something.*

The thing possessed is nom. to *est* or *sunt*.

(b) *The boy was walking with me in the garden yesterday.*

Puēr mēcūm īn hortō hērī ambūlābāt.

Rule of Position.—The preposition *cūm* is suffixed to the personal pronouns; e. g., *mēcūm*, with me; *nōbiscūm*, with us, instead of *cūm mē*, *cūm nōbīs*.

[Recollect that the personal and possessive pronouns are not expressed in Latin, unless emphasis or perspicuity demands it.]

* This is called the *Dative of Possession*, and should always be referred to as such by the pupil.

III. *Translate into English.*

Ēgō cantō, amicūs audit.—*Ēgō ēt frātēr ambulāmūs.**—*Ēgō ēt filiūs meūs festināmūs.*—*Sunt mihī trēs librī* (125, II., *a*).—*Sunt mihī quattuor equī ēt quinquē cānēs.*—*Īn hortō ambulābām.*—*Ā bōnīs* (82, I., R.) *āmābōr.*—*Cicērō ā mē laudātūr.*—*Hostēs nōbiscūm* (125, II., *b*) *ācrītēr pugnant.*—*Hērī īn āgrīs ambulābāmūs.*—*Pātēr ād nōs nuntiūm mittēt.*—*Culpā nostrā est.*—*Crās īn hortō cānābīmūs.*—*Dēlectābāmūr.*—*Puērī īn hortō nōbiscūm ambulābunt.*—*Littērārūm studiūm†* (38, *b*) *mihī* (106, II.) *ūtīlē ērit.*—*Ā māgistrō laudābār.*—*Omniā meā mēcūm portō.*—*Ēgō ā frātrē valdē āmōr.*—*Nōs laudāmūr, puellāe vītūperantūr.*—*Nōs ā māgistrō verbērābīmūr.*

IV. *Translate into Latin.*

We praise the beautiful girl.—We have (125, II., *a*) four large cups.—I have (= there are to me) four sons and three daughters (125, II., *a*).—We shall praise Cæsar's brave soldiers.—I walk, my friend rides.—I and my sister will ride.*—I and my brother will walk* in the king's garden.‡—I and my father will sup* in the garden to-morrow.—We shall always praise the wise and good.—The works of Cicero will be praised by us (93, II., *b*), the works of Cæsar by the soldiers.—The fault is mine.—We have many large cups (125, II., *a*).—I have three beautiful sisters.—I have four brothers.—My father will walk with me in Cæsar's garden (*Cæsārīs īn hortō*).‡—The study of literature is useful to us (106, II.).—To-day we shall sup with (apud) Crassus.

LESSON XXI.

Pronouns, Personal and Possessive, continued.—Verbs, First Person, continued.

(126.) THE following are some of the *endings* for the *first* person in verbs of the

* If a predicate have two or more nominatives, connected by a conjunction, it takes generally the plural number; and if the nominatives be of different persons, the verb takes the first person rather than the second, the second rather than the third.

† *Littērārūm studiūm* = the pursuit (or study) of literature (letters).

‡ In all such cases, put the prep. *between* the genitive and the noun governed by the prep.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

	STEM.	SINGULAR ENDINGS.		PLURAL ENDINGS.	
		Active.	Passive.	Active.	Passive.
Present.	mōn-	eō.	eōr.	ēmūs.	ēmūr.
Imperfect.	mōn-	ēbām.	ēbār.	ēbāmūs.	ēbāmūr.
Future.	mōn-	ēbō.	ēbōr.	ēbīmūs.	ēbīmūr.

[*Rem.* The student will learn these forms readily by observing that they differ chiefly from those of the *first* conjugation in having *ē* before the last syllable instead of *ā*. By adding the endings, as above given, to the stem *mōn-*, which stands at the left hand, he will form the paradigm of *mōnērē*, to *advise*.]

(127.) The following are some of the *endings* for the *first* person in the third and fourth conjugations.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

	STEM.	SINGULAR ENDINGS.		PLURAL ENDINGS.	
		Active.	Passive.	Active.	Passive.
Present.	rĕg-	ō.	ōr.	īmūs.	īmūr.
Imperfect.	rĕg-	ēbām.	ēbār.	ēbāmūs.	ēbāmūr.
Future.	rĕg-	ām.	ār.	ēmūs.	ēmūr.

[*Rem.* Compare these with the endings of the 2d conj., and observe that,

1. In the *pres.* *e* is dropped in the sing., and *ī* assumed in the plur.
2. The imperfect is precisely the same.
3. But the *future* is a new form.
4. By adding the endings to the stem placed at the left, you form the paradigm of *rĕgērē*, to *rule*.]

(128.) FOURTH CONJUGATION.

	STEM.	SINGULAR ENDINGS.		PLURAL ENDINGS.	
		Active.	Passive.	Active.	Passive.
Present.	aud-	iō.	iōr.	īmūs.	īmūr.
Imperfect.	aud-	iēbām.	iēbār.	iēbāmūs.	iēbāmūr.
Future.	aud-	iām.	iār.	iēmūs.	iēmūr.

[*Rem.* Observe that the endings of the 4th conj. differ from those of the 3d simply by prefixing the letter *i*. In the 1st plur. the *i* prefixed combines with that of the endings *īmūs*, *īmūr*, and forms *īmūs*, *īmūr*.]

(129.) EXERCISE.

I. Vocabulary.

Fierce, fērōx, (fērōc) is (107).
Nothing, nīhīl (neut. indecl.).
To be well, vālērē.
To arrange, dispōnērē.

Wicked, imprōbūs, ā, ūm.
Garrison, præsīdīum, ī.
Latin, Lātīnūs, ā, ūm.
Antony, Antōnīūs, ī.

II. Example.

I have nothing to do with | Nīhīl est mīhī cūm Antōniō
Antony (125, II., a). | (i. e., there is nothing to me
with Antony).

III. Translate into English.

2d Conjugation.—Ēgō ēt frātēr vālēmūs (125, III.*).—Ā māgistrō dōcēbimūr.—Linguām Lātīnām dōceō.—Ā patr^{is} mōneōr.—Ā māgistrō bōnō dōcēmūr.—Āb hostē tīmēbār.—Hostiūm adventūm nōn tīmēbō. *3d Conjugation.*—Rēgēbāmūr.—Præsidiā dispōnēbāmūs.—Ā Deō rēgimūr.—Ēgō exercitūm dūcām.—Ā filiō meō rēlinquār.—Lūpōs fērōcēs occidimūs. *4th Conjugation.*—Castellā mūniēmūs.—Āviūm cantūm audimūs.—Crās ad urbem vēniām.—Nihil est mihī cūm imprōbis.—Nihil est nobis cūm hostibūs.

IV. Translate into Latin.

2d Conjugation.—I and my son are well (125, III.*).—We shall see the brave soldiers.—I am taught by good masters.—We were fearing the approach of the enemy.—I was teaching the Latin language.—We shall be feared by the enemy.—We shall be advised by our father. *3d Conjugation.*—We were led by a brave general.—I was killing three wolves.—We are ruled by a good king.—We shall arrange the garrisons.—I shall bring (dūcērē) my daughter from (ab) the city.—We shall lead the forces of the Germans. *4th Conjugation.*—We were heard by the master.—We shall sleep in the little town (89, II.).—We shall come to the town to-morrow.—I shall be heard by the girls.—We were fortifying the towns.—We have nothing to do with the foolish (129, II.).—I have nothing to do with Cæsar.

LESSON XXII.

Pronouns.—Substantive-Personal and Adjective-Personal.—Verbs, Second Person.

(130.) THE Substantive-Personal Pronoun of the second person is thus declined :

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Voc.	Abl.
Sing.	tū, thou.	tuī, of thee.	tibi, to thee.	tē, thee.	tū, thou.	tē, by.
Plur.	vōs, you.	vestrī, } of vestrūm, } you.	vōbis, to you.	vōs, you.	vōs, you.	vōbis, by.

(131.) The following are some of the *endings* of the second person of verbs of the

FIRST CONJUGATION.

	STEM.	SINGULAR ENDINGS.		PLURAL ENDINGS.	
		Act.	Pass.	Act.	Pass.
Pres.	am-	ās.	āris.	ātis.	āminī.
Imp.	am-	ābās.	ābāris.	ābātis.	ābāminī.
Fut.	am-	ābīs.	ābērīs.	ābītis.	ābīmīnī.

(132.)

EXERCISE.

I. *Vocabulary.**Yesterday*, hērī. (adv.).*To wound*, vulnerārē.*To-day*, hōdiē (adv.).*To fight*, pugnārē.II. *Translate into English.*

Crās mēcūm cœnābīs.—Tū mē āmās, ēgō tē āmō.—Vōs vōbiscūm pugnātīs.—Tū cantās, nōs audīmūs.—In hortō ambūlābātīs.—Tū ā pātrē valdē āmārīs.—Vōs vitūpērāminī, nōs laudāmūr.—Nihil est tibi cūm Cæsārē.—Crās vōbiscūm cœnābō.—Nōs laudābīmūr, vōs vitūpērābīmīnī.—Nihil vōbīs est cūm bōnīs.—Hērī ambūlābātīs.—Hōdiē pugnābītīs.—Laudābāminī.—Vulnerābīmīnī.—Vōcātīs.—Vōcāminī.—Āmātīs.—Ānāmīnī.—Cantābātīs.—Vōcābāminī.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

To-day ye were supping with us (125, II., b).—Ye love us, we love you.—Ye were singing, we were hearing.—Ye have nothing to do with the king (129, II.).—Thou wast greatly loved by Cæsar.—Ye shall be praised by our master.—Ye shall be blamed by the good (82, I., R.).—Ye are called by the messenger.—Thou fightest with thyself* (125, II., b).—Ye shall sup with us to-morrow.—Thou wilt fight to-morrow.—Thou wast loving.—Thou wast loved.—Thou wilt blame.—Thou wilt be blamed.—Ye are praising.—Ye are praised.—Thou woundest.—Thou art wounded.

LESSON XXIII.

Pronouns, Personal and Possessive, continued.—Verbs, Second Person, Second Conjugation.

(133.) THE following are some of the *endings* for the *second* person, in verbs of the

* Tēcūm.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

	STEM.	SINGULAR ENDINGS.		PLURAL ENDINGS.	
		Act.	Pass.	Act.	Pass.
Pres.	mōn-	ēs.	ēris.	ētis.	ēmīni.
Imp.	mōn-	ēbās.	ēbāris.	ēbātis.	ēbāmīni.
Fut.	mōn-	ēbis.	ēberis.	ēbitis.	ēbimīni.

(134.) The *Adjective-Personal* (or *Possessive*) Pronouns of the Second Person are, *tūūs*, *ā*, *ūm*, *thy*; and *vestēr*, *vestrā*, *vestrūm*, *your*.

(a) Derived from *tuī*, | N. *tuūs*, *ā*, *ūm*, *thy*, *thine*.
G. *tuī*, *æ*, *ī*, *of thy*, &c.

(b) Derived from *vestrī*, | N. *vestēr*, *vestrā*, *vestrūm*, *your*.
G. *vestrī*, *vestræ*, *vestrī*, *of your*.

(135.)

EXERCISE.

I. Vocabulary.

<i>Thou art</i> , <i>ēs</i> -(2d person sing. ind. pres. of <i>esse</i>).	<i>Of, concerning</i> , <i>dē</i> (prep. abl.).
<i>Ye are</i> , <i>estis</i> (2d person pl. of do.).	<i>To laugh</i> , <i>ridērē</i> .
<i>I was</i> , <i>ērām</i> (1st imperf. do.).	<i>To rejoice</i> , <i>gaudērē</i> .
<i>Cause</i> , } <i>causā</i> .	<i>Safety</i> , <i>sālūs</i> , (<i>sālūt</i>) <i>īs</i> (f.).
<i>For the sake of</i> , } <i>causā</i> (abl.).	<i>Leader, guide</i> , <i>dux</i> , (<i>dūc</i>) <i>īs</i> (m.).
<i>To learn</i> , <i>discērē</i> .	<i>Why</i> , <i>cūr</i> (adv.).
	<i>Because, that</i> , <i>quōd</i> (conj.).

II. Examples.

(a) *Nē* is an interrogative particle used in asking questions.

It is annexed to the word to which it especially refers; *e. g.*,

(1) Do you teach the boy? | *Tū nē puērūm dōcēs?*

(2) Do you teach the boy? | *Dōcēs nē puērūm?*

(3) Do you teach the boy? | *Puērūm nē dōcēs?*

In (1) *tū* has the emphasis; in (2) *dōcēs*; and in (3) *puērūm*.

(b) Ye are warned, for the | *Vestræ sālūtis causā*
sake of your (own) safety. | *mōnēmīni*.

Rule of Position.—*Causā*, for the sake of (the abl. of *causā*, a cause), is always placed after the genitive which depends on it.

(c) I was your leader. | *Dux ēgō vestēr ērām*.

III. Translate into English.

Vidēs nē servū meūm? (135, II., 2).—*Tuæ sālūtis causā* (135, II., b) *mōnēris*.—*Cūr ridētis?*—*Vestræ sālūtis causā mōnēmīni*.—*Gaudeō quōd tū ēt pāter tuūs vālētis* (125, III., *).

—Vidēbāsnē mīlītēs?—Dē culpā tuā mōnēbāris.—Cūr rīdēbātis.—Hostiūm adventūm nōn tīmēbis.—Tuāe sālūtīs causā mōnēbēris.—Nōs discēmūs, vōs dōcēbīmīnī.—Tīmētisnē Cēsāris adventūm?—Esnē tū beātūs?—Culpā tuā est (*the fault is thine*).—Puēri in hortō vōbiscūm ambūlābant.—Māgistēr ēgō vestēr eram (135, II., c).

IV. Translate into Latin.*

[The *emphatic* words are in italics.]

Did you *see* your master?—Do you *fear* the approach of Cæsar?—Are *you* happy?—You were warned (advised) for the sake of your own safety.—Are you and your father *well*? (125, III., *).—The fault was yours.—You shall see the enemy, but (*sēd*) shall not fear (them).—I am your friend.—I was your friend.—You teach, but we learn.—You shall teach, but we shall learn.—Why do you not (*nōn*) fear the master?—You were warned of (*d e*) your fault.—Do you *see* your slaves?—Are *you* Cæsar?—Why do you fear the master?—You shall see great cities and many men.—We shall sup with you to-morrow.—You shall be warned, for the sake of your own safety.—We rejoice that you and your daughter are well (125, III., *).

LESSON XXIV.

Verbs, Second Person, Third and Fourth Conjugations.

(136.) THE following are some of the *endings* of the *second* person in verbs of the

THIRD CONJUGATION.

	STEM.	ACTIVE ENDINGS.		PASSIVE ENDINGS.	
		2d Sing.	2d Plur.	2d Sing.	2d Plur.
Pres.	reg-	īs.	ītīs.	ēris.	īmīnī.
Imper.	reg-	ēbās.	ēbātīs.	ēbāris.	ēbāmīnī.
Fut.	reg-	ēs.	ētīs.	ēris.	ēmīnī.

(137.) The following are some of the *endings* of the *second* person in verbs of the

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

	STEM.	ACTIVE ENDINGS.		PASSIVE ENDINGS.	
		2d Sing.	2d Plur.	2d Sing.	2d Plur.
Pres.	aud-	īs.	ītīs.	īris.	īmīnī.
Imp.	aud-	iēbās.	iēbātīs.	iēbāris.	iēbāmīnī.
Fut.	aud-	iēs.	iētīs.	iēris.	iēmīnī.

* When *you, your*, occur, translate them both in sing. and plur., for the sake of practice.

(138.) *Observe,*

- (a) That the present endings of the 3d and 4th conjugations are nearly alike, the vowel (i) of the *fourth* being long (ī).
 (b) That the imperfect and future endings of the *fourth* conjugation differ from those of the third by prefixing the letter i.

EXERCISE.

(139.) *Vocabulary.*

<i>Plant, plantă, æ.</i>	<i>Whence, undē (adv.).</i>
<i>To sow, to plant, sērērē.</i>	<i>Long, longē (adv.).</i>
<i>To find, invēnirē.</i>	<i>Badly, mālē.</i>
<i>Orator, ōrātōr, (ōrātōr) īs (m.).</i>	<i>To punish, pūnirē.</i>
<i>Voice, vox, (vōc) īs (f.).</i>	<i>So, tām (adv.).</i>
<i>To read, lēgērē.</i>	<i>Bird, āvis, (āv) īs (f.)</i>

(140.) *Translate into English.*

3d Conjugation.—Cūr nōn scrībīs.—Arbōrēs ēt plantās sērēbātīs.—Hōdiē ād Cæsārēm mittēris.—Cūr tām mālē scrībīs?—Ād castrā rēducēmīnī.—Lēgis-nē Cīcērōnīs ōpērā?—Scrībīs-nē ēpistolām ād Cæsārēm? *4th Conjugation.*—Undē vēnīs?—Cūr tām longē dormīs?—Māgistrūm bōnūm invēniēs.—Audīs-nē māgistrī vōcēm?—Cūr nōn vēniētīs?—Ā Cæsārē audīris.—A māgistrō pūniēmīnī.—Ōrātōrēm audiētīs.—Īn hortō dormiēbātīs.—Cantūm āviūm auditīs.

(141.) *Translate into Latin.* [Refer to 135, II.]

3d Conjugation.—Are you writing a letter?—Thou wast planting a tree to-day.—Were (you) reading the works of Cicero?—Why do you read so badly?—Are you writing a letter to the messenger?—Thou wilt read Cæsar to-day.—Thou art sent to the camp.—Thou wilt be led by the ambassadors. *4th Conjugation.*—Why do you not come?—Ye shall hear the voice of Cæsar.—Thou wilt sleep in the camp.—Ye shall be heard by the master.—Thou shalt be punished.—Ye are heard.—Thou shalt hear the singing of the birds.

LESSON XXV.

Pronouns.—Substantive-Personal and Adjective-Personal, Third Person.

(142.) THE *Substantive Pronoun* of the *third person* is thus declined:

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	—	sūi, of himself, herself, itself.	sibi, to himself, &c.	sē, himself, &c.	sē, by himself, &c.
Plur.	—	sūi, of themselves.	sibi, to themselves.	sē, themselves.	sē, by themselves, &c.

(143.) The *Adjective Pronoun* of the *third person* is declined like an adjective of the first class: thus,

Derived from s ū i, | N.^s sūis, ā, ūm, *his, hers, its, his own.*
 | G. sūi, æ, i, *of his, hers, its, &c.*

Rem. Observe that sūi is not a regular pronoun of the third person, like the English *he, she, it*, but reflexive; e. g., puēr sē laudat, *the boy praises himself*. It therefore has no *nom.* case. [The *nom.* pronouns *he, she, it*, are not often expressed in Latin; but when they *must* be, a *demonstrative* pronoun, generally *hic, is, or ille, is* employed.]

EXERCISE.

(144.) Vocabulary.

Hand, mănūs, ūs (f.) (112, 2).
To love (with esteem), dilīg-ērē.
To live, vīv-ērē.
To contend, contend-ērē.
To defend, defend-ērē.
To burn, incend-ērē.
Townsmān, oppidānūs, ī.
A Sequanian, Sēquānus, ī.

Among, intēr (prep.).
Corn, frūmentūm, ī.
From (prep.) ā or āb.†
A legion, lēgiō, (lēgiōn) īs (f).
To rule, command, impēr-ārē (with dat. of person).
To send away, } dīmītt-ērē.
dismiss, }

(145.) Examples.

(a) *Cæsar calls Divitiacus to himself.* Cæsār Dīvitiācūm ād sē vōcāt.

(b) *The girl writes the letter with her own hand.* Puellā ēpistolām mănū suā scrībīt.

[*Rem.* Sē is often doubled, for the sake of emphasis.]

(c) *Men always love themselves.* Hōmīnēs sempēr sēsē dilīgunt.

(d) *The good live not for themselves, but for all.* Bōnī nōn sibi, sēd omnībūs vīvunt.

(146.) Translate into English.

Hostēs intēr sē contendunt.—Oppidānī sē suāquē āb hostībūs dēfendēbant.—Helvētiū oppidā suā omniā incendunt.—Cæsār trēs lēgiōnēs sēcūm hābēt.—Consul lēgātōs āb sē dīmīttēt.—Sāpiens omniā suā* sēcūm portāt.—Helvētiū ēt Sēquānī ob-

* Omniā suā = *all his (property)*; the noun being understood.

† A is used before consonants only; āb before either vowels or consonants

sīdēs intēr sēsē dābant.—Bōnī sēsē nōn dīligunt.—Helvētī frūmentū omnē* sēcūm portābant.—Imprōbī sībī sempēr vīvunt.—Sāpiens sībī sempēr impērāt (147).

(147.) *Rule of Syntax.*—The *Dative* is used with some verbs signifying *to command, to rule, to obey*.

(148.) *Translate into Latin.*

Good men do not praise themselves.—The townsmen were fighting with each other (*inter se*).—The wise man always carries *all* his (property) with him.—Bad men always love themselves.—The general has three legions with him.—The townsmen will carry all their corn with them.—Bad men do not rule themselves (147).—The *Æduans* will defend themselves and their (property) from the soldiers.—*Cæsar* was dismissing the messenger from himself.—The Germans will burn their villages

LESSON XXVI.

Demonstrative Pronouns.

(149.) THE *Demonstrative* Pronouns are so called because they are used to *point out* an object; *e. g., this, that, these, those*.

(150.) *Is, that* (often used for *he, she, it* (143, R.)), is thus declined; also *idēm, the very same*, compounded of *is* and *dem*.

	Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
N.	īs, eā, id.	īī, ēē, ēā.	īdēm, eādēm, Idēm.	īīdēm, eādēm, eādēm.
G.	ējūs.	eōrūm, eārum, eōrūm.	ējūsādēm.	eōrundēm, eārundēm, eōrundēm.
D.	ēī.	īīs, or eīs.	eīdēm.	īīsdēm.
Acc.	ēūm, ēām, id.	eōs, eās, eā.	ēundēm, eandēm, idēm.	eōsdēm, eās- dēm, eādēm.
Abl.	eō, eā, eō.	īīs, or eīs.	eōdēm, eādēm, eōdēm.	īīsdēm.

(151.) The following forms of the verb *esse, to be*, must now be learned.

* Frūmentū omnē = *all their corn*.

TENSES.	SINGULAR.		
	1st.	2d.	3d.
Present.	sūm, <i>I am.</i>	ēs, <i>thou art.</i>	est, <i>he, she, &c., is.</i>
Imperfect.	ērām, <i>was.</i>	ērās.	ērāt.
Future.	ērō, <i>shall or will be.</i>	ērīs.	ērīt.
	PLURAL.		
	1st.	2d.	3d.
Present.	sūmūs, <i>we are.</i>	estīs, <i>ye are.</i>	sunt, <i>they are.</i>
Imperfect.	ērāmūs, <i>were.</i>	ērātīs.	ērant.
Future.	ērīmūs.	ērītīs.	ērunt.

EXERCISE.

(152.) Vocabulary.

To keep off, } prōhībērē.

To prevent,

To refrain, tempērārē.

Merchant, mercātōr, (mercātōr) is (m.).

Colour, cōlōr, (cōlōr) is (m.).

And, atquē (conj.).

Plato, Plāto, (Plātōn) is.

Elegant, ēlēgans, (elegant) is.

Gladly, willingly, lībentēr (adv.).

Way, journey, ĭtēr, (ĭtīnēr) is (n.).

Kingdom, regnūm, ĭ.

Flower, flōs, (flōr) is (m.).

Writer, scriptōr, (scriptōr) is (m.).

Never, nunquām (adv.).

(153.) Examples.

a) The Helvetians contend with the Germans, and keep them off from their boundaries.

Helvētīi cūm Germānīs contendunt, eōs quē suīs finībūs prōhībent.*

(b) The father calls his (own) son to him (self).

Pātēr filiūm suūm ād sē vōcāt.

(c) The father calls his daughter and her son to him (self).

Pātēr filiām suām ēt filiūm ējūs ād sē vōcāt.

☞ Observe carefully, that if *his, hers, its*, refers to the principal subject of the sentence, it is expressed by the *possessive* (suūs, ā, ūm); but if not, by the *genitive* (ējūs) of the demonstrative (īs, eā, ĭd).

(154.) Translate into English.

(1) Īs, eā, ĭd, used for *he, she, it* (personal).

Īi āb ĭnjūriā tempērant.—Īs est ĭn prōvinciā tuā.—Mercātōrēs ād eōs sāpē vēniunt.—Āb ĭīs multā (82, Ī., R.) poścīmūs.—Belgæ cūm Ēduīs contendunt, eōs quē suīs finībūs (153, a) prōhībent.

(2) Is, used as *demonstrative, this, that*; also, *idem*, as *the same*

* *Suis finibus* is in the ablative. All verbs of *separating, depriving, &c.* may take a noun in the ablative, with the direct object in the accusative.

In eō itinērē Cæsār Crassūm vidēt.—Dumnōrix, eō tempōrē (118, II., c) regnūm tēnēbāt.—Nōn sempēr idēm flōribūs (125, II., a) est cōlōr.—In eā prōvinciā sunt quattuōr lēgiōnēs.

(3) Distinction between ējūs and suūs, ā, ūm.

Cicērō est scriptōr clārūs; ējūs librōs libentēr lēgimūs.—Cæsār ad sē Dumnōrigēm atquē filiūm ējūs vōcābit.—Plātō est scriptōr elēgans; ējūs opērā libentēr lēgō.

Dux ēgō vestēr ērām.—Ēs-nē tū Sōcrātēs?—Estisnē beātī?—Cæsār dux vestēr ērāt.

(155.) *Translate into Latin.*

They were walking in the garden yesterday.—The king will give them (dat., 54) rewards.—They are in Gaul.—Merchants never come to them.—We were demanding rewards of (ab) them.—In that province Cæsar finds many deserters.—In that province there are three legions.—At that time (abl., 118, II., c) Cæsar was leading the army.—Horses (125, II., a) have not always the *same* colour.—Cæsar calls Divitiacus and his brothers to him (self).—Cæsar is an elegant writer; we read his works with pleasure.—I am your leader.—You shall be our leader.—Cæsar was our leader.—The Æduans contend with the Helvetians, and keep them off their boundaries.

LESSON XXVII.

Demonstrative Pronouns, continued.

(156.) THE Demonstrative hīc, hęc, hōc, *this*, points out an object which is present *to the speaker*, and is called demonstrative of the *first* person; e. g., *this book (of mine)*, hīc libēr.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	hīc, hęc, hōc.	hūjūs.	huic.	hunc, hanc, hōc.	hōc, hęc, hōc.
Plur.	hī, hęc, hęc.	hōrūm, hārūm, hōrūm.	hīs.	hōs, hās, hęc.	hīs.

Rem. Hīc is used also (as was stated 143, R.) for *he, she, it*; e. g., hīc dicīt, *he (this man) speaks*.


(157.) Istē, istā, istūd, *this, that*, points out an

object which is present to the *person spoken to*, and is called the demonstrative of the *second* person; e. g., *that book (of yours)*, *istĕ liber*.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	istĕ, istā, istŭd.	istiŭs.	istī.	istŭm, istām, istŭd.	istō, istā, istō.
Plur.	istī, istæ, istā.	istorŭm, ārŭm, orŭm.	istīs.	istōs, istās, istā.	istīs.

Rem. *Istĕ* is often used to denote contempt; e. g., *istĕ-ne dicĭt?*
Does *that fellow* speak?

(158.) *Illĕ, illā, illŭd*, points out an object *remote from* the speaker (*that*, the *former*, opposed to *hīc*), and is called the demonstrative of the *third* person. It is used often for the personal pronoun *he, she, it* (143, R.).

 It is declined throughout like *istĕ, istā, istŭd*.

Rem. In the genitives, *istiŭs, illiŭs, ipsiŭs*, the penult *ī* is long, contrary to the general rule (24, 1) that a vowel before another is short.

(159.) *Ipsĕ, ipsā, ipsŭm*, is properly an *adjunctive* pronoun, as it is *added* to other pronouns; e. g.,

I (and not another) *praise myself*.

Ėgō mĕ ipsĕ laudĕ.

I praise myself (and not another).

Ėgō mĕ ipsŭm laudĕ.

EXERCISE.

(160.) Vocabulary.

Opinion, *sententiā, æ*.

To please, *plācĕrĕ*.

To displease, *displīcĕrĕ*.

Soul, *ānimŭs, ī*.

Proverb, *prōverbĭŭm, ī*.

Lazy, *ignāvŭs, ā, ŭm*.

Excellent, } *prāclārŭs, ā, ŭm*.

Celebrated, }

Reason, *rātiō, (rātiōn) īs (f)*.

Animal, *ānimāl, (ānimāl) īs (neut.)*.

Pleasing, agreeable, *grātŭs, ā, ŭm*.

Base, *turpīs, ĕ (104)*.

Friend, *amicŭs, ī*.

To boast, *prādicārĕ*.

To obey, *pārĕrĕ* (with *dat.*, 147).

Old, *vĕtus, (vĕtĕr) īs (108, R., 2)*.

Song, *carmĕn, (carmĭn) īs (n)*.

Precept, *prāceptŭm, ī*.

(161.) Examples.

(a) This *opinion* *pleases me*,
that *displeases* (me).

Hæc sententiā mīhī plācĕt
illā displīcĕt.

Rule of Syntax.—Verbs of *pleasing, obeying, persuading, commanding, favouring, and the reverse*, take the *Dative* case.

- | | |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| (b) That friend of yours is
an illustrious man. | Istē tuūs āmicūs vīr clārūs
est. |
| (c) The soul itself moves it-
self. | Ānīmūs ipsē sē mōvēt. |
| (d) It is base to boast of one's
self. | Turpē est dē seipsō prae-
dicārē. |

Rule of Syntax.—The infinitive is used as the subject of a verb, and is then regarded as a noun in the neuter gender; e. g., *prædicārē* (to boast), in (d), is nom. to *est*, and *turpē* (base) agrees with it in the neuter.

(162.) *Translate into English.*

(a) *Hī puērī māgistrō pārent.*—*Hæ littēræ valdē mē dēlectant.*—*Cicērōnīs librī valdē mīhī plācent: eōs libentēr lēgō.*—*Hōc bellūm grāvē est.*—*Hīc puēr bōnus est, illē ignāvūs.*

(b) *Istā tuā filiā pulchrā est.*—*Istūd tuūm carmēn mīhī* (106, II., c) *grātūm est.*—*Præclārā sunt istā tuā præceptā.*—*Vētūs illūd prōverbiūm mīhī plācēt.*

(c) *Omne ānīmāl seipsūm diligit.*—*Impērātōr ipsē milītībūs* (147) *impērāt.*—*Ēgō mē ipsē nōn laudābām.*—*Tū teipsūm laudābis.*—*Sāpiens sibi ipsī impērāt.*

(d) *Jūcundūm est amārē.*

(163.) *Translate into Latin.*

(a) That illustrious precept was-pleasing-to (*placēbāt*) Cato.—That brave general will command the soldiers.—The soldiers willingly obey this brave general.—This precept pleases me, that displeases (me).—The works of Cæsar please me very much; I read them gladly (*libentēr*).

(b) That horse of yours is a beautiful animal.—I keep in memory (*mēmōriā teneō*) that excellent precept of yours.—Those songs of yours are pleasing (*grātā*) to me.—That letter of yours was delighting me very much.

(c) The soul rules itself (161, c) by reason (*rātiōnē*, 55, a).—The poet himself praises himself (159).—Cæsar himself will command the legions (161, c).—The soldiers willingly (*libentēr*)

obey Cæsar himself.—Do *you* (135, II., 1) praise yourself?—Wise men themselves always rule themselves (147).

(d) It is pleasant to love (one's) friends.—It is base to boast of (one's) friends.—It is agreeable to please (one's) father.

LESSON XXVIII.

(164.) THE *Relative Pronoun* (*who, which*), *qui, quæ, quod*, is thus declined :

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	qui, quæ, quod.	cujus.	cui.	quem, quæm, quod.	quô, quâ, quô.
Plur.	qui, quæ, quæ.	quorum, quârûm, quorum.	quibus.	quos, quâs, quæ.	quibus.

Rem. Quicunque, quæcunque, quodcunque (*whosoever, whichsoever, whatsoever*) is declined like *qui, quæ, quod*: *cunque* being simply annexed to the different cases.

(165.) The *Relative* commonly refers to some preceding word, which is therefore called the *antecedent*; e. g., The *man, who* lives well, is happy. Here *man* is the antecedent; *who*, the relative. The sentence in which the *relative* occurs is called the *relative* sentence; the other the *principal* or *antecedent* sentence; e. g. (above), *the man is happy*, is the principal sentence: *who lives well*, the relative sentence.

EXERCISE.

(166.) Vocabulary.

Poor, *ëgens*, (*ëgent*) *is* (108).

Enough, *sâtis* (adv.).

Nearest to, neighbours to, *proximûs*,
ă, ũm.

To dwell, *incôlêrê* (*intrans.*).

To inhabit, *incôlêrê* (*trans.*).

Blood, *sanguis*, (*sanguin*) *is* (m.).

Also, *etiam* (conj.).

Heart, *côr*, (*cord*) *is* (n.).

To despise, *contemnêrê*.

Magnanimous, *magnânimûs*, *ă, ũm*.

Honest, honourable, *honestûs*, *ă, ũm*.

Fountain, fons, (*font*) *is* (m.).

Water, *ăquă*, æ.

Winter-quarters, *hibernă, ôrûm* (pl.).

To winter, *hiêmărê*.

Arcthusa, *Arêthûsă*, æ.

To return, restore, *reddêrê*.

Virtue, *virtûs*, (*virtût*) *is* (f.).

To repel, *prôpulsărê*.

To vaunt, ostentărê.

Fame, *fămîi*, æ.

To do, to make, *făcêrê*.

One, *ûnûs*, *ă, ũm*.

(167.) Examples.

(a) The boy, who reads, learns. | Puër, qui lëgit, discit.

<i>The girl, who reads, learns.</i>	P u e ll ă, q u æ l ę ģ ĩ t, d i s c ĩ t.
(b) <i>The boy, whom we see, is handsome.</i>	P u ę r, q u ę m v ĩ d ę m ũ s, e s t p u l c h ę r.
<i>The girl, whom we see, is handsome.</i>	P u e ll ă, q u ă m v ĩ d ę m ũ s, e s t p u l c h r ă.

Rule of Syntax.—The Relative Pronoun must agree with its antecedent in *gender* and *number* (as in (a)), but its *case* is fixed by the construction of the relative sentence (e. g., in (a) *quī* is nomin. to *legīt*: in (b) *quē* is acc., governed by *vīdēmūs*).

(c) <i>I who write.</i>	E ģ ō, q u ĩ s c r ĩ b ō.
<i>We who write.</i>	N ō s, q u ĩ s c r ĩ b ĩ m ũ s.

Rule of Syntax.—The *verb* in the relative sentence agrees with the relative in *number*, but takes the *person* of the antecedent.

(d) <i>He is poor who has not enough.</i>	(1) Ę ģ e n s e s t ĩ s, q u ĩ n ō n s ă t ĩ s h ă b ę t.
	(2) ĩ s ę ģ e n s e s t, q u ĩ n ō n s ă t ĩ s h ă b ę t.
	(3) Q u ĩ n ō n s ă t ĩ s h ă b ę t, ĩ s ę ģ e n s e s t.
	(4) Q u ĩ n ō n s ă t ĩ s h ă b ę t, ę ģ e n s e s t.

Rule of Position.—The relative generally stands at the beginning of its sentence, and (1) as near to its antecedent as possible. (2) *Is* and *quī* are made emphatic when *is* begins the principal sentence and *quī* the relative sentence; (3) and still more emphatic when the relative sentence stands first. (4) The antecedent is often omitted entirely.

(168.) *Translate into English.*

(a) *Proximī sunt Germānīs, quī trans Rhēnūm incōlunt.*—*Omnē ānīmāl, quō d sanguinēm hăbēt, hăbēt ętiām cōr.*—*Cæsār, trēs lęgiōnēs, quæ ĩn prōvinciā hĭēmābant, ex hĭbernīs ędūcĭt.*—*Omniā (82, I., R.) quæ pulchră sunt, honestă sunt.*

(b) *Fēlix est rex, quē m omnēs cĭvēs āmant.*—*Īn hăc ĩnsŭlă est fons āquæ dulcis, cuĭ nōmēn est Arēthŭsă (125, II., a).*

—Ariövistūs obsidēs reddīt, quōs hābēt āb Æduīs.—Galhæ sunt partēs trēs. quārū m ūnām Belgæ incōlunt.

(d) (1) Beātī sunt iī, quōrū m vītā virtūtē (abl., 55, a) rēgītūr.—(2) Īs fortīs est, quī injūriām prōpulsāt.—(3) Quī se ostentāt, īs stultūs dicītūr (*is called a fool*).—(4) Quī famām bōnām contemnīt, virtūtēm contemnīt.—Fortīs et magnānīmūs est, nōn quī fācīt, sēd quī propulsāt injūriām.

(169.) *Translate into Latin.*

(a) The songs which we hear are pleasant (grata) to us (106, II., c).—The king who rules wisely is happy.—All animals which have blood have also hearts.—Cæsar leads across the Rhine the five legions which were wintering in the province.

(b) Happy is the teacher whom all (his) scholars love.—In that (eā) island (there) is a city whose name is (*to which the name is**, 125, II., a) Syracusē (Syrācūsæ).—In this (hāc) city there is a fountain whose name is Arethusa.—Of Britain (there) are three parts, of which (gen.) the English inhabit one.

(d) (1) Happy is he whose life is ruled by the precepts of virtue.—He is wise who diligently serves (cōlīt) the gods.—(2) They are brave who repel an injury.—(3) They who vaunt themselves are called fools.—(4) Who repels an injury, is brave and magnanimous.

LESSON XXIX.

Interrogative Pronoun.

(170.) THE *Interrogative Pronoun* is precisely like the *Relative* in form, excepting that for the nom., sing., and *masc.*, it has quīs, and for the nom. and acc., *neut.*, quīd; thus, quīs, quæ, quīd.

(171.) Quis nām, quæ nām, quid nām, express a more emphatic interrogation than the simple quis, quæ, quid, the syllable nām answering to our English “pray;” *e. g.*,

Pray, what are you doing? | Quid nām āgīs?

* Sunt, plural, because Syracūsæ is plural.

(172.) In asking questions, the different cases of *quis* can be used as substantives or as adjectives, excepting that

(1) In the nom. sing. masc., *quis* is used as a substantive.

In the nom. sing. masc., *qui* is used as an adjective.

(2) In the nom. and accus., neut., *quid* is used as a substantive.

In the nom. and accus., neut., *quod* is used as an adjective.

(1) *Who comes?*

What man comes?

Who is the man?

(2) *What do you fear?*

What danger do you fear?

Quis venīt?

Qui hōmō venīt?

Quis homo est?

Quid tīmēs?

Quōd pēriculūm tīmēs?

(173.) The answer *yes* is given by repeating the verb which asks the question; *no*, by repeating the verb with *nōn*. *Vēr ō* (*certainly*), added to the verb in an affirmative answer, gives it more emphasis; *e. g.*,

Are you writing?

I am writing.

Are you reading?

I am not reading.

Will you do what I ask?

I will certainly do (it).

Scribīs-nē?

Scrib ō.

Lēgis-nē?

Nōn lēg ō.

Fāciēs-nē quæ rōgō?*

Fāciām vēr ō.

EXERCISE.

(174.) Vocabulary.

New, *nōvūs*, ā, ūm.

News, *nōvī* (neut. gen. of *nōvūs*, used with a neut. adj. or pronoun).

Nūm, *interrogative particle*, used when *no* is expected as the answer.

To do, *āgērē*.

To be among, *intēressē* (inter + *essē*); but *quid interest?* = *what is the difference?*

Between, among, *intēr* (prep., acc.).

Beast, brute, *bestiā*, æ.

An evil, *mālūm*, ī.

Without, *sīnē* (prep., abl.).

Figure, *figūrā*, æ.

Mortal, *mortalis*, ē.

Certainly, *vēr ō* (affirmative particle).

To carry, *vēhērē*.

Immortal, *immortalis*, † ē.

* *Hæc*, *quæ*, plural, should be translated *this*, *what*, singular.

† Observe the force of *in* prefixed to adjectives. *Mortalis* = *mortal*; *in + mortalis* = *immortalis*, *immortal*.

(175.) *Examples.*(a) *What is the news?*

Quid est novī? (=What is there of new?)

(b) *Is there anything new?*

(There is not, is there?)

Num est quidnām novī?

(Num expects the answer no.)

(c) *Why do you laugh?*

Quid ridēs?

(176.) *Translate into English.*

Quis nōs vocāt?—Cūjūs hic libēr est?—Quēm vidēs?—Quid āgis.—Quid intērest intēr hōmīnēm ēt bestiām?—Quām dōmūm invēniēs sinē mālīs?—Quid lēgis?—Ēpistolām.—Quā āmīcitiā est intēr imprōbōs?—Nūm Cēsārēm timēs?—Nōn timēb.—Quā in urbē (125, IV., N., ‡) sūmūs?—Quis hōmō est?—Ēgō sūm Cēsār.—Nūm ānimūs figūrām hābēt?—Sunt nē hōmīnēs mortālēs?—Sunt vērō.—Quid timēs? Cēsārēm vēhīs.

(177.) *Translate into Latin.*

Who calls me?—Whose are those books?—What men do you see?—What are you writing?—A letter.—What book are you reading?—What is the difference between the good and the wicked?—Who is the soldier?—What is the difference between wolves and dogs?—Do you not fear the enemy?—I do not fear (them.)—What man will you find without a fault (culpā)?—In what town are we?—Whose house is this?—What city will you find without evils?—What is the difference between men and beasts?—What do you fear? You are carrying the king.—Are men immortal (nūm)?—They are not.


LESSON XXX.

Indefinite Pronouns.

(178.) THE *Indefinite Pronouns* denote an object in a general way, without reference to a particular individual; e. g., *any one, some one, &c.* They are,

1. Quīdām, *a certain one, &c., plural, some.*2. Quīvis, } *any you please.*
Quīlibēt, }

3. *Quisquā*, *any, any one* (e. g., when it is denied that there are any). [Nent. *quicquā* (*subst.*); *quodquā* (*adj.*). This pronoun is used chiefly in negative sentences.]
4. *Quispiā*, *somebody, some* (neut.).
5. *Ālīquīs*, *some one, something* (neut.); *any* (adj.).
6. *Quisquē*, *each*, *ūnusquisquē*, *each one* (stronger than *quisquē*).
7. *Ecquīs?* used interrogatively, (does) *any one? anything?*

 Observe carefully that each of the above takes *quid* in neuter nom., and acc., when used *substantively*; and *quod* when used *adjectively*.

EXERCISE.

(179.) *Vocabulary.*

The tent, *dēcīmūs*, ā, ūm.

A javelin, *trāgūlā*, æ.

To see, to notice, *conspicērē*.

Judgment, discretion, *consiliū*, i.

Eternity, æternitās, (*æternitāt*) is (f.).

Maker, artificer, fābēr, *fābrī* (m.).

Fifth, *quintūs*, ā, ūm.

Youth, jūventūs, (*jūventūt*) is (f.).

Fortune, *fortūnā*, æ.

Forever, in *æternū*.

Belong, *pertinērē*.

Art, ars, (*art*) is (f.).

Form, *formā*, æ.

To discover, *invēnirē*.

For, *ētēnim*, conj. (always stands first in its clause).

Cultivation, humanity, hūmānitās, ātis (f.).

Common, *commūnis*, is, ē.

Bond, *vineulū*, i.

Dignity, *dignitās*, (*dignitāt*) is (f.).

Body, *corpūs*, (*corpōr*) is (n.).

(180.) *Examples.*

(a) *Something new.*

Each one of us.

A certain thing new.

Some dignity.

Ālīquid nōvī.

Unusquisquē nostrū.

Quiddā nōvī.

Ālīquid dignitātis.

Rule of Syntax.—The indefinite pronouns may be used *partitively*, and then govern the genitive.

(b) *A certain one of the soldiers.*

Some of the soldiers.

Quidā (sing.) ex militibūs.

Quidā (plur.) ex militibūs.

Rem. The ablat. with *ex* is used instead of the genitive, especially with *quidā*.

(181.) *Translate into English.*

Quidā ex militibūs dēcimæ lēgiōnis vēniēbāt.—*Quintō diē* (118, II., c) *trāgūlā ā quōdām militē conspicitūr.*—*Viri*, in quibūs *ālīquid consilii* (180, a) *est*, *magnānīmī sunt.*—*Tempūs*

est pars quædã æternitãtis.—Cuivis (125, II., a) animãli corpũ est.—Quilibet est faber fortunæ suæ.—Unicuiquẽ* (125, II., a) nostrũ (180, 120) est animũ immortalis.—Quisquẽ nostrũ (180) in æternũ vivet.—Animũ nõn habet formã aliquã, nec figurã.—Aliquid novi invenies.—Etẽnim omnes artes, quæ ad humanitãtẽ pertinent, habent quoddã communẽ vincũlum.

(182.) *Translate into Latin.*

[The pronouns of the lesson are italicized in the exercise.]

Some of the soldiers of the fifth legion are wounded (pres.).—On the fifth day (118, II., c) the enemy is noticed by a *certain* soldier of the tenth legion.—Men, in whom there is *some* dignity (180), are magnanimous.—To *each* man (= of men) there is a soul and a body.—I will give the book to *any-one-you-please* of the scholars. *Each one* of us shall live forever.—You will discover a *certain thing new*.—Some of the soldiers are in the city.—For all the arts which belong to cultivation have a *certain* common bond.—Youth is a *certain* part of life.—Is not (estne) *any man-you-please* the maker of his own fortune?—Has the soul (use num) *any* form or figure?

LESSON XXXI.

Correlative Pronouns.

(183.) CORRELATIVE Pronouns are such as *answer* to each other; e. g., *how great? so great. How many? so many, &c.*

[This correlation is often expressed in English by adverbs or conjunctions: *such a man as: as is the general, so are the troops, &c.*]

(184.) The Correlative Pronouns are

Demonstrative.	Relative.	Indefinite.
talis, <i>such.</i>	qualis; <i>as, of what kind.</i>	qualiscunque, <i>of whatever kind.</i>
tantus, <i>so great, so much.</i>	quantus, <i>as great.</i>	quantuscunque, <i>however great.</i>
*tõs, <i>so many.</i>	*quõs, <i>as many.</i>	*aliquantus, <i>somewhat great.</i>
*tõtidẽm, <i>just so many.</i>		*aliquõs, <i>some.</i>
		*quotquõs, <i>however many.</i>

* Unus and quisquẽ are both declined in unusquisquẽ. Unũ *nas gen. uniũs, dat. uni.*

- Rem. 1. Quālis? of what kind? quantūs? how great? quōt? how many? are also used interrogatively.*
- 2. Those marked thus (*) are indeclinable; the rest are declined like adjectives.*

EXERCISE.

(185.) Vocabulary.

Where, ubi (adv.).	Fear, timor, (timor) is (m.).
Toil, opĕră, æ.	Or, vĕl (conj.).
Pleasure, vōluptās, (vōluptāt) is (f.).	Advantages, bonā (neut. adj.).
Reward, prēmīum, ī.	To afford, præbĕrĕ.
Gold, aurum, ī.	To covet, expĕtĕrĕ. [is (f.).
Money, pecūniā, æ.	Liberality, libĕrālītās, (libĕrālītāt)

(186.) Examples.

(a) So much toil (= of toil).	Tantum opĕră.
How much pleasure? (= of pleasure?)	Quantum vōluptātis?
No reward (= nothing of reward).	Nihil prēmīi.
Much gold (= of gold).	Multum aurī. (But, much money = magnā pecūniā, not multum pecūniæ.)
A pretty large piece of ground.	Alīquantum āgrī.

Rule of Syntax.—The neuters, tantum, quantum, alīquantum; also, multum, nihil, quīd, alīquīd, and others, are used as *neuter nouns*, and followed by the genitive (Synt., 695, b., R.).

Obs. Tantum, quantum in neut., with genitive = *so much, so many, how much, how many*; but in masc. and fem., agreeing with the noun, *so great, how great*; e. g., *how many books?* quantum librōrum; *so great fear*, tantus timor.

(b) As is the master, so are the scholars.	Quālis est māgistĕr, tālēs sunt discipulī; or (with est and sunt omitted), quālis māgistĕr, tālēs discipulī.
--	--

(187.) Translate into English.

Quālēs sunt dūcēs, tālēs sunt milītēs.—Fortūnæ bonā (82, II.), quantācunquē sunt, incertā sunt.—Tantus timor omnem exercitum occupābat.—Ubi tantam virtutem invēniēs?—Quantum vōluptātis virtus præbēt!—Fratrī est (125, II., a) alīquan-

tūm pecūniæ.—Virtūs nihīl præmiī vēl pecūniæ expētīt.—Pātēr mīhī magnām pecūniām dābīt.—Quantūm (186, *Obs.*) librōrūm hābēs?—Quōt homīnēs, tōt sententiæ.

(188.) *Translate into Latin.*

As are the generals, so are the soldiers.—As is the king, so are the leaders.—As are the masters (*herī*), so are the slaves.—As are the fathers, so are the children.—So great an army is coming.—The advantages of the body, however great they may be (*sunt*), are uncertain.—Where will you find so great liberality?—How many (186, *Obs.*) rewards does virtue afford?—Good (men) covet no (186, *a*) reward.—Will your father *give* (135, II.) you much money?—Has your brother much gold?—As are the chiefs, so are the citizens.—My father has (125, II., *a*) a pretty large piece of ground.

§ 16.

NUMERALS. (XXXII.—XXXIII.)

LESSON XXXII.

Numerals.—Partial Table.

(189.) NUMERALS are divided into the four classes following, of which the first three are *adjectives*, the fourth, *adverbs*.

	CARDINAL.	ORDINAL.	DISTRIBUTIVE.	ADVERBIAL.
	One, two, &c.	First, second, &c.	One a piece, one by one, one at a time, &c.	Once, twice, &c.
I.	ūnūs, ā, ūm.	primūs, ā, ūm.	singūli, æ, ā.	sēmēl.
II.	duō, æ, ō.	sēcundūs, ā, ūm.	bīnī, æ, ā.	bīs.
III.	trēs, ēs, triā.	tertiūs, ā, ūm.	ternī, æ, ā.	tēr.
IV.	quattuōr.	quartūs, ā, ūm.	quāternī, æ, ā.	quatēr.
V.	quinquē.	quintūs, ā, ūm.	quīnī, æ, ā.	quinguiēs.
VI.	sēx.	sextūs, ā, ūm.	sēnī, æ, ā.	sexiēs.
VII.	sēptēm.	septimūs, ā, ūm.	septēnī, æ, ā.	septiēs.
VIII.	ōctō.	octāvūs, ā, ūm.	octōnī, æ, ā.	octiēs.
IX.	nōvēm.	nōnūs, ā, ūm.	nōvēnī, æ, ā.	nōviēs.
X.	dēcēm.	dēcīmūs, ā, ūm.	dēnī, æ, ā.	dēciēs.
XI.	undēcīm.	undēcīmūs, ā, ūm.	undēnī, æ, ā.	undēciēs.
XII.	duōdēcīm.	duōdēcīmūs, ā, ūm.	duōdēnī, æ, ā.	duōdeciēs.

Rem. For the declension of *ūnūs* and *duō*, see 194. *Trēs* is declined like a plural adjective of *second* class, 194. The remaining cardinals are undeclined. The ordinals and distributives are declined like adjectives of the first class.

EXERCISE.

(190.) *Vocabulary.*

In all, altogether, omnīnō.

Multitude, multītūdō, (multītūdīn)

īs (f.).

Hour, hōrā, æ.

To be distant, distārē.

Mile, milliā,* (mill) iūm (pl. n.).

Year, annūs, ī.

Month, mensīs, (mens) īs (m.).

Another, altēr, ā, ūm (194, R. 1.).

Thirty-six, sex et trigintā.

To levy, conscribērē.

Night-watch, vīgīliā, æ.

From, after, dē (with abl.).

To strive, to hasten, contendērē.

Italy, Italiā, æ.

* Millē, plur. milliā = 1000. Milliā (passuūm, of paces understood) = a milē.

(191.) *Examples.*

- | | |
|--|----------------------------|
| (a) <i>They fight four hours.</i> | Hōrās quattuōr pignant. |
| (b) <i>The city is distant five miles.</i> | Urbs distāt quinquē milliā |
| (c) <i>A ditch eleven feet wide.</i> | Fossā undĕcīm pĕdēs lātā. |

Rule of Syntax.—The accusative answers to the questions *how long?* (whether of *time* or *space*), *how broad?* *how high?* &c.; *e. g.*, in (a) hōrās; in (b) milliā; in (c) pĕdēs.

- (d) *How long?* may also be expressed by a noun in the genitive, depending on another noun; *e. g.*, *a ditch of ten feet*, fossā dĕcēm pĕdūm.

(192.) *Translate into English.*

Ērant omnīnō itīnērā duō.—Galliæ sunt partēs trēs, quārum unām incōlunt Belgæ, altērām Āquitānī.—Ūnūs ē multītūdīnō vulnerātūr.—Hōrās sĕx pugnābant.—Urbs distāt dĕcēm milliā.—Īn annō duōdĕcīm mensēs sunt.—Cæsār dūās lĕgīōnēs conscribīt.—Cæsār trēs lĕgīōnēs quæ īn Galliā hiēmābant ēdūcīt.—Cæsār trēs lĕgīōnēs ēx hibernīs ēdūcīt.—Sunt omnīnō itīnērā quattuōr.—Cæsār dē quārtā vīgiliā lĕgīōnēs ēdūcīt.—Consul lĕgīōnēm dĕcīmām īn castrā rĕdūcīt.—Cæsār cūm quinquē lĕgīōnībūs īn Ītāliām contendīt.—Ērāt omnīnō īn Galliā lĕgiō ūnā.

(193.) *Translate into Latin.*

There are in all three ways.—There are of Gaul three parts, of which the Sequanians inhabit one.—There are of the city five parts.—Four of (= out of) the multitude are wounded.—The soldiers fight seven hours.—In three years are thirty-six months.—The villages are distant nine miles.—The wood is distant four miles.—The consuls will levy six legions.—Cæsar will lead out five legions from Italy.—The general was levying two legions in Gaul.—Cæsar will lead out the soldiers in the second watch.—The consul, in the third watch leads back the soldiers into the camp.—The tenth legion fights (pugnat).—There are altogether in Gaul two legions.—Cæsar brings back the fifth legion.—Cæsar brings back the fifth legion after the second watch.

LESSON XXXIII.

Numerals, continued.

(194.) DECLENSION of ūnūs, duō, and trēs.

	One, Sing.		Two, Plur.		Three, Plur.
N.	ūnūs, ā, ūm.	N. V.	duō, duæ, duō.		trēs, trēs, triā.
G.	ūniūs, iūs, iūs.	Gen.	duōrūm, duārūm, duōrūm.		triūm, triūm, triūm.
D.	ūnī, ī, ī.	D. Ab.	duōbus, duābūs, duōbūs.		tribūs, tribūs, tribūs.
	<i>the rest regular.</i>	Acc.	duōs and duō, duās, duō.		trēs, trēs, triā.

Rem. (1.) Like ūnūs are declined

Āliūs, ā, ūd, *another.**

Altēr, ā, ūm, *the one, the other* (of two).

Neutēr, trā, trūm, *neither of the two.*

Nullūs, ā, um, *no one.*

Sōlus, ā, ūm, *alone.*

Tōtūs, ā, ūm, *the whole.*

Ullūs, a, ūm, *any one.*

Ūtēr, trā, trūm, *which of the two.*

Ūterquē, traquē, trumque, *each of the two, both; and other compounds of ūtēr.*

(2.) Like duō is declined ambō, æ, ō, both.

EXERCISE.

(195.) Vocabulary.

What one, quōtūs, ā, ūm.

Most, plērusquē, āquē, ūmquē; *e. g.*,
most men, hōmīnēs plēriquē; *most insects*, insectā plēraqūē.

Virgil, Virgiliūs, ī.

More, māgis (adv.).

A beam, trabs, (trāb) īs (f.).

Insect, insectūm, ī.

Horace, Hōratiūs, ī.

To migrate, mīgrārē.

Writer, scriptōr, (scriptōr) īs (m.).

Mother, mātēr, (matr) īs (f.).

[Refer to the column of distributives (189).]

(196.) Examples.

- | | |
|--|--|
| (a) <i>My father will give us two books apiece.</i> | Pātēr nobīs bīnōs librōs dābīt. |
| (b) <i>What hour is it? The third.</i> | Quōtā hōrā est? Tertiā. |
| (c) <i>He will come for my sake alone.</i> | Meā uniūs causā (abl.) vēniēt. |
| (d) <i>Which pleases you? Neither.</i> | Ūtēr tibi plācēt? Neutēr. |
| (e) <i>The beams are three feet distant (apart) from each other.</i> | Trabēs intēr sē distant ternōs pēdēs (191, c). |

* When āliūs is repeated, it means *some, others.*

(197.) *Translate into English.*

Mātēr nōbīs quāternōs librōs dābīt.—Nōbīs sunt (125, II., a) ternī ēquī.—Binæ omnībūs āvībūs ālæ sunt.—Insectā plērāquē sēnōs, āliā octōnōs, pēdēs hābent.—Quōtā hōrā est? Nōnā.—Milītēs utriusquē exercitūs sunt fortēs.—Tuā ūniūs causā vēnient.—Virgiliūs atquē Horātiūs poētæ sunt prælārī; ūtēr tībī māgis plācēt? (161, a.) Virgiliūs.—Bīs in annō milītēs vēniunt.—Septembēr est nōnūs annī mensīs.—Trābēs intēr sē distant binōs pēdēs (191, c).

(198.) *Translate into Latin.*

[Some of the words will be found in 194, R. 1.]

We have (125, II., a) four dogs apiece (196, a).—The master gives us five books at a time.—All men have (125, II., a) two eyes apiece.—Most insects have six (senos) feet; some (194*) nine, others (194*) ten, others (194*) twelve.—What o'clock (hour) is it?—The fifth.—The eighth.—The eleventh.—The twelfth.—The generals of each army are brave.—Why do you come? For your sake alone (196, c).—Cicero and Cæsar are excellent writers; which pleases you? Neither.—Which pleases you more? Cæsar.—The birds migrate twice in the year.—The soldiers will come eight times a year.—October is the tenth month of the year; November the eleventh; December the twelfth.—The beams are four feet distant from each other.—The beams are seven feet apart from each other

§ 17.

VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION IN *iö*.

LESSON XXXIV.

Verbs of the Third Conjugation in iö.

(199.) SOME verbs of the third conjugation, instead of taking the simple verb-stem for the tense-stem in the tenses for incomplete action, add *i* to the verb-stem in these tenses. They form the infinitive, however, in *äre*, like other verbs of the third.

(200.) INFIN. ACTIVE, *căp-ërë*, *to take*.

SINGULAR.			
Present.	<i>căp-î-ö.</i>	<i>căp-îs,</i>	<i>căp-ît.</i>
Imperfect.	<i>căp-î-ëbăm.</i>	<i>căp-î-ëbas.</i>	<i>căp-î-ëbăt.</i>
Future.	<i>căp-î-ăm.</i>	<i>căp-î-ës.</i>	<i>căp-î-ët.</i>
PLURAL.			
Present.	<i>căp-î-müş.</i>	<i>căp-î-tüş.</i>	<i>căp-î-unt.</i>
Imperfect.	<i>căp-î-ëbămüş.</i>	<i>căp-î-ëbatış.</i>	<i>căp-î-ëbant.</i>
Future.	<i>căp-î-ëmüş.</i>	<i>căp-î-ëtüş.</i>	<i>căp-î-ënt.</i>

INFIN. PASSIVE, *căp-î*, *to be taken*.

SINGULAR.			
Present.	<i>căp-î-ör.</i>	<i>căp-ë-rış.</i>	<i>căp-î-tür.</i>
Imperfect.	<i>căp-î-ëbăr.</i>	<i>căp-î-ëbarış.</i>	<i>căp-î-ëbätür.</i>
Future.	<i>căp-î-är.</i>	<i>căp-î-ërış.</i>	<i>căp-î-ëtür.</i>
PLURAL.			
Present.	<i>căp-î-mür.</i>	<i>căp-î-mîni.</i>	<i>căp-î-untür.</i>
Imperfect.	<i>căp-î-ëbämür.</i>	<i>căp-î-ëbämîni.</i>	<i>căp-î-ëbantür.</i>
Future.	<i>căp-î-ëmür.</i>	<i>căp-î-ëmîni.</i>	<i>căp-î-entür.</i>

EXERCISE.

(201.) *Vocabulary.*

[In all cases, verbs of the class described above will be indicated in the vocabularies by the ending *iö*, after the infinitive form; e. g., *to make*, *facëre (iö)*.]

Pardon, favour vēniā, ō.

Excuse, excūsātiō, (excūsātiō) īs (f.).

To receive, accept, accīpērē (iō).

Way, road, itēr, (itīnēr) īs (neut.).

To undertake, suscīpērē (iō).

To make, faciērē (iō).

And, quē.*

Ship, nāvīs, (nāv) īs (f.).

To repair, to renew, to rebuild, rēfīcērē (iō).

Long, longūs, ā, ūm.

Wall, mūrūs, ī.

Harbour, portūs, ūs (m.).

(202.) *Example.*

Willingly Cæsar gives pardon and receives the excuse. | Libentēr Cæsār dāt vēniām, excūsātiōnemquē* accīpīt

(203.) *Translate into English.*

Labiēnūs multā Germānōrūm (78, II., b) oppida cāpiēbāt.—Helvētū pār prōvinciām nostrām itēr faciunt.—Vulnērā grāviā ā mīlitībūs accīpiuntūr.—Æduī bellūm magnūm suscīpiēbant.—Libentēr Cæsār nuntiōs accīpīt, iisque (201, N.) vēniām dāt.—Impērātōr obsidēs cīvitatīs libentēr accīpiēt.—Nuntiūm ā patrē crās accīpiēs.—Crassūs nāvēs longās, quæ in portū sunt, rēfīcīt.—Consul mūrōs urbīs rēfīcīt.

(204.) *Translate into Latin.*


The enemy were making (their) way through our province.—The Romans were rapidly (cēlērītēr) making their way through Gaul.—We shall receive a messenger from the city to-day.—The Helvetians were undertaking a severe and great war.—The soldiers receive many and severe wounds.—We shall make (our) way through Britain.—Cæsar will willingly receive the excuse of the Æduans, and grant them (iisque) favour.—The gifts of a father are gladly (libentēr) received.—The long ships are repaired by Cæsar.—The general was rebuilding the old (vētērēs) ships which were in the harbour.—We shall rebuild the old walls.

(205.) Observe the formation of the following words:

Accīpērē (*to receive*), = ād (*to*)+cāpērē (*to take*).

Suscīpērē (*to undertake*), = sub (*under*)+cāpērē.

Rēfīcērē (*to rebuild*), = rē+facērē (*to make again*).

 In the composition of verbs with prepositions, ā frequently passes into ī, as in these examples.

* Æt joins words or sentences which are considered *independent* and of equal importance with each other; quē joins a word or sentence *closely* to another, as an *appendage* to it.

DEPONENT VERBS.

LESSON XXXV.


Deponent Verbs.

(206.) DEPONENT verbs are such as have the *passive* form, but an *active* meaning; *e. g.*, hortōr, *I exhort* (not *I am exhorted*).

(207.) The forms of deponents in the tenses for incomplete action of the indicative mood are precisely the same as those of passive verbs (Lessons XII., XIII.); we therefore need only give the *first* persons.

(208.) DEPONENT FORMS.

INDICATIVE.				
1st conj.	hortōr, <i>I exhort.</i>	hortābār, <i>I was exhorting.</i>	hortābōr, <i>I will exhort.</i>	
2d conj.	fāteōr, <i>I confess.</i>	fātēbār, <i>I was confessing.</i>	fātēbōr, <i>I will confess.</i>	
3d conj.	sēquōr, <i>I follow.</i>	sēquēbār, <i>I was following.</i>	sēquār, <i>I will follow.</i>	
4th conj.	mētiōr, <i>I measure.</i>	mētiēbār, <i>I was measuring.</i>	mētiār, <i>I will measure.</i>	
INFINITIVE.				
	1. hort-āri, <i>to exhort.</i>	2. fāt-ēri, <i>to confess.</i>	3. sēqu-i, <i>to follow.</i>	4. mēt-iri, <i>to measure.</i>

[ In the vocabularies deponent verbs are always given by the *infinitive* forms. Observe that the ending -āri shows that the verb is of the 1st conj.; -ēri, the 2d; -i, the 3d; -iri, the 4th.]

EXERCISE.

(209.) *Vocabulary.*

[Transitive deponents govern the accusative, unless it is otherwise mentioned in the vocabularies.]

To embrace, amplex-i.

To gain, to possess one's self of, pōt-iri (with gen. or abl.; generally gen. in Cæs.).

To endeavour, cōn-āri.

To follow, sēqu-i.

As, as if, tanquam (adv.).

To strive after, pursue, persēqu-i (pēr + sēqui, *to follow through*).

Glory, glōriā, æ.

All, tōtūs, ā, ūm (194, R., 1).

Bravery, virtue, virtūs, (virtūt) is (f.).

Long, diū (adv.).

Sin, fault, peccātūm, i.

(210.) *Example.*

<i>The Helvetians endeavour to pass (= to make way) through our province.</i>	Helvētīi pēr prōvinciām nos- trām itēr făcĕrĕ cōnantŭr.
---	--

Rule of Syntax.—The infinitive is used in Latin (as in English) to complete the imperfect ideas expressed by certain verbs; *e. g.*, *I wish, I can, I hasten, I endeavour, &c.*, as făcĕrĕ in the above example.*

(211.) *Translate into English.*

Pătĕr filiŭm et filiām amplectitŭr.—Impĕrătĕr mīlitĕs diŭ hortābātŭr.—Dumnōrix tōtiŭs (194, R. 1) Galliæ pōtītŭr.—Peccātā meā fătĕbĕr.—Prīncipĕs totīŭs Galliæ pōtīrī cōnābantŭr.—Rōmānī per Brītanīām itēr făcĕrĕ cōnantŭr.—Glōriā virtūtĕm tanquām umbrā sĕquitŭr.—*Magnōs* hōmīnĕs virtūtĕ (55) mĕtīmŭr, nōn fortūnā.—Mīlitĕs sempĕr glōriām persĕquantŭr.—Mīlitĕs dŭcĕm libentĕr sĕquĕbantŭr.

(212.) *Translate into Latin.*

The father will embrace (his) sons and daughters.—The chiefs possess themselves of all the province.—Do you *confess* (135, II.) your fault?—The Helvetians were endeavouring to pass through Gaul.—Glory will follow bravery as a shadow.—We were exhorting the soldiers yesterday.—We shall gladly follow Cæsar.—They are rapidly making their way through our province.—You measure men by (their) fortune, not by (their) bravery.—The chiefs will endeavour to lead the army across the Rhine (113, II., a).—Generals always strive after glory.—Are you *exhorting* (135, II.) your son?—The Romans always followed glory.

* Observe carefully that a *purpose* is *never* expressed by the simple infinitive in Latin. It would not be Latin to say *discĕrĕ vĕnīt, he comes to learn.*

ADVERBS.

LESSON XXXVI.

Adverbs.

[THIS section need not be learned by heart in the first course but the distinction of *primitive* and *derivative* should be acquired; and the section should be afterward referred to whenever examples occur.]

(213.) *Adverbs* (17) are either *Primitive* or *Derivative*.

[We give but a few here; a fuller list will be given hereafter.—See *Summary of Etymology*, 680.]

(214.) *Primitive Adverbs*:

1. *Negative*.—Nōn, *not*; haud, *not*; ne (interrog. or imper.), *not*; nē quidēm (always separated by some word), *not even*.
2. *Of Place*.—Ūbī, *where*; ībī, *there*; quō? *whither?* hūc, *hither*; illūc, *thither*; undē, *whence*; indē, *thence*, &c.
3. *Of Time*.—Nunc, *now*; tum or tunc, *then*; nūpēr, *lately*; crās, *to-morrow*; hōdiē, *to-day*; hērī, *yesterday*, &c.
4. *Of Quality*, &c.—Admōdūm, *very*; ān, *whether*; cūr, *why* (interrog.); ētiām, *also*; fērē, *almost*, &c.

(215.) *Derivative Adverbs* are nearly all formed from adjectives or participles by adding ē or ĭtēr to their stems.

1. Add ē to the stem of adjectives of the *first class*; e. g.,

Adjectives.	Adverbs.
Alt-ūs, <i>high</i> .	Alt-ē, <i>high</i> .
Lībēr, <i>free</i> .	Lībēr-ē, <i>freely</i> .
Clār-ūs <i>illustrious</i> .	Clār-ē, <i>illustriously</i> .
&c.	&c.

Rem. Bōnūs makes bēnē, *well*, and mālūs (*bad*), mālē, *badly*. All others end in ē (*long*).

2. (a) Add ĭtēr to the stem of adjectives of the *second* and *third class*; e. g.,

Adjectives.	Adverbs.
Cēlēr, <i>swift</i> .	Celer-ĭtēr, <i>swiftly</i> .
Brēv-īs, <i>brief</i> .	Brev-ĭtēr, <i>briefly</i> .

- (b) But those which end in ns do not take the connecting vowel ĭ.
- e. g.,

Prūdēns, *prudent*.Sāpiēns, *wise*.Prūden-tēr, *prudently*.Sāpien-tēr, *wisely*.*Rem.* Audax, *bold*, makes audac-tēr, *boldly*.

3. Some are derived from *nouns* by adding tūs or tīm to the stem by means of a connecting vowel, *e. g.*, cæl-ītūs, *from heaven*; fund-ītūs, *from the ground, totally*; grēg-a-tīm, *by flocks, &c.*

(216.) Cases of adjectives, especially in the *neuter* gender, are often used as adverbs; *e. g.*, dulcē, *sweetly*; prīmūm, *first*; falsō, *falsely, &c.*

EXERCISE.

(217.) Vocabulary.

Well, bēnē, derived irregularly from bōnūs, *good*.

Bravely, fortītēr, derived regularly (215, 2, a) from fortīs, *brave*.

Sharply, spiritedly, acritēr, derived regularly from acēr (acr-īs), *sharp*.

Swiftly, celeritēr, derived regularly from celer, *swift*.

Happily, beātē, derived regularly (215, 1) from beātūs, *happy*.

Honestly, hōnestē, derived regularly from hōnestūs, *honest*.

Almost, fērē.

Rightly, rectē, derived regularly from rectūs, *right*.

Impiously, impiē, derived regularly from impiūs, *impious*.

In flocks, grēgātīm.

To labour, lābōrārē.

To blame, to accuse, find fault with, incūsārē.

Socrates, Sōcrātēs, (Sōcrāt) is.

Not even, nēquidē (always separated by one or more words).

(218.) Examples.

(a) To live honestly and rightly is to live well and happily.

Hōnestē et rectē vivērē est bēnē et beātē vivērē.

Rule of Position.—The adverb is generally placed before the word which it qualifies.

(b) Almost all men love themselves.

Omnēs fērē hōmīnēs sēsē dīlgunt.

Fērē is generally placed between the adjective and noun.

(c) He does not praise even Socrates.

Nē Sōcrātēm quidē laudāt.

(219.) Translate into English.

Hostēs nōbiscūm (125, II., b) acritēr pugnābant.—Ēquī in āgrīs celeritēr currēbant.—Bēnē vivērē est beātē vivērē.—Cervi grēgātīm sempēr currunt.—Sempēr sāpiens rectē vivīt.—Diū

et acrit̃er mil̃itēs pugnābant.—Omnēs f̃erē hōmīnēs impĩe vivunt.
—Omnēs f̃erē āvēs bīs īn annō mīgrant.—Nē Cicērōnēm quīdē
laudābīt.—Nē hōc quīdē (not even with this) dēlectābīt̃r.

(220.) *Translate into Latin.*

The Æduans were fighting long and bravely.—Cæsar sharply
accuses the Helvetians.—Horses and stags run swiftly.—The
farmers were labouring long in the fields.—Almost all men love
their (own) children.—Cæsar led almost all the Germans across
the Rhine (113, II., a).—I waited for you long.—The bad do
not live happily.—To live happily is to live rightly.—You will
not be delighted even with this.—Not even this will delight (my)
father.—Not even Cæsar will be praised.—Almost all birds fly in
flocks.—They do not praise even Virgil.—Almost all wise (men)
live happily.—Almost all men strive-after glory.—To live pru-
dently is to live happily.—The commander will blame the
lieutenant sharply.

PREPOSITIONS. (XXXVII.—XXXVIII.)

LESSON XXXVII.

Prepositions.

[THIS section (221) need not be learned by heart in the first course, but should be constantly referred to whenever examples occur.]

(221.) The following prepositions govern the *accusative* case :

Ād, <i>to.</i>	Juxtā, <i>near to, beside.</i>
Āpūd, <i>at.</i>	Ōb, <i>on account of.</i>
Antē, <i>before</i> (of time and place).	Pēnēs, <i>in the power of.</i>
Adversūs, adversūm, <i>against.</i>	Pēr, <i>through.</i>
Cīs, citrā, <i>on this side.</i>	Pōnē, <i>behind.</i>
Circā and circūm, <i>around, about.</i>	Post, <i>after</i> (both of time and space).
Circōitēr, <i>about, towards</i> (indefinitely of time or number).	Prætēr, <i>beside.</i>
Contrā, <i>against.</i>	Prōpē, <i>near.</i>
Ergā, <i>towards.</i>	Proptēr, <i>near, on account of.</i>
Extra, <i>beyond, without.</i>	Sēcundūm, <i>after, in accordance with.</i>
Infra, <i>beneath, below</i> (the contrary of sūprā).	Sūprā, <i>above.</i>
Intēr, <i>between, among.</i>	Trans, <i>on the other side.</i>
Intrā, <i>within</i> (the contrary of extrā).	Versūs (is put after its noun), <i>towards a place.</i>
	Ultrā, <i>beyond.</i>

(222.) The following govern the *ablative* case :

Ā, āb, <i>from, by.</i>	Præ, <i>before, owing to.</i>
Clām, <i>without the knowledge of.</i>	Prō, <i>before, for.</i>
Cōrām, <i>in the presence of.</i>	Sinē, <i>without.</i>
Cūm, <i>with.</i>	Tēnūs (is put after its noun), <i>as far as, up to.</i>
Dē, <i>down from, concerning.</i>	
Ē, ex (ē before consonants only, ex before both consonants and vowels), <i>out of, from.</i>	

The following lines contain the prepositions governing the *ablative*, and can be readily learned by heart :

Absquē, ā, āb, abs, and dē,
Cōrām, clām, cūm, ex, and ē,
Tēnūs, sinē, prō, and præ.

(223.) The following govern the *accusative* or *ablative* :

1. Īn, (a) *with the accus.*, (1) *into, on, to* (to the question *whither?*) (2) *against.* (b) *With the ablative*, in, on (to the question *where?*)
2. Sūb, (a) *with the accus.*, (1) *under* (to the question *whither?*) (2) *about*

or towards (indefinitely of time). (b) *With the ablative*, under (to the question *where?*)

3. Sūp̄er, (a) *with the accus.*, above, over. (b) *With the ablative*, upon, concerning.

4. Subt̄er, under, beneath (but little used).

EXERCISE.

(224.) *Vocabulary.*

The Garonne (river), Gārumnā, æ.

An Aquitanian, Āquitānūs, ī.

Aquitania, Aquitāniā, æ.

The Leman, or Geneva (lake), Lēmannūs, ī.

Jura (mountain), Jūrā, æ (m. 25, a).

To extend or carry, perdūcērē (p̄er + dūcērē).

State, cīvītās, (cīvītāt) īs (f.).

Royal power (kingdom), regnūm, ī

History, histōriā, æ.

Fable, fabulā, æ.

To bound (limit), continērē (con- + tēnērē).

Part or side, pars, (part) īs (f.).

On one side, unā ex partē.

The Rhone (river), Rhodānūs, ī.

To divide, dividērē.

Lake, lacūs, ūs (m.), (112, R. 1)

To remain, manērē.

(225.) *Examples.*

(a) *The river Garonne separates the Gauls from the Aquitanians.*

Gallōs āb Āquitānīs Gārumnā flūmēn dīvidīt.

Rule of Syntax.—Two nouns expressing the same person or thing take the same case, and are said to be in *apposition* with each other; *e. g.*, in the above example, Gārumnā flūmēn.

(b) *Cæsar hastens into Gaul.*

Cæsār īn Galliām contendīt.

(c) *There was altogether in Gaul one legion.*

Ērāt omnīnō īn Galliā lēgiō ūnā.

(226.) *Translate into English.*

Cæsār ā lacū ād montē, mūrūm perdūcīt.—Apūd* Hērōdōtūm, pātrēm histōriæ, sunt multæ fabulæ.—Cæsār ā lacū Lēmannō ād montē Jūrām, mūrūm perdūcīt.—Mērcātōr īn urbē mānēt.—Puēri īn dōmō sunt.—Princeps regnūm īn cīvītātē occupāt.—Consul exercitūm īn finēs Sēquānōrūm dūcīt.—Hēvētiī continentūr ūnā ex partē (125, IV., N.†) flūmīnē Rhēnō; altērā ex partē montē Jūrā, tertiā ex partē lacū Lēmannō ēt flūmīnē Rhodānō.

* *Apud* is used with the names of authors (instead of *in*, with the name of their works), *e. g.*, apūd Cicerōnē lēgimūs, *we read in Cicero.*

(227.) *Translate into Latin.*

Cæsar was extending walls and ditches (fossasque) from the river to the camp.—The soldiers remain in the camp.—Cæsar will seize the royal power in the state.—The river Rhine separates the Gauls from the Germans.—Cæsar hastens into Italy and levies (conscribĕrĕ) five legions.—The deserters remain in the town.—The general will lead the soldiers into Italy.—Aquitania is bounded on one side by the river Garumna; on another side by mountains; on the third side by the river Rhone.—You will find (invenies) many fine (præclārā) precepts in (apud) Cicero.—You will find many fables in Herodotus, the father of history.

LESSON XXXVIII.

Prepositions in Composition.

(228.) Most of the prepositions given in Lesson XXXVII. are used *as prefixes* in composition with verbs, and modify their signification; e. g., pōnĕrĕ, *to place*; post-pōnĕrĕ, *to place after*.

(229.) The following prepositions are never used alone, but always as *prefixes* in composition:

1. Amb, *round, about* (from ambo, *both*); ambĭrĕ (from amb+ĭrĕ, *to go round*), *to walk round, to canvass for votes*.
2. Con, *together* (a variation of cum, *with*); con-jungĕrĕ (con+jungĕrĕ), *to join together, to unite*.
3. Di or dis, *asunder* (a variation of dĕ, *from*); dis-cĕdĕrĕ (dis+cĕdĕrĕ, *to give place asunder*), *to depart*.

In, with adjectives, means *not*; in-doctŭs, *unlearned*; with verbs, means *in, into*; e. g., ir-rumpĕrĕ (in+rumpĕrĕ), *to burst into*.

4. Re, *back, again*; rĕ-ficĕrĕ (rĕ+fĕcĕrĕ, *to make again*), *to refit*.
5. Sĕ, *aside, sĕ-dŭcĕrĕ (sĕ+dŭcĕrĕ, to lead astray), to seduce*.

EXERCISE.

(230.) *Vocabulary.**Again* (adv.), rursūs.*To join together*, conjungērē.*To burst into*, irrumpērē.*To burst into the camp*, in castrā irrumpērē.*Mediterranean*, Mēditerrāneūs, ā, ūm.*To separate*, sēpārārē (sē+pārārē).*Cohort*, cōhors, (cōhort) īs (f.)*To station*, collōcārē (con+lōcārē).*To distribute*, distribuērē (dis+trībuērē).*Africa*, Afrīcā, æ.*Europe*, Eurōpā, æ.*Horseman*, ēquēs, (ēquit) īs (m.)(231.) *Translate into English.*

Consul rursus legionēs in hibernā rēducit.—Lēgātūs quinquē cōhortēs cū exercitū conjungit.—Milites omnēs in oppidū irrumpunt.—Mārē Mēditerrāneū Africā ab Eurōpā sēpārāt.—Belgæ sē cū Germānīs conjungēbant.—Impērātōr exercitū in hibernīs collōcāt.—Germānī ēquitēs in castrā (223, 1, a) irrumpērē cōnantūr.—Galbā exercitū in hibernīs collōcāt, legionēsqū in civitatēs distribuit.

(232.) *Translate into Latin.*

Cæsar will lead the cohorts back again into winter-quarters.—All the Germans were bursting into the camp.—The Belgians will unite themselves with Cæsar.—The brave soldiers were trying to burst into the town.—The illustrious general was stationing the soldiers in winter-quarters.—The legions are distributed among (in, with accus.) the states.—The legions are led back into winter-quarters.—The Mediterranean Sea separates Spain (Hispaniā) from Africa.—Cæsar will join all the horsemen with the army.

§ 21.

ANALYSIS OF TENSE-FORMATIONS. (XXXIX —XLI.)

LESSON XXXIX.

Active Voice.

(233.) (a) THE student must have observed that in *all* the tenses for incomplete action in the active voice the *person-endings* are as follows :

Sing.	1st person, <i>o</i> or <i>m</i> .	2d person, <i>s</i> .	3d person, <i>t</i> .
Plur.	1st person, <i>mūs</i> .	2d person, <i>tīs</i> .	3d person, <i>nt</i> .

(b) He must have observed, also, that these endings are added to the proper *tense-stem* in each tense. We take up the tenses in order.

(234.) PRESENT TENSE.

(a) *Person-endings*, *o*, *s*, *t*, *mūs*, *tīs*, *nt*.

(b) The *Tense-stem* is the simple verb-stem.

(c) To connect the person-endings with the tense-stems, certain *connecting vowels* are used. In the present tense these are, for

(1.) First conjugation, *a*; e. g., *ām-a-t*.

(2.) Second “ *e*; e. g., *mōn-e-t*.

(3.) Third “ *i*; e. g., *rĕg-i-t*.

(4.) Fourth “ *i*; e. g., *aud-i-t*.*

Rem. 1. Observe that in the 1st person of the 1st and 3d conjugations the connecting vowel does not appear; *a m-o*, *reg-o* (not *am-a-o*, *reg-i-o*).

Rem. 2. In the 3d person plural, the third conjugation uses *u* instead of *i*; e. g., *reg-u-nt*; the fourth inserts *u*; e. g., *aud-i-unt*.

* *Ama*, *mone*, *audi*, are the proper *crude forms* of these verbs respectively. They are classed together, in a philosophical treatment of the language, as *one* conjugation of *pure* verbs; while those of the *third* conjugation form the conjugation of *consonant* verbs.

(235.)

TABLE.

	Tense-Stem.	Connect. Vowel.	Person-Endings.	FORMS COMPLETE.			
				1.	2.	3.	4.
1.	ām-	a.	o. s.	āmo (ama-o). āmā-s.	mōnē-o. monē-s.	rēg-o. rēg-is.	audī-o. audi-s.
2.	mōn-	e.	t.	āmā-t.	monē-t.	rēg-ī-t.	audi-t.
3.	reg-	ī.	mus.	āmā-mus.	mōnē-mūs.	rēg-ī-mūs.	audi-mūs.
			tis.	āmā-tis.	mōnē-tis.	rēg-ī-tis.	audi-tis.
4.	aud-	i(u).	nt.	āmā-nt.	mōnē-nt.	rēg-u-nt.	audi-u-nt.

Rem. Observe that the *vowels* are long before the person-endings in 1st, 2d, and 4th conjugations, except where they come before *o* or *t*. In those before *o*, the general rule (24, 1) prevails; and it is also an *invariable* rule, in Latin, that *no vowel in a final syllable can be long before t*.

(236.)

EXERCISE.

[The pupil should hereafter analyze the tense-forms, as they occur, somewhat as follows:]

Āmās: *verb-stem*, am-; *pres. tense-stem*, ām-; *connecting vowel*, a; *2d pers. ending*, s.

Mōnēmūs: *verb-stem*, mon-; *pres. tense-stem*, mōn-; *connecting vowel*, e; *1st plur. ending*, mūs.

Rēgītis: *verb-stem*, rēg-; *pres. tense-stem*, rēg-; *connecting vowel*, i; *2d plur. ending*, tis.

Audiunt: *verb-stem*, aud-; *pres. tense-stem*, aud-; *connecting vowels*, i and u; *3d plur. ending*, nt.

In like manner, analyze

Festīnās,	hābēt,	vidētis,	convōcō,	festīnātis.
Vigīlāmūs,	prōhibent,	lēgīt,	hābētis,	pugnāt,
Vōcātis,	poscīmūs,	dormimūs,	mūniunt,	laudent,
Rēvocānt,	vēniunt,	audītis,	ambulāmūs,	vulnerāmūs.

LESSON XL.

*Analysis of Tense-Formations, continued.**Active.*

(237.)

IMPERFECT TENSE.

(a) *Person-endings*, m, s, t, mūs, tis, nt.

(b) *The tense-stem*,

- (1.) In 1st conj. adds āb to the verb-stem; e. g., ām-āb.
- (2.) In 2d conj. " ēb " e. g., mōn-ēb.
- (3.) In 3d conj. " ēb " e. g., rēg-ēb.
- (4.) In 4th conj. " iēb " e. g., aud-iēb.

(c) The *connecting vowel* *a* is used to join the tense-stems and person-endings; *e. g.*, *āmāb-ā-m*.

	Tense-Stem.	Con. Vow.	Person-Endings.	FORMS COMPLETE.			
				1.	2.	3.	4.
1.	ām-āb-	a.	m.	āmābā-m.	mōnēbā-m.	rēgēbā-m.	audiēbā-m.
2.	mōn-ēb-		s.	āmābā-s.	mōnēbā-s.	rēgēbā-s.	audiēbā-s.
3.	rēg-ēb.		t.	āmābā-t.	mōnēbā-t.	rēgēbā-t.	audiēbā-t.
4.	aud-iēb-		mus. tis. nt.	āmābā-mūs. āmābā-tīs. āmābā-nt.	mōnēbā-mūs. mōnēbā-tīs. mōnēbā-nt.	rēgēbā-mūs. rēgēbā-tīs. rēgēbā-nt.	audiēbā-mūs. audiēbā-tīs. audiēbā-nt.

FUTURE TENSE.

(238.) I. We treat the 1st and 2d conjugations first. In these,

(a) The *person-endings* are, *o*, *s*, *t*, *mūs*, *tīs*, *nt*.

(b) The *tense-stems*, precisely like the *imperf.* in the same conjugations,

(1.) In 1st conj., add *āb* to the verb-stem; *e. g.*, *ām-āb*.

(2.) In 2d conj., “ *ēb* ” *e. g.*, *mōn-ēb*.

(c) The *connecting vowel* *i* is used to join the tense-stems and person-endings; *e. g.*, *āmāb-ī-t*; *mōnēb-ī-t*. But in the third person plural, *u* is used instead of *ī*; *e. g.*, *āmāb-u-nt*.

Rem. In the 1st person the connecting vowel is dropped (as in 234, *c*, R. 1); thus, *āmāb-o* (not *āmāb-ī-o*).

(239.)

TABLE.

	Tense-Stem.	Connecting Vowel.	Person-Endings.	FORMS COMPLETE.	
				1.	2.
1.	ām-āb-	i.	o.	āmāb-o.	mōnēb-o.
			s.	āmābī-s.	mōnēbī-s.
			t.	āmābī-t.	mōnēbī-t.
2.	mōn-ēb-		mus. tis. nt.	āmābī-mūs. āmābī-tīs. āmābū-nt.	mōnēbī-mūs. mōnēbī-tīs. mōnēbū-nt.

(240.) II. The 3d and 4th conjugations present some irregularity in the future.

(a) The *person-endings* are, *m*, *s*, *t*, *mūs*, *tīs*, *nt*.

(b) The *tense-stem*,

(1) In the 3d conj., is the simple verb-stem; *e. g.*, *rēg*.

(2) In the 4th conj., it adds *ī* to the verb-stem; *e. g.*, *aud-ī*.

(c) The connecting vowel *e* is used to join the tense-stem and person-endings; *rĕg-ĕ-mŭs*, *aud-ĭ-ĕ-mŭs*. But in the *first* person *a* is substituted for *e* in both conjugations; *e. g.*, *rĕg-ă-m*, *aud-ĭ-ă-m*, not *reg-ĕ-m*, *audĭ-ĕ-m*.

(241.)

TABLE.

Tense-Stem.	Con'g. Vowel.	Pers. Endings.	FORMS COMPLETE.	
			3.	4.
<i>rĕg-</i>	<i>a.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>rĕgă-m.</i>	<i>audĭă-m.</i>
		<i>s.</i>	<i>rĕgĕ-s.</i>	<i>audĭĕ-s.</i>
		<i>t.</i>	<i>rĕgĕ-t.</i>	<i>audĭĕ-t.</i>
<i>audĭ-</i>	<i>e.</i>	<i>mŭs.</i>	<i>rĕgĕ-mŭs.</i>	<i>audĭĕ-mŭs.</i>
		<i>tis.</i>	<i>rĕgĕ-tis.</i>	<i>audĭĕ-tis.</i>
		<i>nt.</i>	<i>rĕgĕ-nt.</i>	<i>audĭĕ-nt.</i>

(242.) (a)

EXAMPLES.

Āmābātis: *verb-stem*, *ăm-*; *tense-stem*, *ămāb-*; *imperf. con vowel*, *a*; *2d plur. ending*, *-tis*.

Āmābītis: *verb-stem*, *ăm-*; *tense-stem*, *ămāb-*; *fut. con. vowel*, *ī*; *2d plur. ending*, *-tis*.

Audĭēmŭs: *verb-stem*, *aud-*; *fut. tense-stem*, *audĭ-*; *connecting vowel*, *e*; *1st plur. ending*, *-mŭs*.

[The pupil should keep up the habit of finding any tense-form which he may need to use, by putting together its proper parts; *e. g.*, stem, ending, &c., rather than by recurring to the paradigms.]

(b) Analyze the following:

<i>Laudābām,</i>	<i>laudābō,</i>	<i>laudābītis,</i>
<i>Dōcēbāmŭs,</i>	<i>munĭēbāmŭs,</i>	<i>lēgām,</i>
<i>Occidēbant,</i>	<i>dormiēbātis,</i>	<i>scribēmŭs,</i>
<i>Dormiām,</i>	<i>audĭēt,</i>	<i>dōcēbunt,</i>
&c.	&c.	&c.

LESSON XLI.

Analysis of Tense-Formations, continued.

PASSIVE VOICE.

(243.) THE passive-endings are,

Sing. 1st person, *r*; 2d person, *rīs* or *rĕ*; 3d person, *tūr*.Plur. 1st person, *mūr*; 2d person, *mīnī*; 3d person, *ntūr*.

(244.) These endings are affixed to the tense-stems, formed as in the active voice, and with the same con-

necting vowels. Only the following apparent irregularities are to be noticed.

(a) In the 1st pers. pres. indic. the ending *r* is added to the full present active form; *e. g.*, *ămo, ămo-r; dōceo, dōceo-r, &c.*

(b) In the 3d conj., 2d pers. sing., pres., *e* is used for connecting vowel instead of *i*; *e. g.*, *ręg-ě-rīs, ręg-ě-rě, instead of ręg-ī-rīs, &c.*

(c) In the 1st and 2d conj., future, 2d pers. sing., *e* is used for connecting vowel instead of *i*; *e. g.*, *mōneb-ě-rīs, ămāb-ě-rīs, instead of ămāb-ī-rīs, mōneb-ī-rīs.*

(245).

EXERCISE.

Examples.—*Dōcentūr: verb-stem, dōc-; pres. tense-stem, dōc-; connecting vowel, e; 3d plur. pass. ending, -ntūr.*

Ămābāmūr: verb-stem, am-; imperf. tense-stem, ămāb-; imperf. conn. vowel, a; 1st plur. pass. ending, -mūr.

Audientūr: verb-stem, aud-; fut. tense-stem, audi-; fut. conn. vowel, e; 3d plur. pass. ending, -ntūr.

Ręgör: verb-stem, ręg-; pres. act. 1st pers., rego-; 1st pers. pass. ending, -r.

(246.) Analyze

Ręgēbāmūr,

Dōcēbīmūr,

Tīmēbārīs,

Dōcēbāmīnī,

&c.

occīdēmūr,

audiēmīnī,

dōcēbērīs,

ămātūr,

&c.

laudantūr,

vīdēbīmūr,

dōcēbuntūr,

rēgītūr,

&c.

P A R T I I.

FULLER EXHIBITION OF THE FORMS OF WORDS



§ 1.

ADDITIONAL RULES OF QUANTITY.

LESSON XLII.

[THE student should now learn thoroughly the following rules of quantity, most of which he has seen illustrated frequently already.]

GENERAL RULES.

(246.) (1) A vowel before another is short; *e. g.*, vĭ-a.

(2) A vowel before two consonants, or a double one, is *long by position*; *e. g.*, bĕllum.

Rem. A mute followed by a *liquid* in the same syllable renders the preceding *short* vowel common *a* verse; *e. g.*, volĭ-cris. (In *prose*, the short vowel remains short.)

(3) All diphthongs and contracted syllables are long; *e. g.*, a ū-rŭm, c ō-go (for co+ago).

SPECIAL RULES.

(1.) Final Syllables.

1. Monosyllables.

(247.) (a) Most monosyllables ending in a *vowel* are *long*; but the particles quĕ, vĕ, nĕ, ptĕ, &c., attached to other words, are *short*.

(b) Most monosyllables ending in a *consonant* are *long*; but the nouns cŏr, fĕl, mĕl, vĭr, ōs (ossis); the pronouns quĭs, quĭd, quŏt; and the particles nĕc, ĭn, ān, ād, sĕd, with all ending in *t*, are *short*; also ĕs, 2d person of sŭm.

2. Dissyllables and Polysyllables.

(A) Final Vowels.

(248.) *a* final is *short* in nouns, except the abl. of the 1st declension; *long* in verbs, and in indeclinable words, except ĭtĕ, quĭĕ, ĕjĕ.

(249.) *e* final is *short* in nouns (except 5th declension) and verbs (except imperatives); *long* in adverbs derived from adjectives of the first class, with fĕrmĕ, fĕrĕ, ohĕ.

(250.) *i* final is *long*; but mĭhĭ, tĭbĭ, sĭbĭ, ĭbĭ, ūbĭ, are *common*; nisĭ, quasĭ, *short*.

(251.) *o* final is *common*; but *long* in dat. and abl. cases of nouns and adjs. used as adverbs (*e. g.*, *falsō*, &c.); *egō*, *duō*, *ōctō*, are *short*.

(252.) *u* final is always *long*; *e. g.*, *diū*.

(B) *Final Consonants.*

(253.) All final syllables ending in a consonant (except *s*) are *short*.

Rules for s final.

(254.) Final *ās*, *ēs*, *ōs*, are generally *long*; *e. g.*, *amās*, *docēs*, *equōs*.

Rem. 1. *ēs* is *short* (1) in nouns which have short penult in the gen., *e. g.*, *mīlēs* (*mīlīt-īs*).

2. *ōs* is *short* in comp *ōs*, *impōs*.

(255.) Final *īs* and *ūs* are generally *short*; *e. g.*, *reg-īs*, *lomin-ūs*.

Rem. 1. *īs* is *long* (1) in dat. and abl. plural of nouns; (2) in 2d pers. sing. of verbs of 4th conjugation; (3) compounds of *vīs*; *e. g.*, *ma vīs*, *quam vīs*, &c.

2. *ūs* is *long* (1) in nouns of 3d decl. which have *ū* long in the penult of gen.; *e. g.*, *virtūs* (*ūtīs*), *palūs* (*ūdīs*); (2) in gen. sing., and N., A., V. plur. of 4th declension.

(2.) *Derivation and Composition.*

(256.) Derivative and compound words generally retain the quantity of the primitive and simple words; *e. g.*, *āmo*, *āmicus*; *pōno*, *impōno*.

(3.) *Increase.*

[A noun is said to *increase* when it has more syllables in the gen. than in the nom. (*e. g.*, *mīlēs*, *mīlīt-īs*; here *īt* is the increase); a *verb*, when it has more syllables than the 2d pers. sing. indic. (*e. g.*, *āmās*, *āmāt-īs*; here *āt* is the increase.)]

(257.) In the increase of nouns, *a* and *o* are generally *long*; *e, i, u, y*, *short*.

(258.) In the increase of verbs, *a, e, and o* are generally *long*; *i, u*, *short*.

(4.) *Penults.*

(259.) Every perfect tense of two syllables has the first *long* (as *vīdī*), except *bībi*, *fīdī*, *tūlī*, *dēdī*, *stēti*, and *scīdī*.

(260.) Penults of adjectives, (1) *īdus*, *īcus*, *short*; (2)

In us, doubtful (often long); (3) ilis and bilis, derived from verbs, short; from nouns, long.

[All exceptions to the above rules that are not stated will be marked in the vocabularies.]

(261.)

EXERCISE ON QUANTITIES.

[Give the quantity of the *unmarked* syllables of the following words, with the rule for each.]

1. Final Vowels.

Ipse, agmīne, die, rēgēre, rēge, dōcēbēre, re, mōve, mōvēre, bēne (adv. from bōnūs), Cēsāre, optīme (adv., from optīmūs), me, dōmīni, vīgīlia, audi, adventu, īre, hi, consīlio, consūle, de, tertia, vīgīliæ, contra, rōga, mōneo, īta, fructu, āmo.

2. Final Consonants.

Obsīdes, bōnas, vīgīlias, āmat, mīles (mīlītis), mīlītes, rōgāvēras, has, bōnum, lampas (lampādis), pedes (pēditis), pēdītes, illas, adventus (gen.), rēgis, sīmul, audis, linter, audītis, vīgīliis, cāput, virtus (virtūtis), dōmīnis, mānus, rēgītur, rēgītis, mūnis, mūnīvēras.

3. Increase.

Āmatis, militis, audiris, obsidem, mōnemus, monebatis, ītineris, rōgabas, mōnebāmur, audimus, mōnebimini, vōluptatis, sermonis, murmure, pēdites, clāmōrem, milites, vulturem, āmatis, mōnebatis, mōnetote, audite, lēgimus, pedem, sēgetis (from sēges).

4. Penults.

Mālēdicus, mīrīficus, bēnēficus, fācilis (from fācio), puērīlis (from puer), āmābilis (from āmo), servīlis (from servus).

§ 2.

TENSES OF VERBS FOR COMPLETED ACTION.—PARTIAL STATEMENT. (XLIII.—XLVI.)

LESSON XLIII.

Tense Forms for Completed Action.—Indicative.

(262.) IN Part I. we made use only of those tenses of the verb which express action as *continuing* or *incomplete*, viz., the present, imperfect, and future. There are three tenses also for *completed* action, viz., perfect (*I have written*), pluperfect (*I had written*), future perfect (*I shall have written*). The stem for all these is the same.

(263.) The endings for these three tenses are,

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	1st.	2d.	3d.	1st.	2d.	3d.
Perfect.	ī.	istī.	īt.	īmūs.	istīs.	{ ērunt, or ērē.
Pluperf.	ērām.	ērās.	ērāt.	ērāmūs.	ērātīs.	ērant.
Fut. Perf.	ērō.	ērīs.	ērīt.	ērīmūs.	ērītīs.	ērint.

(264.) By adding these endings to the perfect-stem *fu-* of the verb *essē*, to be, we obtain the forms perfect (*I have been*), pluperfect (*I had been*), future perfect (*I shall have been*).

Perfect-Stem.	Perfect.	Pluperfect.	Future Perfect.
Fu-	ī.	ērām.	ērō.
	istī.	ērās.	ērīs.
	īt.	ērāt.	ērīt.
	īmūs.	ērāmūs.	ērīmūs.
	istīs.	ērātīs.	ērītīs.
	ērunt, or ēre.	ērant.	ērint.

(265.) *Double use of the Perfect.*—It must be carefully observed that the Latin perfect has two uses, one answering to the English perfect, and the other to the English imperfect

Thus, *fui* means not only *I have been*, but *I was*. We call the former the perfect present; the latter the perfect aorist,* which expresses momentary action in past time; e. g., *Crassus* was chief of the embassy—*Crassus princeps lēgatiōnis fuit*.

EXERCISE.

(266.) Vocabulary.

To be over, to preside over, to command, *præessē* (*præ+esse*, to be before).

To be wanting, *de-essē* (*dē+essē*, to be from).

To be in, to be present at, *interessē* (*inter+essē*, to be among).

Sick, *æger*, *gra*, *grum* (77, a).

Praise, laus, (*laud*) *is* (f.).

After, post (*prep. acc.*).

Before, ante (*prep. acc.*).

Because, *quā* (*conj.*, 248).

How long? *quamdīū* (*adv.*).

Afterward, *postea*.

Virtuous, *prōbūs*, *ā*, *um*.

(267.) Examples.

(a) If we shall have been always virtuous in life, after death also we shall be happy.

Sī in vitā semp̄r prōbī fuērī-mūs, etiām post mortēm beatī ērīmūs.

(b) The Roman soldiers were present at many battles.

Militēs Rōmānī praeliis multis interfuerunt.

Rule of Syntax.—The compounds of *essē* with the prepositions *præ*, *inter*, *ob*, *pro*, *de*, take the *dative* case.

(268.) Translate into English.

Thēmistoclēs vir magnūs ēt clārūs fuīt.—*Cūr hērī in scholā nōn fuistī?*—*Quia cūm patre in hortō fuī.*—*Quamdīū in urbē fuistis?*—*Sex diēs* (191, c).—*Antē bellūm in urbē fuerāmūs.*—*Crassūs lēgātūs* (225, a) *cōpiis Rōmānōrūm præfuērāt.*—*Nunquām deērīt tibi laus hominūm, si semp̄r prōbūs fuerīs.*—*Ægernē* (135, II., a) *fuistī hērī?*—*Antē Cicerōnis ætātēm oratōrēs multī ēt clārī fuerant, nēc postea dēfuērunt.*—*Cæsār praeliis multis interfuit.*

(269.) Translate into Latin.

[Recollect the double use of the perfect (*present* and *aorist*, 265).]

Divitiacus commanded (præfuit) the forces of the Æduans.

* The *aorist* use of the perfect is more common in Latin than the *present*.

—If you shall have been always virtuous in life, after death also you shall be happy.—If we are always virtuous, the praise of men shall never be wanting to us.—We were not in school yesterday, because we had been in the garden with (our) father.—*Had you been* (135, II., a) in our garden?—Have you been sick?—How long have you been in the city? Four days (191, c).—The lieutenant had been in the city before the war.—Before the age of Cæsar there had been many and great generals; nor were they wanting afterward.—Cæsar and the Roman soldiers were present at many battles.

LESSON XLIV.

Tenses of Verbs for Completed Action, continued.

(270.) THE tense-stem of the perfect tense is formed in most verbs as follows:

- (1) In 1st conj. by adding *āv* to the verb-stem; e. g., *ām-āv*.
 (2) In 2d conj. “ *ū* “ e. g., *mōn-ū*.
 (4) In 4th conj. “ *iv* “ e. g., *aud-iv*

[The *third* conjugation is treated in the next lesson.]

(271.) By adding the perfect-endings (263) to the tense-stems formed (as in 270), we obtain the following perfect-tense forms of *āmārē*, *to love*; *mōnērē*, *to advise*; *audirē*, *to hear*.*

	PRF.-STEMS.	ENDINGS.	
		<i>I, thou, he, we, ye, they,</i>	
1st conj.	<i>āmāv-</i>	} <i>i, istī, it, imūs, istīs, erunt, or</i>	{ <i>have loved.</i>
2d conj.	<i>mōnū-</i>		
4th conj.	<i>audiv-</i>		
		<i>ērē,</i>	{ <i>have advised.</i>
			{ <i>have heard.</i>

* In the first, second, and fourth conjugations, it is obvious that the perfect is made up of the crude-form of the verb and *fui*; e. g., *ama-fui* = *āmāvī*; *monē-fui* = *monuī*; *audi-fui* = *audivī*.

EXERCISE.

(272.) *Vocabulary.*

<i>Preceptor</i> , præceptōr, (præceptōr) is (m.).	<i>Pleasant</i> , jūcundus, ā, ūm.
<i>Tribune</i> , tribūnūs, ī (m.).	<i>All night</i> , pēr tōtām noctēm.
<i>Sister</i> , sōrōr, (sōrōr) is (f.).	<i>Diligently</i> , dilīgētēr (215, 2, b).
<i>Disgrace</i> , ignōmīniā, æ (f.).	<i>From every side</i> , undīquē (adv.).
	<i>To excite</i> , excitārē.

(273.) *Examples.*

(a) <i>I loved the boy.</i>	Puērūm ā m ā v ī.
(b) <i>From my boyhood I have loved my mother.</i>	Ā puerō (i. e., from a boy) matrēm ā m ā v ī.

[Obs. In (a) the perfect aorist is used; in (b) the perfect present.]

(274.) *Translate into English.*

Cæsār omnēs undīquē mercātōrēs ād sē (145, a) convōcāvīt. —Ā puērō fratrēm et sōrōrēm āmāvī. —Cūr per tōtām noctem vīgīlāvistī? —Quiā pātēr ægēr fuit. —Militēs diū et ācrītēr pugnāvērunt. —Hōs puerōs* magistēr dilīgētēr docuīt linguām Latīnām.* —Tuā ipsiūs (159) causā (135, II., b) tē sēpē monuī. —Tīmōr ignōmīniæ Germānōs ad virtutem excitāvīt. —Jūcundūm āviūm (78, II., b) cantūm audīvīmūs. —Dormīvistīnē? —Nōn dormīvī. —Cæsāris adventūs oppidānos terruīt.

[Inflect all the verbs in this lesson through the perfect tense, and form the perfect according to (270).]

(275.) *Translate into Latin.*

Cæsar called together all the lieutenants from every side to himself (145, a). —From my boyhood I have loved my preceptors. —The good preceptor taught me* the Greek language. —Cæsar called-together all the lieutenants and tribunes (tribunōs-quē, 202, N.) of the soldiers to himself. —The slaves have watched all night. —(Your) father has often advised you for your own sake (135, II., b). —The Gauls took-possession-of Rome. —The love of glory has always excited the Romans to bravery. —We have diligently taught the boys. —Why did you not sleep? Because my mother was sick. —They have heard the pleasant singing of the birds. —We have fortified all the

* Verbs of *teaching* take two accusatives, one of the person, the other of the thing.

towers of Gaul.—The coming of Cæsar terrified the Æduans and Helvetians.—I have often walked in Cæsar's garden, on-the-other-side-of the Tiber (trans Tibērīm).

LESSON XLV.

Tenses for Completed Action, continued. — Perfect Tense, Third Conjugation.

(276.) THE perfect tense-stem of most verbs of the third conjugation is formed by adding *s* to the verb-stem; *e. g.*,

		Perfect-stem.
rĕg-ĕrĕ,	to rule,	rĕg-s = rex-
scrib-ĕrĕ,	to write,	scrib-s = scrips-
lūd-ĕrĕ,	to play,	lūd-s = lus-

(277.) *Rules of Euphony.*

(1) A *c*-sound before *s* forms *x*; d ū c-s = d ū x; r ĕ g-s = rex.

Rem. *c, g, h, gu, qu*, are classed among *k*-sounds. *v* also (generally) before *s* forms *x*; v ī v-s = v ī x.

(2) *b* before *s* is changed into *p*; *e. g.*, scrib-s = scrips; n ū b-s = n ū ps.

(3) A *t*-sound is (generally) dropped before *s*; l ū d-s = l ū s; claud-s = claus.

Rem. *t* and *d* are the *t*-sounds.

(278.) By adding the perfect-endings (263) to the stems of rĕg-ĕrĕ, scrib-ĕrĕ, lūd-ĕrĕ, we obtain the perfect tense-forms (*have ruled, have written, have played*).

PERFECT-STEMS.	ENDINGS.	
(rĕg-s =) rex-	<i>I, thou, he, we, ye, they,</i>	
(scrib-s =) scrips-	{ <i>ī, istī, it, īmūs, istīs, ērunt, or</i>	{ <i>have ruled.</i>
(lūd-s =) lūs-		
	<i>ērĕ.</i>	<i>have written.</i>
		<i>have played.</i>

EXERCISE.

(279.) *Vocabulary.*

Suddenly, sūbitō.

To say, dicērē.

To draw (as a sword), stringērē.

Sword, glādiūs, ī.

Trial, iūdicium, ī.

To lead together, conducērē.

To divide, dividērē.

Household, familiā, æ.

Orgetorix, Orgētōrix, (Orgētōrig) is.

A dependent, cliens, (client) is (c.).

Nature, nātūrā, æ.

Stoic, stoicus, ī.

(280.) *Examples.*

(a) *Did not Cæsar say these things?*

Non nē Cæsār hęc dixit?

(Nonnē is used in asking questions when the answer *yes* is expected.)

(b) *Did Cæsar say this (i. e., is it possible that he did)?*

Num Cæsār hęc dixit?

(Num is used when the answer *no* is expected.)

(281.) *Translate into English.*

[Recollect double use of perfect (265).]

Cæsār duās legiōnēs conscripsit; trēs ex hibernis ēduxit.—Principēs Germānōrū omnēs suās cōpiās Rhenum (113, II., a) transduxērunt.—Consul glādiū strinxit.—Nonnē (280, a) glādiō strinxistis?—Num impērātōr glādiū strinxit?—Orgētōrix ad iūdicium omnēm suām familiām et omnēs clientēs conduxit.—Cæsār exercitū in duās partēs divisit.—Nonnē epistolām ad patrēm scripsisti?—Stoici divisērunt nātūrām hominis in ānīmū et corpūs.—Multās littērās hōdiē scripsimūs.

[What is the force of *ē* in eduxit? of *con* in conduxit? of *trans* in transduxit? Describe the formation of the perfect, and the euphonic changes, in all the verbs of this lesson.]

(282.) *Translate into Latin.*

The soldiers *suddenly* drew their swords.—Cæsar levied five legions in Italy.—Cæsar levied six legions in Italy, and led out four from (their) winter-quarters in Gaul.—The Æduans endeavour to *lead* (113, II., a) all their forces *across* the Rhine.—The general divided the army into five parts.—Did Cæsar say these (things) yesterday (280, b)?—Did you not write a letter to your brother?—Have you written a letter to the king (280, b)?—Orgetorix led-together all his household to the trial.

—Orgetorix led-together to the trial all his household and all (his) dependents.—Why have you drawn (your) sword?—Why have you not written to (your) father?—The Æduans levied many soldiers.—We have divided the nature of man into soul and body.

LESSON XLVI.

Tenses for Completed Action, continued.—Pluperfect and Future Perfect Tenses.

(283.) (a) The *pluperfect* tense simply adds to the perfect tense-stem the *imperfect* of *esse* (to be); viz., *ērām, ērās, &c.*

(b) The *future perfect* simply adds to the perfect tense-stem the *future* of *esse*; viz., *ērō, ēris, &c.*; but in 3d plural it changes *u* into *i*; viz., *erint*, instead of *erunt*.

(284.) Thus, from *ām-āre, mōn-ērē, rēg-ērē aud-irē*, we have,

PRF.-STEM.	PLUPERFECT-ENDING.	
	<i>I, thou, he, we, ye, they,</i>	
1. <i>āmāv-</i>	} <i>ērām, ērās, ērāt, ērāmūs, ērātīs, ērant,</i>	} <i>had loved. had advised. had ruled. had heard.</i>
2. <i>mōnū-</i>		
3. <i>rex-</i>		
4. <i>audīv-</i>		
	FUTURE PERFECT.	
1. <i>āmāv-</i>	} <i>ērō, ēris, ērit, ērimūs, ēritīs, erint,</i>	} <i>shall have loved. shall have advised. shall have ruled. shall have heard.</i>
2. <i>mōnū-</i>		
3. <i>rex-</i>		
4. <i>audīv-</i>		

EXERCISE.

(285.) *Vocabulary.*

Defiles, angustiae, arum (pl.).

To err, errare.

To draw, ducere.

A principle, principium, i.

To attack, oppugnare.

Near, juxta (prep. acc.).

Already, jam (adv.).

To take by storm, expugnare

(286.) *Translate into English.*

(a) *Pluperfect*.—*Militēs diū et acritēr pugnāverant.*—*Pātēr filiūm sarpē mōnūrāt.*—*Duās lēgiōnēs in Italiā conscripserāmūs.*—*Helvētīi jam pēr angustias cōpiās suās transduxerant.*—

Cæsār castellā Galliæ munīverāt ēt trēs lēgiōnēs ex hibernīs ēduxērāt.

(b) *Future Perfect.*

Rem. The *future perfect* is sometimes used in Latin, when in English we should use the simple perfect or *future*; e. g.,

When I (shall) have written the letter, I shall come to you. | Quum ēpistolām scripsērō, ad tē vēniām.

Quum āmicūm in hortūm duxērō, ad tē vēniām.—Haud errāverō, sī ā Platōnē principiūm duxērō.—Quum hostēs castellā expugnāverint, urbēm ipsām (159) oppugnābunt.—Haud errāverīs, sī ā Cicērōne principiā duxēris.

(287.) *Translate into Latin.*

(a) *Pluperfect.*—The general had drawn his sword.—Near the city the soldiers had fought long and spiritedly.—Cæsar had levied one legion in Italy, and led-out seven from (their) winter-quarters in Gaul.—The Helvetians had already led their forces across the Rhine (113, II., a), through the boundaries of the Sequanians.—I had often advised you for your own sake (135, II., b).

(b) *Future Perfect* (R., 286, b).—When we have written the letters, we shall come to the city.—We shall not have erred, if we shall have drawn (ducērē) our principles from Plato.—When Cæsar shall have taken-by-storm the city, he will attack the tower itself (159).

§ 3.

NOUNS OF THIRD DECLENSION.—FULLER TREATMENT. (XLVII.—LVII)

[The third declension contains more nouns than all the others together. It also involves greater difficulties ; and we therefore give it a full treatment in the following section, which should be carefully studied.]

LESSON XLVII.

(288.) THE *genitive-ending* of the third declension is *is*.

Rem. To find the *stem* of any noun of this declension, strike off *is* from the gen.; e. g., G., *nōmīnis* (*of a name*), stem, *nōmīn*.

(289.) ENDINGS FOR ALL THE CASES.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M. and F.	N.		M. and F.	N.
N.	—	—	N.	ēs.	ā (īā).
G.	is.	īs.	G.	ūm (iūm).	ūm (iūm).
D.	i.	i.	D.	ībūs.	ībūs.
A.	ēm (im).	like Nom.	A.	ēs.	ā (īā).
V.	like Nom.	like Nom.	V.	ēs.	ā (īā).
A.	ē (i).	ē (i).	A.	ībūs.	ībūs.

(290.) The *nom.-ending* is not given, because of the many forms in which that case occurs. The most common *nom.-ending* is *s* ; but the stem itself is often employed as the *nom.* ; and is often, again, changed. We make *six* classes, which must be carefully distinguished, viz. :

(291.) CLASSES.

- I. Nouns which add *s* to the stem in the nominative without any vowel change. (*Feminines*.)
- II. Nouns which insert a connecting vowel (*e* or *i*) before adding *s*. (*Feminines*.)
- III. Nouns which change the stem-vowel (*i* into *e*) before adding *s*. (*Masculines*.)
- IV. Nouns which add *ē* to the stem. (*Neuters*.)

V. Nouns which present the *unchanged* stem in the nominative without adding s. (*Masculines*, except -al, -ar, -ur, which are *Neuter*.)

VI. Nouns which present the stem *changed* in the nominative without adding s. (*Masculines*, *Feminines*, and *Neuters*.)

(292.) [Before entering upon the paradigms, the student should learn thoroughly the following *rules of euphony*, which prevail generally in Latin nouns and verbs.]

(1) c or g before s unites with it to form x; *e. g.*, leg-s is written lex; arc-s=arx; voc-s=vox, &c.

(2) d or t before s is dropped; *e. g.*, laud-s=laus; quiet-s=quies; parent-s=parens.

(293.) CLASS I.—*The Nominative adds s to the Stem, without any Vowel change. (Feminines.)*

Sing.	City (f.).	Citadel (f.).	Praise (f.).	Race (nation), f.	Quiet (f.).
N. and V.	urb-s.	arx (arc-s).	laus (laud-s).	gens(gent-s).	quiēs.
Gen.	urb-īs.	arc-īs.	laud-īs.	gent-īs.	quiēt-īs.
Dat.	urb-ī.	arc-ī.	laud-ī.	gent-ī.	quiēt-ī.
Acc.	urb-ēm.	arc-ēm.	laud-ēm.	gent-ēm.	quiēt-ēm.
Abl.	urb-ē.	arc-ē.	laud-ē.	gent-ē.	quiēt-ē.
Plur.	Cities.	Citadels.	Praises.	Races (nations).	
N., A., V.	urb-ēs.	arc-ēs.	laud-ēs.	gent-ēs.	quiēt-ēs.
Gen.	urb-īūm.	arc-īūm.	laud-īūm.	gent-īūm.	quiēt-ūm.
D. and A.	urb-ībūs.	arc-ībūs.	laud-ībūs.	gent-ībūs.	quiet-ībūs.

On this class, observe carefully that,

(294.) As to the *case-endings*, ī ū m is the gen. plur. ending of those nouns whose stems end in *two* consonants; *e. g.*, urb-s, urb-īs, urb-ium; nox, noct-īs, noct-īūm; cōhors, cohort-īs, cōhort-īūm.

(295.) As to *gender*, they are mostly feminine. Hence,


Rule of Gender.—Nouns which add s to the stem, without changing the stem-vowel, to form the nom., are *feminine*.

[*Rem. Exceptions.* The following are *masculines* :

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| 1. dens (dent-īs), <i>tooth</i> . | *bīdens (bīdent-īs), <i>hoe</i> . |
| mons (mont-īs), <i>mountain</i> . | *torrens (torrent-īs), <i>torrent</i> . |
| fons (font-īs), <i>fountain</i> . | *trīdens (trīdent-īs), <i>trident</i> . |
| pous (pont-īs), <i>bridge</i> . | *ōriens (ōrient-īs), <i>east</i> . |
| rūdens (rudent-īs), <i>rope</i> . | *occīdens (occident-īs), <i>west</i> . |

* These nouns in ens are properly adjectives, with a masc. noun understood; *e. g.*, oriens sol, torrens amnis, &c.

2. *Grex* (grĕg) is, a *flock*; also a few nouns in *ix* and *ax*.
 3. *Páriēs*, (pāriet) is, *wall*; *pēs* (pĕd-is), *foot*; *lāpīs*, (lāpīd) is, *stone*,
vās (vād-is), *surety*.]

[ The *rules* of *gender* should be learned by heart; the lists of *exceptions* need not be, unless they are very short. All *exceptions* are marked in the *vocabularies*; and the lists should be referred to whenever cases occur.]

To Class I. belong the nouns of the following endings, of which the pupil has had frequent examples:

Libertās, *libertāt-is*, *liberty*; *dignitas*, *dignitāt-is*, *dignity*; and, in short, all nouns in *ās*, *ātis*.

Virtūs, *virtūt-is*, *virtue*; and all others in *ūs*, *ūtis*.

Pālūs, *pālūd-is*, *swamp*; and others in *ūs*, *ūdīs*.

In the following exercise several of the *exceptions* will be found.

EXERCISE.

(296.) Vocabulary.

Highest (the top), *summus*, ā, ūm.

Middle, *mēdiūs*, ā, ūm.

To leave, *rēlinquĕrĕ* (perf.-stem, *rēliqu-*).

To secede, *sēcēdĕrĕ* (perf.-stem, *sēc-*).

To take care of, *cūrāre*.

To touch upon, *to reach*, *attingĕrĕ*.

To seek, *to aim at*, *pētĕrĕ*.

To cut down, *rescindĕrĕ*.

Romulus, *Rōmūlus*, ī.

Hercynian, *Hercynius*, ā, um.

Senate, *sĕnātūs*, ūs (m.).

Agrippa, *Agrippā*, æ (m.).

Where, *ubīnām*?

The common people, *plebs*, (plĕb) is.

Patricians (of Rome), *patrēs*, (patr) ūm (pl.).

An interreign, *interregnūm*, ī.

Speedy, *cītūs*, ā, ūm.

[The nouns which occur in the preceding lesson are not named in the vocabulary: the learner will find them, and observe their *gender*.]

(297.) Examples.

(a) *On the top of the mountain.* | *Īn summō montĕ.*

(b) *On the tops of the trees.* | *Īn summīs ārbōribūs.*

(c) *In the middle of the city.* | *Īn mediā urbĕ.*

(d) *Where in the world?* | *Ubīnām gentiūm?*

(298.) Translate into English.

Magnā pars plēbis urbēm rēliquīt, ĕt ĩn montĕm (295, R. 1) *sēcĕssīt.*—*Tūm patrēs Agrippām ād plēbĕm mīsĕrunt* (401, 3, b) —*Hercyniā sylvā fīnēs multārūm gentiūm attingīt.*—*Cassiūs, lĕgātus* (225, a), *trēs cohortēs ĩn arcĕm oppīdī duxīt.*—*Ūbī nām gentiūm sūmūs?*—*Dĕūs cūrāt gentēs.*—*Āquīlæ ĩn sum*

mīs montībūs nīdīfīcant.—Magnūs (78, II., b) āviūm grex (295, R., 2) summām arcēm pētunt.—Milītes pontēm (295, R., 2) rescindunt.—Lēgēs Rōmānōrum justæ fuērunt.—Summūs mons (295, R., 1) ab hostibus tēnētūr.—Cæsār ad utramquē (194, R. 1) partēm pontis præsīdium rēliquit.—Post Rōmūli mortēm unīus (194) annī interregnūm fuit.—Sāpientēs mortem nōn timent.—Mors citā vēniēt.

[All the nouns should be declined, the rule of gender given, and the exceptions referred to if necessary. The formations of the verbs should be carefully analyzed.]

(299.) *Translate into Latin.*

The laws were just.—The fountain was beautiful.—The Hercynian forest touches the boundaries of five nations.—The common-people left the city, and seceded to the mountain.—The doves built-their-nest in the top of the citadel (297, a).—A large flock of birds flew over the city.—The soldiers fought long on the middle of the bridge (297, c).—Then the senate sent an ambassador to the common-people.—God takes care of cities and nations.—The Belgians inhabit one part of Gaul, the Aquitanians another.—Where in the world (297, d) are we? in what city do we live?—Cæsar fortified each part of the bridge

LESSON XLVIII.

Nouns.—Third Declension, continued.

(300.) CLASS II.—*The Nominative inserts a Connecting-vowel (ē or ī) before adding s to the Stem. (Feminines.)*

	e inserted.	i inserted.
Singular.	Cloud (l.).	Ship (l.).
N. and V.	nūb-ē-s.	nāv-ī-s.
Gen.	nūb-īs.	nāv-īs.
Dat.	nūb-ī.	nāv-ī.
Acc.	nūb-ēm.	nāv-ēm or īm.
Abl.	nūb-ē.	nāv-ē or ī.
Plural.	Clouds.	Ships.
N. A. V.	nūb-ēs.	nāv-ēs.
Gen.	nūb-iūm.	nāv-iūm.
D. and Abl.	nūb-ibūs.	nāv-ībūs.

On this class, observe carefully,

(301.) As to the *case-endings*: [(1) The acc.-ending *īm* instead of *ēm* is used: 1. *sometimes* (but rarely) in the words *clavis*, *key*; *messis*, *harvest*; *nāvis*, *ship*: 2. *commonly* in *febris*, *fever*; *pelvis*, *basin*; *puppis*, *stern*; *restis*, *rope*; *sēcūris*, *axe*; *turris*, *tower*: 3. *always* in *amussis*, *a rule*; *sītis*, *thirst*; *tussis*, *cough*; *vis*, *force*.]

[(2) The abl.-ending *ī* instead of *ē* is used (not, however, to the exclusion of *e*) in all those words which take *īm* in the acc.; e. g., *turris*, *turrim*, *turrī*: *vis*, *vim*, *vī* (always). Also in *ignis*, *fire*; *civis*, *citizen*.]

(3) The gen. plur. ending *iūm* instead of *ūm* is used in most nouns which insert *e* or *i* before adding *s* to the stem. [*Prolēs*, *canis*, *panis*, *vatēs*, *juvēnis* have *ūm*.]

(302.) *Rule of Gender*.—Nouns which insert a vowel (*e* or *i*) before adding *s* in the nominative are *feminines*.

[*Rem. Exceptions*:

<i>Amnis</i> (m.), <i>river</i> .	<i>fascis</i> (m.), <i>bundle</i> .	<i>pānis</i> (m.), <i>bread</i> .
<i>Axīs</i> (m.), <i>axle</i> .	<i>follis</i> (m.), <i>bellows</i> .	<i>piscis</i> (m.), <i>fish</i> .
<i>Callis</i> (m.), <i>path</i> .	<i>fūnis</i> (m.), <i>rope</i> .	<i>postis</i> (m.), <i>post</i> .
<i>Cānālis</i> (m.), <i>canal</i> .	<i>fustis</i> (m.), <i>club</i> .	<i>sentis</i> (m.), <i>bramble</i> .
<i>Collis</i> (m.), <i>hill</i> .	<i>ignis</i> (m.), <i>fire</i> .	<i>unguis</i> (m.), <i>finger nail</i> .
<i>Crinis</i> (m.), <i>hair</i> .	<i>mensis</i> (m.), <i>month</i> .	<i>vectis</i> (m.), <i>lever</i> .
<i>Ens</i> (m.), <i>sword</i> .	<i>orbis</i> (m.), <i>circle</i> .	<i>vermis</i> (m.), <i>worm</i> .]

EXERCISE.

[In the vocabularies, the Roman numerals I., II., &c., placed after nouns, refer to the *class* to which they belong.]

(303.) *Vocabulary*.

To dread, *formidārē*.

Pilot, *gubernātor*, *is* (m.).

To bring, *āgērē* (perf.-stem, *ēg-*).

To procure, *compārāre*.

A Carthaginian, *Carthaginiensis*, *is*.

To raise, *to kindle*, *excitārē*.

Power, *pōtestās*, (*pōtestāt*) *is* (f., I.).

Barbarian, *barbārūs*, *i*.

Vehemently, *greatly*, *vēhementēr*
(215, 2, b).

To build, *ædificāre*.

A fleet, *classis*, *is* (f., II.).

And, *ac*.

Twenty, *vīgīntī* (indecl.).

Lofty, *altūs*, *ā*, *ūm*.

Thirteen, *trēdecīm* (indecl.).

The Druids, *Druīdes*, *ūm* (m., pl.).

Thirst, *sītis*, (*sīt*) *is* (f., II.).

To relieve, *lēvārē*.

To dispute, *dispūtārē*.

To terrify, *terrērē* (perfect-stem,
terrū-).

(304.) *Translate into English*.

Nūbēs *sapē* *lūnām* *obscurant*.—*Civēs* *classēm* *hostiūm* *for-*

mīdant.—Cæsār nāvēs longas ædificāvit, ēt nautās gūbernātōrēsque (202, N.) compārāvit.—Crassūs ād oppidūm turrēs altās ēgit.—Vētērēs Romānī vim Carthāgīniensium non formīdāvērunt.—Cæsār turrēs trēdēcīm excitāvit.—Milītēs ignēs magnōs in summō montē (297, a) excitāvērunt.—Druides dē deōrūm immortalīūm vī āc potestātē dispūtant.—Classīs adventūs cīvēs terruit.—Āquā sītīm (301, 1) lēvāt.—Nōvā nāviūm figūrā vēhēmentēr (215, 2, b) barbārōs terruit.

(305.) *Translate into Latin.*

Lofty towers are raised by Cæsar.—The general prepared twenty long ships.—The lieutenant brought the towers to the wall of the city.—The power of the Romans terrified the Gauls.—Wine does not relieve thirst.—The sun is often obscured by the clouds.—The approach of the fleet and the soldiers terrified the citizens.—A great fire is kindled on the top of the mountain by the Æduans.—The general stationed the ships near the wall of the city.—The clouds are black.—The coming of our fleet and the strange (nōvā) figure of the ships terrified all the barbarians.

LESSON XLIX.

Nouns.—Third Declension, continued.

(306.) CLASS III.—*The Nominative changes the Stem-vowel (ī into ē) before adding s to the Stem.*

Vowel i changed into e.		
Singular.	Soldier (m.).	Book (m.).
N. and V.	mīlīt-s (milet-s).	cōdēx (codecs).
Gen.	mīlīt-īs.	cōdic-īs.
Dat.	mīlīt-ī.	cōdic-ī.
Acc.	mīlīt-ēm.	cōdic-ēm.
Abl.	mīlīt-ē.	cōdic-ē.
Plural.	Soldiers.	Books.
N. A. V.	mīlīt-ēs.	cōdic-ēs.
Gen.	mīlīt-ūm.	cōdic-ūm.
D. and A.	mīlīt-ībūs.	cōdic-ībūs.

On this class, observe that,

(307.) As to the *case-endings*, they are all regular.

(308.) As to *gender*, they are masculine. Hence,

Rule of Gender.—Nouns which change the stem-vowel *i* into *ě* before adding *s* in the nominative are *masculine*.

Exc. *Mergēs* (f.), (*mergītis*), *a sheaf*.

EXERCISE.

(309.) *Vocabulary.*

To double, *duplicārē*.

Brutus, *Brūtūs*, *i*.

Sharp, spirited, *ācēr*, *ācrīs*, *ācrē*
(105, R. 1).

Defender, *vindex*, (*vindīc*) *is* (m.,
III.).

Liberty, *libertās*, (*libertāt*) *is* (f., I.).

Foot-soldier, footman, *pēdēs*, (*pēdīt*)
is (m., III.).

Embark upon, *conscendērē*, *con-*
scādere (perf-stem, *conscend*),
(for *upon*, in with the accusative).

To depart, *discēdērē*.

I began, *cœpī*. Perfect, *defective*.

To sustain, *sustīnērē* (sub and tē-
nērē), perf-stem, *sustinu*.

At his own expense, *sumptū suō*
(abl.).

Expense, *sumptūs*, *ūs*.

To support, *ālērē* (perf-stem, *alu*).

Greatness, *magnitūdō*, (*magnitūdīn*)
is (f.).

A Briton, *Brītanūs*, *i*.

Guest, *hospēs*, (*hospīt*) *is* (m. and f.,
25, a).

To injure, to maltreat, *violārē*.

Companion, *cōmēs*, (*cōmīt*) *is* (m.
and f., 25, a).

Narrow, *angustūs*, *ā*, *ūm*.

Place, *lōcūs*, *i* (nom. pl., *lōcī* and
lōcā).

Conspiracy, *conjuratio* (*nīs*) (f.).

(310.) *Translate into English.*

Cæsār nūmērūm obsīdūm duplicābīt.—*Brūtūs ērāt ācēr libertātīs vindex.*—*Ēquītēs ēt pēdītēs īn nāvēs conscendērunt.*—*Dumnōrix cūm ēquītībūs discēdērē cœpīt.*—*Dumnōrix magnūm nūmērūm equītūm suō sumptū āluīt.*—*Mīlītēs omnēs magnitūdīnēm sylvārūm tīmūrunt.*—*Brītanī antīquī hospītēs nunquām violāvērunt.*—*Cōmītēs principīs angustō īn lōcō ēquītūm nostrōrūm vīm diū sustīnūrunt.*

(311.) *Translate into Latin.*

The chiefs began to go away with all the horsemen.—The horse-soldiers and foot-soldiers did not sustain the attack (*vim*) of the enemy.—The general supported the soldiers at his own expense.—The companions of Dumnorix sustained bravely the attack of our footmen.—The Germans maltreated the ambassadors.—The companions of the lieutenant are embarking-upon the ships.—The greatness of the woods terrifies the horsemen and the footmen.—Dumnorix always maltreats (his) guests.—The messenger began to depart with all the guests.—Brutus,

the defender of liberty, made (fēcīt) a conspiracy. —The townsmen for a long time supported a large number of footmen at their own expense.—The chiefs doubled the number of horsemen.

LESSON L.

Nouns.—Third Declension, continued.

(312.) CLASS IV.—*The Nominative adds ě to the Stem.*

	Sea (n.).	Seas.	Net (n.).	Nets.
N., A., V.	mār-ě	mār-iā.	rēt-ě.	rēt-iā.
Gen.	mār-īs.	mār-iūm.	rēt-īs,	rēt-iūm.
Dat., Abl.	mār-i.	mār-ibūs.	rēt-i.	rēt-ibus.

On this class, observe that,

(313.) As to the *case-endings*, the abl. is always ī, the nom. plur. iā, and the gen. plur. iūm.

(314.) As to *gender*, they are all *neuter*. Hence,

Rule of Gender.—Nouns which add e to the stem (instead of s) in the nom. are *neuter*.

EXERCISE.

(315.) *Vocabulary.*

By sea and land, terrā mārīque, *abl.*
(not mārī et terrā).

To wash, alluēre (ad+luēre).

To use, ūti (dep. — governs *abl.*).

To be accustomed, consuescēre (*perfect-stem*, consuēv).

Navigation, navigātiō, (*navigation*)
īs (ī).

Vast, vastūs, ā, ūm.

Open, āpertūs, ā, ūm.

Ocean, ōceānus, ī.

The Venetians, Vēnētī, orum (pl.).

Broad, lātus, ā, ūm.

But, autēm (not so strongly adversative as sēd, and always placed after one or more words of the sentence).

Other, different, ālius (194, R. 1)

Bed, cubilē, (cūbīl) īs (IV.).

Splendid, splendīdūs, ā, ūm.

A dock-yard, nāvalē, (nāvāl) īs (IV.).

To commit, to join (as battle), committērē (*perf.-stem*, commis)

In the mean time, intērīm (*adv.*).

Huntsman, vēnātor, (īs), m.

Far, longē (*adv.*).

(316.) *Examples.*

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>(a) <i>For Marseilles is washed on three sides by the sea.</i></p> <p>(b) <i>In our sea (i. e., the Mediterranean) we were accustomed to use long ships.</i></p> | <p>Massilia enim tribus ex partibus marī (abl., 93, II., b, R.) allūitūr.</p> <p>Nostrō marī (55) longīs nāvibus utī consuevīmūs.</p> |
|---|---|

Rule of Syntax.—The deponent verb ūtī, *to use*, governs the ablative; e. g., navibus, in (b).

(317.) *Translate into English.*

Longē aliā nāvīgātiō est in angustō marī atquē in vastō atquē āpertō ōceānō.—Longæ fuērunt nāvēs quibus (abl., 316, b) nostro marī (55) utī (infin.) consuevīmūs.—Venētī autem lātīs navibus utī consuevērunt.—Mihī (125, II., a) cubilē est terrā.—Rōmānōrūm cubiliā magnā fuerunt et splendidā.—Imperātōr quinquē nāves ex navālī ēdūxit et praelium commisit.—Turris erat proximā portui (106, II., c) navālībūsque.—Cæsār, intērim, omnēs nāvēs quæ erant in navālībūs incendit.—Venātōr rētē diligentēr pārābat.—Venātōres rētiā cervīs (54) pārābant.

(318.) *Translate into Latin.*

The farmers were preparing nets for the (54) doves.—Corinth is washed on two sides by the sea.—The ships which (316, b) the Venetians were accustomed to use in our sea were long.—In the vast and open ocean we use broad ships.—Navigation is far different (longē aliā) in a narrow river and in the open sea.—I had (125, II., a) a high tree (for my) bed.—Cæsar was pursuing Pompey by sea and land.—The tower was very near to the dockyard.—The general, in the mean time, was rebuilding all the old ships in the port and dockyards.

LESSON LI.

Nouns.—Third Declension, continued.

(319.) CLASS V.—*The Nominative presents the Stem unchanged.*

1. *Masculine Forms.*

Singular.	Honour (m.).	Consul (m.).	Goose (m.).	Brother (m.).
N. and V.	hönör.	consül.	ansër.	frätër.
Gen.	hönör-ïs.	consül-ïs.	ansër-ïs.	frätër-ïs.
Dat.	hönör-i.	consül-i.	ansër-i.	frätër-i.
Acc.	hönör-ëm.	consül-ëm.	ansër-ëm.	frätër-ëm.
Abl.	hönör-ë.	consül-ë.	ansër-ë.	frätër-ë.
Plural.	Honours.	Consuls.	Geese.	Brothers.
N., A., V.	hönör-ës.	consül-ës.	ansër-ës.	frätër-ës.
Gen.	hönör-üm.	consül-üm.	ansër-um.	frätër-üm.
D. and Abl.	hönör-ibüs.	consül-ibüs.	ansër-ibüs.	frätër-ibüs.

On these, observe,

(320.) As to *case-endings*, they nearly all take the *regular* endings throughout; but those whose stem ends in *ter* or *ber* drop the *e* in all cases but the *nom.*; *e. g.*, frätër, frätëris; imbër (*a shower*) imbrïs.

Rem. Imbër, lintër, ventër, take *üm* for *gen. pl.* ending.

(321.) As to *gender*,

Rule of Gender.—Nouns which present the unchanged stem in the *nom.* (except those whose stems end in *al*, *ar*, *ur*, *ör*) are *masculine*.

[Exception (1.) In *or*: arbör, öris (*tree*), is *feminine*; and ädör, öris, (*pure wheat*), æquör, öris (*sea*), marmör, öris (*marble*), are *neut.* (Obs., masculines have *ö* (long) in the stem; neuters *ö* (short)). The ending *ul* generally belongs to names of male beings (*e. g.*, consul): if applied to females, it may be *feminine* also (*e. g.*, exul, a female exile).

Exception (2.) *ër*: linter (*boat*) is *masc.* or *fem.*: the following are *neuter*: cädäver (*corpse*), über (*teat*), ver (*the spring*), verber (*lash*) also, all names of *plants* in *er*: *e. g.*, piper (*pepper*), zingiber (*ginger*), &c.]

EXERCISE.

(322.) *Vocabulary.*

Noise, clämör (öris, V., 1).

Cassius, Cassius, i.

Yoke, jügüm, i.

Archer, sägittariüs, i.

Slinger, funditor (öris, V., 1).

Succour, subsidiüm, i.

Rain, imbër (is, 320).

Continuance, continüatiö, (continüatiön) is (f.).

Skin, tent made of skins, pellis, (pell) is (f. II.).

Desert, dësertüm, i.

Shepherd, pästör (öris, V., 1).

Hunter, venätör (öris, V., 1).

(323.) *Translate into English.*

Impērātor ad se mercātōres undīque convōcavit.—Mīlītēs omnes māgno cum clāmōre in oppidum irrupērunt.—Hēlvētiī Cassium consūlem occidunt, exercitumque ejus (153, c) sub jūgum* mittunt.—Cæsār sagittāriōs et funditores subsidiō† (dat.) oppidānis† (dat.) misit.—Mīlītēs continuātiōne imbrium (320, R.) sub pellibus continentur.—Incōlæ desertōrum sunt pastōres, venatōres, et mercātōres.—Divitiæ mercātōrum sunt incertæ.—Cæsār omnem ēquitātum funditores sagittāriosque pontem (113 II., a) transduxit et ad hostes contendit.

(324.) *Translate into Latin.*

The Britons slew the general, and sent all the soldiers under the yoke.—The archers and slingers killed the chief.—By the continuance of the rains, the merchants are kept in the town.—The townsmen burst into the tents (pelles) with a great noise.—The archers and the slingers hasten to the town.—The consul Cassius led all the slingers over the bridge.—The Britons killed the scouts (exploratores), and sent the archers and slingers under the yoke.—The scouts hasten to the consul.—The general sent twenty soldiers for a succour† (dat.) to the merchants.†—The inhabitants of the town are merchants.—The riches of merchants, however great (184) they are, are uncertain.—The soldiers slew all the inhabitants of the desert.—The illustrious consuls led all the footmen over the bridge (113, II., a).

* A conquered army was made to march under a sort of yoke or gallows as a mark of disgrace.

† *Rule of Syntax.—Double Dative.* Two datives, one of the person, the other of the thing, may be used with *esse*, and with verbs of *giving*, *coming*, *sending*, &c.

LESSON LII.

Nouns.—Third Declension, continued.(325.) CLASS V.—*The Nominative presents the Stem unchanged.*

2. Neuter Forms.

Singular.	Animal (n.).	Spur (n.).	Lightning (n.).	Marble (n.).
N., A., V.	ănimāl.	calcăr.	fulgūr.	marmör.
Gen.	ănimāl-īs.	calcăr-īs.	fulgūr-īs.	marmör-īs.
Dat.	ănimāl-ī.	calcăr-ī.	fulgūr-ī.	marmör-ī.
Abl.	ănimāl-ī.	calcăr-ī.	fulgūr-ē.	marmör-ē.
Plural.	Animals.	Spurs.	Lightnings.	Marbles.
N., A., V.	ănimāl-īă.	calcăr-īă.	fulgūr-ă.	marmör-ă.
Gen.	ănimāl-iŭm.	calcăr-iŭm.	fulgūr-um.	marmör-ŭm.
D. and Abl.	ănimāl-ībŭs.	calcăr-ībŭs.	fulgūr-ībŭs.	marmör-ībŭs.

On these, observe,


(326.) (a) As to *case-endings*, those in al, ar, make abl. ī. nom. plur. ăă, gen. plur. iŭm.(b) As to *gender*, they are neuter. Hence,*Rule of Gender.*—Nouns which present in the nom. the unchanged stem in al, ar, ūr, and ör (short), are neuter.Exceptions in al: Săl (*salt*) is *masc.* and *neut.* in the sing., and *masc.* sălēs, in plur. Lar, lărīs (*household god*), *masc.*Exceptions in ar: Făr (*thief*), furfăr (*bran*), turtur (*turtle-dove*), vultur (*vulture*), are *masc.*Exceptions in ör. (Recollect that ör, örīs (with o long), is a *masc.* ending (321); and that ărbör, örīs (*tree*), is *fem.*)*Rem.* Ōs, ossīs (*bone*), is neut.

EXERCISE.

(327.) *Vocabulary.**Level, plain*, planŭs, ă, ŭm.*A plain, the sea*, æquör, īs (V., 2), (derived from æquŭs, *plain*: see below, 328).*Revenue, tax*, vectigăl, (vectigăl) īs (V., 2).*To create*, creărē.*Hatred, odium*, ôdiŭm, ī.*Many, very many*, complŭrēs, ă or iă (gen. ŭm or iŭm), used only in plural.*Class, gēnŭs, (gēnēr) īs*, neut.*Temple*, templum, ī.*To place*, pōnörē.*Abode*, dōmċĭliŭm, ī.*To goad*, concĭtarē.*Frugality*, parsĭmōniă, æ.*Indeed*, quĭdēm (adv.).*Placid*, plăcĭdŭs, ă, ŭm.*A marble temple, a temple of marble.*
templŭm de marmörē.*Sharp*, ăcŭtŭs, ă, ŭm.*Glare, splendör, (splendör) īs* (V., 1)*To farm, rēdĭmĕre (rēdēm).*

(328.) *Example.*

<i>The sea is level, from which also the poets call it æquor (the sea).</i>	<i>Mărē plānūm est ; ex quō ētiām æquor illūd poētæ vōcant.</i>
---	---

 Here the antecedent of quo is the sentence mărē plānūm est.

(329.) *Translate into English.*

Magnūm hōc fuit vectīgāl, sēd magnūm creāvit ōdiūm.—
Dumnōrix, complūrēs annōs (191, a, Rule) omniā Æduōrum
vectīgāliā rēdēmērāt.—Complūrā (or complūriā) sunt gēnē-
rā animāliūm.—Templūm de marmōrē in fōrō pōnām.
Crassūs dōmūm magnām de marmōrē splēdīdō ædificāvit.
—Fulgūrā mīlītēs vōhēmentēr terruērunt.—Terrā est dōm
īciliūm hōmīnūm ēt animāliūm.—Mīlītēs subitō ēquōs cal-
cārībūs (abl., 55, a) concītārē cōpērunt.—Calcāria ācūtā
sunt.

(330.) *Translate into Latin.*

Glory is a great spur to brave men.—The horses fear the
sharp spurs.—The glare of the lightnings terrified the horses.
—Almost (ferē, 218, b) all animals are useful to men.—These
were great revenues indeed, but they created great hatreds.—
The seas were level and placid.—Frugality is a great revenue.
—We shall place a temple of splendid marble in the midst (in
mediō fōrō, 297, c) of the forum.—The poets call (mărē) the
sea æquor, because (quīā) it is level.—The woods are the
abode of many animals.—Pompey for many years had farmed
the revenues of Asia.—The cavalry (ēquītēs) began to put
spurs to their horses (= to goad the horses with spurs).

LESSON LIII.

Nouns.—Third Declension, continued.

(331.) CLASS VI.—*The Nominative presents the Stem changed.*

1. Masculine Forms.

Singular.	(a) n of the Stem dropped.	(b) r of the Stem changed to s.		(c) Verbals in io (all fem.).
	Speech (m.).	Dust (m.).	Flower (m.).	Reason (f.).
N. and V.	sermō.	pulvis.	flōs.	rātiō.
Gen.	sermōn-īs.	pulvēr-īs.	flōr-īs.	rātiōn-īs.
Dat.	sermōn-i.	pulvēr-i.	flōr-i.	rātiōn-i.
Acc.	sermōn-ēm.	pulvēr-ēm.	flōr-ēm.	rātiōn-ēm.
Abl.	sermōn-ē.	pulvēr-ē.	flōr-ē.	rātiōn-ē.
Plural.	Speeches.		Flowers.	Reasons.
N., A., V.	sermōn-ēs.	pulvēr-ēs.	flōr-ēs.	rātiōn-ēs.
Gen.	sermōn-ūm.	pulvēr-ūm.	flōr-ūm.	rātiōn-ūm.
D. & Abl.	sermōn-ībūs.	pulvēr-ībūs.	flōr-ībūs.	rātiōn-ībūs.

On this class, observe,

(332.) As to *case-endings*: 1. Final n of the stem is *generally* dropped in Latin nouns in the nominative. (In sanguis, sanguin-īs (blood), it is changed into s.)

2. Final r of the stem is *often* changed into s, as in pulvis, flōs, mōs, &c.

(333.) *Rule of Gender*.—Nouns which simply drop n of the stem in the nom. are *masculine* (except *abstract* nouns in io).

Special Rem.—Abstract nouns in io (ōnīs) are feminine; e. g., ratio, reason; ultio, revenge. (They are a very large class, formed by adding io to the supine-stem of verbs.)

(334.) *Rule of Gender*.—Nouns which change ōr of the stem into īs, ōr into ōs, are *masculine*; e. g., pulvis (pulvēr), flōs (flōr).

EXERCISE.

(335.) *Vocabulary.*

Manner, custom, mōs, (mōr) īs (VI., 1, b).

Robber, latrō, (latrōn) īs (VI., 1, a).

Pirate, prædō, (prædōn) īs (VI., 1, a).

Centurion, centuriō, (centuriōn) īs (VI., 1, a).

Lion, leō, (leōn) īs (VI., 1, a).

Speech, language, sermō, (sermōn) īs (VI., 1, a).

Surrender, deditiō, (deditiōn) īs (VI., 1, c).

Rebellion, rēbelliō, (rēbelliōn) īs (VI., 1, c).

The Sacred Way, Viā Sacra.

Speech (in the abstract), or *an oration*, *oratiō*, (oration) is (VI., 1, c).
Dust, *pulvis*, (pulver) is (VI., 1, b).
Egyptian, *Ægyptiūs*, I.
Sweet, pleasant, *suāvis*, is, ē.
To wander, *errāre*.
To employ, *ūtī* (with abl., 316, b).
To finish, *conficere* (io).
The rest, the remaining, *rēliquūs*, ā, ūm.

To slay, *trucidāre*.
Nurse, *nūtrix*, (nutric) is (I.).
Devoid of, experts, (*expert*) is (107).
To draw, *trāhēre* (trax-; 277, 1).
Eloquent, *dīsertūs*, ā, ūm.
Adorned, *ornātūs*, ā, ūm.
To go, *irē*.
By chance, *fortē* (adv.).
As, *sicūt*.
Kind, blandūs, ā, ūm.

(336.) Examples.

- | | |
|---|------------------|
| (a) <i>After the manner of robbers.</i> | Mōrē latrōnū m. |
| (b) <i>After his (her or their) own manner.</i> | Mōrē suō. |
| (c) <i>Devoid of reason.</i> | Rātiōnīs expers. |

Rule of Syntax.—Adjectives signifying *abounding, want, privation, &c.*, govern the genitive (sometimes abl.).

- (d) We say, *a cloud of dust*; the Latin says, *a power of dust*—*vīs pulvērīs*.

(337.) Translate into English.

1. (*Masculines, Class VI., 1, n dropped.*)—*Centuriōnēs militūm Labienūm libentē sequēbantur.*—*Lēgātūs sermōnem longūm conficīt.*—*Multi Ædū Cēsārīs sermonī* (dat., 267, b) *interfuērunt.*—*Impērātōr rēliquōs latrōnēs prädōnēsque trucidāvit.*—*Africā nutrix est leōnūm fērocīūm.*

2. (*Verbal Nouns in ion, all Feminine.*)—*Helvētiī lēgātōs dē* (*concerning*) *dēditiōne ad Cēsārēm mīsērunt.*—*Barbārī rēbelliōnēm turpēm fēcērunt.*—*Legātūs, orātiōnē acrī* (abl., 55, a), *barbārōs ad dēditiōnēm traxīt.*—*Orātiō dīsertā ēt ornātā omnībūs* (161, a) *plācēt.*—*Fēræ sunt rātiōnīs et orātiōnīs expertes.*

3. (*Nouns changing or of the Stem into is, or into os; all Masculines.*)—*Pulvis et umbrā sūmūs.*—*Mīlites, eōdēm temporē* (118, II., c) *magnām vim pulvērīs vidēbant.*—*Ībām fortē viā sacrā* (abl., 55, a) *sicūt meūs est mōs.*—*Ægyptiī, mōrē prädōnūm* (336, a), *nāvēs incendēre* (inf., 210) *consuevērunt.*—*Suāvēs tui mōrēs mīhī* (161, a) *valdē plācent.*—*Prädōnēs, mōrē suō, oppidā incendēre cōpērunt.*

(338.) *Translate into Latin.*

1. (*Masculines, Class VI., 1, n dropped.*)—Cæsar employs kind language* (abl., 316, *b*), and draws the barbarians to a surrender.—Many of the Helvetians heard the severe speech (78, II., *b*) of Cæsar.—The bands of robbers and pirates wander by sea and land.—The general slew all the wicked pirates.—Is (135, II., *a*) Africa the nurse of lions?—Is Europe (*n*um, 280, *b*) the nurse of fierce lions?

2. (*Verbals in io, all Feminine.*)—Cæsar drew-out from (their) winter-quarters the four legions which he had levied (conscripturät) in Italy.—The eloquent oration pleased all.—The barbarians made a base rebellion after (their) surrender.—Lions are devoid of reason and speech.

3. (*Nouns changing ər of the Stem into is, őr into ős; Masculines.*)—The flowers are beautiful.—The customs of the Germans were good.—Death turns (vertit) all things into dust.—At the same time (118, II., *b*), a great cloud of dust (336, *d*) was seen by the soldiers.—I was sleeping in the garden, as is my custom.—The Æduans, after the manner of pirates, slew the ambassadors.

LESSON LIV.

Nouns.—Third Declension, continued.

(339.) CLASS VI.—*The Nominative presents the Stem changed.*

2. *Feminine Forms.*

n of the Stem dropped, and i changed into ő.		
Singular.	Image (f.).	Hail (f.).
N. and V.	imägő.	grandő.
Gen.	imägin-īs.	grandin-īs.
Dat.	imägin-i.	grandin-i.
Acc.	imägin-ēm.	grandin-ēm.
Abl.	imägin-ē.	grandin-ē.
Plural.	Images.	Hail.
N., A., V.	imägin-ēs.	grandin-ēs.
Gen.	imägin-ūm.	grandin-ūm.
D. and Abl.	imägin-ibūs.	grandin-ibūs.

* Sermo.

On these, observe,

(340.) *Rule of Gender*.—Nouns which drop *n*, and change *i* into *o* in the nom., are *feminine*.

Exceptions. *Ordō* (*order*), *cardō* (*hinge*), *turbō* (*whirlwind*), are *masculine*. *Nēmō* (*nobody*), *margō* (*margin*), are *common* (*Homo, man*, is *masc.* by the general rule, 25, *a.*)

Rem. *Cārō* (*flesh*) makes *gen.* *carnīs*, *dat.* *carnī*, &c., contracted from *carīnīs*, *carīnī*, &c.

EXERCISE.

(341.) *Vocabulary*.

Sleep, *somnūs*, *i.*

Same, *idēm*, *eādēm*, *Idēm* (150).

Multitude, *multitūdō*, (*multitūdīn*) *is* (VI., 2).

To set forth, *expōnērē*.

Swallow, *hīrundō*, (*hīrundīn*) *is* (VI., 2).

Harbinger, *prænuntiā*, *æ.*

Spring, *vēr*, *is* (321, exc. 2).

Resemblance, *sīmilitūdō*, (*sīmilitūdīn*) *is* (VI., 2).*

To preserve, *keep*, *servārē*.

To call (*name*), *appellārē*.

Council, *concīlium*, *i.*

Lily, *liliūm*, *i.*

Virgin, *virgō*, (*virgīn*) *is* (VI., 2).

Prayer, *prex*, *nom.* not used, (*prēc*) *is* (I.).

To celebrate, *to extol*, *cēlebrārē*.

Origin, *origō*, (*origīn*) *is* (VI., 2).

To collect, *cōgērē*, *cōn+āgērē* (*perf.* stem, *coēg*).

Order, *rank*, *ordō*, (*ordīn*) *is* (VI., 2) (*m.*).

Whirlwind, *turbō*, (*turbīn*) *is* (VI., 2, 340, exc.).

Safe, *salvūs*, *æ*, *ūm*.

(342.) *Translate into English*.

1. *Somnūs imāgō mortīs est*.—*Lēgātī eādēm quæ Cæsār dixērāt multitūdīnī expōnunt*.—*Hīrundīnēs prænuntiæ vērīs sunt*.—*Gallī oppidūm ex sīmilitūdīnē flōrīs Liliūm appellābant*.—*Consul mātrūm virgīnum-que prēcībūs excitātūr*.—*Poētæ cēlebrant Rōmūlūm, ōrīgīnēm gentis*.

2. *Prīncīpes Æduōrūm magnām multitūdīnēm hōmīnūm ex agrīs coēgērunt*.—*Militēs ordinēs nōn servant*.—*Cæsār centūrionēs primōrūm ordinūm ad concīliūm convocat*.—*Cicērō in magnīs turbīnībūs nāvēm reīpublicæ (351, 3) gūbernāvit, ēt salvām in portū collōcāvit*.

(343.) *Translate into Latin*.

1. *Speech (sermō) is the image of the mind*.—*Sleep is often the harbinger of death*.—*The soldiers feared the force of the*

* *Sīmilitūdō flōrīs* = *resemblance to a flower*.

hail.—The centurions were setting-forth the same (things) which the general had commanded.—The brave soldiers are moved by the prayers of the mothers and the virgins.

2. The consuls collect a great multitude of men from the towns.—Cæsar dismisses from (ab) the council the centurions of the first ranks.—The archers and the slingers did not keep their ranks.—Cæsar calls (vöcārë) to the council the centurions of all the ranks.—The brave consul in the great whirlwinds will govern the ship of state (351, 3).—Cæsar will place the ship of state safe in the port.

LESSON LV.

Nouns.—Third Declension, continued.

(344.) CLASS VI.—*The Nominative presents the Stem changed.*

3. *Neuter Forms.*

Singular.	(a) <i>Vowel changed.</i>		(b) <i>Vowel and Cons. changed.</i>		(c) <i>Cons. changed.</i>
	Song (n.).	Strength (n.).	Work (n.).	Body (n.).	Law (n.).
N., A., V.	carmen.	röbūr.	öpūs.	corpūs.	jūs.
Gen.	carmīn-īs.	röbör-īs.	öpēr-īs.	corpör-īs.	jür-īs.
Dat.	carmīn-ī.	röbör-ī.	öpēr-ī.	corpör-ī.	jür-ī.
Abl.	carmīn-ē.	röbör-ē.	öpēr-ē.	corpör-ē.	jür-ē.
Plural.	Songs.		Works.	Bodies.	Laws.
N., A., V.	carmīn-ä.	röbör-ä.	öpēr-ä.	corpör-ä.	jür-ä.
Gen.	carmīn-üm.	röbör-üm.	öpēr-üm.	corpör-üm.	jür-üm.
D., Abl.	carmīn-ībūs.	röbör-ībūs.	öpēr-ībūs.	corpör-ībūs.	jür-ībūs.

On this class, observe,

(345.) As to *gender*, they are all *neuter*. Hence,

Rule of Gender.—Nouns which, in the nominative, change the stems *īn* into *ēn*, *ör* into *ür*, and *ēr*, *ör*, or *ūr* into *us*, are *neuter*.

Exceptions. (1.) In *ēn*: only *pectēn*, *pectīnīs* (masc.), *a comb*.

(2.) *ör* into *ür*: none.

(3.) *ēr* into *ūs*: none.

(4.) *ör* into *ūs*: only *lēpūs*, *lēpörīs* (masc.), *a hare*.

(5.) *ūr* into *us*: *mūs*, *murīs* (masc.), *mouse*; *tellus*, *ūrīs* (fem.), *earth*

(346.) Under this head may be classed the following nouns of rare endings:

1. *Poēmă, ătis (neuter), a poem.* Nouns of this form are derived from the Greek, and are all neuters. They prefer the ending *is* to *ibūs* in the dat. and abl. plur.

2. *Hălēc (neuter), hălēcis, brine, and lăc (neuter), lactis, milk,* are the only Latin nouns ending in *c* in the nom.

3. *Căpăt, capitis, head,* is the only Latin noun ending in *t* in the nom. It is neuter.

EXERCISE.

(347.) Vocabulary.

Arrogance, arrogantia, æ.

Crime, crimēn, (crimīn) is (VI., 3, a).

To want (lack), to be free from, cārērē (with abl.).

Folly, stultitiā.

Wonderful, mirificūs, ā, ūm (mirus +facio).

Naked, nūdūs, ā, ūm.

Strong, validūs, ā, ūm.

The whole affair, omnis rēs.

To delay, tardārē.

Gift, mūnūs, (munēr) is (VI., 3, b).

Quickly, citō (adv.).

Hare, lepūs, (lepōr) is (m., 345, 4).

Milk, lăc, (lact) is (n., 346, 2).

Flesh, cārē, (carn) is (f., 340, R.).

Young man, jūvenis, is (m.): gen. pl., ūm.

Danube, Dănubiūs, ī (m.).

Jugurtha, Jugurthā, æ.

If, sī (conj.).

(348.) Examples.

(a) *To condemn to death.*

Căpitis (or căpítě) condemnārē (= to condemn of the head).

Rule of Syntax.—With verbs of condemning, the punishment (if capital) is put in the gen. or abl.

(b) *To be free from a crime.*

Criminē cārērē (= to want crime).

Rule of Syntax.—The ablative case is used with verbs (and adjectives) of abounding and wanting.

(349.) Translate into English.

Socrătēs arrogantiae et stultitiæ criminē cārēbāt.—Rhēnūs et Rhodānūs magnā sunt fluminā.—Magnā et mirificā sunt omniā Deī ōpērā.—Galli sempēr nūdō corpōrē (synt., 716, 2) pugnābant.—Corpōrā Germānōrūm validā et mirificā fuērunt.—Magnitūdō ōpērūm omnēm rēm tardābat.—Sī mūnērā

tardās, nihil das ; bis dāt, quī cītō dat.—Vēnātōr lēpōrēs tīmīdos īn sylvis persēquitūr.—Athēniensēs Socratēm cāpītē cōdemnārunt.*—Cūr tālēm vīrūm cāpītis cōdemnāstis?—Brītanī lāctē et carnē vīvunt.

(350.) *Translate into Latin.*

The bodies of the young men were strong.—The man (vir) was free from the crime of folly.—The Danube and the Rhine are great rivers.—Do the Gauls (num, 280, b) fight with naked body?—The works of Cicero are excellent: I read them (eos) with pleasure (libentēr).—The Romans condemned Jugurtha to death (348, a).—Did the Athenians (280, b) condemn Socrates to death?—The captives were condemned (imperf. pass.) to death.—The timid hare was wandering in the woods and fields.—Is-it-possible-that (280, b) the Britons live (on) (abl.) milk and flesh?—Your pleasant songs (161, b) delighted (delectāre) me.

LESSON LVI.

Irregular Nouns.

(351.) We give here the declension of a few irregular nouns.

1. Jūpītēr.

Nom.	Jūpītēr.
Gen.	Jōvis.
Dat.	Jōvī.
Acc.	Jōvēm.
Abl.	Jōvē.

* The perf. and plup. tenses are often thus contracted: amārāt for amāvērāt; vīgīlastis for vīgīlavistis.

2. Bōs, *an ox or cow*.

Singular.	Plural.
Nom. Bōs.	Bōvēs.
Gen. Bōvīs.	Boŭm.
Dat. Bōvī.	Bōbūs or Būbūs.
Acc. Bōvēm.	Bōvēs.
Voc. Bōs.	Bōvēs.
Abl. Bōvē.	Bōbūs or būbūs.

[In *double nouns*, each noun is inflected; e. g.,]

3 Rēspublīcā (rēs+publīcā), *a republic, state*.

Singular.	Plural.
Nom. Rēspublīcā.	Respublīcæ.
Gen. Reīpublīcæ.	Rērumpublīcārūm.
Dat. Reīpublīcæ.	Rēbuspublīcīs.
Acc. Rempublīcām.	Respublīcās.
Voc. Respublīcā.	Respublīcæ.
Abl. Rēpublīcā.	Rēbuspublīcīs.

4. Jusjūr andŭm (jūs+jūr andŭm), *an oath*.

Singular.	Plural.
Nom. Jusjūr andŭm.	Jūrājūr andā.
Gen. Jūrīsjūr andī.	_____
Dat. Jūrījūr andō.	_____
Acc. Jusjūr andŭm.	Jūrājūr andā.
Abl. Jūrējūr andō.	_____

Rem. The genitive, dative, and ablative plural are not used.

EXERCISE.

(352.) *Vocabulary.*

Faith, promise, fidēs, eī.

To bind, obstringērē, (ōb+stringērē) (perf.-stem, obstrinx).

To take care of, cūrārē.

Folly, stultitiā, æ.

To lose, amittērē, (ā+mittērē) (perf.-stem, amīs).

To intrust, committērē, (con+mittērē) commīs (with dat.).

Especially, maximē (adv.).

To worship, cōlērē (perf.-stem, cōlū-).

Apis, Āpis, īs (m.).

Sacred, sanctūs, ā, ūm.

Formerly, ōlīm.

Guardian, custōs, (custōd) īs (m. and f.).

Juno, Jūnō, (Jūnōn) īs (f.).

Husband or wife, conjux, (conjūg) īs (m. and f.).

Nation, nātiō, (nātiōn) īs (f.).

An Egyptian, Ægyptiūs, ī.

But especially, maximē autēm.

Minerva, Minervā, æ.

(353.) *Translate into English.*

Principēs intēr sē fidēm et jusjūrandūm dābant.—Ariovistūs civitātēm jūrejūrandō (55) ēt obsidībūs obstrinxit.—Āpūd Rōmānōs, consulēs rempublicām cūrāvērunt.—Multæ nātiōnēs pēr stultitiām respublicās suās āmisērunt.—Vētērēs maxīmē Jōvēm cōluērunt.—Ægyptiī Āpīm, sanctūm bōvēm (225, a), ōlīm cōluērunt.—Jūpītēr est hūjūs urbīs custōs.—Jūnō ērāt Jōvis conjux.—Cīvēs irām Jōvis timent.—Cornuā boŭm sunt magnā.

(354.) *Translate into Latin.*

The robbers will give an oath among themselves.—Cæsar binds all the Germans by a promise and an oath.—Cæsar bound the chiefs of the state by an oath and by hostages.—The senate intrusts (committit) the whole republic to Cicero.—The consuls will take care of our republic.—The ancients worshipped many gods, but especially Jupiter.—We have lost the republic by (per) our own folly.—Jupiter is the guardian of our house.—Apis, the sacred ox, is the guardian of this city.—Minerva was the daughter of Jupiter.—Good men do not fear the anger of Jupiter.

(355.)

LESSON LVII.

*Summary of Rules of Gender from the Nominative Formation.**

I. MASCULINES either

1. Add s, and change the stem-vowel before it; *e. g.*,
gurgēs, gurgit-*is*, *whirlpool*; mīlēš, mīlit-*is*, *sol-*
dier; cōdex, cōdic-*is*, *book*. }
2. Present the stem er, ul, or, without adding s; *e. g.*,
ansēr, ansēr-*is*, *goose*; consul, consūl-*is*, *consul*;
hōnōr, honōr-*is*, *honour*.
3. Drop n without adding s; *e. g.*, sermo, sermōn-*is*,
speech; carbo, carbōn-*is*, *coal*.
4. Change ěr of the stem into ĩs, ōr into ōs; *e. g.*,
cĭnis, cinēr-*is*, *ashes*; pulvis, pulvēr-*is*, *dust*;
flōs, flōr-*is*, *flower*. }

II. FEMININES either

1. Add s without changing the stem-vowel; *e. g.*, urb-s,
urb-*is*, *city*; nox (noct-s), noct-*is*, *night*; vox
(vōc-s), vōc-*is*, *voice*; quies, quiet-*is*, *quiet*.
2. Insert a vowel (e or i) before adding s; *e. g.*, nūb-e-s,
nub-*is*, *cloud*; nāv-i-s, nav-*is*, *ship*.
3. Drop n, and change ĩ into o; *e. g.*, ĩmāgo, ĩmāgin-*is*,
image; grando, grandĭn-*is*, *hail*.

III. NEUTERS either

1. Add e to the stem; *e. g.*, mǎre, mǎr-*is*, *the sea*.
2. Present the unchanged stem al, ar, ur, ōr; *e. g.*, ānĭ-
māl, animāl-*is*, *animal*; calcār, calcār-*is*, *spur*;
fulgūr, fulgūr-*is*, *lightning*; æquōr, æquōr-*is*, *sea*.
3. Change ĩn of the stem into ěn, ōr into ūr, and ěr, ōr,
or ūr into us; *e. g.*, carmĕn, carmĭn-*is*, *song*; ěbūr,
ěbōr-*is*, *ivory*; ōpūs, ōpĕr-*is*, *work*; corpūs, cor-
pōr-*is*, *body*; crūs, crūr-*is*, *leg*.

* Abundant illustrations of these rules have been given. The student should now learn them thoroughly by heart, and apply them in the subsequent lessons

Exceptions.

I. 1. Only *mergēs*, *mergītis* (f.), *sheaf*.

I. 2. { *er*, *feminine* : *linter*, *boat*.
er, *neuter* : *cādāvēr*, *ūbēr*, *vērbēr*, *vēr*, *tūbēr*, *spin-*
thēr, with all the names of plants in *ēr*.
ör, *feminine* : *arbör*, *tree*.
ör, *neuter* : *cör*, *ädör*, *æquör*, *marmör*.
Rem. The *neuters* have *ö* (*short*) in the stem ; the *mas-*
culines, *ō* (*long*).

I. 3. { The *abstract nouns* in *īo* are all *feminine* ; e. g., *rätio*
(f.), *ratiōnīs*, *reason*.

I. 4. None.

II. 1. { *Masculines.* Viz., *fons*, *mons*, *pons*, *dens* and its
compounds, *torrens*, *occidens*, *ōriens*.
Grex, *Greek nouns* in *ax*, and a few in *ix* ; *lāpis*,
vās, *pāriēs*, *pēs*.*

II. 2. { *Masculines.* Latin nouns ending in *nīs* ; e. g., *ignīs*
(m.), *fire* ; with
Piscīs, *orbīs*, *callīs*, and *canālīs* ;
Unguīs, *caulīs*, *axis*, and *annālīs* ;
Fascīs, *sentīs*, *fustīs*, *canīs*, *ensīs* ;
Vectīs, *vermīs*, *postīs* ; also *mensīs*.

II. 3. { *Masculines.* *Ordo*, *cardo*, *homo*, *turbo*.
Common. *Nēmo*, *margo*.

III. 1. None.

III. 2. { *Sāl*, *masculine* and *neuter* in singular ; *masculine* in
plural. *Lār*, *lārīs*, *masculine*.

III. 3. { *Fūr*, *furfūr*, *turtūr*, *vultūr*, *masculine*.
Masculine : changing *īn* into *ēn*, only *pectēn*, *comb* ;
changing *ör* into *ūs*, only *lēpūs*, *hare* ; chang-
ing *ūr* into *us*, only *mūs*, *mouse*. *Feminine* :
tellūs, *earth*.

* There are also a few *Greek* words that are *masculine*. *As*, *assīs*, *coin*, is *masculine* ; *vās*, *vāsīs*, *vase*, is *neuter*.

§ 4.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES. (LVIII.—LX.)

(356.) ADJECTIVES are inflected both in English and Latin to express *degrees* of quality; *e. g.*,

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative
<i>Brave,</i>	<i>braver,</i>	<i>bravest.</i>
<i>Fort-is,</i>	<i>fort-iōr,</i>	<i>fort-issimūs.</i>

LESSON LVIII.

The Comparative Degree.

(357.) The *comparative* has the ending *iōr* for the *masculine*, and *iūs* for *neuter*. These endings are added directly to the *stem* of the adjective; *e. g.*,

	Masculine.	
<i>Brave, fort-is;</i>	<i>braver, fort-iōr;</i>	<i>fort-iūs.</i>
<i>Hard, dūr-us;</i>	<i>harder, dūr-iōr;</i>	<i>dūr-iūs.</i>
<i>Beautiful, pulch-er }</i> <i>(stem, pulchr-); }</i>	<i>more beautiful, pulchr-iōr; pulchr-iūs.</i>	

Rem. If the stem ends in a *vowel*, the comparative is formed by the use of *māgis*, *more*, instead of the ending; *e. g.*,

<i>pious, pi-us;</i>	<i>more pious, māgis piūs.</i>
<i>fit, idōne-us;</i>	<i>more fit, māgis idōneus.</i>

(358.) DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
N. and V.	<i>dūr-iōr.</i>	<i>dūr-iūs.</i>	<i>dūr-iōrēs.</i>	<i>dūr-iōrā.</i>
Gen.	<i>dūr-iōris.</i>	<i>dūr-iōris.</i>	<i>dūr-iōrūm.</i>	<i>dūr-iōrūm.</i>
Dat.	<i>dūr-iōri.</i>	<i>dūr-iōri.</i>	<i>dūr-iōribūs.</i>	<i>dūr-iōribūs.</i>
Acc.	<i>dūr-iōrēm.</i>	<i>dūr-iūs.</i>	<i>dūr-iōrēs.</i>	<i>dūr-iōrā.</i>
Abl.	<i>dūr-iōrē.</i>	<i>dūr-iōrē.</i>	<i>dūr-iōribūs.</i>	<i>dūr-iōribūs.</i>

Rem. In the later writers, *i* is used for abl. sing. ending frequently instead of *ē*.

EXERCISE.

(359.) *Vocabulary.*

Like, similar to, simīlis (takes *dat.*, sometimes *gen.*, 106, II., c).

Amiable, amābilis, is, ē.

Eloquent, eloquens.

Excellent, præstans.

Ignorance, ignōrātiō, (ignoration) is.

Knowledge, scientiā, æ.

Silver, argentum, i.

Vile, paltry, vilis, is, ē.

Justice, justitiā, æ.

Dear, precious, cārūs, ā, ūm.

Few, paucī, æ, ā (used only in pl.).

Indeed, quīdem (adv.; always stands next after the word to which it refers).

Swift, celer (105, R. 1).

Than, quā (conj.).

To seek, quærere.

Antonine, Antōnīnus, i.

Future, futūrus, ā, ūm.

(360.) *Examples.*

(a) *A pirate is more like a wild beast than a man.*

Prædo fēræ (106, II., b) est simīlior quam hōmīni (dat.).

(b) *Nothing is more amiable than virtue.*

Nihil est amābilius quam virtūs, or

(c) Nihil est virtutē amābilius.

(c) *Rule of Syntax.*—The conjunction *quam* (*than*) is frequently omitted, and then the noun with the comparative must be put in the *ablative* case.

Cicero was more eloquent than Cæsar.

Cicero fuit Cæsare eloquentior.

(361.) *Translate into English.*

Nihil est virtute præstantius.—Virtus est præstantior quam robur (344).—Ignoratio malorum utilior est quam scientia.—Aurum gravius est argento.—Argentum vilius est auro, virtutibus aurum.—Lupi ferociores sunt quam canes.—Tullus Hostilius ferocior erat Romulo.—Justitiam querimus; rem (app., with justitiam, 225, a) auro cariorē.—Paucis (dat. gov. by carior, 106, II., b) carior fides est, quam pecunia.—Mihi (dat.) amicus fuit me ipso carior.—Omnēs suos (*i. e.*, his friends) caros habet (*he holds*); me (acc.) quīdem se ipso cariorē.—Nemo Romanorum (*partitive gen.*) eloquentior fuit Cicerone.

(362.) *Translate into Latin.*

1. *With quam.*—The horse is swifter than the dog.—Igno-

rance of future evils is better than knowledge (of them).—Lions are fiercer than wolves.—Antonine was more pious (357, R.) than Cæsar.—The son was more amiable than the father.—A robber is more like a wolf (dat., 106, II., b) than a man.

2. *Without quam* (with *ablative*).—Justice is a thing more precious than gold.—Gold is more paltry than virtue.—Nothing is more amiable than virtue.—To Crassus his friends were dearer than himself.—He (*had*) held all his own (*friends*) dear, but Cicero even dearer than himself.—What (170) is heavier than water? Gold.—What is more excellent than strength? Virtue.

LESSON LIX.

Superlative Degree.

(363.) THE *superlative* ending is *issimŭs*, which is added to the stem of the adjective.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Dear, cār-us ;	dearer, cār-ior ;	dearest, cār-issimŭs.
Brave, fort-is ;	braver, fort-ior ;	bravest, fort-issimŭs.
Happy,	more happy,	most happy,
fēlix (fēlic-s) ;	fēlic-ior ;	fēlic-issimŭs.

(364.) But adjectives whose stems end in *er* add the ending *rīmŭs*.

Unhappy, mīser ;	most unhappy, mīser-rīmŭs.
Swift, cēlēr ;	swiftest, cēlēr-rīmŭs.
Beautiful, pulcher ;	most beautiful, pulcher-rīmŭs.

(365.) Several adjectives whose stems end in *l* add *līmŭs*.

Easy, fācil-is ;	easiest, fācil-līmŭs.
------------------	-----------------------

EXERCISE.

(366.) *Vocabulary.*

Cyrus, Cŷrŭs, ī.	To preserve moderation, mōdŭm hā
Hannibal, Hannibāl, (Hannibāl) īs.	bērē (= to have moderation).
Difficult, difficīlis (di-fācīlis).	Carthage, Carthāgo, (Carthāgīn) īs
Moderation, mōdŭs, ī.	Metal, mētallum, ī.
Darius, Dāriŭs, ī.	To stain, mēcŭlārē.

(367.) *Examples.*

- (a) *Socrates was very wise.* | *Sōcrates sāpientissimus fuit.*

A high degree of quality (*very good, very wise, &c.*) is expressed in Latin by the *superlative*.

- (b) *Of all these, the Belgians are the bravest.* | *Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgæ.*

Rule of Syntax.—The genitive plural is used with the superlative degree: the *most learned* of the *Romans*; *doctissimūs Rōmanōrum* (partitive gen., synt., 697).

- (c) *Among the Helvetians the noblest was Orgetorix.* | *Āpud Helvētios nōbīlissimus fuit Orgētōrix.*

(368.) *Translate into English.*

Urbs Syracusæ (app., 225, a) *Græcārum urbium* est *pulcherrimā*.—*Præstantissimī Persārum rēgēs* fuērunt *Cyrus* et *Dariūs*.—*Pompeius* magnam bellī glōriam mortē (55, a) *turpissimā* mēcūlāvit.—*Hannibal fortissimūs* erat omnium *Carthāgīniensium*.—*Gallōrum omnium fortissimī* sunt *Belgæ*.—*Cicēro* *ēlōquentissimus* fuit *Rōmānōrum*.—*Difficillimum* est mōdum hābērē (161, d).—*Āpud Æduos nōbīlissimus* et *fortissimus* fuit *Divitiācus*.

(369.) *Translate into Latin.*

Plato was very wise (367, a).—*Plato* was the wisest of all the *Greeks* (367, b).—The city *Rome* was the most beautiful of all the *Roman* cities.—Of all these, the *Britons* are the bravest.—The most excellent leaders of the *Romans* were *Cæsar* and *Pompey*.—*Carthage* was a very beautiful city.—Of all things, the most difficult is to preserve moderation.—Of all (men), the most happy (*beatus*) is the wise (man).—The hardest of all metals is iron.—Among the *Greeks* *Themistocles* was the noblest.—*Cæsar* led the bravest soldiers across the very broad river.

LESSON LX.

Irregular Comparison of Adjectives.

(370.) SEVERAL adjectives are quite *irregular* in their comparison. The following are the most important.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
<i>good, bonūs.</i>	<i>better, mēlior.</i>	<i>best, optīmūs.</i>
<i>bad, mālūs.</i>	<i>worse, pējor.</i>	<i>worst, pessīmūs.</i>
<i>great, māgnūs.</i>	<i>greater, mājōr.</i>	<i>greatest, maximūs.</i>
<i>much, multūs.</i>	<i>more, { plūs (n. sing.). plūrēs, ā (pl.).</i>	<i>most, { very many, } plūrīmūs.</i>
<i>small, parvūs.</i>	<i>less, minōr.</i>	<i>least, minimūs.</i>
<i>old, sēnex.</i>	<i>older, sēniōr.</i>	<i>wanting.</i>
<i>young, jūvenīs.</i>	<i>younger, jūniōr.</i>	<i>wanting.</i>
<i>outward, extērus.</i>	<i>more outward, extērior.</i>	<i>outermost, extrēmūs.</i>
<i>below, infērus.</i>	<i>lower, infērior.</i>	<i>lowest, infīmūs, or imūs.</i>
<i>above, supērus.</i>	<i>higher, supērior.</i>	<i>highest, suprēmūs, or summūs.</i>
<i>hind, postērus.</i>	<i>hinder, postērior.</i>	<i>hindmost, postrēmūs.</i>

(371.) Several adjectives have no positive, but form the *comparative* and *superlative* from a preposition, adverb, or obsolete word.

	Comparative.	Superlative.
<i>(on this side, cītra.)</i>	<i>nearer, citēriōr.</i>	<i>nearest, citīmūs.</i>
<i>(within, intra.)</i>	<i>inner, intēriōr.</i>	<i>inmost, intīmūs.</i>
<i>(beyond, ultra.)</i>	<i>farther, ultēriōr.</i>	<i>farthest, { last, } ultimūs.</i>
<i>(near, prōpe.)</i>	<i>nearer, prōpiōr.</i>	<i>nearest, { next, } proximūs.</i>
<i>(bad, deter.)</i>	<i>worse, dētēriōr.</i>	<i>worst, dētērimūs.</i>
	<i>former, priōr.</i>	<i>first, prīmūs.</i>

Rem. 1. *Divēs, rich; richer, ditior, divitior; richest, ditissimūs, divitissimūs.* (Cicero uses the longer form, Cæsar the shorter.)

2. Compound adjectives in *dīcus, fīcus, vōlus*, add *entior* for the comp., and *entissimūs* for the superl.; e. g., *bēnē-vōlus (benevolent), bēnēvōl-entior, bēnēvōl-entissimūs.*

EXERCISE.

(372.) *Vocabulary.*

Disgraceful, unworthy, indignūs, ā, ūm (in+ignus).

Infamy, disgraceful crime, flāgitium, ī.

Wisdom. sāpientiā, æ.

The Suevians, Suēvī, ōram.

Warlike, bellicōsūs, ā, ūm.

Condition, conditio, (conditiō) īs.

America, Amērica, æ.

Emperor, impērātōr, ōrīs (355, I., 2).

(373.) *Examples.*

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>(a) <i>It is disgraceful to be conquered by a superior; more disgraceful (to be conquered) by one inferior and lower.</i></p> | <p>Indignum est ā sup̄eriōre vincī; indignius ab inf̄eriōre atque hūmiliōre.</p> |
|--|--|

[Here the infin. pass. vincī is used as a neut. noun, nom. to est, and indignum agrees with it in the predicate.]

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>(b) <i>What is better for man than wisdom?</i></p> | <p>Quid est hōmīnī mēliūs sapiētiā (360, c) ?</p> |
|---|---|

[Here hōmīnī is in the dat. (advantage or disadvantage, 106, II., b).]

(374.) *Translate into English.*

Nihil est mēlius quam (360, b) sapiētiā.—Hiberniā mīnor est quam Britanniā.—Nihil est pējūs flāgitio.—Hostēs celerit̄r locā (309) sup̄eriōra occūpābant.—Maximā pars Aquitaniæ obsidēs ad Cæsārem mīsīt.—Suevōrum gens est longē maximā et bellicosissimā Germānōrum omnium (367, b).—Ariovistus agrum Sēquānum, quī optimus erat tōtius Galliæ occūpāvit.—Infimā est conditio et fortunā servōrum.—Primus et maximus rēgum Rōmanōrum fuit Rōmulus.

(375.) *Translate into Latin.*

It is disgraceful to be conquered by a junior, more disgraceful by a senior.—What is better than virtue? what worse than vice?—What is better for man than honour? Wisdom.—Europe is less than Asia; Asia than America.—The bravest of the Belgians were seizing the higher grounds (locā).—The greatest part of Gaul made (fecit) a surrender.—The first and greatest of the Roman emperors was Cæsar.—The poor are often more benevolent (371, R. 2) than (quam) the rich.—The worst (men) are often more-happy than (quam) the best.—Among the Helvetians (by) far the richest and noblest was Orgetorix.

§ 5.

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

(376.) ADVERBS *derived from adjectives* admit of comparison. The *comp.* is the *neuter* form of the comparative of the adjective: the *superlative* substitutes ē for u s.

<i>Learnedly,</i> doct-ē;	<i>more learnedly,</i> doct-i ũ s;	<i>most learnedly,</i> doct-i s s ĩ m ē.
<i>Joyfully,</i> læt-ē;	<i>more joyfully,</i> læt-i ũ s;	<i>most joyfully,</i> læt-i s s ĩ m ē.
<i>Happily,</i> fēlic-ĭ t ě r;	<i>more happily,</i> fēlic-ĭ ũ s;	<i>most happily,</i> fēlic-i s s ĩ m ē.
<i>Well, bĕnĕ;</i>	<i>better, mĕliŭs;</i>	<i>best, optĭmē.</i>

[No separate exercise upon these is necessary.]

§ 6.

SUPINE.

(377.) THE *Supine* presents the action of the verb under the form of a noun in two cases, the *accusative* and *ablative*. The *former supine* ends in ūm, the *latter* in ū; which endings are added to the *supine-stem* of the verb.

LESSON LXI.

Supines.

(378.) THE SUPINE-STEM is formed by adding to the verb-stem,

- (1) In 1st conj., ā t; *e. g.*, ām-āt.
- (2) In 2d conj., ĭ t; *e. g.*, mōn-īt.
- (3) In 3d conj., t; *e. g.*, reg-t = rect
- (4) In 4th conj., ī t; *e. g.*, aud-īt.

[*Rem.* Many supines, however, use different connecting vowels, or take s (and not t) before u m and u. For this reason, therefore, all supine-stems will be given in the following vocabularies. Where no supine-stem is given, it is to be understood that the verb has no supine.]

(379.) The supine in ū m is a verbal noun of the accusative case, and is put after verbs of motion to express the *design* of that motion; *e. g.*,

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>(a) <i>Ambassadors come to Cæsar to ask assistance.</i></p> <p>(b) <i>To go to sleep (to sleeping).</i></p> | <p>Lēgātī ād Cæsārēm vēniunt
rōgāt ūm* auxiliūm.</p> <p>Īrē dormīt ūm.</p> |
|--|--|

(380.) The supine in ū is a verbal noun of the ablative case, and is used after adjectives signifying *good* or *bad*, *easy* or *difficult*, *pleasant* or *unpleasant*, &c.

* Rōgāt ūm = accus. answering to the question *whither*

- (a) *It is (a thing) easy to do* | *Est facīlĕ factū.**
 (or, *to be done*).
 (b) *It is (a thing) wonderful* | *Est mirābilĕ dictū.*
to tell (or, to be told).

(381.) The following are nearly all the supines in u which are in use: dictū, auditū, cognitū, factū, inventū, mēmōrātū.

EXERCISE.

(382.) Vocabulary.

<i>To ask, demand, postŭlārĕ (postŭlāt).</i>	<i>To besiege, oppugnārĕ (oppugnāt).</i>
<i>To congratulate, grātŭlārĭ (grātŭlāt), dep.</i>	<i>Hand, band of men, mănŭs, ŭs.</i>
<i>To come together, convĕnirĕ (con+vĕnirĕ, convĕn-, convent-).</i>	<i>Wonderful, mirābilĭs, ĕ (104).</i>
<i>To complain, quĕrĕr (quest).</i>	<i>Very easy, perfācilĭs, ĕ (104).</i>
<i>Custom, consuetŭdĕ, (consuetŭdĭn) is (f., 355, II., 3).</i>	<i>To do, fācĕrĕ (fact).</i>
<i>To collect corn, frŭmentārĭ (frŭmentat).</i>	<i>To say, tell, dicĕrĕ (dict).</i>
<i>A Trevirian, Trĕvĭr i (65).</i>	<i>Best, optimŭs, ā, ŭm (370).</i>
	<i>To find, invĕnirĕ (in+vĕnirĕ), invent.</i>
	<i>To happen, accidĕrĕ.</i>
	<i>To endure, tŏlĕrārĕ (tŏlĕrāt).</i>
	<i>Senate, sĕnātŭs, ŭs.</i>

(383.) Example.

Divitiacus came to Rome | *Divitiācŭs Rŏmām vĕnīt*
to ask assistance. | *auxiliŭm postŭlatŭm.*

Rule of Syntax.—The accusative is used with the names of towns and small islands, to answer to the question *whither*; e. g., in (a) Rŏmām.

(384.) Translate into English.

1. *Supine in ŭm.*—Princĭpĕs civitātis ād Cēsārem grātŭlātŭm convĕnērunt.—Trĕvĭrĭ magnā mănŭ (55, a) castrā oppugnātŭm vĕnērunt.—Lĕgātĭ āb Ēduĭs vĕnērunt, questŭm.—Cēsār ex consuetŭdinĕ ũnām lĕgiŏnĕm mĭsīt frŭmentātŭm.—Lĕgātĭ Rŏmām ād sĕnātŭm vĕnērunt auxiliŭm postŭlatŭm.

2. *Supine in ū.*—Est perfācilĕ factū.—Est jŭcundŭm auditū.—Quādam (178, 1) sunt turpiā dictū.—Quŏd optimŭm est factū, faciām.—Virtŭs difficĭlis est inventū.—Multā accidunt durā tŏlĕrātū.

* Factū = ablative of respect, wherein.

(385.) *Translate into Latin.*

[Words in Italic to be rendered by supines.]

1. *Supine in um.*—The consuls, according to (ex) custom, sent a large band *to collect corn*.—All the chiefs of the Æduans were coming to Rome *to ask* assistance.—All the ambassadors, according to custom,* came-together to Cæsar *to congratulate* (him).—The soldiers of the tenth legion came to the general *to complain*.—The Germans came (in) a large band *to attack* the town.

2. *Supine in u.*—It is (a thing) wonderful *to be heard*.—What (quod) is base *to be said*, I will not say.—What is difficult *to be done*, I will do.—A true (verus) friend is difficult *to be found*.—Some-things are very easy *to be done*.

* According to custom = ex consuetudine.

TENSES OF VERBS FOR COMPLETED ACTION.—PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT.—FULLER STATEMENT. (LXII.—LXIX.)

(386.) It has been stated (262) that the *tense-stem* of the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses is the same. In Lessons XLIV., XLV. we gave *one* mode of forming this tense-stem for each conjugation. There are several other modes, which we now proceed to state, taking up the conjugations separately. To make the tables complete, we shall repeat the *first* method at the head of each.

LESSON LXII.

Forms of Perfect-stem.—First Conjugation.

(387.) THERE are *four* ways of forming the perfect-stem in the *first conjugation*.

- | | | | |
|------|--|----------|-------|
| I. | <i>By adding āv to the verb-stem ;</i> | ām-ārě, | ām-āv |
| II. | “ ũ “ | sōn-ārě, | sōn-ũ |
| III. | <i>reduplicating* the first consonant with ě ;</i> | d-ārě, | děd- |
| IV. | <i>lengthening the stem-vowel ;</i> | jũv-ārě, | jũv |

On this table, observe that *Class*

- I. contains *most* of the verbs of the first conjugation.
- II. contains *eleven* simple verbs (of which a list may be found, 664).
- III. contains but *two* simple verbs, viz., *dārě, to give, and stārě, to stand.*
- IV. contains but *two* simple verbs, viz., *jūvārě, to assist, and lāvārě, to wash.*

(388.) To form the *perfect, pluperfect, or future perfect* of a

* To *reduplicate* a consonant is to *prefix* it to a stem with some connecting-vowel ; thus, *mord-*, reduplicate with *o*, *momord* ; *st-āre*, reduplicate with *e*, *stest-*, but the *second s* is dropped, *stět-*.

verb of any of the above classes, simply add the endings of those tenses respectively to the perfect-stem ; thus :

Infinitive.	Perfect-stem.	Perfect tense.	Pluperfect.	Future Perfect.
		i.	ērām.	ērō.
<i>To forbid,</i> vēt-ārē, vēt ū-		istī.	ērās.	ērīs.
<i>To give,</i> d-ārē, dēd-		īt.	ērāt.	ērīt.
<i>To help,</i> jūv-ārē, jūv-		īmūs.	ērāmūs.	ērīmūs.
		istīs.	ērātīs.	ērītīs.
		ērunt, or ēre.	ērānt.	ērīnt.

EXERCISE.

(389.) [] Hereafter, in all the vocabularies, the perfect and supine stems of verbs will be given in parentheses, immediately after the *infinitive*. When no perfect or supine stem is given, it will be understood that those forms of the verb are wanting ; and where *two* are given, that the verb uses both. Thus : *to help*, jūvārē (jūv-, jūt-) ; *to glitter*, mīcārē (mīcū-) ; *to fold*, plicārē (plicāv-, plicū-, plicāt-, plicīt-). In these examples mīcārē has no supine ; plicārē has *two* perfect and *two* supine forms.]

(390.) Vocabulary.

To demand (command), impērāre (āv-, at-).

To give, dare (dēd-, dāt-, 387, III.).

Hunger, famēs (īs), (300).

To tame, dōmāre (dōmū-, dōmīt-, 387, II.).

To shine, or flash forth, ēmicāre (ēmīcū-, ē+micāre, 387, II.).

To surround, circumstāre (stīt- and stēt-).

The sand, dry ground, ārīdum, ī (neut. of ārīdus, dry).

An attack, impētūs, ūs (110).

To assist, adjūvārē (jūv-, jūt-, ad+juvāre).

Door, fōris, (fōr) īs (300).

To creak, crēpārē (crepū-, crept-).

To chide, reprove, incrépare (in+crepārē, crēpū-, crēpit-).

A little while, paullispēr (adv.).

To withstand, rēsistērē (restīt-, rē+stāre).

To halt, constārē (constīt-, con+stāre).

As soon as, sīmūlatquē (adv.).

To slay, kill, interficēre (interfēc-, interfect-).

To make, faciēre, iō (fēc-, fact-, 199).

(391.) Examples.

- (1) Stāre = *to stand* ; con-stāre, *to stand together, to halt* ; circum-stāre, *to stand-around, to surround*. (The compounds of stāre, with prepositions of *one* syllable, have stīt- for perfect-stem ; those with *two*, stēt-.)

- (2) *To resist or withstand* | Ālicui rēsistēre.
any one.

Partial Rule of Syntax.—Many verbs compounded with prepositions govern the dative.

- (3) *To put any one to flight.* | *Ālīquem in fūgam dāre*
 (= *to give unto flight*).
 (4) *To make an attack.* | *Impētum faciēre.*

[The Latin words in the following exercises which illustrate the *lessons* are spaced.]

(392.) *Translate into English.*

Oppidāni, obsīdes quos Cēsār impērāv-ērāt, dēd-ērunt.—
 Vēnātōres fāmē (abl., 55, *a*) lūpos dōmu-ērunt.—Ex monte
 subitō (adv.) flammā ēmicu-ērunt.—Impērātor oppidānos
 frumentō (55) adjūv-it.—Num crēpu-ērunt fōrēs?—Cæ-
 sār vēhēmenter (215, 2, *b*) milītēs incrēpu-it.—Hostes
 nostrīs paullisper restit-ērunt.—Hostes milītibus (391, 2)
 circumstēt-ērunt, multosque interfēc-ērunt.—Nostrī in
 hostes impētum fēc-ērunt, atque eōs (391, 3) in fūgam dēd-
 ērunt.—Nostrī simūlatque in aridō constit-ērunt, in hostes
 impētum fēc-ērunt atque eōs in fūgam dēd-ērunt.

(393.) *Translate into Latin.*

The flame shone-forth.—From (ex) the-top-of the mountain
 (297, *a*) the flame suddenly shone-forth.—The huntsman had
 tamed the wolf.—The townsmen had given the hostages.—
 The Belgians gave all the hostages that (*rel. pron.*) Cæsar had
 demanded.—The general had reproved the lieutenant and
 (que) the soldiers.—Our (men) were-withstanding the enemy
 (dat.)—Our (men) bravely withstood the enemy, and (que)
 killed many.—The Belgians surrounded our (*men*) (dat., 391,
 2), and killed many.—The Romans often put the Belgians to
 flight.—Our men halted upon (*in*) the dry-ground.—As-soon-as
 our men halted upon dry-ground, they bravely withstood the
 enemy (391, 2).—Our men put-to-flight the enemy whom
 (dat., 391, 2) they had bravely withstood.

LESSON LXIII.

Perfect-stem.—Second Conjugation.

(394.) THE perfect-stem in *second conjugation* is
 formed in *five* ways.

- I. *By adding ŭ to the verb-stem*; mōn-ērĕ, mōn-ŭ-.
 II. " ēv " dēl-ērĕ, dēl-ēv-.
 III. " s " măn-ērĕ, man-s-.
 IV. *reduplicating the first consonant and vowel*; } mōrd-ērĕ, mō-mōrd-
 V. *lengthening the stem-vowel*; vīd-ērĕ, vīd-.

(395.) On this table, observe that *Class*

- I. contains *most* of the verbs of the second conjugation.*
 II. contains only flērĕ, *to weep*; nērĕ, *to spin*; dēlērĕ, *to destroy*, with the compounds of the obsolete words plērĕ, *to fill*; ōlērĕ,† *to grow*; suērĕ,† *to be accustomed*. [For a list, see 665, II.]

III. contains *many* verbs, of which a list may be found (665, III.). The rules of euphony must be applied here.

(a) b before s sometimes passes into s.

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
<i>To command,</i>	jub-ĕre,	jub-sī = jussī,	jussūm (jub-sum).

(b) t-sound before s dropped.

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
<i>To laugh,</i>	rid-ĕre,	rid-sī = risī,	risūm (rid-sum).

(c) c-sound + s = x. Any c-sound before t = c.

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
<i>To increase,</i>	aug-ĕre,	aug-sī = aux-ī,	auctūm (aug-tum).

(d) c-sound after l or r dropped before s.

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
<i>To glitter,</i>	fulg-ĕre,	ful-sī (ful(g)s-ī),	ful-sum (ful(g)sum).

IV. contains *four* simple verbs. See list (665, IV.).

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
<i>To bite, champ,</i>	mōrd-ĕre,	mō-mōrd-ī,	morsūm (mōrd-sum).

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
<i>To vow, promise,</i>	spond-ĕre,	spō-pond-ī,	sponsūm (spond-sum).

[The compounds of these verbs drop the reduplication; e g.,

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
<i>To answer,</i>	rēspōndĕre,	rēspōnd-ī,	rēspōnsūm (respond-sum).]

V. contains *eight* simple verbs, for which see list (665, V.).

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
<i>To favour,</i>	fāv-ērĕ,	fāv-ī,	fautum.
<i>To move,</i>	mōv-ērĕ,	mōv-ī,	mōtum.

EXERCISE.

[Refer to 386 and 389.]

(396.) Vocabulary.

<i>Carthage</i> , Carthāgo, (Carthāgīn) īs (339).	<i>To fill up</i> , complĕre (complĕv-, com- plĕt-, 395, II.) [con+plĕre].
<i>To destroy</i> , dēlērĕ (dēlĕv-, dēlēt-, 395, II.).	<i>Good will</i> , vōluntās, (voluntat) īs (293).

* Many examples of this class have already occurred.

† Some of these have s co in present indicative: adolesco, consuesco

To remain, mănĕrĕ (mans-, mans-, 394, III.).

To come, vĕnĭrĕ (vĕn-, vent-).

A slayer, interfector, ōrĭs (319).

To see, vĭdĕre (vĭd-, vĭs-, 395, V.).

To open, āpĕrĭrĕ (āpĕrŭ-, apert-).

Gate, portā, æ.

To flee, fŭgĕre (io), (fŭg-, fugĭt-).

Bit, bridle, frænum, ĭ (plur. ĭ and ā).

Saguntum, Sāguntum, ĭ.

Hill, collĭs, ĭs (m., 302, R.).

Scipio } Scĭpio, nis.
(surnamed)

Africanus, } Africānŭs, ĭ.

Numantia, Nŭmantia, æ.

A defence, fortification, mŭnitio (nis).
(f., 333, R.).

Even up to, as far as, usquĕ (adv.).

Great, ingens, (ingent) ĭs (107).

Standard, signŭm, ĭ.

Tooth, dens, (dent) ĭs, (m., 295, R.).

(397.) *Example.*

*On the very day of his ar-
rival.*

E ōdem quo vĕnĕrat diĕ
(= *the very day on which
day he had come*).

(398.) *Translate into English.*

Hannibal Sāguntum dĕlĕvit, Scĭpio Carthāgĭnem.—Scĭpio Africānus urbes duas pŏtentissimas, Carthāgĭnem ĕt Nŭmantiam dĕlevit.—Cæsār hās mŭnitiones diligentĕr auxit.—Gallĭ partem collĭs, usquĕ ād mŭrum oppĭdĭ, castrĭs (55, a) complĕvĕrant.—Adventŭs lĕgātĭ summā spĕ et vŏluntātĕ urbĕm complĕvit.—Diŭ barbārĭ in fidĕ mansĕrant.—Ītā complŭrĕs diĕs (191, a) mansĕrant castrā.—Cæsār eŏdem diĕ (118, II., c) in Œduŏs castrā mŏvit.—Imperātor, eŏdem quŏ vĕnĕrat diĕ (397) castrā mŏvit.—Brŭtus ĕt Cassius, interfectorĕs (225, a) Cæsāris, bellum ingens mŏvĕrunt.*—Lĕgiŏnes, sĭmulatquĕ nostrā signā vĭderunt, portās āpĕruĕrunt.—Equus frænŏs mŏmordĭt.—Spŏpondistĭnĕ prŏ amicŏ? Spŏpondĭ.

(399.) *Translate into Latin.*

Scipio destroyed Carthage, a most powerful city.—God has filled the world with all blessings (bona, neut.).—Socrates never laughed.—The forces of the Gauls had filled the whole (omnem) place, even-up to the wall of the town.—The Gauls had filled-up the higher (superior) part of the hill with (their) very-crowded (densissimus) camp.—The coming of Cæsar filled the army with the highest hope and good-will. For many years the barbarians had remained in friendship and

* In the sense of *excited, stirred up*.

fidelity (fideque).—Cæsar moved (his) camp into the (territory of the) Æduans on the very day of his arrival.—The enemy saw our soldiers, and fled.—The horses were champing the bits.—The wolf bit the dog with his teeth (55, a).

LESSON LXIV.

Perfect-stems.—Third Conjugation.

(400.) THE perfect-stem in the *third conjugation* is formed in *six* ways.

- I. By adding *s* to the verb-stem; scrib-erë, scrip-s-.
- II. " ü " cöl-ërë, cöl-ü-.
- III. " v, or iv " pët-ërë, pet-iv-.
- IV. reduplication; curr-ërë, cūcurr-.
- V. lengthening the stem-vowel; fūg-ërë, fūg-.
- VI. taking the simple verb-stem; volv-ërë, volv-.

We shall take up these separately, treating in this lesson only the first.

(401.) CLASS I.—*Perfect-stem formed by adding s to the Verb-stem.*

Most verbs of the third conjugation come under this class. It has already been illustrated, but we here give a fuller account of the rules of euphony, in connexion with the various stem-endings.

1. b before s or t passes into p.

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
To write,	scrib-ërë,	scrips-ī (scrib-s-i),	scriptum (scrib-tum).
To marry,	nūb-ërë,	nups-ī (nūb-s-i),	nuptum (nub-tum).

2. A c-sound +s=x (c, g, h, v, gu, qu are classed with c-sounds. If a stem ends in ct, the t is dropped, and the c unites with s to form x). Any c-sound before t = c.

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
To lead,	dūc-ërë,	dux-ī (duc-s-ī),	duc-tum.
To cover,	tēg-ërë,	tex-ī (teg-s-ī),	tec-tum (teg-tum).
To draw,	trāh-ërë,	trax-ī (trah-s-ī),	trac-tum (trah-tum).

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
<i>To live,</i>	viv-ērē,	vix-ī (viv-s-ī),	vic-tum (viv-tum).
<i>To quench,</i>	extingu-ērē,	extinx-ī (extingu-s-ī),	{ extinc-tum (extingu-tum).
<i>To boil,</i>	cōqu-ērē,	cox-ī (coqu-s-ī),	coc-tum (coqu-tum).

We class here also,

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
<i>To flow,</i>	flu-ērē (fluv-),	flux-ī (fluv-s-ī),	flux-um (fluv-sum).
<i>To build,</i>	stru-ērē (struc-),	strux-ī (struc-s-ī),	struc-tum.

3. d or t before s either (a) is dropped, or (b) passes into s.

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
(a) <i>To divide,</i>	divid-ērē,	divis-ī (divid-s-ī),	divi-sum (divid-sum).
(b) <i>To yield, go,</i>	cēd-ērē,	cess-ī (ced-s-ī),	ces-sum (ced-sum).
<i>To send,</i>	mitt-ērē,	mis-ī (mit-s-ī),	mis-sum (mit-sum).

4. (a.) m or r before s sometimes passes into s.

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
<i>To press,</i>	prēm-ērē,	press-ī (prem-s-ī),	pres-sum (prem-sum).
<i>To bear,</i>	gēr-ērē,	gess-ī (ger-s-ī),	ges-tum (ger-tum).

(b.) But if m be retained, it assumes p before it.

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
<i>To take,</i>	sūm-ērē,	sum-ps-ī (sum-s-ī),	sump-tum (sum-tum).

5. If the stem ends in rg, the g is dropped before s.

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
<i>To scatter, sow,</i>	sparg-ērē,	spars-ī (sparg-s-ī),	spar-sum.

EXERCISE.

(402.) Vocabulary.

<i>To bind, surround,</i> cingere (cinx-, cinct-, 401, 2).	<i>Rampart,</i> vallūm, ī.
<i>To draw up, instruct,</i> instruere (instrux-, instruct-, 401, 2).	<i>Triple, triplex,</i> (triplic) īs (107).
<i>To shut,</i> claudere (claus-, claus-, 401, 3, a).	<i>Janus,</i> Jānus, ī.
<i>To retreat,</i> recedere (re+cedere, cess-, cess-, 401, 3, b).	<i>Numa,</i> Numā, æ.
<i>To approach,</i> accedere (ad+cedere, cess-, cess-, 401, 3, b).	<i>Veteran,</i> vēterānus, ā, ūm.
<i>To grant,</i> concedere (con+cedere, cess-, cess-, 401, 3, b).	<i>In three divisions,</i> tripartitō (adv.).
<i>To bear, carry on,</i> gerere (401, 4, a).	<i>Suddenly,</i> repente (adv.).
<i>To spend,</i> consumere (con+sumere, sumps-, sumpt-, 401, 4, b).	<i>By-night,</i> noctū (adv.).
	<i>There,</i> ibi (adv.).
	<i>Dragon,</i> drāco, (drācōn) īs (333).
	<i>Arms,</i> armā, ōrum (used only in plural).
	<i>Neighbouring,</i> finitīmus, ē, ūm.
	<i>State,</i> civitas, (civitāt) īs (293).

(403.) Examples.

(a) <i>In all directions.</i>	In omnes partes.
(b) <i>Upon an expedition.</i>	In expeditiōnem.

(404.) *Translate into English.*

In tuā ēpistolā nīhil mīhi scripsistī de tuis rēbus.—Barbāri vallō et fossā (55, a) hībernā cinxērunt.—Cāsār triplīcem āciem instruxit lēgiōnum vētērānārū.—Rōmāni templū Jānī bīs post Numā regnum clausērunt.—Impērātor exercītum in duas partes dīvisit.—Cāsār tripartītō milītes ēquītesque in expēditiōnem mīsīt.—Prīncīpes rēpentē ex oppidō cum cōpiis rēcessērunt.—Milītes noctū usquē ad castrā accessērunt.—Cāsār obsidibus (54) libertātem concessit.—Germāni cum Helvētiis bellum gesserunt.—Māgnū et grāvē ōnūs armōrū milītes pressit.—Explorātor ad castrā hostiū accessit, atque ibī māgnam partem diēi consumpsit.—Cadmus dentēs drācōnīs sparsit.

(405.) *Translate into Latin.*

The ambassador wrote nothing concerning his own affairs.—The scout approached even-up to the walls of the town.—The lieutenant sent-away messengers in all directions.—Cæsar sent-away the horsemen in three divisions into the neighbouring states.—Cadmus slew (interfēcit) the dragon and sowed his (ejus) teeth.—Cæsar drew up the veteran legions in (abl.) a triple line.—The soldiers spent a great part of the day in the camp.—The enemy approached the town by-night.—The townsmen shut the gates.—The Helvetians retreated by night with all (their) forces.—Cæsar sent-away the scouts in three divisions upon an expedition.—The general sent-away the messengers by night in all directions.—The soldiers approached even-up-to the rampart, and there spent a great part of the day.

LESSON LXV.

Perfect-stem.—Third Conjugation, continued.(406.) CLASS II.—*Perfect-stem adds ū to the Verb-stem.*

(a) *Without change of the verb-stem (see list, 666, II., a);*

e. g.,

To nourish, maintain,

al-ērē,

āl-ū-I,

al-tum.

To honour, cultivate,

cōl-ērē,

cōl-ū-i,

cul-tum.

(b) *With change of verb-stem* (666, II., b).

<i>To place,</i>	pōn-ērē,	pōs-ū-i,*	pōs-i tum.
<i>To bet,</i>	gign-ērē,	gēn-ū-i,	gēn-i tum.

CLASS III.—*Perfect-stem adds v or iv to the Verb-stem.*

(a) Adds v (and lengthens stem-vowel, if short). (List, 666, III., a.)

[These generally drop n, r, or s.c,† or change the order of the letters. They must be carefully observed, as they occur in the vocabularies.]

<i>To despise,</i>	spērn-ērē,	sprēv-i,	sprē-tum (spērn-tum).
<i>To be accustomed,</i>	suesc-ērē,	suēv-i,	suē-tum.

(b) Adds iv (list, 666, III., b).

<i>To seek, strive after,</i>	pēt-ērē,	pēt-iv-i,	pēt-i tum.
-------------------------------	----------	-----------	------------

EXERCISE.

(407.) *Vocabulary.*

Spaniard, Hispanūs, i.

Command, jussūs, ūs.

Against, contrā (prep., acc.).

People, pōpūlus, i.

Immediately, stātim.

Avienus, Āviēnūs, i.

To instigate, stir up, instigāre (āv-, āt-).

To place in, to put into, impōnērē (in+pōnērē, 406, b).

To remove, rēmōvērē (rēmōv-, rēmōt-, re+mōvēre).

To arrange, distribute, dispōnērē (dis+pōnērē, 406, b).

To relate, commēmōrārē (āv-, āt-, con+mēmōrārē).

Property, fāmīlia, ō.

To cross over, transirē (trans+irē, iv-, it-).

To decree, determine, dēcernērē (dēcērv-, dēcēt-, de+cernērē).

To discourse, dissērērē (disseru-, dissert-, dis+sērērē).

To plunder, dirīpērē (ripu-, rept-di+rāpēre)‡

A beast of burden, jumentum, i.

Sacred rites, sacrā, ōrum (n., pl.).

Instead of, prō (prep., abl.).

Advice, counsel, consiliūm, i.

On account of, ōb (prep., acc.).

To despise, spērnērē (406, III., a).

Winter, hiems, (hiēm) is (293).

(408.) *Examples.*

(a) *By the command of Cæsar.* | Jussū (abl., 55, a) Cæsāris.

* Pōnō=pōsīno; pōsuī=pos-iv-i.

† In these verbs the n or sc does not properly belong to the root, but is employed simply to *strengthen* the present indicative and infinitive; to *know*, nō-ere, strengthened nosc-ere, &c.

‡ Observe that the compounds of rāpērē, fācērē, cāpērē, with *prepositions*, change a into i in the infinitive; dirīpērē, conficērē, accīpērē.

(b) <i>To place on shipboard.</i>	In nāvēs impōnērē (<i>put into ships</i>).
(c) <i>With (near) the army.</i>	Ād exercitum.
<i>On the borders of the Æduans.</i>	Ād fines Æduōrum.

Ād is often used by Cæsar in the sense of *near* or *with* (i. e., *along with*).

(409.) *Translate into English.*

Hispani, jussū Cæsārīs, eos exercitūs quōs (165) contrā pōpūlum Rōmānum multos jam annos (191, a) āluērāt, stātim dīmīsērunt.—Aviēnē (voc.), quōd (*because*) in Itāliā milites pōpūli Rōmāni contrā rempūblicam instīgastī (349, N.); et, prō militibus, tuam fāmiliām in nāves impōsuistī; ōb eas res, āb exercitū meō te rēmōveo.—Cæsār lēgiōnes quas in Itāliā, hibernōrum causā (135, II., b), dispōsūerat, ad se rēvōcāvit.—Cūr consīlium meum sprēvistī?—Cæsār, his de causīs quas commēmōrāvī, Rhēnum transīre dēcrēverat.—Multī sālūtem sībī (dat.) in fugā pētīverunt (*or* petiērunt, 349, N.).—Cæsār tōtam hiēmē (191, a) ipse ad exercitum (408, c) mănēre dēcrēvit.—Cæsār duās lēgiōnes ad fines Æduōrum pōsuit.

(410.) *Translate into Latin.*

The Spaniards had maintained an army (for) many years (191, a).—Orgetorix maintained, at-his-own-expense (sumptū suō), a large number of soldiers.—Cæsar placed the camp on-the-borders-of (408, c) the Sequanians.—Socrates discoursed concerning (de) the immortality of the soul.—The pirates plundered many towns.—Cæsar distributed three legions in Italy, for-the-sake-of winter-quarters.—Thou-hast-despised my counsels; thou-hast-instigated the soldiers against the republic; thou hast put beasts-of-burden instead of soldiers into the ships: on-account-of these things, I remove thee from my army.—The Romans honoured most-religiously (maximā religione) the sacred-rites of Jupiter.—Cæsar, for (de) these reasons, had determined to cross the Rhine.—Many soldiers sought safety for themselves (by) flight.—The inhabitants sought peace from (a) the Romans.

LESSON LXVI.

Perfect-stem.—Third Conjugation, continued.(411.) CLASS IV.—*Perfect-stem reduplicates the first Consonant.*

[Some of these present *vowel-changes*, which must be carefully observed. (a) When the first vowel is *i* or *u*, the first consonant is reduplicated with that vowel; (b) in other verbs, with *ē*. (c) The compounds of *dārē*, *to give*, with *i*.]

(a) First vowel *i*, *o*, or *u*.

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
<i>To learn</i> ,	disc-ērē,	dī-dīc-i (<i>s dropped</i>),	(no supine).
<i>To demand</i> ,	posc-ere,	pō-posc-i,	(no supine).
<i>To beat</i> ,	tund-ērē,	tū-tūd-i,	tū-sum (tud-sum).

(b) Other verbs reduplicate with *e* (note vowel-changes in stems).

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
<i>To fall</i> ,	cād-ērē,	cē-cīd-i (<i>i short</i>),	cā-sum (cad-sum).
<i>To drive, repel</i> ,	pell-ērē,	pē-pūl-i,	pul-sum.
<i>To fell, kill</i> ,	cād-ērē,	cē-cīd-i (<i>i long</i>),	cæs-um.

(c) Compounds of *dārē*.

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
<i>To add</i> ,	ad-dērē,	ād-dīd-i,	ad-dī-tum.
<i>To lose</i> ,	per-dērē,	per-dīd-i,	per-dī-tum.

EXERCISE.

(412.) *Vocabulary.*

The whole, ūniversus, ā, ūm.

Duty, service, mūnus, (mānēr) is (345).

Walls, mæniā, ūm (pl., neut.).

Coming together, conflict, congressūs, ūs.

Seventy, septuaginta (indecl.).

To touch, tangērē (tētīg-, tact-, 411, b).

To spare, parcērē (pēperc-, parcīt-, pars-; governs *dative*).

To surround, cingēre (401, 2).

Nobody, nēmo, (nemīn) is (m. and f., 25, a).

Woman, mūlier, is (f., 25, a).

Child, infant, infans, (infant) is (c. 25, a).

Thirty, trīgintā.

Eighty, octōgintā.

Immense, immensus, ā, ūm.

Sum-of-money, pēcūnia, æ.

To add, addēre (411, c).

(413.) *Examples.*

(1) *To demand peace of* Cæsar.

(a) Cæsārēm pācēm poscērē; or (b) pācēm a Cæsārē poscērē.

Rule of Syntax.—Verbs of *demanding* (*a*) govern two accusatives, one of the person, the other of the thing; but (*b*) the *person* may be put in the ablative with the preposition *ā* or *āb*.

- | | |
|--|---|
| (2) <i>About twenty.</i> | Circiter vīgintī. |
| (3) <i>To give one's self wholly up.</i> | Tōtum sē dārē (=to give one's self whole up). |
| (4) <i>The leader spared women.</i> | Dux mūlieribus pēpercit. |

Rule of Syntax.—Verbs of *sparing* govern the dative.

☞ Observe, the perfect of *cādērē*, *to fall*, is *cēcīdī*; of *cādērē*, *to fell or kill*, *cēcīdī*.

(414.) *Translate into English.*

Lēgātī ad Cæsarem vēnērunt, eumque pācem (413, 1, *a*) pōposcērunt.—Hōc ā mē (413, 1, *b*) mūnus ūniversā prōvinciā pōposcit.—Puerī linguam Latinam didīcērunt.—Ā Græcis Galli urbes mænibus cingērē didīcērunt.—Nostri, in primō congressū, circiter septuaginta oēcīdērunt; in his Quintus Fulgīnius.—Arbōr vētus cēcīdit, quam (165) ferrō (55, *a*) nēmo cēcīdit.—Lēgātus, sīmūlac prōvinciam tētigit, inertīæ (dat.) tōtum se dēdit.—Postquam Cæsār vēnit, obsīdes, armā, servos pōposcit.—Milites nōn muliērībus, nōn infantībus, pēpercerunt.—Cæsār lēgiōnibus cohortēs circiter trīginta addīdit.—Mors nullī (194, R. 1) homīnum (*partit. gen.*) pēpercit (413, 4).

(415.) *Translate into Latin.*

The Æduans demanded peace of Cæsar (413, 1, *b*).—The whole province demanded peace of the Romans (413, 1, *a*).—Of-our-men (nostri, nom., pl.) about eighty fell; among them, Labienus.—Have you (135, II., *a*) learned the Latin language?—The farmer felled very-many (plurimas) trees in the wood.—As soon as the lieutenant touched the province, he plundered many towns.—The general demanded seventy hostages, and an immense sum of money.—The old trees fell.—This service the general demanded of me.—The leader spared all the temples of the gods; but the soldiers spared not (non) women nor (non) children.—Cæsar added to the foot-soldiers about twenty cohorts.—Cæsar added to the foot-soldiers thirty horse-soldiers.

LESSON LXVII.

Perfect-stem.—Third Conjugation, continued.

(416.) CLASS V.—*Perfect-stem lengthens the Stem-vowel of the Verb.*

(a) *Without vowel-change.*

<i>To read, gather,</i>	<i>lĕg-ĕrĕ,</i>	<i>lĕg-i,</i>	<i>lec-tum.</i>
<i>To conquer,</i>	<i>vinc-ĕrĕ,</i>	<i>vinc-i,</i>	<i>vic-tum.</i>

(b) *With vowel-change.*

<i>To drive,</i>	<i>ag-ĕrĕ,</i>	<i>ĕg-i,</i>	<i>ac-tum.</i>
<i>To break,</i>	<i>frang-ĕrĕ,</i>	<i>frĕg-i,</i>	<i>frac-tum.</i>

(c) *io verbs (199).*

<i>To fly,</i>	<i>fŭg-iĭ,</i>	<i>fŭg-ĕrĕ,</i>	<i>fŭg-i,</i>	<i>fŭg-i-tum.</i>
<i>To take,</i>	<i>căp-iĭ,</i>	<i>căp-ĕrĕ,</i>	<i>cĕp-i,</i>	<i>cap-tum.</i>
<i>To cast,</i>	<i>jăc-iĭ,</i>	<i>jăc-ĕrĕ,</i>	<i>jĕc-i,</i>	<i>jac-tum.</i>
<i>To dig,</i>	<i>fŏd-iĭ,</i>	<i>fŏd-ĕrĕ,</i>	<i>fŏd-i,</i>	<i>fos-sum.</i>
<i>To make, do,</i>	<i>făc-iĭ,</i>	<i>făc-ĕrĕ,</i>	<i>fĕc-i,</i>	<i>fac-tum.</i>

EXERCISE.

(417.) *Vocabulary.*

<i>Remains, remnant, rĕliquiæ, ārum</i> (pl.) (57, R.).	<i>To hurl, conjicĕrĕ (jĕc-, ject, con+ jăcĕrĕ).</i>
<i>To collect, colligĕrĕ (lĕg-, lect-, con+ lĕgĕrĕ).</i>	<i>To undertake, suscipĕrĕ (cĕp-, cept-, sub+căpĕrĕ).</i>
<i>To receive, take back, rĕcipĕrĕ (cĕp-, cept-, rĕ+căpĕrĕ).</i>	<i>To finish, conficĕrĕ (fĕc-, fect-, con+ facĕrĕ).</i>
<i>Headlong, præceps, (præcipit) is</i> (adj., 107).	<i>To begin, incipĕrĕ (incĕp-, incept- in+căpĕrĕ).</i>
<i>To receive, accipĕre (cĕp-, cept-, ad+ căpĕre).</i>	<i>Safe, tătus, ā, ūm.</i>
<i>To bring-together, to compel, cŏgĕrĕ</i> (coĕg-, coact-, con+ăgĕrĕ).	<i>Cappadocia, Cappădŏcia, æ.</i>
<i>To break through, perfringĕrĕ (frĕg-, fract-, per+frangĕrĕ).</i>	<i>A district, păgus, i.</i>
<i>Dart, javelin, tĕlum, i.</i>	<i>Ægypt, Ægyptus, i (f.).</i>
	<i>Easily, făcĭlĕ (adv.).</i>
	<i>Trial, jŭdicium, i.</i>
	<i>Family of slaves, fămĭlia, æ.</i>

(418.) *Examples.*

(a) <i>To betake one's self back.</i>	<i>Sĕ rĕcipĕrĕ.</i>
<i>He went back to his house.</i>	<i>Sĕ dŏmŭm rĕcĕpĭt.</i>
(b) <i>Within the memory of our</i>	<i>Patrum nostrŏrum mĕ-</i>
<i>fathers.</i>	<i>mŏriă (abl., 55, a).</i>

(c) *Lucius Cassius, the consul.* | L. Cassius, consul.

The (*prænomen*) first name is rarely written out. L. stands for Lucius T. for Titus, &c. Consul is in apposition (225, a) with *L. Cassius*.

(d) *In mid-summer.* | Mēdiā æstātē (118, II., c).

(419.) *Translate into English.*

Servus meus orationes et historias et carmina legit.—Legatus reliquias exercitus collegit, itineribusque tutis per Cappadociam se in Asiam recepit.—Nostrum acriter impetum fecerunt atque precipites hostes egerunt.—Labienus, cum his copiis quas a Cesare acciperat, ad fines Aeduorum contendit.—Pompeius magnam ex Asia et Aegypto classem coegerat.—Milites facile (adv.) hostium aciem perfrangerunt atque in eos impetum fecerunt.—Hic pater unus, patrum nostrorum memoria, L. Cassium consulem (418, c) interfecerat, et ejus exercitum sub jugum (323, N.) miserat.—Hostes subito tela in nostros conjecerunt.—Pompeius bellum vere (in the spring, 118, II., c) suscepit, media aestate confecit.

(420.) *Translate into Latin.*

The general had collected (cogere) great forces.—Pompey brought-together a great army from Asia and Egypt.—Have you read the books of Cicero?—The general collected the remnant of his army, and betook himself into Gaul.—Our (men) drove the enemy headlong, and slew many.—Labienus had received four legions from Caesar.—Labienus, with the legions which he had received from Caesar, hastened to the confines of the Aeduans.—Orgetorix brought-together to the trial all his family-of-slaves from every side.—The enemy brought-together all (their) ships into one place.—The Romans easily broke-through the line-of-battle of the Aeduans.—Caesar finished the great war in-mid-summer (418, d) which he had begun in-the-spring (118, II., c).

LESSON LXVIII.

Perfect-stem. — Third Conjugation, concluded.

(421.) CLASS VI.—*Perfect-stem = simple Verb-stem.*

(a) Stems ending in u or v (list, 666, VI., a).

<i>To sharpen,</i>	ăcū-ērē,	ăcū-ī,	acū-tum.
<i>To roll,</i>	volv-ērē,	volv-ī,	volū-tum.

(b) *Consonant-stems* (list, 666, VI., b).

<i>To turn,</i>	vert-ērē,	vert-ī,	ver-sum.
-----------------	-----------	---------	----------

(c) Compounds of *cando* and *fendo* (*obs.*) belong here ;

g.

<i>To burn,</i>	incend-ērē,	incend-ī,	incen-sum.
<i>To defend, ward off,</i>	dēfend-ērē,	dēfend-ī,	dēfen-sum.

EXERCISE.

(422.) *Vocabulary.*

The back, tergum, ī.

To flow together, confluere (conflux-, conflux-, con+fluere, 401, 2).

Discipline, disciplinā, æ.

Austerity, severity, sēvēritas, (severitat) īs (293).

To dissolve, dissolvēre (solv-, solūt-, dis+solvēre).

To return, rēvertēre (rēvert-, revers-, rē+vertēre).

To appoint, to station, to determine, constituere (stītu-, stītūt-, con+stātuerē).

To divide, to distribute, distribuere (bū-, būt-, dis+trībuere).

Desirous, covetous, cūpīdus, ā, ūm (governs genitive).

To know, learn, cognoscere (cognōv-, cognīt-, con+noscere).

To turn, vertere (421, b).

(423.) *Examples.*

(a) *The general appointed a day for the council.*

Impērātor diem conciliō (dat.) constituit.

(b) *What (number of) long ships he had.*

Quidquid nāvium (180) longārum habēbat.

(c) *To divide or distribute among.*

Distribuere (with acc. of thing, and dat. of person).

(424.) *Translate into English.*

Hostes tergā vertērunt.—Divitiæ (57, R.) quæ ad Rōmam confluxērunt, mōrum disciplinam sēvēritātemque dissolvērunt.—Cæsar diem cum lēgātis constituit.—Dies, quam Cæsar constituerat cum lēgātis, vēnit, et lēgātī ad eum

(150) *rēvertērunt*.—*Mīlites sēse* (145, c) *fortīter* (215, 2) *dēfendērunt*.—*Hostes cōpias suas in tres partes distribuerant*.—*Cæsar, quidquid nāvium longārum hābēbat, lēgātis præfectisque* (423, c) *distribuit*.—*Prōcellæ fluctūs vastos ad littorā volvērant*.—*Cæsar exercitum flūmen* (113, II., a) *transducere constituit*.—*Cæsar Dumnōrigem Æduum sēcum* (125, II., b) *ducere constituit, quod (cōnj.) eum cupīdum impērii* (synt., 698, b, 1) *cognōverat*.—*Æduī ex itinēre dōmum* (113, III., R.) *revertērunt*.

(425.) *Translate into Latin.*

The soldiers defended the city very bravely (376).—The general stationed the foot-soldiers near (ad, 408, c) the wall of the town.—On-the-next-day (118, II., c) Cæsar stationed all the horse-soldiers in-front-of (prō) the camp.—The chiefs of the states returned to Cæsar.—The day which Cæsar had appointed for the council came, and the chiefs of the states returned to him.—Our (men) turned their backs.—The riches of the Romans had dissolved (their) discipline and austerity of manners.—What money (423, b) he had he distributed among (423, c) the lieutenants and soldiers.—The Æduans divided their forces into two parts.—The tempests rolled vast waves to the stars.—The general determined to take (ducere) the lieutenant with him.—The seas were rolling great waves to the shores.

LESSON LXIX.

Perfect-stem.—Fourth Conjugation.

(426.) THE perfect-stem in the *fourth conjugation* is formed in five ways.

- | | | | |
|------|------------------------------------|--------------------|------------------|
| I. | By adding <i>iv</i> to verb-stem ; | <i>aud-irē,</i> | <i>aud-iv-</i> . |
| II. | “ <i>ū</i> “ | <i>āpēr-irē,</i> | <i>āpēr-ū-</i> . |
| III. | “ <i>s</i> “ | <i>sēp-irē,</i> | <i>sep-s-</i> . |
| IV. | lengthening stem-vowel ; | <i>vēn-irē,</i> | <i>vēn-</i> . |
| V. | taking simple verb-stem ; | <i>compēr-irē,</i> | <i>compēr-</i> |

(427.) On this table, observe that *Class*I. contains *most* of the verbs of the fourth conjugation.

[Numerous examples have already occurred. Any peculiar supines are given in the vocabularies.]

II. contains *four* simple verbs (see list, 667, II.).

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine
<i>To open, uncover,</i>	āpēr-irē,	āpēr-ū-i,	āper-tum.
<i>To leap,</i>	sāl-irē,	sāl-ū-i,	sal-tum.

III. contains *nine* simple verbs (see list, 667, III.).

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
<i>To bind,</i>	vinc-irē,	vinx-i (vinc-s-i),	vinc-tum.
<i>To think,</i>	sent-irē,	sens-i (sent-s-i),	{ sen-sum (sent-sum).

IV. contains but *one* verb.

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
<i>To come,</i>	vēn-īre,	vēn-ī,	ven-tum.

V. contains *two* verbs.

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
<i>To ascertain, find,</i>	compēr-irē,	compēr-ī,	comper-tum.
<i>To discover,</i>	rēpēr-īre,	rēpēr-ī,	rēper-tum.

EXERCISE.

(428.) *Vocabulary.*

<i>To leap down, dēsīlire</i> (dēsīlū- and dēsili-, dēsult-, dē+sālīre).	<i>To come together, assemble, convenire</i> (cōn+venīre, 427, IV.).
<i>To come near, to approach, appropinquāre</i> (ād+prōpinquāre, av-, at-), with <i>dat.</i>	<i>To find, invēnīre</i> (īn+venīre, 427, IV.).
<i>To agree, consentire</i> (con+sentīre, 427, III.).	<i>Thither, to that place, eō</i> (<i>adv.</i>).
<i>To disagree, dissentire</i> (dīs+sentīre, 427, III.).	<i>To open, āperīre</i> (427, II.).
<i>To come to, reach, arrive at, pervēnīre</i> (pēr+vēnīre, 427, IV.).	<i>When, quum.</i>
	<i>Youth, jūventūs, (jūventūt) is</i> (f.).
	<i>To lay waste, pōpūlārī, dep.</i> (pōpūlāt-).
	<i>After that, postquam</i> (<i>adv.</i>).

Example.(a) *In a battle of cavalry.* | Ēquestrī praeliō.*Rule of Syntax.*—The ablative is used to express the manner of an action, especially with an adjective.(429.) *Translate into English.*

Milites ex nāvibus dēsīlērunt et hostibus (391. 2) appropinquārunt (349, N.).—Oppidāni portas āpēruērunt, et se, atque oppidum Cēsāri dēdērunt.—Hostes inter se dissensērunt.—Omnes cīves ūnā mentē (abl., 428, a) consensērunt.

runt.—*Helvētīi jam per angustias cōpias suas transduxērant, et in Æduorum fines pervēnērant, eōrumque agros pōpūlabantur.*—*Cæsar cum Lābiēno Nūmantiam (713) pervēnit, ibique consules invēnit.*—*Quum milites eō convēnērunt, nāves ūnum in lōcum coegērunt.*—*Eō postquam Cæsar pervēnit, obsīdes et arma pōposcit.*

(430.) *Translate into Latin.*

After-that the townsmen saw the standards, they opened the gates, and gave themselves (up) to Cæsar.—The Germans, in the cavalry battle (428, a), leaped-down from (their) horses.—The general led the army through the straits, and on the seventh day arrived at the boundaries of the Germans.—The townsmen leaped-down from the wall.—All the soldiers agreed (with) one mind and voice (v o x).—When Cæsar arrived-at the town, the townsmen opened the gates.—When the general reached Numantia, he called together the citizens.—When the horsemen reached the town, the townsmen opened the gates.—The lieutenant led-back the soldiers to the town, and there found the general.

§ 8.

FORMS OF TENSES FOR COMPLETED ACTION, PASSIVE.

LESSON LXX.

Tenses of Verbs for Completed Action.—Indicative Passive.

(431.) THE tenses for completed action, passive (*perfect, pluperfect, future perfect*), are compounded of the perfect participle passive and of the tenses of the verb *esse, to be*: thus, *āmātūs sum, I have been loved; āmātūs es, thou hast been loved, &c.*

(432.) (a) The perfect participle of any verb is the form of which the *supine* is the accusative, and is inflected (like an adjective of three terminations) with the endings *ūs, ā, ūm*; thus:

<small>Supines.</small>	<small>Perf. Part.</small>	
Āmāt-ūm,	āmāt-ūs, ā, ūm,	<i>loved.</i>
Mōnīt-ūm,	mōnīt-ūs, ā, ūm,	<i>advised.</i>
Rect-ūm.	rect-ūs, ā, ūm,	<i>ruled.</i>
Audīt-ūm,	audīt-ūs, ā, ūm,	<i>heard.</i>

(b) The perfect participle, then, of any verb, is formed by adding the inflection-endings *ūs, ā, ūm* to the supine-stem.

(433.)

PARADIGM.

PERFECT PASSIVE.	
āmātūs, ā, ūm,	Singular.
	sūm, <i>I have been loved.</i>
	ēs, <i>thou hast been loved.</i>
	est, <i>he, she, it, has been loved.</i>
āmātī, e, ā,	Plural.
	sūmūs, <i>we have been loved.</i>
	estīs, <i>ye or you have been loved.</i>
	sunt, <i>they have been loved.</i>
PLUPERFECT.	
āmātūs, ā, ūm,	Singular.
	ērām, <i>I had been loved.</i>
	ērās, <i>thou hadst been loved.</i>
	ērāt, <i>he, she, it, had been loved.</i>
āmātī, e, ā,	Plural.
	ērāmūs, <i>we had been loved.</i>
	ērātīs, <i>ye or you had been loved.</i>
	ērant, <i>they had been loved.</i>
FUTURE PERFECT.	
āmātūs, ā, ūm,	Singular.
	ēro, <i>I shall have been loved.</i>
	erīs, <i>thou wilt have been loved.</i>
	erīt, <i>he, she, it, will have been loved.</i>
āmātī, e, ā,	Plural.
	ērīmūs, <i>we shall have been loved.</i>
	erītīs, <i>you will have been loved.</i>
	erunt, <i>they will have been loved.</i>

(434.) Vocabulary.

To rout, to defeat, pellere (pēpūl-, puls-, 411, b).

To divulge, enuntiāre (ē+nuntiāre, āv-, āt-).

Sure, certain, certus, a, um.

To drive back, repellere (rēpūl-, repuls-, rē+pellere).

Private information, indicium, ī.

Beginning, initium, ī.

Casticus, Casticus, ī.

Conference, colloquium, ī.

To hold, obtinere (obtinu-, obtent-, ob+tēnere).

Departure, discessus, ūs.

Nobility, nobilitas, (nobilitat) īs (f., 293).

(435.) Examples.

(a) To inform any one.

Āliquē certiorē facere (= to make any one more certain).

(b) Cæsar was informed.

Cæsar certior factus est (= Cæsar was made more certain).

(c) All Gaul is divided into three parts.

Gallia est omnis divisa in partes tres.

The perfect passive participle is sometimes used with *est* as an adjective, and is then to be rendered as a *present tense*; e. g., in (c), *est divisa* = *is divided*.

(436.) *Translate into English.*

Miles vulneratus est.—*Bella gesta erant.*—*Exercitus Cassii ab Helvetiis pulsus erat, et sub jugum missus erat.*—*Ea res Helvetiis (54) per indicium enuntiata est.*—*Helvetii de Cæsaris adventu certiores facti sunt.*—*Ubi de Cæsaris adventu Helvetii certiores facti sunt, legatos ad eum miserunt.*—*Barbāri telis (93, II., b, R.) et munitione repulsi sunt.*—*Initium fugæ a Dumnorige et ejus equitibus factum est.*—*Legati a Divitiaco, Æduo (225, a) ad Cæsarem missi erant.*—*Pater Castici regnum in Sequānis multos annos (191, Rule) obtinuerat et a senātu populi Rōmāni amicus (80, a) appellatus erat.*—*Dies colloquio (54) constitutus est, ex eō diā quintus.*

(437.) *Translate into Latin.*

The centurions of the first ranks were wounded on the same day (118, II., c).—Cæsar was informed (435, a) of (de) the approach of the enemy.—The general had been informed of the departure (discessus) of the Germans.—The beginning of the flight had been made by the soldiers of the tenth legion.—The tenth legion had been defeated by the Germans, and had been sent under the yoke.—The conspiracy of the nobility was divulged to the Helvetians through private-information.—The war had been carried-on (for) many years (191, Rule).—The enemy were driven-back by the darts of the soldiers.—Ambassadors were sent by Cassius the consul (225, a) to the chiefs.—The Æduans were called friends (80, a) by the senate of the Roman people.—The townsmen were wounded by the darts of the soldiers.—The horsemen of the enemy were driven-back by the darts of the soldiers.—A day had been appointed for the conference.

§ 9.

PARTICIPLES. (LXXI.—LXXV.)

(438.) THE *Participle* presents the idea of the verb under the form of an adjective : (a) the *rising* sun ; (b) I saw the boy *writing* a letter. Sometimes, as in (a), its use is wholly adjective ; again, as in (b), it governs the case of its verb. There are two *active* participles in Latin, the participle of the *present* and the participle of the *future* ; two *passive*, the *perfect* and the *verbal* in *dus*.

LESSON LXXI.

Present Participle Active.

(439.) (a) THE endings of the present participle active for the four conjugations are,

1.	2.	3.	4.
-ans,	-ens,	ens,	-iens.

(b) By adding these endings to the stems respectively of the verbs *am-āre*, *mōn-ēre*, *rēg-ērē*, *aud-īrē*, we obtain the present participle active :

<i>Loving,</i>	<i>advising,</i>	<i>ruling,</i>	<i>hearing.</i>
Ām-ans,	mōn-ens,	rēg-ens,	aud-iens.

(440.) The present participle is declined like an adjective of the third class (108).

Singular.		Plural.
N. V. Āmans.		N. V. Āmantēs, āmantiā.
Gen. Āmantīs.		Gen. Āmantiūm.
Dat. Āmantī, &c.		Dat. Āmantībūs, &c.

Rem. The abl. sing. ending is *ī* when the part. is used strictly as an adj.; e. g., in *florentī rosā*, in a *blooming rose*.

(a) Observe carefully that the Latin present participle active expresses *incomplete* or *continued* action; the language has no active participle to express *complete* action. We cannot translate the English *having loved* by any Latin active participle.

(b) But *deponent* verbs (206) have both participles, the *present* and the *perfect*; *exhorting*, hort-ans; *having exhorted*, hort-ātūs.

EXERCISE.

(441.) Vocabulary.

To rise, ōriri (*dep.*, ort-).

To desire, cūpērē (īŏ-, iv-, it-, 406, III., b).

Labour, toil, lābōr, (lābōr) īs (m., 319).

Watching, watchfulness, vīgilantiā, æ.

Especially, præsertīm (*adv.*).

To depart, discēdērē (dis+cēdere, 401, 3, b).

To weep, flērē (flēv-, flēt-, 395, II.).

To look upon or at, intuērī (*dep.*).

All, the whole, cunctus, ā, ūm.

To worship, adore, ādōrāre.

Eye, ōculus, ī.


A Persian, Persā, æ.

To doubt, dūbitārē (āv-, at-).

To set out, prōficisci (*dep.*, prōfect-).

To sit, sēdērē (sēd-, sess-, 394, V.).

Firmament, heaven, cælum, ī.

To shine, micāre (389, .

The sun, sōl, (sōl) īs (m., 319).

Full, plēnūs, ā, ūm (with *gen.*).

To be wanting, de-essē (with *dat.*).

Star, stellā, æ.

To set (e. g., as the heavenly bodies), occidērē (occīd-, occās-, ob+cādērē).

To throw before, prōficērē (jēc-, ject-, pro+jēcere).

(442.) (a) Recollect that, to form pres. part. act., you add to the stem ans in 1st conj.; e. g., am-ans: ens in 2d and 3d conjs.; e. g., mōn-ens, dic-ens: ūens in 4th conj.; e. g., aud-ūens. Also, add ūens in the īŏ verbs (199) of 3d conj.; e. g., cūp-io, cūp-ūens; fac-io, fac-ūens.

(b) In *deponent* verbs, the same rules apply: hort-ārī, hort-āns: ōr-irī, ōr-ūens; intu-ērī, intu-ens, &c. The perf. act. part. in deponents adds ūs, ā, ūm to the supine-stem: hort-ārī, hortat-ūs, &c.

(c) The participle is used to *abridge* discourse.

(1) He heard me when I { He heard me saying that.
said that= { Mō īd dīcentēm audīvīt.

(2) God, who governs all { God, governing all things.
things= { Deūs, omniā gūbernāns.

(3) To him that desires= { (The man) desiring.
Cūpientī.

- (d) He threw himself at $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{He threw himself before Cæsar, at} \\ \text{his feet.} \end{array} \right.$
Cæsar's feet, $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Sē Cæsari ad pēdēs prōjēcit.} \end{array} \right.$

(e) Can enim, vero, or autem stand first in a clause or sentence? (No.)

(443.) *Translate into English.*

Mē id dīcentem audīvistīne?—Persæ sōlem ōrientem (442, c) ādōrant.—Lābiēnus, suos (*his men*) hortātus, cūpientibus signum dat.—Nōn enim lābor aut vīgīlantia, cūpienti præsertim āliquīd (178, 5), Cassio deērat (267, b).—Cæsar ab hibernis in Itāliam discēdens, lēgātos convocat.—Mūlieres flentes sēse Cæsari (442, d) ad pēdes prōjēcērunt.—Nēmo, cunctam intūens terram, dē dīvinā prōvidentiā dūbitābit.—Cæsar, in Itāliam prōfīciscens, lēgātos omnes ad sē rēvocāvit.—Divitiācus, flens, ā Cæsare hęc (*these things*) pētēbat.—Cīcero Cātōnem vidit in hortō sēdentem.—Quantā (184, R. 1) est sāpientia Deī, omniā gūbernantis?

(444.) *Translate into Latin.*

[The words which illustrate the lesson are in *Italic*.]

The firmament is full of *shining* (438, a) stars.—No one, *when he looks at* (=looking, 442, c, 1) the firmament and stars, will doubt respecting (d e) the wisdom of God.—Did they hear me (135, II., a) *when I said* (=saying) that (i d)?—The barbarians were-worshipping the *setting* sun.—Labienus, *having exhorted* (440, b) his men, made an attack upon the enemy (in hostes).—Cæsar willingly gave the signal to the soldiers *when they desired it* (=desiring).—To *him that desires* (=desiring) anything, no labour will-be-wanting (267, b).—Cæsar, *departing* from winter-quarters, gives rewards to the soldiers.—The eye, not *seeing* itself (sē, acc.), sees other-things (āliā).—The Æduans, *weeping*, threw themselves at the feet of Cæsar (442, d).—I saw my brother *sitting* in the garden yesterday.—How-great is the power of God, *who governs* (=governing) the world?

LESSON LXXII.

Participle Future Active.

(445.) THE ending of the future participle active is *ū, ūs*, which, added to the *supine-stem*, forms the participle; e. g.,

About to love, or one who will love, amāt-ūr ūs.

About to advise, or one who will advise, mōnīt-ūr ūs.

(446.) PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

The different tenses of *esse* (to be), joined with the participle future active, form what is called the *periphrastic conjugation*.

Pres.	{	amātūr ūs sūm, <i>I will love, am about to love, intend to love.</i>		
		amātūr ūs es, <i>thou,</i>	• &c.,	&c.
		So through all the persons.		
Past.	{	amātūr ūs ēram, <i>I was about to love, intended to love, &c.</i>		
		amātūr ūs ēras, <i>thou,</i>	&c.,	&c.
		So through all the persons.		
Fut.	{	amātūr ūs ero, <i>I shall be about to love, shall be on the point of loving, &c.</i>		
		amātūr ūs eris, <i>thou,</i>	&c.,	&c.
		So through all the persons.		

EXERCISE.

(447.) *Vocabulary.*

To call upon, invocāre (in+vōcāre, āv-, āt-).

To collect into a flock, congregāre (āv-, āt-).

Foreign, aliēnus, ā, ūm.

To procure, comparāre (āv-, āt-, cōn+parāre).

To last, dūrāre (dūrāv-, dūrāt-).*

To implore, implōrare (in+plorāre, āv-, āt-).

Alone, sōlus, ā, ūm (194, 1).

To cross over, trājicere (trājēc-, trājēct-, trans+jācere).†

Ammon, a surname of Jupiter, Ham-mōn, īs.

To behold, spectāre (āv-, āt-).

To proceed, pergere (perrex-, perrect-).

To consult, consūlre (consūlu-, consult-).

(448.) *Example.*

The Athenians sent ambassadors to consult the oracle.

Athēniensēs lēgātos mīserunt, ōrācūlum consūltūr ōs.

* Dūrāre, transitive, = to harden; intrans., = to become hard, i. e., to last.

† Transjicere, transit., = to convey over; intrans., = to cross over.

Rule of Syntax.—The future active participle is used after a verb of motion to express the *design* of that motion.

(449.) *Translate into English.*

1. *Āvēs, in āliēnas terras migrātūræ, congregantur.*—*Cæsar, in Galliam prōfectūrus, centūrionēs convōcat.*—*Germānī, bellum gestūrī, Deōs invōcāvērunt.*—*Sapiens bonā (neut. pl.) comparat semper dūrātūrā.*

2. *Periphrastic Conjugation*—*Cæsar dē quartā vīgiliā castrā mōtūrus est.*—*Scripturus sum.*—*Dumnōrix impērium suæ cīvitātis obtentūrus erat.*—*Impērator, cum sōlā dēcimā lēgiōne prōfectūrus erat.*—*Æduī auxiliū ā pōpulo Rōmano implōrātūrī sunt.*—*Germānī bellum gestūrī erant.*

3. *Future Participle used to express a purpose* (448).—*Scīpio in Afrīcam trājēcit, Carthāginem dēlētūrus.*—*Ingens hōmīnum multitūdō in urbem congrēgātur, lūdōs spectātūrā.*—*Alexander in Asiam contendit, regnum Persārum occūpātūrus.*—*Alexander ad Jōvem Hammōnem pergit, consultūrus dē ōrīgine suā.*

(450.) *Translate into Latin.*

1. The soldiers, *when-about-to-set-out* for (in) Spain, called-upon the gods.—Many (men) have procured possessions (*bonā*) *which-will-not-last* (=not about-to-last).—The general, *when-about-to-cross* the river, sends-away the horse-soldiers.—*Cæsar, intending-to-send* a messenger, calls together the centurions.

2. *Periphrastic Conjugation.*—*Dumnorix was about-to-seize-upon* the royal-power.—The general is *about-to-set-out* from the camp with five legions.—The *Æduans* are *about-to-carry-on* a fierce war.—The hostages were *intending-to-implore* aid from the general.

3. *Future Participle to express a purpose.*—The *Æduans* sent ambassadors *to-implore* help from *Cæsar*.—The enemy crossed the river *in-order-to-besiege* the town.—The men flock (*congregor*) from-every-side to the town, *to-behold* the games.

LESSON LXXIII.

Perfect Participle Passive.

(451.) (a) THE perfect passive participle is formed (as stated 432, b) by adding the adjective-endings ūs, ā, ūm to the supine-stem; e. g.,

Inf.	Supine-stem.	Perf. Part.	
āmārē,	amāt-,	āmāt-ūs, ā, ūm,	loved, or having been loved.
vincērē,	vict-,	vict-ūs, ā, ūm,	{ conquered, or having been conquered.

(b) It is declined throughout like an adjective of the first class (76), and must agree with the substantive in gender, number, and case; e. g., puer laudātūs, puellā laudātā.

(c) The deponent verbs use the perfect participle form *actively*; e. g., hortātus, having exhorted.

EXERCISE.

(452.) *Vocabulary.*

Sudden, rēpentinūs, ā, ūm.

To alarm, perturbārē (āv-, āt-).

To seize, snatch up, arripērē (arrip-
io, arripū-, arrept-, ad-+rāpērē).

Auxiliaries, auxiliā, ōrum.*

To put-to-flight, discomfit, fūgārē.

To drive-on or together, compellērē
(compūl-, compuls-, con-+pellērē).

To induce, addūcēre (dux-, duct-,
ad-+ducērē).

Influence, auctoritas, (auctoritāt) is.

To prevail upon, permōvērē (mōv-,
mōt-, per-+mōvērē, i. e., to move
thoroughly).

A wagon, carrūs, ī.

To buy up, coēmērē (ēm-, empt-,
con-+ēmērē).

Aristides, Aristīdes (Aristid) is.

Pharsalus, Pharsalus, ī (f., 25, a).

To depart-out-of, excēdērē (excess-,
ex-+cēdērē).

Rhetoric, rhētoricā, æ.

To expel, expellērē (expūl-, ex-
puls-).

To stimulate, indūcērē (dux-, duct-).

Strong-desire, cūpīditas, (tāt) is
(293).

(453.) *Examples.*

(a) *At Corinth.*

At Rome.

At Carthage.

At Athens.

Corinthī.

Rōmæ.

Carthāginē.

Athēnis.

Rule of Syntax.—The place where is put in the *ablative*

* Auxilium in sing. = aid, assistance: in plur. = auxiliary troops.

if the name be of the *third* declension or plural number ; otherwise in the *genitive*.

- | | |
|-----------------------|-------------|
| (b) <i>From Rome.</i> | Romā. |
| <i>From Carthage.</i> | Carthāgīnē. |

Rule of Syntax.—The place *whence* is put in the *ablative*.

- | | |
|---------------------|----------|
| (c) <i>To Rome.</i> | Rōmā m. |
| <i>To Athens.</i> | Athēnās. |

Rule of Syntax.—The place *whither* is put in the *accusative* if it be a town or small island.

Rem. With the names of countries or large islands, the prep. *in* or *ad* is employed: *to Italy*, in Itāliam; *to Egypt*, ad Ægyptum.

- | | |
|---|--|
| (d) <i>The soldiers, having been defeated, took to flight.</i>
(<i>Lat. The soldiers, defeated, threw themselves into flight.</i>) | Militēs, pulsī, in fūgam sē conjēcērunt. |
| (e) <i>The chief, when he was expelled from his country, fled to Rome.</i> | Princeps, patriā expulsūs.
Rōmam fūgīt. |
| (f) <i>As large a number as possible.</i> | Quam maxīmus nūmēr-
us. |
| (g) <i>A sudden occurrence.</i> | Rēpentinā rēs. |

(454.) *Translate into English.*

Nostrī (*our men*), rēpentinā rē (55, a) perturbātī, armā arripiunt.—Auxiliā perturbātā, in fūgam sē conjēcērunt.—Militēs hostes fūgātos in flūmen compulērunt.—Helvētīi, hīs rēbus adductī, lēgātos ad Cēsārem dē dēditionē mittunt.—Gallī, hīs rēbus adductī, et auctōritatē Orgetorigis permōtī, jūmentōrum et carrōrum quam maxīmum nūmērū coēmērunt.—Prīncipēs, adventū Romanōrum permōtī, lēgātos ad Cēsārem dē dēditionē mittunt.—Āristīdēs, patriā expulsūs, Lācēdāmōnem fūgīt.—Diōnysius, Sŷracūsīs expulsūs, Cōrinthī pūeros dōcēbat.—Prīncipes, oppidō expulsī, Rōmam (453, c) vērērunt.—Lēgātus, rēpentinā rē perturbātus, centūriōnes convōcat.

(455.) *Translate into Latin.*

The Helvetians, prevailed upon by the influence of Cæsar, led (their) army across the Rhine.—The chiefs, induced by

these considerations (= things), give hostages and an immense sum-of-money to the lieutenant.—Pompey, *when he had been defeated* (= defeated, 453, d) at Pharsalus, fled to Alexandria—Jugurtha, *when he was expelled from Africa*, came to Rome—The soldiers, *alarmed* by the sudden occurrence (453, g) take to flight (453, d).—For (enim) Pompey, *although-he-had-been-defeated* (= defeated) (in) no (nullō) battle, departed-out-of Italy.—Our (men) drove on the *alarmed* and *discomfited* enemy into the River Rhine.—The Helvetians, *induced* by these considerations (= things), bought-up as large a number as possible (453, f) of horses and beasts-of-burden.—The orator, *having-been-expelled-from* Athens, taught rhetoric at Carthage (453, a, R.).—The general, *induced* by these considerations, gave great rewards to the soldiers.—Orgetorix, *stimulated* by a strong-desire of royal-power, made a conspiracy of the nobility.

LESSON LXXIV.

Participles.—Ablative Absolute.

[THE ablative absolute is a very important part of Latin construction, and should be thoroughly learned.]

(456.) The participle is used in the *ablative with a noun*, when it is independent of the subject and object of the sentence.

(a) <i>When Tarquin was reigning, Pythagoras came into Italy.</i>	Pŷthägōras, Tarquīnio regnante, in Itāliam vēnit.
---	---

Here *Tarquin* is independent of *Pythagoras*, the subject of the sentence.

(457.) The want of a perfect active participle in Latin is frequently supplied by the *ablative absolute* with a passive participle.

(b) <i>Labiēnus, having taken possession of the mountain, was waiting for our men.</i>	Lābiēnus, montē occūpātō, nostrōs expectābat.
--	---

Here it would be impossible to say *Labiēnus, occupātus montem*, as *occupātus* is passive, not active.

(458.) A *noun* may be put in the ablative absolute with another noun *without* a participle.

- | | |
|---|--|
| (a) <i>In the prætorship of Cæsar.</i> | Cæsāre prætorē (= Cæsar being prætor). |
| (b) <i>In the consulship of Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso.</i> | M. Messālā et M. Pisōnē consūlibus (= Messala and Piso being consuls). |

[This construction is used mostly to designate the *time* of an event.]

EXERCISE.

 (459.) *Vocabulary.*

To avail, vālērē (vālū-).

Tiberius, Tībērius (ī).

To die, mōrī and mōrī (mortū), dep.

A pleading, dictio, (diction) is (333).

Catiline, Cātīlinā, æ.

Christ, Christūs, ī.

To finish, perficere (per+facere, perfēc, perfect-); also, conficere (fēc, fect-).

To reign, regnāre (āv-, at-).

Night, nox, (noct) is (294).

Territories, fines (pl. of finis, 300).

 (460.) *Translate into English.*

Nihil præceptā vālent, nisi adjuvante nātūrā (456, a).—Deō jūvante, facilis est lābor.—Tībērio regnante, Christus mortuus est.—Concilio dīmisso, principes ad Cæsarem revertērunt.—Diē constitūtā causæ dictionis, Orgetorix ad iudicium omnem suam familiam, ad hominum millia decem, undique coegit.—Cæsar, opere perfecto, præsiidiā disposuit.—Cæsar, hostibus pulsīs (457, b) in finēs Æduorum pervēnit.—Cæsar, duōbus bellis confectis, in hibernā exercitum duxit.—Bellō confectō, principēs civitātum ad Cæsarem, grātulātum (379), convēnērunt.—Cātīlinā, Cicerōnē consūlē (458), conjuratiōnem fēcit.—Nātūrā dūcē, nunquam errabimūs.—Orgetorix, Marcō Messālā et Marcō Pisōnē consūlibus, conjuratiōnem nobilitātis fēcit.

 (461.) *Translate into Latin.*

Our precepts will avail, *when nature assists* (= *nature assisting*).—*When the sun rises* (= *the sun rising*), the night flees.—*When the council was dismissed* (= *the council being dismissed*), the chiefs began to beseech Cæsar.—*When the council was dismissed*, Cæsar called the lieutenants to himself.—

Cæsar, when the work was finished (= the work being finished), fortified the towers.—Cæsar, having defeated Pompey (= Pompey being defeated), returned to Rome.—Cæsar, having finished the war, led-back his army into the territories of the Æduans.—In the consulship of Cicero, Catiline was expelled from Rome.—When God assists (= God assisting), it is not difficult to labour.—With God for our guide (= God leader), we shall never err.

LESSON LXXV.

Ablative Absolute, continued.

EXERCISE.

(462.) *Vocabulary.*

To abstain from, abstinere (abstinū-, abstent-, abs+tenēre), with *abl.*

A plan, purpose, consilium, ī (not concilium).

To harass, lacessere (iv-, it-, 406, III., b).

From higher ground, ē loco superiorē.

A dart, pilum, ī.

Phalanx, phalanx, (phalang) is (293).

To hinder, prohibere (hibū-, hibit-, pro+hābere).

Cnæus Pompey, Cnæus Pompēius.

Of one's own accord, ultrō (adv.).

To change, commutare (av-, at-)

To be born, nasci (nātus), *dep.*

Senate-house, cūria, æ.

Augustus, Augustus, ī.

(463.) *Translate into English.*

Lābiēnus, montē occūpāto, nostrōs expectābat, praeliōque abstīnēbat.—Barbārī, consilio commūtātō, nostrōs lacessere cœperunt.—Milites, ē locō supēriore pilis missis, facile hostium phalangem perfregērunt (416, b).—Cognitō Cæsāris adventū, Āriōvistus lēgātos ad eum mittit.—Cnēō Pompeiō et Marcō Crassō consūlibus, Germanī flūmen Rhenum transivērunt.—Nullo hoste prohibente, Crassus legiōnem in Helvētios perduxit, ibique hiemāvit.—His rebus cognitīs, impērātor ipsē ad exercitum contendit.—Hāc audītā pugnā, magna pars Aquitanizæ obsides ultrō misit.—Belgæ, omnibus vicis oppidisque incensis, ad castrā Cæsāris contendērunt.—Augustō regnante, Christus nātus est.

(464.) *Translate into Latin.*

The barbarians, *having changed their plan* (= plan being changed), made an attack upon our men.—The soldiers, *having-broken-through the phalanx*, began to harass the enemy.—The Belgians, *having heard of this battle*, sent ambassadors to Cæsar.—The soldiers, *having taken-possession-of the mountain*, easily put the enemy to flight (391, 3).—Cicero, *when he knew of the conspiracy*, went to the Senate-house.—*As no enemy hindered* (= no enemy hindering), the lieutenant led the army across the Rhine.—*When this battle was heard (of)*, the Belgians, of-their-own-accord, sent hostages and ambassadors to Cæsar.—*In the consulship of Cicero and Antony*, Augustus was born.

§ 10.

INFINITIVE.—(LXXVI.—LXXIX.)

LESSON LXXVI.

Infinitive Forms.

(465.) THE infinitive expresses action as completed or incomplete, but without reference to person or time; e. g.,

ACTIVE.

Action Incomplete,	{ to love, or to be loving, loving,
(Inf. Pres. Act.)	{ ām - āre.
Action Completed,	{ to have loved,
(Inf. Perf. Act.)	{ ām āv - issē.

PASSIVE.

Action Incomplete,	{ to be loved,
(Inf. Pres. Pass.)	{ ām - ārī.
Action Completed,	{ to have been loved,
(Inf. Perf. Pass.)	{ āmātūs, ā, ūm, esse or fuisse.

[Rem. The names *present* and *perfect* do not distinguish properly the two forms of the infinitive, but, as they are in universal use, we have to adopt them. The student must remember that the *present* expresses action incomplete, and the *perfect* action complete; but that the *time* of the action must depend upon the verb with which the infinitive is connected in the sentence.]

(466.)

FORMS OF THE INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.		PERFECT.	
Active.	Passive.	Active.	Passive.
1. ām-ārē.	ām-ārī.	āmāv- mōnū- rex- audiv- }	āmātūs, ā, ūm, mōnītūs, ā, ūm, rectūs, ā, ūm, audītūs, ā, ūm, }
2. mōn-ērē.	mōn-ērī.	issē. } essē (or fuissē).	
3. rēg-ērē.	rēg-ī.		
4. aud-irē.	aud-irī.		

Rem. Observe that *perf. inf. act.* simply adds the ending -issē to the *perf. stem* of the verb; and *perf. inf. pass.* is formed by the *perf. pass. part.* of the verb, combined with *essē* (sometimes *fuissē*).

EXERCISE.

(467.) *Vocabulary.**To lay waste, vastāre* (āv-, āt-).*Ought, dēbēre* (dēbu-, dēbit-).*To be vacant, vācāre* (intransit.).*I am able, possum; I was able, pōtui.**Peace, pax, (pāc) īs* (293).*A very few, perpaucī, æ, a.**Evil deed, malēficiū, ī.**To break through, perrumpere* (per-rūp-, perrupt-).(468.) *Examples.*(a) *I wish to learn.**The enemy began to cross the river.*

Cūpio discere.

Hostes flūmen transire cōperunt.

Rule of Syntax.—The infinitive is used, as in English, to complete the imperfect ideas expressed by many words.

☞ Such words are, *to wish, to be able, ought, to be accustomed, to hasten, to determine, &c.*; also, the adjectives *dignus, indignus, audax, &c.*

(b) *The Helvetians intend.*(c) *Sometimes by day, oftener by night.*(d) *To keep-off-from the road.*(e) *In sight of.*Helvētiis est in ānimō (= *it is in mind to the Helvetians*).

Nonnunquā interdiū, sæpiūs noctū.

Itinēre prōhibēre (153, a).

In conspectū.

(469.) *Translate into English.*

Cæsar in Galliā hiēmāre constituit.—Ædūi se suaque ab Helvētiis dēfendēre non pōtuērunt.—Agrī vastāri non dēbent.—Hostes per mūnitiones perrumpere cōnāti sunt.—Agrī Suēvorum vācāre dicuntur.—Milītes incōlas expellere non potuērunt.—Multitudo puērorum mūliērumque fugere coepit.—Helvētīi maxīmum nūmerum jūmentōrum et carrōrum cōmēre constitūērunt.—Germāni cōpias suas Rhēnum transducere cōnāti sunt.—Helvētīi cum proximis civitatibus pācem et āmicītiā confirmāre constitūērunt.

(470.) *Translate into Latin.*

[Place the infinitive before the verb on which it depends.]

Our towns ought not to-be-taken-by-storm.—In sight of our army, the fields ought not to be laid-waste.—The enemy endeavoured sometimes-during-the-day, oftener by-night, to burst-

through the fortifications.—The Æduans were not able to expel the enemy from (their) territories (153, a). On one side,* the lands are said to be vacant.—The boys and the women began to fly-in-every-direction (passim, adv).—The Helvetians intend to make (their) way through our province.—A very few are able to keep-off the Helvetians from the road.—The Helvetians ought to cross-over without any (ullo) evil-deed.—The remaining multitude of boys and women began to fly in-every-direction.

LESSON LXXVII.

Accusative with Infinitive.

(471.) VERBS signifying *to know, to see, to feel, to think, to say*, with some others, have frequently a sentence depending on them, the subject of which is in the *accusative*, and the verb in the *infinitive*.

<i>He saw that war was preparing on all sides.</i>	Undique bellum pārārī vīdebat.
--	--------------------------------

Here bellum, the subject, is accusative before the infinitive parari, after the verb videbat, *he saw*.

(472.) Many dependent sentences which are introduced in English by the conjunction *that*, are expressed in Latin by the *accusative* and *infinitive*. To translate such sentences into Latin, observe the following method :

1. Omit the word *that*.
2. Change the nominative following *that* into the Latin accusative.
3. Change the English verb into the Latin infinitive.

<i>The messenger says that the horsemen are hurling darts.</i>	Nuntius dicit, ēquītes telā conjicere.
--	--

(473.) If the predicate of the sentence containing the accusative and infinitive be an adjective, it must agree with the accusative subject in gender, number, and case.

* Una ex partē.

He knows that Cicero is eloquent.

Scit Cicerōnem esse eloquentem.

I perceive that the water is cold.

Sentio aquam frigidam esse.

EXERCISE.

(474.) Vocabulary.

To think, existimāre (āv-, āt-).

To encamp, considere (consēd-, concess-, con+sidere).

To know, scire (sciv-, scit-).

Stone, lāpis, (lāpid) is (m.).

Nearer, prōpius (adv., 376).

To favour, favere (fav-, faut-, 395, V.), (governs dat.).

While, dūm (adv.).

To lose, amittere (a+mittere, 401, 3, b).

(475.) Examples.

(a) The messenger says that the horsemen are hurling darts.

Nuntius dicit equites tela conjicere.

(b) The messenger said that the horsemen were hurling darts.

Nuntius dixit equites tela conjicere.

(c) The messenger said that the horsemen had hurled darts.

Nuntius dixit equites tela conjecisse.

(d) Word is brought to Cæsar.

Cæsari nuntiātum est (=it is told to Cæsar).

(e) To have about himself.

Circum se habere.

(476.) Translate into English.

Helvētii existimant, Rōmānos discēdere.—Explōrātor dīxit, hostes consēdisse.—Cæsar scit, Dum nōrigem favere Helvētīs.—Helvētii dīcunt, se omnem sēnātum āmisisse.—Cæsari nuntiātum est, mīlites magnitudinem sylvārum tīmēre.—Nuntius dīxit, equites tela conjicere.—Galba certior factus est, Gallos omnes discessisse.—Explōrātōres dīcunt, oppīdum ab hostibus tēnēri.—Dum hæc in collōquio gēruntur, Cæsari nuntiātum est, equites Ariovisti prōpius accēdere, et lāpides telaque in nostros conjicere.

[Be careful, in translating the following English into Latin, to write first the leading sentence, and after it the accusative and the infinitive, observing the rules in (472), and following the order of words in the examples given above.]

(477.) *Translate into Latin.*

Cæsar knows that *this (thing) is true* (473).—The scouts say that *the horsemen of Ariovistus are approaching* (475, a).—The ambassadors said that the *Helvetians had lost* all their cavalry and all their senate.—Word was brought to Cæsar that *the horsemen of Ariovistus were hurling* stones against (in, with accus.) our (men).—Word-was-brought to Cæsar that *Ariovistus had-departed* from the camp.—Cæsar was informed by the scouts that *the enemy had encamped* under (s ŭ b, with abl.) the mountain.—The lieutenant says that *the mountain is held* by the enemy.—The general thinks that *our plans are told* to the enemy.—Word was brought to the general that *all the Gauls had departed* by night.—The chiefs say that *Divitiacus always has* a great number of horse-soldiers about himself.


LESSON LXXVIII.

Accusative with Infinitive.—Perfect Infinitive Passive.

(478.) It has been stated (466, R.) that the perfect infinitive passive is formed by the perfect participle passive, combined with *esse* (sometimes *fuisse*).

When the accusative is used with this infinitive, the participle must agree with the accusative in *gender, number, and case*; e. g.,

- | | |
|--|---|
| (a) <i>The messenger says that the Æduans have been conquered.</i> | Nuntius dicit, Æduos victos esse. |
| (b) <i>Ariovistus said that all the forces had been routed in one battle.</i> | Ariovistus dixit, omnes cōpias ūno prælio fūsas esse. |
| (c) <i>The horsemen brought-back-word that the town had been taken-by-storm.</i> | Equites rēnuntiāvērunt, oppīdum expugnātum esse. |

 Observe that in (a) the part. *victos* agrees with the accus. *Æduos*; in (b), *fūsas* with *cōpias*; in (c), *expugnātum* with *oppīdum*.

EXERCISE.

(479.) *Vocabulary.**To find-out, rēpērire* (427, V.).*To frighten completely, perterrere*
(perterru-, perterrīt-, per + ter-
rere).*Tributary, stipendiārius*, ā, ūm.*To bring back word, rēnuntiāre* (āv-,
āt-).*To rout, fundere* (fūd-, fūs-, 416, a)*To overcome, sup̄erare* (āv-, āt-).*Bond, chain, vinculum*, ī.*To hold in memory, to remember,*
*mēmōriā tēnere.**To put (or cast) in chains, in vincū-*
la conjicere.(480.) *Translate into English.*

Cæsar rēpēriēbat īnītiūm fūgæ a Dumnōrige factum esse.—Impērātor dixit, ēquitātum esse perterrītum.—Cæsar mēmōriā tēnēbat, L. Cassium consūlem occīsum esse ab Helvetiis.—Ariōvistus dīcit, Æduos sibi (54), stipendiārios esse factos.—Cæsar certior factus est, lēgātos in vincūla coniectos esse.—Ēquītes rēnuntiāvērunt, castra esse mūnīta.—Dixit bella gesta esse.—Rēpēriēbat ētiā Cæsar, īnītiūm fūgæ a Dumnōrige atque ējus ēquitibus factum esse; eorumque fūgā (55, a) rēliqūm ēquitātum perterrītum esse.—Ariōvistus dixit omnes Gallorum cōpias ūno a sē prælio (55, a), fūsas ac sup̄eratas esse.

(481.) *Translate into Latin.*

Cæsar found-out that the cavalry had been completely-frightened by the flight of Dumnorix.—The Æduans say that they (s e) have been routed by the Germans.—Cæsar remembered (= held in memory) that the consul's army had been defeated by the Helvetians.—Cæsar remembered that the consul had been slain, and his (ējus) army sent under the yoke (323, N.).—Cæsar was informed by the chiefs that hostages had been given.—The lieutenant said that the ambassador had been cast into chains.—Ariovistus said that all the forces had been overcome by himself.—Ariovistus said that the Gauls had been overcome by himself in one battle.—The Æduans say that they (s e) have been made tributary to Ariovistus (*dat.*).

(485.) *Translate into English.*

Future Infinitive Active.

Dumnōrix existimat sē regnum obtentūrum esse.—
 Helvētīi existimābant sē finitīmis (*dat.*) persuāsūros.—
 Cēsār existimābat, finitīmos tempēratūros ab injuriā.—
 Cēsār dicit, se Æduorum injūrias non neglectūrum.—
 Helvētīi existimābant, sē Æduos vī (301) coactūros.
 —Ariōvistus dixit, Æduis (54) sē obsīdes redditūrum
 esse.—Cēsār dicit sē, proximā noctē (118, II., c), de quartā
 vigiliā, castrā mōtūrum.—Impērātor, hōmīnes īnīmīcō ānīmō
 (428, a) tempēratūros ab injuriā et mālēficio, non existī-
 mabat.

(486.) *Translate into Latin.*

Future Infinitive Active.

Cæsar said that he would move his camp.—Dumnorix thought
 that he would-hold the military-command of his own state.—
 The general says that he is-about-to-demand-back the host-
 ages.—The Æduans say that they-are-about-to-implore assist-
 ance from (a) the Roman people.—Dumnorix assures (them)
 that he is-about-to-seize the royal-power with his own (suō)
 army.—Ariovistus said that he would not restore the hostages.
 —Cæsar did not think that the allies would-refrain from injury.
 —Cæsar thought that he would-compel the Germans by force.
 —Ariovistus said that he would-refuse the friendship of the
 Roman people.

§ 11.

THE GERUND.

LESSON LXXX.

(487.) (a) The *gerund* expresses the action of the verb under the form of a noun of the second declension, in the *genitive*, *dative*, *accusative*, and *ablative* cases (ī, ō, ūm, ō).

(b) The *gerund-stem* is formed by adding to the verb-stem,

In the 1st conjugation,	- and;	<i>e. g.</i> ,	ām-and-.
“ 2d “	- end;	<i>e. g.</i> ,	mōn-end-.
“ 3d “	- end;	<i>e. g.</i> ,	rĕg-end-.
“ 4th “	- iend;*	<i>e. g.</i> ,	aud-iend-.

(c) The gerund of any *case* is formed by annexing the case-ending to the gerund-stem; *e. g.*, *gen.*, āmand-ī; *dat.*, āmand-ō; *acc.*, āmand-um; *abl.*, āmand-ō.

(488.) As the infinitive is used as a verbal noun in the *nominative* and *accusative* cases, so the *gerund* is used in the remaining cases; *e. g.*,

Nom.	Scribĕrĕ,	<i>writing.</i>
Gen.	Scribendī,	<i>of writing.</i>
Dat.	Scribendō,	<i>to or for writing.</i>
Acc.	{ Scribĕrĕ,	} <i>writing.</i>
	{ Scribendūm,	
Abl.	Scribendō,	<i>with writing.</i>

(489.) The rules for the use of the cases of nouns apply also to the cases of the infinitive and gerund; *e. g.*,

Nom.	<i>Writing is useful,</i>	scribĕre est ūtile.
Gen.	<i>The art of writing is useful,</i>	{ ars scribendi est ūtilis.

*Also in the *io* verbs (199); *e. g.*, cāp-io, cāp-iendī.

Dat.	<i>Paper is useful for writing,</i>	{ charta scribendō est ūtilis.
Acc.	{ <i>I learn writing,</i> <i>I learn during writing,</i>	{ scribere disco. inter scribendum disco.
Abl.	<i>We learn by writing,</i>	scribendō discimus.

Rem. With a preposition, the *accusative gerund* must be used, and not the infinitive; *ad* (inter, ob) *scribendum*, not *ad* (inter, ob) *scribere*.

(490.) The gerund governs the same case as the verb from which it is derived; *e. g.*,

<i>The art of training boys is difficult.</i>		<i>Ars pueros educandi difficilis est.</i>
---	--	--

EXERCISE.

(491.) Vocabulary.

To make war, bellare (āv-, āt-).
To plunder, to obtain-booty, prædari (prædat-), dep.
Wearied, defessus, ā, ūm.
Sufficiently, sātis.
To think, cogitare.
Opportunity, time for, spātium, ī.

To deliberate, deliberare (āv-, āt-).
To take, sūmere (sumps-, sumpt-).
Agriculture, agricultūra, æ.
Desire, stūdiū, ī.
Life, age, ætās, (ætāt) is (293).
Mind, mens, (ment) is (355, II. 1.)

(492.) Examples.

(a) <i>Time was given for</i> (= opportunity was given of) <i>taking-up arms.</i>		Spātium armā capiendī dātum est.
(b) <i>For the sake of collect- ing-corn.</i>		Frumentandī causā (ab- lat.).

(493.) Translate into English.

Spes prædandī hōmīnes āb agricultūrā revocābat.—Spātium defessis ex pugnā excedendī nōn dātum est.—Brève tempus ætātis sātis est longum ad bēnē beātēque vivendum.—Hōminis mens discendō ālītur.—Pars ēquitātūs, prædandī causā, missa est.—Nox finem oppugnandī fēcit.—Magna pars ēquitātūs, frumentandī causā, missa erat.—Cognōverat enim Cæsar, magnam partem ēquitātūs, prædandī frumentandīque causā, trans Rhēnum missam fuisse (471).

—Impērātor diem ad dēlibērandum sūmit. — Impērātor dixit, sē diem ad dēlibērandum sumptūrum (484, a). — Spes prædandī, stūdiūquē bellandī incōlas ab āgricultūrā et lābōre rēvocābat. — Dōcendō dōcēmur.

(494.) *Translate into Latin.*

The desire of *plundering* and *making-war* has recalled the farmers from (their) fields. — Time for (492, a) *hurling* the darts was not given to the soldiers. — Time for (of) *fighting* was not given to the horsemen. — The horsemen were sent into the territories of the Æduans for the sake of *collecting-corn*. — The mind of man is nourished by *thinking*. — Time for *departing-out-of* the town was not given to the wearied citizens. — The citizens ask time for (of) *deliberating*. — Wisdom is the art of *living* well. — Cæsar recalled the tenth legion into Gaul, for-the-sake-of *wintering*. — We learn by *teaching*. — Opportunity of *attacking* the town was not given to the soldiers, though they desired it (= desiring it).

§ 12.

THE GERUNDIVE, OR VERBAL ADJECTIVE
IN DŪS, DĀ, DŪM.

(495.) (a) THE gerundive expresses the action of the verb (generally with the additional idea of *necessity* or *continuance*) under the form of an adjective of the *first class* (76).

(b) The gerundive-stem is precisely the same as the gerund-stem. The cases are formed by adding the endings of the adjective; *e. g.*,

N. āmand-ūs, ā, ūm.

G. āmand-i, æ, ī, &c.,

and so through all cases and both numbers.

LESSON LXXXI.

The Gerundive used instead of the Gerund.

(496.) THE gerundive is used (to express continued action) as a verbal adjective, *agreeing* with the noun, instead of the gerund *governing* the noun; *e. g.*,

Gen. *Of writing a letter.*

Scribendæ ēpistolæ, instead of scribendi ēpistolam.

Dat. *To or for writing letters.*

Scribendis ēpistolis, instead of scribendo ēpistolas.

Acc. *To write a letter.*

Ad scribendam ēpistolam, instead of ad scribendum ēpistolam.

Abl. *By writing a letter.*

Scribendā ēpistolā, instead of scribendo ēpistolam.

Rem. The gerundive must be used for the *dative* or *accusative* of the gerund when it has an active government. It may be used for it in any other case, unless the object of the gerund is a neuter adjective or pronoun; e. g., of learning the true = *vēra discendi*, not *vērōrum discendorum*; of hearing this, *hoc audiendi*, not *hūjus audiendi*.

EXERCISE.

(497.) Vocabulary.

To choose, *dēligere* (*dēlēg-*, *dēlect-*, *dē+lēgere*).

To pursue, *consēquī* (*consēcūt*), *dep.*

To fail, to be insufficient, *dēficere* (*dēfēc-*, *dēfect-*, *dē+facere*).

To form a design, *consilium cāpere* (*io*).

Space-of-two-years, *biennium*, *i.*

To reckon, *decem, dūcere* (*dux-*, *duct-*).

To discern, *cernere* (406, Cl. III., *a*).

Care, *cūra*, *æ*.

To apply, *adhibere* (*adhibū-*, *adhib-* *it-*).

Negligent, *negligens*, (*negligent*) *is* (107).

(498.) Examples.

(a) The Helvetians reckoned that the space-of-two-years was enough for themselves.

Helvētii biennium sibi sātis esse duxērunt.

(b) The space of three-days.

Trīdūi spātium.

(c) The house was given to the robbers to plunder.

Dōmus latrōnibus dirīpiendā dātā est.

The farmer gave his house to the robbers to plunder.

Āgricōla dōmum latrōnibus dirīpiendam dēdt.

☞ After verbs of giving, going, sending, receiving, and the like, the gerundive expresses a purpose or object.

(d) For completing (= finishing) these things.




Ād eas res conficiendās.

(499.) Translate into English.

Urbs ā dūce milītibus dirīpienda dātā est.—Urbem dux milītibus dirīpiendam dēdit.—Subitō Galli consilium belli gērendi cēpērunt.—Sūbitō Galli lēgiōnis oppugnandæ consilium cēpērant.—Ad eas res conficiendas Orgētorix dēligitur.—Helvētii, ad eas res conficiendas, biennium sibi sātis esse duxērunt.—Crassus lēgātos tribunosque militum in finitimas civitātes frūmentī pētendī causā dimisit.—Plāto Rōmam (453, c) ad cognoscendas Numæ lēges contendit.—In vōluptāte spernendā virtūs maximē cernitur.—Multi.

in ĕquis părăndis, adhībent cūram, sed in āmicis dēligendis negligentes sunt.—Milites, ad urbem expugnandam, trīdūi spātium sibi sātis esse duxērunt.

(500.) *Translate into Latin.*

For completing these things (498, *d*) Cæsar gave to the Gauls the space of three days.—The Æduans had suddenly formed the design of besieging the town.—Crassus is chosen for carrying-on the war (498, *d*).—Pythagoras went to Sparta (453, *c*) to learn (498, ) the laws of Lycurgus.—Cæsar reckoned that the space of two years was enough for himself, for overcoming the Gauls and finishing the war.—The general sent all the cavalry across the Rhine, for the sake of seeking corn.—Ariovistus hastened (contendĕre), with all his forces, to attack the town (498, )—The Britons sent ambassadors to Cæsar, in-order-(ad)-to-see (498, ) peace.

LESSON LXXXII.

The Gerundive used to express Necessity, &c.

THE GERUNDIVE AS SUBJECT.


(501.) (a) The gerundive in the nominative neuter (d ū m) is used with esse to express *necessity* or *duty*. If the person be expressed, it must be put in the dative.

One must write.

| Scribendū est.

I must write.

| Scribendū est mīhi.

 Here the gerundive is the *subject* of the sentence (*the duty of writing is to me*).

(b) This neuter nominative may be combined with all the tenses of esse; e. g.,

Scribendum est mīhi, *I must write.*

Scribendum erat mīhi, *I had to write.*

Scribendum erit, *I must write hereafter.*

&c.,

&c.

(c) This neuter nominative may govern the case of its verb;
e. g.,*


<i>We must help the citizens.</i>	Civibus (dat.) subvĕniendum est.
<i>One must use reason.</i>	Ratiōne ūtendum est.

THE GERUNDIVE AS PREDICATE.

(502.) The gerundive is also used with *esse*, in all cases and genders, as a verbal adjective, agreeing with the noun, to express necessity or worthiness; e. g., *I am to be loved*, *āmandus sum*; *thou art to be loved*, *āmandus es*, &c. The person, if specified, is put in the dative.

I must love Tullia (= Tullia is to be loved by me.) | Tulliā mihi āmandā est.

All things had to be done by Cæsar (= Cæsar had to do all things). | Omniā Cæsari ērant āgendā.

 Here the gerundive is the predicate.

EXERCISE.

(503.) Vocabulary.

<i>Flag, vexillum, i.</i>	<i>To send for, arcessere (arcessiv., arcessit-).</i>
<i>To set-up, prōponere (prō+ponere, pōsū-, pōsūt-, 406, b).</i>	<i>To understand, perceive, intelligere (intellex-, intellect-).</i>
<i>To go forward, prōcedere (prō+cēdere, 401, 3, b).</i>	<i>To determine, statuere (statū-, stātūt-).</i>
<i>A little too far, paulō longius (adv.).</i>	<i>In vain, frustra.</i>
<i>To think, putare (āv-, at-).</i>	<i>More widely, latius (adv., 376).</i>

(504.) Examples.

(a) *Cæsar causes a bridge to be made (= takes care that a bridge should be made).* | Cæsar pontem faciendum (esse) cūrat.

I must hear. | Mihi audiendum.

Est is often omitted with the gerundive, as in (a).

(b) *The centurions thought that nothing should be done rashly.* | Centuriōnes nihīl temere āgendum (esse) existimābant.

* The accusative is hardly ever used after the neut. gerundive.

(505.) *Translate into English.*(1.) *Gerundive in the nominative neuter (dũm).*

Militibus de navibus erat desiliendum. — Militibus simul et de navibus (erat) desiliendum, et cum hostibus erat pugnandum.

(2.) *Gerundive as a verbal adjective, agreeing with the noun.*

Cæsari omnia uno tempore (118, II., c) erant agenda; vexillum proponendum; revocandi milites; qui paulo longius processerant arcessendi; acies instruenda; milites hortandi; signum dandum. — Prohibenda est ira. — Bellum nobis est suscipiendum. — Cæsar sibi latius distribuendum exercitum putat. — Imperator dicit, jam sibi legatos audiendos. — Cæsar ubi intellexit frustram tantum laborem sumi (471), statuit expectandam classem. — Cæsar pontem faciendum curat atque ita exercitum traducit.

(506.) *Translate into Latin.*(1.) *Gerundive in nominative, neuter (dũm).*

We must leap-down from the ships. — We must read. — You must hear. — You must fight for liberty (pro libertate). — All must hear; we must read. — With whom (quibuscum) must I fight? — We must leap-down from the walls and fight with the horsemen.

(2.) *Gerundive as a verbal adjective.*

I must do all things at once (= all things must be done by me at one time). — You must give the signal. — We had to set up the flag. — Cæsar must send ambassadors. — The soldiers must fortify the camp. — The general must encourage the soldiers. — The Helvetians cause bridges to be made over the river. — Cæsar thought that the army must be led-over. — Cæsar thought that the army must be divided by him (sibi), and distributed more-widely. — The general says that he must wait-for the fleet. — Divitiacus says that this-thing (hoc) must be done by all the Gauls.

§ 13.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

LESSON LXXXIII.

(507.) THE imperative mood expresses the action of the verb as a *command, wish, entreaty, &c.*; *e. g., Love thou! Hear thy parents.*

(508.) FORMS OF THE IMPERATIVE.

ACTIVE.				
	2d Sing.	3d Sing.	2d Plur.	3d Plur.
ăm-	ă or âto.	ăto.	ătě or âtôtě.	ăto.
môn-	ē or êto.	êto.	êtě or êtôtě.	êto.
rēg-	ě or îto.	îto.	itě or itôtě.	îto.
aud-	ī or îto.	îto.	itě or itôtě.	iūto.
PASSIVE.				
am-	ăre or âtôr.	âtôr.	ămîni or amînôr.	antôr.
môn-	ērě or êtôr.	êtôr.	ēmîni or emînôr.	entôr.
reg-	ērě or îtôr.	îtôr.	imîni or imînôr.	untôr.
aud-	irě or itôr.	îtôr.	imîni or imînôr.	iuntôr.

Rem. 1. Observe that the 2d pers. sing. act. can be obtained from any verb by striking off rě from the infinitive; *e. g., inf., ămăre; imper., ămă*; and that the 2d pers. sing. pass. is the infinitive form precisely.

2. The longer forms of the 2d person are used especially in reference to *future time*; *e. g., in laws, statutes, and the like.*

3. The io verbs of 3d conj. take the imperative endings of the 4th in the 3d pers. plur.: thus, *căpiunto, let them take; căpiuntor, let them be taken.* *Făcio* has 2d pers. sing. *făc.*

EXERCISE.

(509.) Vocabulary.

[Deponents take, of course, the *passive* endings.]

Enmity, înimicîia, æ.

To despise, contemnere (con+temnere, temps-, tempt-).

Fleeing, fugax, (fugac) Is (107).

To pursue, follow, persăqui (persăcūt-), dep.

Association, fellowship, sôcietas (atis, 293).

<i>Frail, perishable, cādūcūs, ā, ūm</i> (from <i>cāđērē</i> , to fall).	<i>Show, spēciēs, spēciei</i> (117).
<i>To shun, avoid, vitārē (āv-, at-).</i>	<i>To trust, crēdēre</i> (crēdīd-, crēdīt-, 411, c); governs <i>dat.</i>
<i>Judge, jūdēx, (jūdīc) īs</i> (306).	<i>Admire, admirārī (āt-), dep.</i>
<i>To revere, vēnērārī (vēnērāt-), dep.</i>	

(510.) *Examples.*

(a) <i>Do not hear.</i>	<i>Nē audī.</i>
<i>Do not trust appearance</i> (colour).	<i>Nē crēdē cōlōrī.</i>

Rule.—With imperatives, *nē* must be used for *not*.
(*Nōn* would be very bad Latin.)

(b) <i>Let the judge neither give</i> <i>nor take rewards.</i>	<i>Judēx prēmia nē dātō nē vē</i> <i>capīto.</i>
---	---

Neither — nor = nē → nē vē.

(c) <i>Instead of parents =</i>	<i>Pārentum lōcō (abl.)</i>
---------------------------------	-----------------------------

(511.) *Translate into English.*

Puerī (voc.), pārentēs ā mātē.—*Magistrī puerōs linguām Lātīnām dōcento.*—*Magnā vīs est in virtūtibus; ēās* (150) *excitā, sī fortē dormiunt.*—*Abstīnētōtē omnī injūriā (abl.) atque inīmicitiis.*—*Impērā irē* (147).—*Nē persēquēre omnia, quē spēciem gloriāe hābent.*—*Hēc omnia, quē hābent spēciem gloriāe contemnē: brevīā, fūgāciā, cādūcā existīmā.*—*Nē crēditē omnibus.*—*Judīces prēmīum nē cāpiunto, nē vē danto.*—*Vītā sociētātem imprōbōrum.*—*Vēnērārē Deum, vēnērārē pārentes, et quōs pārentum lōcō* (55, a) *tibi* (54) *nātūrā dēdit.*—*Pueri prāceptōres, ā quibus doctī sunt, āmanto et vēnērantōr.*

(512.) *Translate into Latin.*

Boys, revere (your) parents.—*Let the master teach the boys the Greek language.*—*Do not rouse-up (your) vices: rouse-up (your) virtues, if perchance they sleep.*—*Abstain ye from (abl.) all vices and enmities.*—*My son, rule (your) anger* (dat., 147).—*Do not admire all things which have the show of glory.*—*Do not ye fear death.*—*Do not trust to the show of glory.*—*Love those whom Nature has given to you in place of parents.*—*Do not seek the association of the wicked.*—*Neither take (cāpēre) nor give a reward.*—*Hear the wise and good.*

§ 14.

SENTENCES.

[THE student should now be made to understand something of sentences. The following simple statements can readily be understood.]

(513.) (a) The sentence, "*the messenger fled*," is a *simple sentence*, as it contains but one subject and predicate.

(b) The sentence, "*the messenger, who saw me, fled*," is a *compound sentence*, as it contains *more* than one subject and predicate.

(c) In the last example, "*the messenger fled*" is called the **PRINCIPAL SENTENCE**; and "*who saw me*," the **SUBORDINATE sentence**.

(514.) The following are some of the classes of subordinate sentences :

(a) *The accusative with the infinitive*; e. g., *Nuntiūs dixit, ēquitēs tēlā conjicērē* (The messenger said that the horsemen were hurling darts). Here *ēquitēs tēlā conjicērē* (that the horsemen were hurling darts) is the *subordinate sentence*; *nuntius dixit*, the *principal sentence*.

(b) *Conjunctive sentences*, i. e., such as are introduced by a conjunction or adverb of time; e. g., *Cæsar, when he had crossed the river, drew up his army*. Here, *Cæsar drew up his army* is the *principal sentence*; *when he had crossed the river*, the *subordinate sentence*.

(c) *Relative sentences*; e. g., *Nuntius, quī missus est, dixit* (The messenger, who was sent, said). Here *nuntius dixit* is the *principal sentence*; *quī missus est*, the *relative subordinate sentence*.

(d) *Interrogative sentences* (i. e.), such as are introduced by an interrogative word; e. g., *Tell me what you are doing?* Here *what you are doing* is a *subordinate interrogative sentence*.

§ 15.

CONJUNCTIONS.—(LXXXIV.—LXXXV.)

LESSON LXXXIV.

Copulative Conjunctions.

(515.) COPULATIVE CONJUNCTIONS unite words or sentences together. They are,

And.

Neither, nor.

Also.

Ēt, quē, āc, atquē.

Nēc, nēquē.

Etiām, necnōn, quōquē, itēm,
itīdēm.

EXERCISE.

(516.) *Vocabulary.*

Only, sōlūm; not only, nōn sōlūm.

A debtor, ōbērātūs, ī.

Formerly, at one time, quōndam.

Rich, ōpūlens, (ōpūlent) is (107).

*To hasten, to march rapidly, prōpē-
rārē (āv-, āt-).*

*To give largess, to bribe, largīri
(largīt-), dep.*

*Once and again, sēmēl atquē itē-
rum.*

Estate, rēs fāmiliāris, e (104).

A wheel, rōtā, æ.

*Some (some persons), nōnnullī, æ, ā
(nōn+nullūs).*

Javelin, trāgūlā, æ.

*To hurl under, subjicērē (jēc-, ject-,
sub+jācēre).*

I profit, benefit, prōsūm (prō+sum);
governs dat.*

To the same place, eōdēm (adv.).

Too much, nimius, ā, ūm.

*Top, summīt, culmēn, (culmīn) is
(345).*

To pray, ōrāre (āv-, āt-).

(517.) *Examples.*

(a) *Darius equipped a fleet,
and placed over it Datis and
Artaphernes.*

Dāriūs classem compārāvit,
eīquē Dātim prāfēcīt ēt
Artāphernem.

(a) Ēt connects independent words and sentences; quē joins one word or sentence to another rather as an appendage. Thus, in (a), ēt

* Prōsūm is inflected like sūm, but inserts d before the vowels.
g-, prod-esse, prōd-ēs, prod-est (not pro-es, pro-est).

joins *Datim* and *Artāphernem*; and *quē* joins the sentence "*placed over it*," &c., as an appendage to the *equipment* of the fleet.

- | | |
|---|--|
| (b) <i>Fierce and barbarous men were coming into the province, and were hastening into Italy.</i> | <i>Hōmīnes fēri āc barbāri in prōvinciam vēniēbant atquē in Italiā contendēbant.</i> |
|---|--|

(b) *Āc* is used before *consonants*, but not before *vowels* or *h*. *Atquē* may be used before either *vowels* or *consonants*.

- | | |
|---|---|
| (c) <i>Cæsar both had indulged and was greatly confident in the tenth legion.</i> | <i>Dēcimæ lēgiōnī Cæsar ēt indulsērat ēt confidēbat maxīmē.</i> |
|---|---|

(c) *Ēt* followed by *another ēt* means *both—and*.

- | | |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| (d) (1) <i>Again and again.</i> | <i>Ētiām atquē ētiām.</i> |
| (2) <i>And again.</i> | <i>Ēt ētiām.</i> |
| (3) <i>Not only—but also.</i> | <i>Nōn solum—sēd ētiām.</i> |

(518.) *Translate into English.*

Orgētōrix ād *jūdicium omnēm suām fāmiliām* coēgit, *ēt omnēs clientēs ōbērātōs quē eōdēm (adv.)* conduxit.—*Carthāgo ēt Cōrinthūs atquē Numantia, ōpulentissimæ quōndām ēt vālidissimæ cīvitatēs, dēlētæ sunt ā Rōmānis.*—*Cæsar finem prōpērandī (489)* facit, *pontem quē ād flūmēn Rhēnum pōnit.*—*Discipulī ēt audiunt ēt āmant præceptōrēs.*—*Rōmāni nōn solum itinērum causā (135, II., R.) sēd ētiām possēsiōnis, culminā montium occupāvērunt.*—*Nōn solum virēs (plural of vīs) sēd ētiām tēlā nostrīs (dat.)* dēficiēbant.—*Hīs rēbus Dumnōrix ēt suam rēm fāmiliārem auxērat ēt facultātes ād largiendūm magnās compārāvērat.*—*Hostes ēt ē lōcō supēriore in postros tēla conjiciēbant ēt nonnullī intēr carrōs rōtas quē trāgūlās subjiciēbant, nostros quē vulnerābant.*—*Contemnuntūr īi quī nēc sibi nēc alterī (194, R. 1)* prōsunt.—*Nēc mēliōr vir fuit Scipiōne (360, c)* quisquām, *nēc clāriōr.*—*Æduī nēc quē obsides rēpētīvērunt nēc quē auxiliū implōrāvērunt.*—*Sāpi entēm nēc quē paupertās nēc quē mors nēc quē vincūlā terrent.*—*Nīmius somnūs nēc quē corpōrī nēc quē ānīmō (dat., 516)* prodest.—*Rōgo tē, ēt ōro; ētiām atquē ētiām tē rōgo.*—*Æduī sēmēl atquē itērūm cūm Germānis contendērant.*—*Mīlites ex castrīs ērūpērunt (ērumpēre) atquē omnem spēm sālūtis in virtūtē pōsuērunt.*

LESSON LXXXV.

Disjunctive and Adversative Conjunctions.

(519.) I. THE disjunctive conjunctions (meaning *or*) are *aut*, *vĕl*, *vě*, and *sivě* or *seu*.

Rem. 1. *Aut* indicates a *real* difference of object; *e. g.*,

Here, soldiers, we must conquer or die! | *Hic vincendū aut mōriendū, milites!*

When *aut* is used, but *one* of the conditions can be fulfilled, as in the above example.

Rem. 2. *Vĕl* (derived from *vellĕ*) means *if you wish*, or *rather*. (Hence it is used for *even*.)

The nobles can either corrupt or correct the morals of the state (i. e., they can do whichever they please). | *Viri nōbīlēs vĕl corrumpĕrĕ mōrēs civitātis, vĕl corrigĕrĕ possunt.*

Rem. 3. *Vě* is always affixed to another word; *duō*, *trĕsve* = *two* or *three*.

Rem. 4. These conjunctions are frequently *repeated*.

	{ <i>aut</i> — <i>aut</i> .
<i>Either—or,</i>	{ <i>vĕl</i> — <i>vĕl</i> .
	{ <i>sivě</i> — <i>sivě</i> .
<i>Whether—or,</i>	<i>seu</i> — <i>seu</i> .

(520.) II. The adversative conjunctions express opposition (*but*).

The most important are,

Āt, *atquī*, *autĕm*, *cætĕrūm*, *sĕd*, *vĕrūm* (*but*).

Tāmĕn (*however*); *vĕrō* (*truly*).

EXERCISE.

(521.) *Vocabulary.*

<i>To run up</i> , <i>accurrĕrĕ</i> (<i>accurr-</i> and <i>accŭcurr-</i> , <i>accurs-</i> , <i>ad+currĕrĕ</i>).	<i>To pay up</i> , <i>persolvĕre</i> (<i>solv-</i> , <i>sōlūt-</i>).
<i>Very rich</i> , <i>perdivĕs</i> , (<i>divĭt</i>) <i>īs</i> (<i>per+divĕs</i>), 107.	<i>To suffer full punishment</i> , <i>pōnās persolvĕrĕ</i> .
<i>Chance</i> , <i>cāsūs</i> , <i>ūs</i> . <i>By chance</i> , <i>cāsū</i> (<i>abl.</i>).	<i>Handsome</i> , <i>formōsūs</i> , <i>ā</i> , <i>ūm</i> .
<i>Goodness</i> , <i>bōnītās</i> (<i>ātīs</i>).	<i>Eloquent</i> , <i>fācundūs</i> , <i>ā</i> , <i>ūm</i> .
	<i>Ulysses</i> , <i>Ulysses</i> , (<i>Ulyss</i>) <i>īs</i> .

To possess, possidērē (possēd-, poss-
sess-).

Weeping, flētūs, ūs.

Effect, effectūs, ūs.

Sorrow, sadness, tristitiā, æ.

Generally, plerumquē (adv.).

Joy, gaudiū, i.

Daily, quōtidiānūs, ā, ūm.

*A living being, animans, (animant)
is* (107).

Motion, mōtūs, ūs.

Various, diversus, ā, ūm.

To swim, nātārē (av-, āt-).

Sometimes, interdum.

(522.) *Examples.*

(a) *Those are to be esteemed
brave, not who do, but who
ward off injury.*

(b) *Gyges was seen by no-
body, but he himself saw
all things.*

Fortēs sunt hābendī, nōn quī
fāciunt, s ē d quī prōpulsant
injūriām.

Gygēs ā nullō vidēbātur, ipsē
a u t ē m omniā vidēbāt.

(a) S ē d indicates a *strong* opposition; it always stands first in its clause, as in (a).

(b) A u t ē m expresses a weaker opposition than s ē d. A u t ē m and v ē r o *never* stand first in a sentence, but always after one or more words.

(523.) *Translate into English.*

Nostrī cēlērītēr accurrērunt; ā t Germāni fortīter impētum glādiōrum excēpērunt.—Āmīci rēgis duō trēs v ē (519, R. 3) perdivītes sunt.—Sī v ē cāsū (55, a) sī v ē consiliō deōrum immortālium, poenās persolvērunt.—Nonnullī, sī v ē fēlicitāte (abl.) quādām, sī v ē bōnītate nātūræ, rectām vitæ sēcūti sunt viām.—Fortēs ē t magnānīmi sunt hābendī, nōn quī fāciunt s ē d quī prōpulsant injūriam.—Nōn formōsus ērat, s ē d ērat fācundus Ulyssēs.—Āvārus nōn possidēt divītiās (57, R.) s e d divītiæ possident eūm.—Flētūs plerumquē est effectūs tristitiæ; interdum v ē r o ē t i a m (even) gaudiū.—Helvētīi fēre quōtidiānis praeliis (55, a) cūm Germānis contendunt, quum a u t suis finibus eōs prōhibent, a u t ipsī in eōrum finibus bellum gērunt.—Ānimantium mōtūs diversus est; v ē l ambulant ē t currunt, v ē l vōlant, v ē l nātant.—Corpūs mōritūr (dcp.), v ē r ū m ānimūs nunquam mōriētūr.—Milītes nostrī fortēs fuērunt, s ē d āvāri.

§ 16.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.—(LXXXVI.—XCII.)

(524.) THE subjunctive mood expresses affirmation doubtfully, indefinitely, or as conceived by the mind; e. g., *I may write; I might write; I might have written; if I should write; if I had written.*

Rem.—The subjunctive has no future tense-form.

LESSON LXXXVI.

Subjunctive Present.

(525.) Forms of *ess ĕ* (to *be*) in subjunctive present.

Pres.	sīm, <i>I may be.</i>	sīs, <i>thou may- est be.</i>	sīt, <i>he, she, it may be.</i>	sīmūs, <i>we may be.</i>	sītīs, <i>ye may be.</i>	sint, <i>they may be.</i>
-------	--------------------------	--------------------------------------	--	-----------------------------	-----------------------------	----------------------------------

(526.) Forms of regular verbs.

(a) The subjunctive present adds the person-endings m, s, t, mus, tis, nt, for the *active*, and r, ris or re, tūr, mur, mini, ntur, for the *passive*, to the verb-stem by means of the following connecting vowels, viz.,

		Active.	Passive.
1st conj.,	e; e. g.,	ām-ĕ-m,	am-ĕ-r.
2d conj.,	ĕa; e. g.,	mōn-eā-t,	mōn-eā-r.
3d conj.,	a; e. g.,	rĕg-ā-m,	rĕg-ā-r.
4th conj.,	īa; e. g.,	aud-īa-m,	aud-īa-r.

(b) PARADIGM.—SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

ACTIVE.— <i>I may love, advise, rule, hear.</i>						
Stem.	Singular.			Plural.		
ām-	ēm.	ēs.	ēt.	ēmūs.	ētīs.	ēnt.
mōn-	ĕām.	ĕās.	ĕāt.	ĕāmūs.	ĕātīs.	ĕānt.
rĕg-	ām.	ās.	āt.	āmūs.	ātīs.	ānt.
aud-	īām.	īās.	īāt.	īāmūs.	īātīs.	īānt.
PASSIVE.— <i>I may be loved, advised, ruled, heard.</i>						
Stem.	Singular.			Plural.		
ām-	ēr.	ērīs or ĕrē.	ētūr.	ēmūr.	ēmīnī.	ēntūr.
mōn-	ĕār.	ĕārīs or arē.	ĕātūr.	ĕāmūr.	ĕāmīnī.	ĕāntūr.
rĕg-	ār.	ārīs or arē.	ātūr.	āmūr.	āmīnī.	āntūr.
aud-	īār.	īārīs or arē.	īātūr.	īāmūr.	īāmīnī.	īāntūr.

EXERCISE.

(527.) Vocabulary.

Value, prētiūm, i.

To obey, pārērē (pārū-); governs *dat.*

To despair, dēspērāre (āv-, āt-).

Otherwise, ālitēr (*adv.*).

To hinder, impēdire (iv-, it-).

Carefully, stūdiōsē (*adv.*).

To exercise, exercēre (exercū-, exercit-).

To grieve, dōlēre (dōlū-, dōlit-).

Would that, ūtinam (*conj.*).

To fear, mētūere (mētū-).

Incredible, incrēdibilis, e (104).

Mind (*talent*), ingēnium, i.

To be ignorant, ignōrāre (āv-, āt-).

To deny, nēgāre (āv-, āt-).

To know, noscērē (nōv-, nōt-).

To afford, prābere (prābū-, prābit-).

To make one's self a judge, sē iudicēm prāberē.

To apply, to employ, adhībērē (ū-, it-).

Cautious, cautūs, ā, ūm.

Rashly, tēmērē (*adv.*).Ever, unquām (*adv.*).Truly, obviously, prorsūs (*adv.*).Finally, dēniquē (*adv.*).

(528.) Examples.

[The principal use of the subjunctive in Latin is in dependent sentences; but in this lesson we show its uses in *principal* sentences, in which it occurs only when something is said without *definiteness* or *certainty*.]

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>(a) 1. <i>No sane man can doubt about the value of virtue.</i></p> <p>2. <i>May I be safe!</i></p> <p>3. <i>I hope you are well</i>
(= may you be safe).</p> <p>4. <i>May I not be safe, if I write otherwise than I think.</i></p> <p>5. <i>I hope my father is alive</i> (= would that my father may be alive).</p> <p>6. <i>I wish he would come.</i></p> | <p>Nemo s̄anus dē virtūtis prētiō dū bītēt.</p> <p>Sī m̄ salvūs!</p> <p>Salvūs sīs!</p> <p>Nē sī m̄ salvus, sī ālitēr scribō āc sentio.</p> <p>Ūtinam pāter vivat.</p> <p>Ūtinam v̄ēniāt.</p> |
|---|---|

(a) The subjunctive present is used for the English potential, *may*, *can*, &c., and also to express a *wish*, when the thing wished is *possible*. A *negative wish* is expressed by *nē* prefixed, as in (4).

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>(b) 1. <i>Let us believe.</i></p> <p>2. <i>Let us obey virtue.</i></p> <p>3. <i>Do not despair.</i></p> | <p>Crēdāmūs.</p> <p>Virtūti pāreāmus.</p> <p>Nē dēspēres.</p> |
|--|---|

(b) The subjunctive present is used, instead of the imperative, to soften a command. *Nē* is used for prohibition.

(c) <i>Who would not love virtue?</i>	Quis virtutem nōn āmet?
<i>What can I do?</i>	Quīd faciām?
<i>Who is ignorant?</i>	Quis ignōret?
<i>Who can doubt?</i>	Quis dūbitet?

(c) The subjunctive present is used in *direct* questions when any doubt is implied. (In English, we generally use *can*, *will*, *would*, &c., in such questions.)

(529.) *Translate into English.*

(a) Use of subjunctive as *potential*, or to express a *wish* (the latter indicated by !).

Tempus vēniat. — Salvūs sīs! āmicē. — Fāveāt fortunā! — Ūtinam hōc vērūm sīt! — Diū vivās! — Nēmo bōnus dē Prōvidentiā Deī dūbitēt. — Mōriār, sī ālīter scribo āc sentio. — Ūtinam nēmo tē impēdiat! — Ūtinam dōmum meam vērīs āmicīs (55, a) impleam!

(b) Use of subjunctive as *imperative*.

Sē quisquē studiōsē exerceat. — Nātūram, optīmam ducem. sēquāmur, cīquē pāreāmus. — Amēmus pātriam, pāreāmus sēnātui, consūlāmus bōnīs. — Suum quisquē noscāt ingēnium, ācremquē sē ēt bōnōrum ēt vitiōrum suōrūm iūdicēm prābeāt. — Nē āmētis imprōbos. — Prudentiam adhībeāmus. — Cautiōrem adhībeāmus prudentiam. — In rēbus grāviōrībūs cautiōrem adhībeāmus prudentiam, sēd nēc in lēviōrībūs tēmērē unquam āgāmus. — Nē dōleās.

(c) Use of subjunctive in *direct questions*.

Quis hōc crēdat? — Quis fābūlās istās crēdat? — Quis imprōbōs āc stultōs dilīgat? — Quis eūm dilīgat quēm mētuit? — Quis crēdat illūd quōd prorsūs incrēdibilē est? — Quis dē virtūtis prētiō dūbitet? — Quīd faciāmus? — Quis nēget omnēs lēvēs, omnēs āvārōs, omnēs dēnīque imprōbōs essē servōs?

(530.) *Translate into Latin.*

(a) No wise (man) can doubt concerning the benevolence of God. — My friends, I hope you are well (= may you be safe).

—I-hope-that (*utinam*) the commander is alive (= may live).—
I hope our friends may come!—May these things be true!—
May the citizens be wise.

(b) Let us not believe this.—Do not believe these fables.—
Let us exercise ourselves diligently.—Let us love our friends,
let us obey our parents, let us worship God.—Know your (own)
mind.—Let the soldiers take possession of the mountain.—Let
us not love the wicked.

(c) Who can say this?—Who can love a fool?—Who would
obey a wicked king?—What good (man) can doubt concerning
the value of virtue?—Who can deny that all avaricious men
are slaves?

LESSON LXXXVII.

Subjunctive Perfect.

(531.) Form of *esse* (to be) in subjunctive perfect.

<i>fuërim,</i> <i>I may have</i> <i>been.</i>	<i>fuëris,</i> <i>thou mayest</i> <i>have been.</i>	<i>fuërit,</i> <i>he, she, it</i> <i>may have</i> <i>been.</i>	<i>fuërimus,</i> <i>we may have</i> <i>been.</i>	<i>fuëritis,</i> <i>ye may have</i> <i>been.</i>	<i>fuërint,</i> <i>they may</i> <i>have been.</i>
---	---	---	--	--	---

(532.) Forms of regular verbs.

1. The subjunctive perfect active adds the endings
ërim, ëris, ërit, ërimus, ëritis, ërint,
to the indic. perf. stem of the verb; *e. g.*, *ãmäv-ërim*, &c.
2. The subjunctive perfect passive is formed by combining
the perfect participle with the subjunctive present of *esse*:
e. g., *ãmätüs sïm*, &c.

[ Deponents, of course, are formed like passives.]


3. PARADIGM, SUBJUNCTIVE PERFECT.


ACTIVE.— <i>I may have loved, advised, ruled, heard.</i>						
<i>ãmäv- mönü- rex- audiv-</i>	<i>ërim.</i>	<i>ëris.</i>	<i>ërit.</i>	<i>ërimus.</i>	<i>ëritis.</i>	<i>ërint.</i>
PASSIVE.— <i>I may have been loved, advised, ruled, heard.</i>						
Sing. {	<i>ãmätüs, ä, üm,</i> <i>mönitüs, ä, üm,</i> <i>rectüs, ä, üm,</i> <i>auditüs, ä, üm,</i>	<i>sïm.</i> <i>sïs.</i> <i>sît.</i>	Plur. {	<i>ãmätï, æ, ä,</i> <i>mönitï, æ, ä,</i> <i>rectï, æ, ä,</i> <i>auditï, æ, ä,</i>	<i>sïmüs.</i> <i>sïtis.</i> <i>sïnt.</i>	

EXERCISE.

(533.) Vocabulary.

Health, vāletūdō, (valetudin) is (339).
So, thus, itā (adv.)
Kindness, pardon, vēniā, æ.
To take captive, cāpērē (io, cāp-, capt-, 199).

Patience, pātientia, æ.
To slay, cut to pieces, cāderē (cācid-, cæs-, 413, ).
It makes no difference, it matters not, nīhīl refert.

 Form the subjunctive perfect active and passive of the following verbs:

Absūm, to be absent (no passive).
Prōsūm, to profit (do.).
Dēsūm, to be wanting (do.).
Vōcārē, to call.
Confirmārē, to assert.
Dicērē, to say (dix-, dict-).
Trādērē, to assert, deliver (tradid-, tradit-).
Laudare, to praise.
Vidēre, to see.

Invenīre, to find (invēn-, invent-).
Scrībērē, to write.
Fācērē (io-, fēc-, fact-), *to do*.
Lōquī (lōcūt-), *to speak* (dep-).
Censērē (censū-, cens-), *to think*.
Opprīmērē (press-, press-), *to repress, crush*.
Constituēre (stitū-, stitūt-), *to place*.
Oppugnārē, to assault.
Rēvōcārē, to recall, restore.

(534.) Examples.

(a) *Do not do it.*

| Nē fēcērīs.

(a) The subjunctive perfect (as well as the present) may be used in prohibitions, with nē, or nīhīl, instead of the imperative.

(b) *By your leave I would say.*

| Pācē tuā dixērīm; or, Vēniā tuā dixērīm.

Epicurus may have said.

| Dixērīt Epīcūrus.

Perchance some one may say.

| Forsītān āliquis dixērīt.

(b) The subjunctive perfect may be used with or without an adverb, to express a supposed case (that may be true).

(c) *I think I can assert this.*

| Hōc confirmāvērīm.

You will scarcely find a man of any nation.

| Vix ullius gentis hōmīnem invēnērīs.

(c) The subjunctive perfect (as well as present) is used to soften an assertion. (Such phrases as, *Probably I might, I think I can, I would, perhaps, &c.*, can be expressed in Latin by one word in the perfect subjunctive, as above.)

- | | |
|---|-----------------------|
| (d) (1) <i>Why do you laugh?</i> | Cūr rīdēs? |
| (2) Tell me <i>why you</i>
<i>laugh.</i> | Dīc* mīhi cūr rīdeās. |
| (1) <i>Where have you been?</i> | Ūbī fuisti? |
| (2) I do not know <i>where</i>
<i>you have been.</i> | Nescio ūbi fuēris? |

The sentences marked (1) are *direct* interrogative sentences, and take the indicative mood; those marked (2) are *indirect* (or *subordinate*) interrogative sentences, and take the subjunctive. Hence,

(e) *Rule of Syntax.*—The subjunctive mood is used in all indirect interrogative sentences.

Rem. Such sentences are introduced by the interrogative pronouns quis, qui, quantus, qualis, uter, &c., or the adverbs ubi, unde, quando, quo, cur, num, utrum, an, &c.

(535.) *Translate into English.*

(a) Quōd dūbītas, nē fēcēris.—Id nē dixēris.—Nihil in commōdō (*to the injury*) vāletūdīnis tuæ fēcēris.—Cūm imprōbis āc stultis nē lōcūtus sīs.

(b) Fāciat hōc āliquis.—Fēcērit hōc āliquis.—Dixērit Epīcūrūs, Deum essē nullum.—Forsītan eūm āmāvēris.—Forsītan itā censuēris.—Puerūm magistrī mōnuērint.—Urbēm hostes oppugnāvērint.

(c) Frātēr (*voc.*), bōnā tuā vēniā dixērim, meā sententiā mēliōr est.—Pātentiā laudāvērim boum (351, 2) atque ēquōrum.—Ingēniā studiāquē oppressēris facilius (376) quāmrēvocāvēris.

(d) Nescio cūr rīdeās.—Dīc, cūr ād mē nōn vēnēris.—Hēlvētīi ibī ērunt, ūbī eōs Cāsar constitūerit.—Magnō cūm perīculō (89, II.) id fēcīt.—Intelligit, quantō cūm perīculō id fēcērit.—Multī in praelio cāsī sunt.—Multī in praelio captī sunt.—Ūbi (*when*) victōriā āmissā est (*is lost*) nihil rēfert, quōt in praelio cāsī aut in fugā captī sint.—Dīc mīhi ūbi fuēris.

(536.) *Translate into Latin.*

(a) *Do not love the wicked.—Do not hear the foolish.*

* The imperative of dicere is dīc, not dicē.

(b) Some philosophers *may-have-denied* the soul to be immortal.—*Perhaps-you-have-advised* the young-man.

(c) *I think-I-can-advise* the young man.—*You may easily repress* the minds of young men.—*You cannot easily recall* the industry (studium) of men.

(d) The mind itself knows-not *what* (quālīs) *the mind is*.—Tell me *where you were*.—*I-do-not-know* why *you did not come* to me.—Tell (me), *were you* (fuerisne) in school yesterday?—It makes no difference *how many are taken-captive*.—The boy will remain (erit) there, *where the master may appoint* him.—I will tell you *what I have seen*.—I will tell you *what I have heard*.—Tell me *what you have done*.

LESSON LXXXVIII.

Subjunctive Imperfect and Pluperfect. — Conditional Conjunctions and Sentences.

(537.) THE subjunctive imperfect simply adds the person-endings,

m, s, t, mus, tis, nt, for the *active*,
r, ris (re), tur, mur, mini, ntur, for the *passive*,
to the *present infinitive* form of the verb. Thus,

Inf. Pres.	Imperf. Subj. Act.	Imperf. Subj. Pass.
esse, <i>to be</i> .	essem, <i>I might be</i> .	
āmārē, <i>to love</i> .	āmāre-m.	āmāre-r.
rēgērē, <i>to rule</i> .	rēgēre-m.	rēgēre-r.

(538.) PARADIGM.—SUBJUNCTIVE IMPERFECT.

1. Essēm.— <i>I might, could, would, or should be.</i>					
essēm.	essēs.	essēt.	essēmūs.	essētis.	essēt.
2. ACTIVE.— <i>I might, could, would, &c., love, advise, rule, hear.</i>					
āmār- mōnēr- rēgēr- audir- }	ēm.	ēs.	ēt.	ēmūs.	ētis.
				ēnt.	
3. PASSIVE.— <i>I might, could, would, &c., be loved, advised, ruled, heard.</i>					
āmār- mōnēr- rēgēr- audir- }	ēr.	ērīs or ērē.	ētūr.	ēmūr.	ēmīnī.
				ēntūr.	

Rem.—The vowel *e* of the ending is *long*, except where it comes before *m* or *t* final, when it is short of necessity.

(539.) (a) The subjunctive pluperfect *active* simply adds the person-endings,

m, s, t, mus, tis, nt,

to the *past infinitive* form of the verb. Thus,

Past Infinitive.	Pluperfect Subjunctive.
fuissē, to have been.	fuissē-m, I might have been.
āmāvisse, to have loved.	āmāvisse-m, I might have loved.

(b) The subjunctive pluperfect *passive* is formed by combining the perfect participle with the subjunctive imperfect of *essē*;

E. g., āmātūs essēm (sometimes with the subjunctive pluperfect of *essē*; *e. g.*, āmātūs fuissēm, &c.).

(c) PARADIGM.—SUBJUNCTIVE PLUPERFECT.

1. <i>I might, could, would, should have been, &c.</i>					
fuissēm.	fuissēs.	fūissēt.	fuissēmūs.	fuissētīs.	fuissēt.
2. ACTIVE.— <i>I might, could, &c., have loved, advised, ruled, heard.</i>					
āmāv- mōnū- rex- audiv- }	issēm.	issēs.	issēt.	issēmūs.	issētīs.
					issēt.
3. PASSIVE.— <i>I might, could, &c., have been loved, advised, ruled, heard.</i>					
Sing. {	āmātūs, ā, ūm,	essēm.	Plur. {	āmātī, æ, ā,	essēmūs.
	mōnītūs, ā, ūm,	essēs.		mōnītī, æ, ā,	essētīs.
	rectus, ā, ūm,	essēt.		rectī, æ, ā,	essēt.
	audītūs, ā, ūm,			audītī, æ, ā,	

Conditional Conjunctions and Sentences.

(540.) (a) The conditional conjunctions are *sī*, *if*; *sīn*, *but if*; *nīsī*, or *nī*, *if not, unless*.

(b) A conditional sentence is one which is introduced by a conditional conjunction; *e. g.*, *if men were good*, they would be happy.

Rem. The sentence introduced by *if* is called the *conditional sentence*; the other, the *consequent sentence*: *if men were good is the conditional*; *they would be happy*, the *consequent*.


EXERCISE.

(541.) Vocabulary.


To diminish, mīnuere (mīnū-, mī-nūt-).	To subdue, sūbīgērē (subēg-, sūbact-, sūb+āgērē).
To cross over, transīrē (irreg.).	Longer, diutiūs (adv., compar.).
The world, orbis terrārūm.	I wish that, ūtinam (conj.).

(542.) Examples and Rules.

- (a) Would that my father | Ūtinam pāter vīvēret!
 were alive!
 I wish he could come! | Ūtinam vēnīret!

 In these examples (which refer to *present time*), the thing wished is supposed to be impossible (the wish is *vain*).

- I wish he had lived! | Ūtinam vixisset!
 I wish he had come! | Ūtinam vēnisset!

 In these examples (which refer to *past time*), the thing wished is supposed to be impossible (the wish is *vain*).

- (a) *Rule of Syntax*.—The imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive are used to express an *impossible supposition*, or a *vain wish*; the *imperfect*, with reference to *present* or *future time*; the *pluperfect*, with reference to *past time*.

(b) Conditional Sentences.

- (1) If he has (any) money, | Sī pēcūniam hābet, dāt.
 he gives (it).

Here the man is supposed to *have* money; the condition expressed by "if" is therefore *real*.

- (2) If he has (any) money, | Sī pēcūniam hābeat,
 he will give (it). | dābit.

Here the condition is *possible*, if not *real*. The man *may have* money.

- (3) If he had any money, he | Sī pēcūniam hābēret,
 would give it. | dāret.

Here the man is supposed to have *no* money: the condition is *unreal*. (Observe that it refers to *present* or *future time*.)

- (4) If he had had any money, | Sī pēcūniam hābuisset,
 he would have given it. | dēdisset.

Here the man is supposed not to have *had* any money; the condition is therefore *unreal* (referring to *past time*). Hence,

- (b) *Rule of Syntax*.—In conditional sentences (1), a *real*

condition is expressed by the indicative ; (2) a *possible* condition by the present or perfect subjunctive ; (3) an *unreal* or *impossible* condition in present time by the imperfect subjunctive ; and (4) an *unreal* or *impossible* condition in past time by the *pluperfect subjunctive*.

Rem. 1. In cases (3) and (4), the subjunctive must be used in the *consequent* as well as in the *conditional* sentence.

2. It follows that the perfect or pluperfect indicative can *never* be used with *sī*. *If he had come* = *sī vēnissēt*, not *sī vērāt*.

(543.) *Translate into English.*

Ūtinam salvus essēs.—Sī hōc dīcis, erras.—Sī hōc dīcas, erres.—Sī hōc dīcēres, errāres.—Sī hōc dīxisses, errāvisses.—Sī vēnisses ād exercitum, āb impērātōre vīsus esses.—Frāter mīhi narrābat quīd āmicus tuus fēcisset (534, d).—Mēmōriā minuitur, nīsi eām exercēās.—Sī Helvētīi flūmen transirē cōnentur, Cēsar eōs prōhibēbit.—Sī Helvētīi flūmen transire cōnārentur, Cēsar eōs prōhibēret.—Sī Helvētīi flūmen transire cōnāti essent, Cēsar eōs prōhibuissēt.—Sī obsīdes āb Helvētīis Cēsari (54) dentur, cūm iīs pācem faciēt.—Sī obsīdes āb Helvētīis Cēsari dārentur cūm iīs pācem facēret.—Sī obsīdes āb Helvētīis Cēsari dāti essent, cūm iīs pācem fēcisset.—Nōn sup̄erārēmur, cīvēs (voc.) sī nostrī fortēs essent.—Nōn sup̄erāti essēmūs, cīvēs, sī fortiōres milītes nobīs (dat., 125, II., a) fuissent.—Alexander tōtūm fērē orbēm terrārum sūbēgit.—Alexander, sī diutius vixisset, tōtūm orbem terrārum sūbēgisset.

(544.) *Translate into Latin.*

I wish my father had lived longer.—I wish you had come.—Would-that the soldiers had been braver.—If you-would-read this book (542; b, 2), I would give (it) to you.—I wish the general had led the army across the Rhine.—If you had any thing (quid), you would willingly give (it).—If they had had the money, they would willingly have given it.—If-you-had-loved the boy, you-would-have advised him.—If you-love the boy, you-will-advise him.—If the soldiers would come to the army, they-would-be-praised by the general.—If the Germans had-led (their) army across the Rhine, Cēsar would-have-made an attack upon (in) them.—If we-are brave, we shall not be overcome

LESSON LXXXIX.

Subordinate Sentences expressing a Purpose. — Ut and Nē.

(545.) THE subjunctive forms of the verb *possē*, *to be able*, are the following :

[Observe that *possē* is compounded of *pōt-*, the stem of *pōtis*, *able*, and *essē*; thus, *pōt-essē*, contracted, *possē*. So all similar forms are contracted, and the *t* changed into *s* before *s*.]

<i>Subj. Pres.</i>	(Pōtis sim = pot-sim = possim.)					
pōs-	sīm.	sīs.	sīt.	sīmūs.	sītīs.	sīnt.
<i>Subj. Imperf.</i>	(Pōtis essem = potessem = possem.)					
pōs-	sēm.	sēs.	sēt.	sēmūs.	sētīs.	sēt.
<i>Subj. Perf.</i>	(Pōtis fuerim = pot-fuerim = potuerim.)					
pōtū-	ērīm.	ērīs.	ērīt.	ērīmūs.	ērītīs.	ērīnt.
<i>Subj. Plup.</i>	(Pōtis fuissem = pot-fuissem = potuissem.)					
pōtū-	issēm.	issēs.	issēt.	issēmūs.	issētīs.	issent.

(546.) The *final* conjunctions (*i. e.*, such as denote a *purpose*, *aim*, or *result*) are *ūt* (or *ūtī*), *nē*, *quīn*, *quō*, *quōmīnūs*.

Ūt, or *ūtī*, *that, so that, in order that.*

Nē, *that not, so that not, lest.*

Quīn, *but that.*

Quō, *in order that, to the end that.*

Quōmīnūs, *that (after verbs of hindering).*

EXERCISE.

(547.) Vocabulary.

To eat, ēdērē (601).

A Rauracian, Raurācūs, i.

A Tulingian, Tulingūs, i.

To burn up, exūrērē (exuss-, exust-).

Together, unā (*adv.*).

Basely, turpīter (215, 2).

To surround, circumvērērē (vēr-, vent-).

To resist, rēsistērē (restīt-, restīt-).

To fix, hence *to decide*, stātuērē (stātū-, stātū-).

To decide on something quite severe, āliquīd grāviūs stātuērē.

To enjoin, prācīpērē (io, prācīpcept-), prācīpērē.

To join battle, praeliūm committēre

End, finis, īs (m., 355, Ex. II., 2).

Subordinate Sentences expressing a Purpose, End, or Object.

(548.) Examples and Rules.

(a) I beseech you *that you*
do this ;

or,

I beseech you *to do this.*

Tē obsēcro, ūt hōc fācias.

The general commanded <i>that</i> <i>the soldiers should keep</i> <i>their stations ;</i>	}	Dux impērāvit, ūt milītes stātiōnēs suās servārent
or,		
The general commanded the soldiers <i>to keep their sta-</i> <i>tions.</i>	}	
(b) I beseech you <i>that you</i> <i>do not do this ;</i>	}	Tē obsēcro nē hōc fācias.
or,		
I beseech you <i>not to do this.</i>	}	
The general commanded <i>that</i> <i>the soldiers should not</i> <i>desert their stations ;</i>	}	Dux impērāvit nē milītes stātiōnes suās dēsēr- ērent.
or,		
The general commanded the soldiers <i>not to desert their</i> <i>stations.</i>	}	

(a) These examples show that a *purpose* or *aim* may be expressed in English by *that*, *in order that*, or (especially after verbs of *asking* and *commanding*) by the infinitive. In Latin, such sentences are expressed by *ut*, with the *subjunctive*.*

(b) An object to be *provided against* is introduced in English by *that not*, *in order that not*, or by *not*, with the infinitive. In Latin, such sentences are always expressed by *nē*, with the *subjunctive*.

(549.) *Translate into English.*

1. Ūt.

Ēdīmus ūt vivāmus, nōn vivīmus ūt ēdāmus.—Vēnio ūt discā m.—Vēnī ūt discō rem.—Orgētōrix persuādēt Castīcō (*dat.*) ūt regnum occūpet.—In eō itīnēre, persuāsīt Castīcō, cūjus pāter regnum in civitāte suā multōs annōs (191, a) obtīnuērat, ūt regnum in civitāte suā occūpāret.—Orgetōrix persuādēt Dumnorīgi ūt idēm (150) cōnētur.—Orgetōrix persuāsīt Dumnorīgi ūt idēm cōnārētur.—Helvētīi persuādēt Raurācis, ūti cūm iīs proficiscantur.—Helvētīi persuādēt Raurācis ēt Tulingīs, ūtī, oppīdis suis vicisque

* *Jubērē* takes accusative with infinitive.

exustis (457), unā cūm iis proficiscantur.—Cæsār castellā commūnit, ūt Helvētios prōhibēre possit.—Cæsar castella communivit ūt Helvētios prōhibēre posset.—Cæsar rōgat Divitiācum ūt finem ōrandī fāciat.—Cæsar rōgāvit Divitiācum ūt finem ōrandī fācēret.—Helvētiis (147) Cæsar impērat ūtī perfūgās rēdūcant.—Helvētiis Cæsar impērāvit ūtī perfūgas rēdūcērent.

2. N ē.

Tē obsēcrāvi nē hōc fācēres.—Pāter filium obsēcrat nē quīd turpīter fācēret.—Milites, nē āb hoste circumvērēntur, audāciūs (376) resistēre āc fortiūs pugnāre cōpērunt.—Divitiācus Cæsārem obsēcrat, nē quīd grāviūs in frātre stātuat.—Divitiācus, multīs cūm lācrynīs (89, II.) Cæsārem obsēcrāre cōpit, nē quīd grāviūs in frātre stātueret.—Præceptum est (perf. pres., *it has been enjoined to or upon*) Labiēnō, nē prælium committat, nisi Cæsāris cōpiæ visæ sint (542, b, 2).—Præceptum erat Labiēnō, nē prælium committeret, nisi Cæsāris cōpiæ visæ essent.

[Recollect that a *purpose* or *aim* is often expressed in English by the *infinitive*; but in Latin *never*—always by *ut* with the subjunctive for a *positive aim*, by *ne* with the subjunctive for a *negative aim*.]

(550.) Translate into Latin.

The general commands the lieutenant (147) *not to do* (= *that he may not do*) this.—The general exhorted the soldiers *to make* (= *that they should make*) the attack sharply.—The father beseeches his daughter *to make* an end of praying.—Some-men (quidam) *live to eat*, not *eat to live*.—He comes *to see* the general.—He came *to see* the general.—The Helvetians persuade the Tulingians *to set out* together with them.—The captive beseeches the general *not to decide-on* any-thing at-all-severe against (in) him (sē).—Cæsar commands the Gauls (147) *to bring back* (= *that they should bring back*) the deserters.—The Romans, *that they might not be surrounded* by the Gauls, began to fight more bravely.—The commander enjoins-it-upon the lieutenant *not to join battle*.—The commander enjoined it upon the lieutenant *not to join battle*.

LESSON XC.

Succession of Tenses.—Ūt expressing a Result.

(551.) (1.) We cannot say in English, "*He comes, that he might see the general;*" or, "*He came, that he may see the general;*" but we must say, "*He comes, that he may see the general,*" and, "*He came, that he might see the general.*" It is obvious that this tense of the verb in the subordinate sentence depends upon that of the principal sentence; and this dependence is called *the succession of tenses*.

2. The tenses of the Latin verb are divided into *primary* and *historical*.

	Present.	Future.	Pres. Perf.
(a) <i>Primary</i> ,	{ <i>āmāt</i> , <i>he loves</i> .	<i>āmābīt</i> , <i>he will love</i> .	<i>āmāvīt</i> , <i>he has loved</i> .
	Imperfect.	Pluperfect.	Perf. Aorist.
(b) <i>Historical</i> ,	{ <i>āmābāt</i> , <i>he was loving</i> .	<i>āmāverāt</i> , <i>he had loved</i> .	<i>āmāvīt</i> , <i>he loved</i> .

3. The *Rule* for the succession of tenses then is: If there be a *primary* tense in the principal sentence, there must be a *primary* tense in the subordinate sentence; if a *historical* tense in the principal, a *historical* tense in the subordinate.

[The examples in the preceding lesson illustrate this rule, and those in the present lesson will farther confirm it.]

EXERCISE.

(552.) *Vocabulary.*

<i>To strive, contend</i> , nīti (nīs- and nix-), <i>dep.</i>	<i>To cut or tear down</i> , scindērē (scīd-, sciss-).
<i>Despair</i> , despērātiō, (desperation) īs (333, R.).	<i>To begin</i> , incīpērē (incēp-, incept-, in+capērē).
<i>To run together</i> , concurrēre (concurr- and concūcurr-, concurs-).	<i>To afford means or facilities</i> , dārē fācultātem.
<i>Storm</i> , tempestās, (tempestāt) īs (293).	<i>Deceit</i> , dōlūs, ī.
<i>To rise</i> (as a storm), coorīri (coort-, con+orīri).	<i>Rather</i> , māgīs.
<i>Palisade</i> (rampart of stakes) val-lūm, ī.	<i>Integrity</i> , prōbītās, (prōbītāt) īs (293).
	<i>Course</i> , cursūs, ūs.
	<i>Change</i> , commūtatio (ōnīs, 333, R.).

Subordinate Sentences expressing a Result

(553.) Examples and Rules.

So great is the power of integrity, that we esteem it even in an enemy.

The Helvetians have been so taught by (= have so learned from) their fathers, that they contend (or, as to contend) rather with valour than deceit.

Tantă vis probitatis est, ut eam vel in hoste diligamus.

Helvetii ita a patribus suis didicerunt, ut magis virtute quam dolo nitantur.

(a) These examples show that a *result* (especially after the words *such, so, so great, &c.*) is expressed in English by *that* with the indicative, or, *as to* with the infinitive; in Latin, by *ut* with the subjunctive.

(b) *Rule of Syntax.*—*Ut*, signifying *that*, and introducing a *result*, governs the subjunctive.

Rem. *Ut*, expressing a *result*, generally follows the correlative words *talīs, tantus* (*such, so great*); *adēo, sic, ita* (*so*); and verbs signifying *to accomplish, to bring to pass, &c.*

(554.) Translate into English.

Impērātor perficit, ut ī Sēquāni dent obsidēs.—Dum norix perficit, ut ī Sēquāni dent obsides, nē iūnere (153, a) Helvētiōs prohibeant (548, b).—Imperātor tantā vī (55, a) oppidum oppugnat, ut desperatio ānimos oppidānōrum occupet (551, 3).—Impērātōr tantā vī oppidum oppugnāvit ut desperatio ānimos oppidānōrum occupāret.—Tantus timor omnem exercitum occupāvit, ut omniū ānimos perturbāret.—Tantā tempestas sūbitō coortā est (*perf. aor.*) ut nāvēs cursum tēnere nōn possent.—Impērātor tantam sibi (54) jām in Galliā auctoritatem compārāverat, ut undīque ad eum lēgatiōnes concurrerent (551, 3).—Gallī vallum scindunt.—Gallī vallum scindere et fossam complere incipiunt.—Gallī sic nostrōs contemnunt, ut vallum scindere et fossam complere incipiant.—Oppidum naturā (55, a) loci sic muniēbatur, ut magnam ad ducendum (496) bellum dāret facultatem.—Auxiliōrum adventū (55) magnā rerum commutatio facta est.

—Hōrum adventū tantā rērum commutatio factā est, ut trī fortius pugnārent atque hostēs rēpellērent.

(555.) *Translate into Latin.*

[Recollect that *as to* with the English infinitive must be translated by *ut* with subjunctive.]

The commander *brought-it-to pass* that the Sequanians gave hostages.—The Sequanians *gave* hostages *that* they would *not prohibit* the Helvetians from (their) journey (153, a).—*So great-a* fear suddenly *seizes* the whole army, *that it alarms* the minds of all.—*So great* a tempest suddenly *arises*, *that* the ships *can not* hold their course.—The commander *procures* for himself *so great* authority in Italy, *that* even the senators *run-together* to him.—The Helvetians begin to cut-down the bridge.—The Helvetians *so despised* our men, *that* they *began* to cut down the bridge.—By the approach of the Æduans, *so great* a change was made *that* the Helvetians *began* to fight more bravely.—The Helvetians *had so learned* from their fathers, *as to contend* rather with valour than deceit.

LESSON XCI.

Periphrastic Conjugation, Subjunctive.—Use of quō, quīn, quōmīnūs, with the Subjunctive.

(556.) THE want of a future subjunctive is supplied to some extent by the periphrastic conjugation, formed by combining the participles in *r ū s* and *d ū s* with the subjunctive tenses of *essē*, *to be*.

ACTIVE.		
<i>Pres.</i>	āmātūrūs sīm,	<i>I may be about to love.</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	āmātūrūs essēm,	<i>I might be about to love.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	āmātūrūs fuērīm,	<i>I may have been about to love.</i>
<i>Pluperf.</i>	āmātūrūs fuissēm,	<i>I might have been about to love.</i>
PASSIVE.		
<i>Pres.</i>	āmandūs sīm,	<i>I may be to be loved (one must love me)</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	āmandūs essēm,	<i>I might be to be loved.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	āmandūs fuērīm,	<i>I may have been to be loved.</i>
<i>Pluperf.</i>	āmandūs fuissēm,	<i>I might have been to be loved.</i>
Esse (to be).		
<i>Pres.</i>	fūtūrūs sīm,	<i>I may be about to be.</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	fūtūrūs essēm,	<i>I might be about to be.</i>

EXERCISE.

(557.) *Vocabulary.*

To hold back, restrain, rētinērē (rē-tīnū-, rētent-, rē+tēnēre).
To stand in the way, prevent, obstārē (obstīt-, obstat-, ob+stāre).
To sustain, sustinēre (tīnū-, tent-, sub+tēnērē).
Novelty, nōvītās, (nōvītāt) īs (293).
To decree, consciscērē (consciv-, conscit-).
To commit suicide, sībī mortem consciscērē (= to decree death to one's self).

Cowardice, ignāvia, æ.
To take away from, ēripērē (īo-, ēripu-, ērept-); governs acc. and abl.
To train, educate, ēdūcārē (av-, at-).
To deceive, fallērē (fēfell-, fals-).
It was Cæsar's fault, Pēr Cæsārem stētīt (= it stood through Cæsar).
To finish, perficērē (perfēc-, perfect-).
Suspicion, suspīcio, ōnīs (333, R.).

(558.) *Examples and Rules.*

(a) *Cæsar erects forts, that he may the more easily keep off the Helvetians.* Cæsar castellā commūnit, quō fācilius Helvētios prōhibēre possit.

(a) *Quō* is used to express a purpose (instead of *ūt*), especially when a *comparative* enters the sentence.

Cæsar castellā commūnit *ūt* possit (*that he may, &c.*).

Cæsar castellā commūnit quō fācilius possit (*that he may more easily, &c.*).

(b) (1) *There is no one but thinks;* Nēmo est quīn pūtet.

or,
There is no one who does not think.

(2) *There is no one so brave as not to be confounded.* Nēmo est tam fortis quīn perturbētur.

(3) *It is not doubtful but that the soldiers will fight bravely.* Nōn dūbium est quīn milītes fortītēr pugnātūri sint.

(4) *I did not doubt that the soldiers would fight bravely.* Nōn dūbitābam quīn milītes fortīter pugnātūri essent.

(5) *They could not be restrained from hurling darts (= but that they should hurl darts).* Nōn pōtērant rētinēri quīn telā conīcērent.

(b) Quin is used in the sense of "*but*," or "*as not*," after negative sentences; and in the sense of "*that not*," and "*that*," after non dubito, non dubium est, &c.; in the sense of "*from*" (= but that) after verbs of restraining, &c.

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>(c) (1) <i>What stands in the way of Julius being happy</i> (= what stands in the way in order that Julius may not be happy)?</p> <p>(2) <i>Nothing hinders him from doing this</i> (= nothing impedes, in order that he may not).</p> | <p>Quid obstat quōminus Jūlius sit beatus?</p>
<p>Nihil impedit, quōminus hoc faciat.</p> |
|---|--|

(c) Quōminus is used (in preference to nē) after verbs of *hindering, preventing, standing in the way of*, &c. (It can generally be rendered into English by *of*, or *from*, with a participle, as above.)

(559.) *Translate into English.*

(a) Quō (= *in order that*, used instead of ūt, with *comparatives*).

Cæsar milites hortatus est ūt fortēs essent.—Cæsar milites hortatus est quō fortiōres essent.—Eō ōpère perfectō (456) Cæsar præsidiā dispōnit, castellā commūnit, quō facilius, sī Helvetiī transire conentur (542, b, 2) prōhibere possit.—Scripsī, ūt auctōritātem hāberem.—Scripsī quō in suadendō (488) plūs auctōritātis (186, a) hāberem.—Auxilium rōgant, ūt hostiū cōpias sustīneant.—Subsidium rōgant, quō facilius hostium cōpias sustīneant.

(b) Quin (= *but that*).

Nemo est tam fortis quin rei novitate (55, a) perturbetur.—Orgëtorix mortuus est, nequē abest suspicio quin ipse sibi mortem consciverit.—Helvetii nōn dubitant quin Rōmāni Æduis (*abl., verb of depriving*) libertatem erepturi sint.—Nōn dubium est quin civēs, ubi (*when*) patriā in periculō futurā sit (534, e), fortiter pugnaturi sint.—Nōn dubito quin puërum benē educaturus sis.—Turpe est falli.—Turpius est fallere.—Nōn dubium est quin turpius sit fallere quam falli.—Germani retinēri nōn poterant quin in nostrōs telā conjicerent.

(c) Quōmīnūs (= *in order that not*).

Pēr Lābiēnum stētīt quōmīnus Rōmānī oppīdum occuparent.—Nostrōrum ignāviā obstābat quōmīnus hostēs superarentur.—Nōn mē impediēs quōmīnus id fāciam.—Sēnectūs nōn impēdit quōmīnus littērārum stūdiā tēneāmus.

(560.) *Translate into Latin.*

[Remember the rule for the Succession of Tenses (551, 3).]

(a) Quō.

Cæsar, having finished the work (= the work being finished), exhorted the soldiers *to be of a braver spirit* (fortiorē ānīmō).—I ask your assistance, that I *may do this* the more easily.

(b) Quīn.

There is *no one who does not think* that the wise are always happy.—It is *not doubtful that* Cæsar will cross the Rhine.—I *do not doubt that* my father will come.—*I was not doubting that* you had educated the boys well.

(c) Quōmīnūs.

Nothing *hinders me from being* happy.—*It was the fault of* the commander *that* the soldiers *did not fight* bravely.—The cowardice of the commander *stood in the way of* our taking-possession-of the town.

LESSON XCII.

Use of Quūm, with the Subjunctive.

(561.) THE conjunction quūm (sometimes written cum) has two uses: (1) to denote *time* simply (*when, while*); (2) to denote a *cause, or reason (since)*. The former is called quūm *temporal*, the latter quūm *causal*.

EXERCISE.

(562.) *Vocabulary.*

To contemplate, contemplārī (āt-),
dep.

To perceive, ānimadvertērē (vert-
vers-, animum+ad+vertere).

To delay, tardārē (āv-, at-).

To get sight of, conspīcēre (spex-
spect-).

Incessant, continuous, continens,
(nent) is (107).

Of right, justly, jūrē (abl. of jūs).

<i>To order, jübērē, does not take ut with subj., but acc. with inf.; he ordered them to await = jussit eos expectārē.</i>	<i>Destruction, interitūs, ūs. To make-haste, mātūrāre (av-, at-) To announce, nuntiārē (āv-, āt-). To meet, convēnīre (vēm-, vent-).</i>
--	---

(563.) *Examples and Rules.*

(a) <i>When we contemplate the firmament, we wonder at the greatness of God.</i>	Quum cælum contemplāmur, Deī magnitudinem admīrāmur.
--	--

(a) *Rule of Syntax.*—Quum, when used *simply* to express the time (especially with the primary tenses), is followed by the indicative.

(b) <i>Cæsar, when he had conquered (= having conquered) Pompey, crossed over into Asia.</i>	Cæsar, quum Pompeium vīcisset, in Asiā trājēcit.
--	--

(b) *Rule of Syntax.*—Quum *temporal* is followed by the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive, if the events described *depend* on each other, and especially when the aorist perfect is used in the principal sentence.

[In the above example, the verb *trajecit*, of the principal sentence, is in the aorist perfect. In all such cases, the subordinate sentence with *quum* can be rendered by the English *participle*, as in the example above, and in the two following.]

<i>The prætor, having come (= when he had come) into the forum, perceived.</i>	Prætor, quum in fōrum vēnisset, ānimadvertit(perf.).
--	--

<i>The commander, having got sight of the enemy, ordered.</i>	Impērātor, quum hostēs conspexisset, jussit.
---	--

(c) <i>Since these things are so. Since they cannot defend themselves.</i>	Quæ quum itā sint. Quum sē dēfendēre nōn possint.
--	--

<i>Although the soldiers were retarded by rains, yet they overcame all (obstacles).</i>	Mīlītes, quum imbrībus tardārentur, tāmen omniā sūperāvērunt.
---	---

(c) *Rule of Syntax.*—Quum *causal* (signifying *since*, or *although*) is always followed by the subjunctive.

(564.) *Translate into English.*

- 1.
- Quum temporal*
- , with subjunctive (563, b).

Cæsar, quum id nuntiātum esset, mātūravit āb urbe prōficisci.—Quum lēgio dēcimā constītisset, omnēs hostēs ād eūm lōcum contendērunt.—Quum lēgātus ad oppidum accessisset, puēri mūliērēsquē pācem āb Rōmānis pētivērunt.—Quum Cæsar ād oppidum accessisset, oppidāni pācem āb eō pētīerunt.—Quum imperātor signum dēdisset, milītes in hostes impētum fēcērunt.—Cæsar, quum Gallōs vicisset, in Itāliam contendit (*perf.*).—Quum lēgāti Cæsarē in itinere convēnissent, eōs suum adventum expectāre jussit.

- 2.
- Quum causal*
- (
- since, or although*
-), with subjunctive (563, c).

Milītes, quum frīgōrē ēt imbrībus tardārentur, tāmen continentī labōrē (55, a) omnia sūpērāverunt.—Cicēro jūrē patrē patriæ dictus est, quum urbēm ab intērītū servasset.*—Æduī, quum sē suāque ab Helvētīs dēfendēre nōn pōssint, lēgātōs ād Cæsārem mittunt, rōgātum (379) auxiliū.—Quum omnes hōmīnes mortāles sint, ētiam tū mōriērīs.

(565.) *Translate into Latin.*

- 1.
- Quum temporal*
- , with subjunctive (563, b).

The ambassadors *having asked* (= *when the ambassadors had asked*) peace of Cæsar, he ordered them to await his coming.—Cæsar *having ordered them* (= *when Cæsar had ordered them*) to await his coming, (they) obeyed.—The lieutenant, *when that was* (= *had been*) *announced*, returned to the citadel.—The fifth legion *having halted*, the enemy made an attack upon them.—The prætor, *having come* into the forum, saw the captives.—The boy, *having approached* the wood, heard a voice.

- 2.
- Quum causal*
- , with subjunctive (563, c).

Since these things are so, let us believe (528, b, 1).—Nations, *when they cannot defend* themselves, ask assistance.—The scout, *though he was delayed* by the cold, came to the camp.—*Since Cæsar took-away* (ēripere) liberty from the Æduans, they rightly feared.

* Contracted from servavisset.

LESSON XCIII.

Use of the Subjunctive in Relative Sentences.

(566.) THE relative pronoun often takes the place of a conjunction in introducing a sentence, and is therefore followed by the subjunctive. The following examples illustrate some of these uses.

- | | |
|--|---|
| (a) You err <i>because</i> you think = | You err <i>who</i> think. |
| (b) They sent men <i>to seek for</i> peace = | They sent men <i>who should seek for</i> peace. |
| (c) I am not such a man <i>as to be</i> delighted with vices = | I am not <i>he who can be</i> delighted with vices. |

EXERCISE.

(567.) *Vocabulary.*

- | | |
|--|---|
| <i>A herald, a proclaimer, præco, (præcōn) is (333).</i> | <i>To be present, ādessē (ad+esse).</i> |
| <i>A Nervian, Nervius, ī.</i> | <i>To bear, ferrē (irreg.).</i> |
| <i>It pleased, plăcuīt (with dat.).</i> | <i>Fortunate, fortunātūs, ā, ūm.</i> |
| <i>At length, dēmum.</i> | <i>A youth, ādōlescens, (cent) is (m. and f., 25, a).</i> |
| <i>Affection, affectio, (tiōn) is (333, R.).</i> | <i>Innocence, innōcentia, æ.</i> |
| <i>To hurt, nōcērē (with dat.).</i> | <i>Fit for, īdōneūs, ā, ūm (with dat.).</i> |

(568.) *Examples and Rule.*

- | | |
|--|--|
| (a) <i>Hannibal did wrong in wintering (= because he wintered) at Capua.</i> | Mālē fēcīt Hannībal, quī Capuæ hiemāvērit (= <i>who wintered at Capua</i>). |
|--|--|

Here *qui* introduces the *ground* or *cause* of the judgment that *Hannibal erred*.

- | | |
|--|---------------------------------|
| (b) <i>They send ambassadors to say (= who may say).</i> | Lēgātos mittunt, quī dīcant. |
| <i>They sent ambassadors to say (= who might say).</i> | Lēgātos mīsērunt, quī dīcērent. |

Here *quī* (= *ut ii*) introduces a *purpose*.

- | | |
|--|--|
| (c) <i>You are not the man to be ignorant.</i> | Nōn īs ēs, quī nesciās (= <i>you are not he who can be ignorant</i>). |
|--|--|

<i>He ordered all (those) who could bear arms to be present.</i>	Omnēs (eos <i>understood</i>) quī armā ferre possent, ādessē jussit.
--	---

In these examples, *qui* introduces a nearer definition of the demonstrative, which is expressed or implied.

(d) *Rule of Syntax*.—The subjunctive is used in a relative sentence to express a *ground*, a *purpose*, or to give a nearer definition of a demonstrative expressed or implied.

Rem. 1. *Talis, tam, tantus, ita, &c.*, may be these demonstratives, as well as *is, eā, id*.

2. The relative *to express a purpose* is very common, especially in *Cæsar*, and should be thoroughly studied and practised.

(569.) *Translate into English.*

[Remember the rule for the Succession of Tenses (551, 3).]

(a) *Qui, ground, cause, or reason.*

Errās qui censeās Deum esse injustum. — Fortūnātūs fuit Alexander, qui virtūtis suæ Hōmērū prēcōnem (225, a) invēnērīt. — O fortūnātē ādōlescens, qui tuæ virtūtis Hōmērū prēcōnem invēnēris. — Nervī incūsāverunt rēliqūos Belgās qui sē pōpūlō Rōmānō (54) dēdīdissent.

(b) *Qui, purpose.*

Erīpiunt āliīs (153, a) quōd āliīs (54) largiantūr. — Lēgātos ād Rōmānos mīsērunt, qui pētērent pācem. — Cæsar ēquitātum prēmīttit, qui vīdeant quās in partēs hostes itēr faciāt (534, d). — Impērātor mīsīt explorātōres, qui cognoscērent quālis esset (534, d) nātūrā montis. — Cæsar cōpiās suās in proxīmum collem subduxit, ēquitātumque, qui sustinēret hostiū impētum, mīsīt. — Ariōvistus omnes cōpiās, quæ nostros perterrērēt, et mūnitiōne (153, a) prōhibērēt, mīsīt. — Plācuit Cæsārī ūt ād Ariōvistum lēgātos mittēret (548, a). — Plācuit Cæsārī ūt ād Ariōvistum lēgātos mittēret, qui āb eō postūlārent, ūt ālīquem lōcum collōquiō (54) dicēret (548, a). — Tūm dēmum Ariōvistus partēm suārū cōpiārū quæ castrā oppugnārent mīsīt.*

(c) *Qui, defining a demonstrative (express or implied).*

Impērātor omnes cīves qui armā ferrē possent ādesse jussit. — Lēgātus pōposcit (411, a) obsīdes, arma, servos, qui ād Helvetios perfūgissent. — Milītes eā quæ impērārentur

* *Equitatum (cavalry)* being a noun of multitude, the relative *qui* may be in the plural.

libenter fēcērunt.—Nōn tālis sūm quī te fallam.—Innōcentiā est affectiō tālis ānīmī, quæ nō ceat nēmīnī (54).

(570.) *Translate into Latin.*

(a) Cæsar did badly *in-crossing* (*who crossed*, perf. subj.) the Rhine.—They err *who think* that the soul is not immortal.—The father censured his son *for setting-out** (= *who had set out*, plup. subj.) from the city.

(b) Cæsar sends forward scouts, *to choose* (= *who may choose*) a place fit for the camp.—Cæsar sent ambassadors to Ariovistus *to demand* (= *who should demand*).—The general brings back his forces to the hill, and sends forward the cavalry *to sustain* (= *who may sustain*) the attack.

* Proficiscor.


§ 17.

ORATIO OBLIQUA. (XCIV.)

LESSON XCIV.

Oratio Obliqua (Oblique Narration).

(571.) IN relating the words of another, we may either, (1) represent him as speaking in the first person, and give his words precisely as they were uttered; *e. g.*, "He said, '*I will come*,'" or, (2) we may state what he said in a narrative form; *e. g.*, "He said *that he would come*." The former is called *Oratio recta* (*direct narration*); the latter, *Oratio obliqua* (*oblique narration*).

 The example above given shows that the moods must be different in the two modes of narration.

(572.) The sentences introduced in the *oratio obliqua* are either *principal* or *subordinate*; *e. g.*,

Ariovistus said that he would not wage war upon the *Æduans*, *if they paid the tribute yearly*.

In this example, the sentence in spaced printing is the principal sentence; the sentence in *italic* the subordinate sentence.

EXERCISE.

(573.) *Vocabulary.*

To bring upon, to wage, *inferre* (il-lat-), *irreg.*

Tribute, *stipendium*, *i.*

Yearly, *quotannis* (used as *adv.*).

To pay, *pendere* (*pēpend-*, *pens-*).

To show, point out, *ostendere* (*os-tend-*, *ostens-*, and *ostent-*).

To excel, *præstare* (*præstit-*, *præs-tit-*, and *præstat-*).


Because, *propterea quod*.

To get, to gain for another, *conciliare* (*av-*, *at-*).

To get possession of, *pōtiri*, (*pōtīt*) *dep.* (governs *gen.* or *abl.*).

Very easy, *perfacilis*, *e* (with *dat.*).

Affirm, *confirmare* (*av-*, *at-*).

 The Helvetians intend, *Helvetiis est in animo* (= it is in mind to the Helvetians).

(574.) *Examples and Rules.*

(a) Ariovistus said that he would not wage war upon the <i>Æduans</i> .	Ariovistus dixit, sē <i>Æduis</i> bellum nōn illātūrum esse.
---	--

(a) *Rule of Syntax.*—In principal sentences in oratio obliqua, the accusative with the infinitive is used.

Rem. When they express a command or wish, the subj. is used.


(b) Ariovistus said that he would not wage war upon the <i>Æduans</i> , if they paid the tribute yearly.	Ariovistus dixit, sē <i>Æduis</i> bellum nōn esse illātūrum, sī stipendium quōtannis pendērent.
--	---

(b) In subordinate sentences in oratio obliqua, the *subjunctive* is always used (e. g., penderent).

(c) The lieutenant denied that he had crossed the Rhine.	Lēgātus nēgāvit sē Rhēnum transissē.*
--	---------------------------------------

He denies that he can give.	Nēgat sē possē dāre.
-----------------------------	----------------------

(575.) *Translate into English.*

Cæsar dixit sē, postquam hostēs fūsi essent, castra munitūrum essē.—Dē dēcimā lēgiōne Cæsar nōn dūbitābat.—Cæsar dixit, sē dē dēcimā lēgiōne nōn dūbitāre.—Cæsar dixit, sē cū sōlā dēcimā lēgiōne esse itūrum.† —Cæsar dixit sē cum sōlā dēcimā lēgiōne, dē quā nōn dūbitāret, essē itūrum.—Impērātor dixit, maxīmas nātiōnes pulsas sup̄rātasque esse.—Helvētiis (54) perfācile erat tōtīūs Gallīæ imp̄riō (*abl.*) pōtīrī.—Dumnōrix ostendit, Helvētiis perfācile esse, quum virtutē (55, a) omnibus (*dat.*) præstārent, tōtīūs Gallīæ imp̄riō pōtīrī.—Dumnōrix ipse Casticō (54) regnum conciliātūrus erat.—Dumnōrix confirmat sē Casticō regnū conciliātūrum esse.—Helvētiis est in ānimō iter p̄r prōvinciam facere; aliud iter habent nullum.—Sibi essē in ānimō (573, ) dicunt Helvētiū, sinē ullō mālēficio iter p̄r prōvinciam facere, prop̄terea quōd aliud iter habeant nullum.—Impērātor nōn pōtest iter Helvētiis (54) p̄r prōvinciam dāre.—Impērātor

* Past infin. of transirē.

† Fut. infin. of irē, to go.

nēgat s ē, mōrē ēt exemplō pōpūli Rōmāni, posse īter Helvētīis pār prōvinciam dāre.

(576.) *Translate into Latin.*

Cæsar said *that he, after Pompey was conquered, would cross-over into Asia.*—Cæsar had full confidence in (= *did not doubt concerning*) the fourth legion.—Cæsar said *that he would attack the town with the fourth legion alone, in which he had full confidence.*—Cicero said *that the greatest cities had been attacked.*—The lieutenant affirms *that he will lead the army across the Rhine, if the enemy attempt to hinder (them) (prohibere).*—The Helvetians say *that they intend (573, 157) to seek peace of Cæsar.*

§ 18.

IMPERSONAL VERBS. (XCV.—XCVI.)

LESSON XCV.

Impersonals.—*Pudet, Piget, Tædet, &c.*

(577.) IMPERSONAL verbs are those which have no subject, and take the pronoun *it* before them in English; *e. g.*, pluīt, *it rains.*

(578.) (a) Some impersonals are *never used* in the personal form; *e. g.*, piġēt, *it grieves, &c.*; (b) others are simply the third person of personal verbs: *e. g.*, plācēt, *it pleases* (plāceō, I please). (c) Again, the third person singular of many intransitive verbs is used impersonally in the passive: curritūr, *they run* (it is run); *I am envied*, invidētur mihī; nunciātū m est, *it was told.*

(579.) (a) The following impersonals (which express certain feelings) take the *accusative* of the person and *genitive* of the cause of the feeling.

Piġēt, piġuīt,	<i>it grieves.</i>
Pūdēt, pūduīt,	{ <i>it shames,</i> <i>one is ashamed.</i>
Pœnitēt, pœnituit,	
Tædēt, pertæsū m est,	<i>it repents.</i>
Misērēt,	<i>it wearies, disgusts.</i>
	<i>one pities.</i>

Your folly grieves me.

Mē piġēt stultitiæ tuæ (= *it grieves me of your folly*).

(b) Sometimes the cause or object of the feeling is expressed by the *infinitive*, or a sentence with *quōd*.

I am not ashamed of having done this.

Nōn pūdēt mē hōc fēcissē (= *it does not shame me to have done this*).

I repent of offending you.

Pœnitet mē quōd tē offendī (= *it repents me that I have offended you*).

EXERCISE.

(580.) *Vocabulary.**Indolent*, ignāv-us, ā, ūm.*Folly*, ineptiæ, ārum (57, R.).*To sin*, peccārē (āv-, āt-).*Business*, nēgōtiūm, ī.*Undertaken*, susceptūs, ā, ūm (part. of suscĭpĕre).*To confess*, fātĕrī (fass-), dep.*Because, since*, quōniām (conj.).*Almost*, pænĕ (adv.).*Some day*, ālĭquandō (adv.).*Innocent*, innōcens, (innōcent) is*Lot, sors, (sort) is* (293). [(107).(581.) *Translate into English.*

(a) Ignāvum pœnitēbit ālĭquando ignāviæ.—Nōn pœnitet mē hūjus consiliī.—Tuī* mē mīsĕret.—Eōs inep-tiārum pœnitēbat.—Pœnitēbat mē peccāti.—Mīsĕret tē āliōrum, tuī* nēc mīsĕret, nēc pūdet.—Nōs mīsĕret cālāmītātis tuæ.—Nunquam Cæsārem susceptī negotiī pertasum est.—Mē civitātis mōrum pĭget, tædetque.

(b) Illum pœnitet quōd mē offendĕrit.—Socrātem nōn pūduit fātĕrī se multas rēs nescīre.—Tē id pūduit fācĕre.—Nōn pœnitet mē vixisse, quoniām nōn frustrā vixī.—Quē m pœnitet peccasse, pæne est innōcens.

(582.) *Translate into Latin.*

(a) Thou wilt repent of thy folly.—He will be ashamed of his indolence.—We shall be ashamed of thee.—We pitied them.—He was ashamed of us.—We shall never repent of our industry.—The boy will some-day be ashamed of his indolence.—Thou wilt some-day repent of thy folly.—We are weary of life.—He was ashamed of the citizens.—I am ashamed of you and your ignorance.—Many are grieved (at) their lot (*gen.*) (= It grieves many of their lot).—I am not only grieved at, but also (sed etiam) ashamed of, my folly (= It not only grieves, but also shames me of my folly).

(b) I repent of having-sinned.—I am ashamed of doing this.—A wise man is not ashamed to confess that he is ignorant-of many things.—I am weary of living (*vivere*).—I repent of having lived in-vain.—The boy repents of having offended (*quod, with perf. subj.*) the master.—The young man is ashamed of having lived in-vain.—The general repented of having moved (*inf.*) the camp.—The Helvetians repented of having crossed (*inf.*) the river.—The barbarians repented of having approached (*inf.*) the rampart (use *ad* before the accusative).

* *Gen. of tū.*

LESSON XCVI.

Impersonal Verbs, continued.(583.) *Vocabulary.*

<i>Ought, it behooves, oportet, ēbat, uit, &c. (with acc. and inf.).</i>	<i>It is agreeable, libet, or libet (with dat.).</i>
<i>It is becoming, decet (with acc. and inf.).</i>	<i>It is allowed, lawful (one must), licet (licuit and licitum est), dat.</i>
<i>It pleases, placet, placuit, &c. (with dat.).</i>	<i>It happens, contingit (dat.). Accidit (used rather of evil accidents).</i>
<i>It is of importance, it interests, interest (with gen.).</i>	<i>It is expedient, expedit (dat.).</i>
<i>It concerns, it matters, refert (with gen.).</i>	<i>With my permission, mea voluntate (abl., 55, a).</i>

(584.) *Examples and Rules.*

(a) <i>Boys ought to be diligent.</i>	<i>Pueros oportet diligentes esse (=it behooves boys to be diligent).</i>
<i>It becomes a young man to be modest.</i>	<i>Decet verecundum esse adolescentem.</i>

(a) *Oportet* and *decet* are followed by the accusative and infinitive.

[ *Oportet* is also followed by the subjunctive.]

(b) (1) <i>It pleased the majority to defend the camp.</i>	<i>Majori parti placuit castra defendere.</i>
(2) <i>Cæsar determined (=it pleased Cæsar) to send ambassadors to Ariovistus.</i>	<i>Placuit Cæsari ut ad Ariovistum legatos mitteret.</i>

(b) *Placet* (expressing a *purpose*) may be followed by the dative, with (1) the infinitive, or (2) the subjunctive with *ut*.

(c) <i>I may go (=it is allowed to me to go).</i>	<i>Mihi ire licet.</i>
<i>You may go.</i>	<i>Tibi ire licet.</i>
<i>I might have gone (=it was allowed to me to go).</i>	<i>Mihi ire licuit.</i>
<i>I may be idle.</i>	<i>Mihi otiosum esse licet.</i>
<i>I do not choose (=it is not agreeable to me).</i>	<i>Non libet mihi.</i>

(c) *Licēt, libēt*, and, in short, all impersonals which admit to or for after them in English, are followed by the dative.

(d) *It concerns all* (= it is the interest of all). *Intērest omnium.*

It concerns me.

Meā intērest.

It is your concern.

Tuā rēfert.

It is my business.

Meā rēfert.

(d) *Intērest* governs the genitive; but when a *personal pronoun* is to be used, the *possessive ablative* (*meā, tuā, &c.*) is used instead of the genitive (*meī, tuī, &c.*). *Rēfert* is rarely used except with these ablative forms.

(585.) *Translate into English.*

Omnium intērest vērā (accus. pl.) dicere.—*Intērest meā rectē facere.*—*Nōn libet mīhi praelium committere.*—*Cæsari nōn placuit praelium committere.*—*Intērest meā hōc (accus.) scribere.*—*Lēgātus pētebat, ut sibi discēdere liceret.*—*Expedit reipublicæ (dat., 584, c.).*—*Tibi licet id facere.*—*Meā vōluntātē tibi id facere licet.*—*Helvētīi rōgant ut (548, a) Cæsaris vōluntātē id facere liceat.*—*Cæsārem oportet ad Ariovistum vēnīre.*—*Ariovistus dixit; Cæsārem oportere (574, a) ad sē vēnīre.*—*Placuit Cæsari ut decimam lēgiōnem mitteret.*—*Amicitiam immortālem esse oportet.*—*Mīhi negligentī esse nōn licet.*—*Nōbīs vēnīre licuit.*—*Lībērōrum (65, R.) intērest pārentēs vivere et salvōs esse.*—*Tibi ignāvō esse nōn licet.*—*Peccāre nēmīni licet.*—*Dēcet tē esse diligētem.*

(586.) *Translate into Latin.*

Boys ought to be modest (584, a).—You ought to do this.—You ought to have done this (*oportuit, with pres. inf., facerē*).—It becomes us to follow nature.—It becomes a young man to love his parents.—The general determined (= *it pleased the general*) to make the attack.—The Helvetians determined to send ambassadors to Cæsar.—You may do this (584, c).—You may not do this.—I do not choose (= it is not agreeable to me) to ride-on-horseback.—I do not choose to come to the city.—It is every-body's interest (= it interests all) to do rightly (584, d).—It is my business to keep (my) word (*fides*).—You are not allowed to come.—We ought to praise the brave.

IRREGULAR VERBS. (XCVII.—CII.)

LESSON XCVII.

Pos-sūm, Pos-sē, Pōt-uī, to be able, (can).

(587.) *Pos-sūm* is compounded of *pōt-īs*, *able*, and the verb *sūm*. The *t* before *s* is changed to *s*; *e. g.*, *pōt-sūm*, *pos-sūm*; *pōt-sunt*, *pos-sunt*.

INDICATIVE.						
<i>Pres.</i>	pos-sūm.	pōt-ēs.	pōt-est.	pos-sūmūs.	pōt-estīs.	pos-sunt.
<i>Imp.</i> , pōt-ērām; <i>Perf.</i> , pōt-uī; <i>Plup.</i> , pōt-uērām; <i>Fut.</i> , pōt-ērō; <i>Fut. Perf.</i> , pōt-uērō: <i>all regular</i> .						
SUBJUNCTIVE.						
<i>Pres.</i>	pos-sim.	pos-sis.	pos-sit.	pos-simūs.	pos-sitīs.	pos-sint.
<i>Imperf.</i>	pos-sēm.	pos-sēs.	pos-sēt.	pos-sēmūs.	pos-sētīs.	pos-sent.
<i>Perf.</i> , pōt-uērīm; <i>Plup.</i> , pōt-uissēm: <i>regular</i> .						
<i>Infin. Pres.</i> , pos-sē; <i>Perf.</i> , pōt-uissē; <i>Part.</i> , pōt-ens (used only as an adjective).						

EXERCISE.

(588.) *Vocabulary.*

Laughter, risūs, *us*, *m*.

To sow, sērērō (sēv-, sāt-).

Good deed, act of kindness, bēnēficiūm, *i*.

Reap, mētērē (messū-, mess-).

To do good to, to benefit, prōdessē (prōfū-, prō+sūm); governs *dat*.

Hang over, impendērē.

To render, reddēre (reddīd-, reddīt-).

Influence, grātiā, *æ*.

Fraud, fraus, (fraud) *īs* (293).

Restrain, rētīnere (rētīnu-, rētent-rē+tēnere).

With equanimity, æquō ānīmō (*abl*). = *with equable mind*).

(589.) *Examples.*

(a) *To be very powerful.*

Plūrimum posse (= *to be very much able*).

(b) *Of the whole of Gaul, the Helvetians are the most powerful.*

Tōtīus Galliæ plūrimum Helvētīi possunt.

(c) *A very few can keep off (many).* | Perpauci prōhibēre possunt.

(d) *In the rest of Gaul.* | In reliquā Galliā.

[What is the rule for the Succession of Tenses? 551, 3.]

[What case do the compounds of sum (prosum, desum, &c.) govern? 267, b.]

(590.) *Translate into English.*

Beātus esse sine virtūte nemo pōtest.—Per risum multum pōtēris cognoscere stultum.—Sere (*imperative*) bēnēficia, ut possis (548, a) mētēre fructum.—Viri bōni sūmus, si (iūs) prōsūmus, quibus possūmus.—Semper ita vivāmus (528, b) ut ratiōnem reddere possimus (553, b).—Mons altissimus impendit ut fācile perpauci prōhibēre possint (553, b).—Mons altissimus impendēbat ut fācile perpauci prōhibēre possent.—Sine agricultūra hōmīnes vivere nōn possunt.—Nostri hostes consēqui nōn pōtuērunt, quōd ēquites insulam cāpere nōn pōtuērunt.—Divitiācus plūrimum dōmi (*at home*) atque in reliquā Galliā pōtērat (589, a).—Fraus est accipere quōd nōn pōtēris reddere.—Nōn est dūbium quān tōtius Galliæ plūrimum Helvētii possint (558, b).—Germani rētīnēri nōn pōtērant quān in nostros tēla conjicērent (558, b, 5).—Cæsar pōtest iter Helvētiis (54) dāre.—Cæsār nēgat sē posse iter Helvētiis dāre.—Cæsār nēgat sē, mōre et exemplō (55, a) pōpūli Rōmāni, posse iter ulli (194, R.) per prōvinciam dāre.

(591.) *Translate into Latin.*

Men cannot be happy without virtue.—Without arts we cannot live.—Let us always so live (528, b) that (553, b) we may be able to die with equanimity.—Let us sow good-deeds, that we may be able to reap fruit.—The chief was very powerful, not only (nōn solūm) at home, but also (sēd etiam) in the rest of Gaul.—Cæsar denies that (574, c) he is able to give a passage to the ambassadors through the province.—Cæsar finds out (rēpērit) that the chief is very powerful (*accus. with inf.*).—Cæsar finds out that the chief is very powerful, not only at home, but also among the neighbouring states.—The enemy cannot be restrained from (quin) hurling darts against our soldiers.

LESSON XCVIII.

Vellē, to be willing.—Nollē, to be unwilling.—Mallē, to be more willing, to prefer.

(592.) Nōlo = nōn vōlo ; mālo = māgis vōlo.

(a) INDICATIVE.						
Pres.	vōļ.	vīs.	vult.	vōļūmūs.	vultīs.	vōļunt.
	nōļ.	nonvīs.	nonvult.	nōļūmūs.	nonvultīs.	nōļunt.
	māl.	māvīs.	māvult.	mālūmūs.	māvultīs.	māļunt.

Rem. The following tenses are regular: *Imperf.*, vōļēbām, nōlēbām, mālēbām; *Perf.*, vōļui, nōļui, māļui; *Fut.*, vōļām, nōļām, mālām; *Fut. Perf.*, vōļuerō, nōļuerō, māļuerō.

(b) SUBJUNCTIVE.									
<i>Pres.</i>	{	vēl- nōl- māl.	}	īm.	īs.	īt.	īmūs.	ītīs.	int.
<i>Imperf.</i>	{	vell- noll- mall.	}	ēm.	ēs.	ēt.	ēmūs.	ētīs.	ent.

Rem. 1. Regular are, *Perf.*, vōļuerīm, nōļuerīm, māļuerīm; *Pluperf.*, vōļuissēm, nōļuissēm, māļuissēm.

2. *Imperative*, nōļi, nōļitē ; nōļite, nōļitētē, nōļuntē. (*Imperative of vōļē and mālē wanting.*)

3. *Participles*, vōļ-ens, nōļ-ens.

4. *Infinitives* : *Pres.*, vellē, nollē, mallē ; *Past*, vōļuissē, nōļuissē, māļuissē.

EXERCISE.

(593.) Vocabulary.

To be empty, unoccupied, vācārē (āv-, āt-), *intrans.*

Neighbour, finītīmūs, ā, ūm (with *dat.*).

Attentive, attentūs, ā, ūm.

Attentively, attentē (*adv.*).

Grant, concession, concessūs, ūs.

Content, contentūs, ā, ūm (with *abl.*).

To seem, vīdērī (*pass.* of vīdērē).

To return, to come back, rēverti (*revers-*), *dep.*

Old man, sēnex, (sen) īs (108, R. 1).

On the Ides of April, ād īdūs Aprīlīs (the 13th of April).

April, Aprīlīs, īs, m. (25, a).

Docile, dōcīlīs, ē (104).

(594.) Examples.

(a) *If they wish anything.* | Sī quīd vēlint.

(a) The verbs velle, nolle, malle, as transitive verbs, govern the accusative.

(b) *He is willing to hear.* | Vult audire.


(b) The verbs vellë, nollë, mallë, take the infinitive after them, as the complementary object (210).

(c) Cæsar is not willing *that* | Nōn vult Cæsar eūm lōcum
that country should remain | vācārē.
unoccupied.

(c) The verbs vellë, nollë, mallë, admit the accusative with the infinitive after them.

[What is the rule for *principal* sentences in oratio obliqua? (574, a.)
 For *subordinate* sentences? (574, b).]

(595.) *Translate into English.*

Ēgo nōn eādem vōlo, sēnex (225, a) quæ vōlui ādōlescens.
 — Sī vīs āmāri, āmā (*imperative*).—Nōn vult Cæsar eum
 lōcum vācāre.—Nōluit Cæsar eum lōcum, unde Helvētiī
 discesserant, vācāre; nē Germāni finitimī Gallīæ (54) essent
 (548, b).—Bōni hōmīnes, mīsēri quam imprōbi esse, mālunt.
 —Fēre libenter hōmīnes id quōd vōlunt, crēdunt.—Īdem
 velle ēt idēm nolle, eā* firmā āmicitiā est.—Dōcīlis est quī
 attentē vult audire.—Quēm docīlem vėlīs fācēre, sīmūl
 attentum fāciās oportet (584, a, ).—Nīsī Cæsar Rōmānīs
 (147) sōlūs impērāre vōluissēt (542, b), ā Brutō ēt Cassio nōn
 interfectus esset.—Ariovistus dixit sē regnum malle (574, a)
 Cæsarīs concessū (55, a) quām Ēduōrum bēnēficio hābēre.—
 Mālūmus, cūm virtūte, paucīs (55, a) contentī essē, quām
 sīne virtūte multā hābēre.—Aristīdēs bōnūs esse mālēbat
 quam vīdērī.—Hābet iracundiā hōc malī (186, a, R.); nōn vult
 rēgī.—Cæsar legatīs respondet (574, a) diēm sē ād dēliberan-
 dum (489) sumptūrum (esse); sī quīd vėlint (542, b, 2) ād
 Īdūs Aprīlīs revertantur (574, b).—Tāmēn Cæsar, ūt spātium
 intercēdērē possēt (548, a) dum milītēs convēnīrent, lēgatīs
 respondīt, diēm sē ad dēliberandum sumptūrum; sī quīd vel-
 lent, ād Īdūs Aprīlīs rēvertērentur.—Cæsar āb Helvētiīs dis-
 cēdēre nōlēbat.—Omniā ērunt fācīliā sī vōlēs (542, b).—
 Ariovistus respondēt; sī quīd Cæsar a sē vėlit, illum ad se
 vēnīre oportēre.—Ariovistus respondit, sī quīd Cæsar a sē vel-
 let, illum ād sē vēnīre oportēre.

* Eā is in apposition with the clause idem velle et idem nolle.

LESSON XCIX.

Fero, Ferre, Tuli, Latum, to bear, bring.

(596.) (a) PARADIGM OF IRREGULAR FORMS.

INDICATIVE.							
<i>Pres. Act.</i>	fērō.	fers.	fert.	fērimūs.	fertīs.	fērunt.	
<i>Pres. Pass.</i>	fērōr.	ferrīs.	fertūr.	fērimūr.	fērimīnī.	fēruntūr.	
INFINITIVE.							
<i>Act.</i>	<i>Pres., ferrē, to bear.</i>		<i>Perf., tūlissē, to have borne.</i>		<i>Fut., lātūrus essē.</i>		
<i>Pass.</i>	<i>Pres., ferri, to be borne.</i>		<i>Perf., lātūs essē, to have been borne.</i>		<i>Fut., fērendum essē.</i>		
SUBJUNCTIVE.							
<i>Imperf. Act.</i>	ferr-	ēm.	ēs.	ēt.	ēmūs.	ētīs.	ent.
<i>Imperf. Pass.</i>	ferr-	ēr.	ēris (ē).	ētūr.	ēmūr.	ēmīnī.	entūr.
IMPERATIVE.							
Singular.				Plural.			
<i>Active.</i>	2. fēr, fertō.		3. fertō.	2. fertē, fertōtē.		3. fēruntō.	
<i>Passive.</i>	2. ferrē, fertōr.		3. fertōr.	2. fērimīnī.		3. fēruntōr.	

(b) The remaining tenses are formed regularly from fēr-, the present stem; tūl-, the perfect stem; and lāt-, the supine stem.

1. From fēr-,

Imperfect active and passive, fērēbam, fērēbār.

Future active and passive, fēram, es; fērār, ēris.

Participle active and passive, fērens, fērendūs. Gerund, fērendī, &c.

2. From tūl-,

Indicative perfect, tūli; pluperfect, tūlērām; future perfect, tūlērō.

Subjunctive perfect, tūlērīm; pluperfect, tūlissēm.

3. From lāt-,

Participle passive, lātūs: hence all the passive forms, lātūs sūm, ērām, ēro, sīm, essem, &c.; lātūrus sum, sim, &c.

(c) The compounds are inflected in the same way; e. g., inferre, to bring against; intūli, illātūm;* infēro, infers, infert, &c.

(d) Tollo, tollērē, to raise, to take away, forms its perfect and supine from tūli, lātūm, viz., sustūli, sublātūm.

* in + latum = illātūm, n being changed into l before l.

EXERCISE.

(597.) Vocabulary.

Frequent, crēbēr, brā, brum (77, a).*Rumour*, rŭmŏr, (rŭmŏr) īs (319).*To bring to, bring*, afferrē (attŭl-, allāt-, ad+ferre).*To bring together*, conferrē (contŭl-, collat-, con+ferre); *to betake one's self*, sē conferrē.*Poor, helpless*, inops, (inŏp) īs (in+ops), *adj.*, 107.*To prefer*, præferrē (tŭl-, lāt-, præ+ferre); governs *acc.* and *dat.**Mean, sordid*, sordidŭs, ā, ūm.*To bring against*, inferrē (tŭl-, lāt-), governs *acc.* and *dat.**To make war upon one*, bellŭm āli-cui inferrē.*Especially*, præsertim.*Giant*, gīgas, (gīgant) īs, m. (N. on p. 133).*To conspire, plot*, conjūrāre (āv-, āt-).*Impediment*, impēdimentum, ī.*Baggage*, impēdimentā, ōrum (*pl.*).*Whatever*, quicquid (n. of quisquis).

(598.) Examples.

- (a) *It is the part,*
It is the duty,
It is the mark,
It is the characteristic,
of a wise man.

Est sāpientis (= *it is of a wise man*).

- (b) *The poets say.*
They say.

Poetæ fērunt.
 Fērunt.

Ferunt is used for *they say*, and followed by the accusative with the infinitive.

(599.) Translate into English.

Eās rēs Cæsar grāviter fert.—Cæsar dicit, eās rēs sē grāviter ferrē.—Sāpiens bonā suā sēcūm (125, II., b) fert.—Terrā circā sōlem itā fertur ūt circā eām sīmul lūnā fēratur.—Crebrī rŭmōres ād Cæsārem affērēbantur, omnēs Belgās contrā pŏpŭlum Rŏmānum conjūrāre, obsīdes que inter sē dāre.—Helvētīi nostrŏrum impētūs (*acc. pl.*) sustinēre nŏn possunt.—Diūtius quum Helvētīi nostrŏrum impētūs sustinēre nŏn possent (563, b) altērī sē īn montem rēcēpērunt, alterī ād impēdimentā ēt carrŏs sē contŭlērunt.—Helvētīi īn ūnum lŏcum impēdimentā contŭlērunt.—Fertē miserŏ (54) atque īnopī (54) auxiliūm.—Est sāpientis (598, a) īnjūrias æquŏ animŏ ferre.—Est bonī (598, a), mīserīs atque īnŏpībus auxiliūm ferre.—Quīd quæque (178, 6) nox aut diēs fērat, incertum

est.—Pēcūniam praeferre amicitiæ sordidum est.—Amicitiam praeferre pēcūniæ honestum est.—Ariovistus pōpūlō Rōmānō bellum intūlit.—Cæsāri nunciātum est (578, c) Ariovistum pōpūlō Rōmānō bellum intūlisse.—Æquō ānimō fērāmus quicquid nōbīs accidat.—Fērenda est fortūnā, præsertīm quæ ābest ā culpā.—Improbī ād vōluptātem fēruntur.—Poētæ fērunt (598, b), gīgantēs bellum diīs (62, R. 3) intūlisse.—Demetrius, quum patriā pulsus esset (563, b) ād Ptōlēmæum rēgem sē contūlit.—Catilinæ socii armā contrā patriam fērēbant.—Dōmōs suās Helvētiī reliquērunt, ut tōtī (194, R. 1) Galliæ bellum inferrent (548, a).

LESSON C.

Fieri, to become, to be done, to happen.—Edere, or Esse, to eat.

1. Fieri.

(600.) Fieri forms the passive of *fācērē*, to make, to do. The tenses are formed regularly with the endings of the 4th conjugation, except the infinitive and the imperfect subjunctive.

INDICATIVE.	
<i>Pres.</i> , fī-o, fī-s, fī-t, &c.	<i>Imperf.</i> , fiēbām, bās, &c.
<i>Fut.</i> , fiām, fiēs, &c.	<i>Perf.</i> , factūs sum, ēs, est, &c.
<i>Pluperf.</i> , factūs ērām, ērās, &c.	<i>Fut. Perf.</i> , factūs ēro, ēris, &c.
SUBJUNCTIVE.	
<i>Pres.</i> , fiām, fiās, &c.	<i>Imperf.</i> , fiērēm, fiērēs, &c.
INFINITIVE.	
<i>Pres.</i> , fiērī; <i>Perf.</i> , factūs, ā, ūm, esse; <i>Fut.</i> , factum īrī, or futūrūm esse, or fōrē.	
PARTICIPLES.	
<i>Pres.</i> wanting; <i>Perf.</i> , factūs; <i>Fut.</i> , faciendūs.	

Rem. Observe that in all the forms of this verb except fierī and fiērēm, rēs, &c., the ī is *long*, contrary to the general rule that a vowel before another is short.

2. Ēdērē (essē).

(601.) Ēdērē (or essē), to eat, forms all the tenses regularly with the endings of the third conjugation; but it has, in

addition, a few forms similar to those of *essĕ*, *to be*, which are shown in the following table :

INDIC. <i>Pres.</i>	{	edo.	ĕdis or ĕs.	ĕdit or est.	ĕdimŭs.	ĕditis or estis.	ĕdunt.
		ĕdĕrĕm or essĕm.	ĕdĕrĕs or essĕs.	ĕdĕrĕt or essĕt.	ĕdĕrĕmŭs or essĕmŭs.	ĕdĕrĕtis or essĕtis.	ĕdĕrent or essent.
SUBJ. <i>Imperf.</i>	{						
IMPERATIVE.	{	ĕdĕ or ĕs.	ĕdito or esto.	ĕditĕ or este.	ĕditôtĕ or estôtĕ.	ĕdunto.	

Rem. Ēs, from *esse*, *to be*, is short ; from *esse*, *to eat*, it is long (ĕs).

EXERCISE.

(602.) Vocabulary.

To wander, vāgārī (*dep.*).

Fewness, small number, paucitās, (paucitāt) īs (293).

To be born, nascī (nāt-), *dep.*

To admonish, admōnĕrĕ (ad+mōnĕrĕ, mōnŭ-, mōnīt-).

Among, apŭd (*prep., acc.*).

According to, sĕcundŭm (*prep., acc.*).

Less, mīnus (*adv.*).

Sickness, ægritŭdo, (ægritŭdīn) īs (340).

To eat up, corrode, exĕdĕre (ex+ĕdĕrĕ).

Fate, fatŭm, ī.

Perpetual, perpĕtŭŭs, ā, ūm.

Poor, paupĕr, (paupĕr) īs (107).

To drink, bībĕre (bīb-, bībīt-).

(603.) Examples.

(a) *It happens* (it is brought to pass) *that they wander less widely.*

Fī t, ūt mīnus latĕ vāgentur.

Ut with subjunctive, expressing a *consequence*, frequently follows fī t.

(b) *He was informed* (= he was made more certain).

Certior factus est (may be followed by acc. with infin.).

(c) *Cicero was made consul.*

Cicĕro consul factus est.

The verb fīerī admits a *predicate-nominative* after it.

(d) *Nothing could be done.* | Nīhil fīerī pōtĕrat.

[Repeat the rule for the Succession of Tenses (551, 3).]

(604.) Translate into English.

His rĕbus fī t, ut Helvētīi mīnus latĕ vāgentur (603, a).—His rĕbus fīebat, ut Helvētīi mīnus latĕ vāgārentur.—His rĕbus fī t ut Helvētīi mīnus fācīle fīnītīmīs bellum inferrĕ possint.—Dĕ Cæsāris adventū Æduī certīores facti sunt.—Cæ-

sar, litteris (55, a) Labiēnī certior fī ē b a t, omnes Belgas con-
trā pōpūlum Rōmānum conjūrārē, obsidesque inter sē dāre.—
Impērātor dixit, id fī ē r ī posse.—Nostrōrum propter paucitā-
tem nihil fī ē r ī pōtērat.—Labiēnus praelium commisit, ut un-
dique unō tempōrē (118, II., c) in hostes impētūs fī ē r ē t.—
Nēmo fīt cāsū (55, a) bōnūs.—Poētā nascitur, nōn fīt.—Si
fatō (55, a) omniā fī u n t (542, b, 1), nihil nos admōnēre pōtest
ut cautiōres fī ā m u s.—Contrā vim sīne vī nihil fī ē r ī pōtest.
—Diligentiā (55, a) omniā fī u n t faciiliā (603, c).—Āpud vētē-
rēs Rōmānos, ex āgricōlis interdum fī ē b a n t consūlēs; ita
Cincinnatiūs consul (603, c) factus est.—Omniā quæ se-
cundūm nātūrām fī u n t, hābendā sunt (502) in bōnīs.*—
Sæpe quī ex paupēribus divītes fī u n t, divitiīs (*abl.*, 316, b)
ūtī nesciunt.—Vivimus ut ē d ā m u s; nōn ē d ī m u s ut vī-
vāmūs.—Ē d ē r e oportet ut vivāmus, nōn vīvēre ut ē d ā m u s.
—E s s ē (601) oportet ut vivās, nōn vīvēre ut ē d ā s.—Perpētūā
curā ānīmum āvārī ex est.—Bibē, ē s.—Bibīte, est ē —
Ægritūdo ānīmum ex est.

LESSON CI.

Ire, to go.—*Quire, to be able (can).*—*Nequire, to be unable (cannot).*

(605.) *Eō, irē, ivī, itūm, to go*, mostly follows the 4th conjugation; but is irregular in the present tense, gerund, and supine, as appears by the following

PARADIGM.

TENSES.	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.		
<i>Pres.</i>	ēō, is, it, imūs, itīs, eunt.	ēām, ēās, ēāt, ēamūs, ēātīs, ēant.		
<i>Imperf.</i>	ibām, ibās, ibat, &c.	irēm, irēs, irēt, &c.		
<i>Fut.</i>	ibō, ibīs, &c. . . . ibunt.	itūrūs, sīm, sis, sīt, &c.		
<i>Perf.</i>	ivī or ii, ivistī, ivīt or iūt, &c.	ivērīm, ivērīs, ivērīt, &c.		
<i>Pluperf.</i>	ivērām, ivērās, &c.	ivissēm, ivissēs, ivissēt, &c.		
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	ivērō, ivērīs, &c.			
IMPER.	INFINITIVE.	SUPINE.	PARTICIPLE.	GERUND.
ī, itō, itō.	<i>Pres.</i> , irē.	itūm.	<i>Pres.</i> , iens (euntīs).	eundī.
itē, itōtē.	<i>Perf.</i> , ivissē or issē.	itū.	<i>Fut.</i> , itūrūs, ā, ūm.	eundō, &c.
euntō.	<i>Fut.</i> , itūrūm essē.		<i>Verbal</i> , eundūs, ā, ūm.	

* *Habendā sunt in bōnīs* = *should be reckoned among blessings.*

Rem. 1. In the same manner the compounds are formed; *e. g.*, *exirē*, *abirē*, &c.; but they generally drop the *v* in the perfect-stem; thus, *āb-ii*, *ab-isti*, *ab-iit*, *abissē*, *abissēm*, &c.

2. Some of the compounds obtain a *transitive* force, and then take a passive form like other transitive verbs; *e. g.*, *præterirē*, *to pass by*; *prætēreōr*, *I am passed by*, &c.

(606.) *Queo*, *I can*, *I am able*; *nēqueo*, *I cannot*, *I am unable*, are conjugated like *eo*, *I go*; but they rarely occur except in the present tense.

EXERCISE.

(607.) *Vocabulary.*

To go out, *exirē* (*ex+irē*). *Takes* *abl.*, *with or without prep. dē*.

To return, *rēdirē* (*re+irē*; *d insert-ed for euphony*).

To undergo, *sūbirē* (*sub+irē*); *governs accus.*

A return, returning, *rēditio*, (*rēditio*) *is* (333, *R.*).

Ready, prepared, *pārātus*, *ā*, *ūm* (*part. of pārārē*).

To pass over, *transirē* (*trans+irē*).

Before, *præ*, *adv.* (or *prep.* with *abl.*).

Of Cannæ, *Cannensis*, *ē* (104).

Whither, *quō*, *adv.*

By what route? *quō itinērē* (*abl.*, 55, *a*).

To perish, *pērirē* (*pēr+irē*).

Manfully, *vīrilitēr* (215, 2).

Tell me, *dic* (*imperat. of dicērē*).

Whether—or, *utrum—ān*.

Taken away, *sūblātus*, *ā*, *ūm* (*part. pass. of tollērē*) (596, *d*).


Of Zurich, *Tigurīnūs*, *ā*, *ūm*.

To suffer, allow, *pāti* (*pass.*), *dep.*

To fight, *dēcertāre* (*āv.*, *āt.*).

To be sick, *ægrōtāre* (*āv.*, *āt.*).

Light, *lux*, (*lūc*) *is* (293).

 *Recollect*, *they went* = *ivērunt* or *iērunt*.

he departed = *ābiit*, rather than *ābivīt*; and so of other compounds.

[Give the Rule for *ūt* (*purpose*), 548, *a*].

(608.) *Translate into English.*

Helvētīi dē finibus suis exeunt.—*Orgētorix Helvētīis (dat.) persuādet, ut dē finibus suis exeant.*—*Orgētorix Helvētīis persuāsit, ut dē finibus suis cum omnibus copiis (property) exirent.*—*Dōmum* (113, III., *R.*) *rēdeunt.*—*Omniā pēriculā sūbeunt.*—*Helvētīi, dōmūm reditiōnis spē sublātā* (456), *pārātiōres ad omniā pēriculā sūbeundā* (496) *ērant.*—*Cæsar in Āsiam transiit.*—*Pompeius in Āsiam transiērat.*—*Dōmō (abl.) exirē possunt.*—*Ērant omninō itinēra duō, quibus itinērībus dōmō exire possent.*—*Æduī per fines suos Helvētiōs irē patiuntur.*—*Pāgūs Tigurīnus dōmō exi-*

erat.—Hic pagus unus, quum dōmō exisset, L. Cassium, consulem, interfecerat, et ejus exercitum sub jugum miserat.—Helvetii in eam partem ibunt, ubi Cæsar constituerit.—Quo itinere (55, a) hostes ierunt?—Eodem itinere, quo hostes ierant, Cæsar ad eos contendit, equitatumque omnem ante se mittit.—Ibam forte Viā Sacrā (55, a) sicut meus est mos.—I præ, ego sequar.—Ex pugna Cannensi admōdum pauci Rōmāni dōmum redierunt.—I, quō tē fortunā vocet (534, d).—Quicquid transiit temporis (186, a, *Rule*) periiit.—Quidam ferro (55, a) decertare acerrimē possunt, agrōtārē viriliter nōn queunt.—Sinē lūcē cōlōrēs esse nēqueunt.—Pompeius periiit.—Dic utrum queās an nēqueās mēcum irē.—Risus interdū ita rēpentē erumpit, ut eam cūpientēs (442, c) tēnērē nēqueāmus (553, b, R.).

§ 20.

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

LESSON CII.

Aio, Inquam, Novi, Memini, Cæpi, Odi.

(609.) *Ai ō, I say, say yes, affirm*, is used in very few tenses.

<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	aiō.	āis.	āit.	—	—	aiunt.
<i>Ind. Imperf.</i>	aiēbām.	-bās.	-bāt.	-bāmūs.	batīs.	bant.
<i>Subj. Pres.</i>	—	aiās.	aiāt.	—	—	aiant.
<i>Part. Pres.</i>	aiens (aientis) used only as <i>adject.</i>					

(610.) *Inquā m, I say*, is used *between* the words of a quotation.

<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	inquam.	inquis.	inquit.	inquimus.	inquiunt.
<i>Ind. Imperf.</i>	—	—	inquirebāt or inquirebat.	—	inquirebant.
<i>Ind. Fut.</i>	—	inquireēs.	inquiet.	—	—
<i>Ind. Perf.</i>	—	inquisti.	inquit.	—	—
<i>Subj. Pres.</i>	inquiam.	as.	at.	atīs.	ant.

(611.) *Nōvī, I know; mēmīnī, I remember; cæpī, I have begun, I began; ōdī, I hate*, are perfect forms with present meanings. All the tenses made on the perfect stem exist, regularly formed.

INFINITIVE.			
nōvissē, <i>to know.</i>	mēmīnissē, <i>to remember.</i>	cæpissē, <i>to have begun.</i>	ōdissē, <i>to hate.</i>
INDICATIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE.			
nōv-	{ i, isti, it, &c. ērām, ērās, ērāt, &c. ērō, ēris, ērit, &c. ērim, ēris, ērit, &c. issēm, issēs, issēt, &c.	Ind. Pres.,	<i>I know.</i>
memīn-		Ind. Past,	<i>I remembered.</i>
cæp-		Ind. Fut.,	<i>I shall begin.</i>
ōd-		Subj. Pres.,	<i>I may know.</i>
		Subj. Past,	<i>I might hate.</i>
IMPERATIVE, mēmentō, mēmentōtē (the others wanting).			

☞ Recollect, *nōvī = I know (not I have known); nōveram, I knew (not I had known), &c.*; and so of the others. But *cæpī, nōvī, &c.*, may be used as *perf. pres., = I have known, I have begun, &c.*


EXERCISE.

(612.) Vocabulary.

<i>To fall back, to give way</i> , pēdem rēferrē (= to draw back the foot).	<i>Cruelly</i> , sævitiā, æ.
<i>Young, raw, inexperienced</i> , tīro, (tīrōn) īs (107).	<i>Demonax</i> , Demōnax, (act) īs (a philosopher of Hadrian's time).
<i>Surly</i> , fērōcūlus, ā, ūm.	<i>To philosophize</i> , philōsōphārī (dep.).
<i>Lucius Varius</i> , L. Varius, ī.	<i>In no way, by no means</i> , nullō mōdō (abl.).
<i>Forgetful</i> , immēmōr, (immēmōr) īs (107); governs genit.	<i>Conscious</i> , conscius, ā, ūm (with dat. of person, gen. of thing).
<i>Calmly, quietly</i> , tranquillitēr (tranquill-us, 215, 2, a).	<i>Livy</i> , Līvius, ī.


(613.) Examples.

(a) <i>He exhorts them to remember.</i>	Hortātūr eōs ut mēmīnērīnt.
(b) <i>Aristides, when asked what was just, replied, "Not to covet what belongs to others."</i>	Aristīdes interrōgātus quīd iustum esset? "Āliēnā," inquit, "nōn concupiscēre" (= "Not to covet," said he, "what," &c.).

 *Inquam* is used in quoting the very words of another (oratio recta), and is always placed among the words quoted (as "said he" in English). *Ait* is used generally in quoting the sense, not the exact words of another (oratio obliqua).


(c) <i>He began to build the city.</i>	Urbēm ædificāre cœpit.
--	------------------------

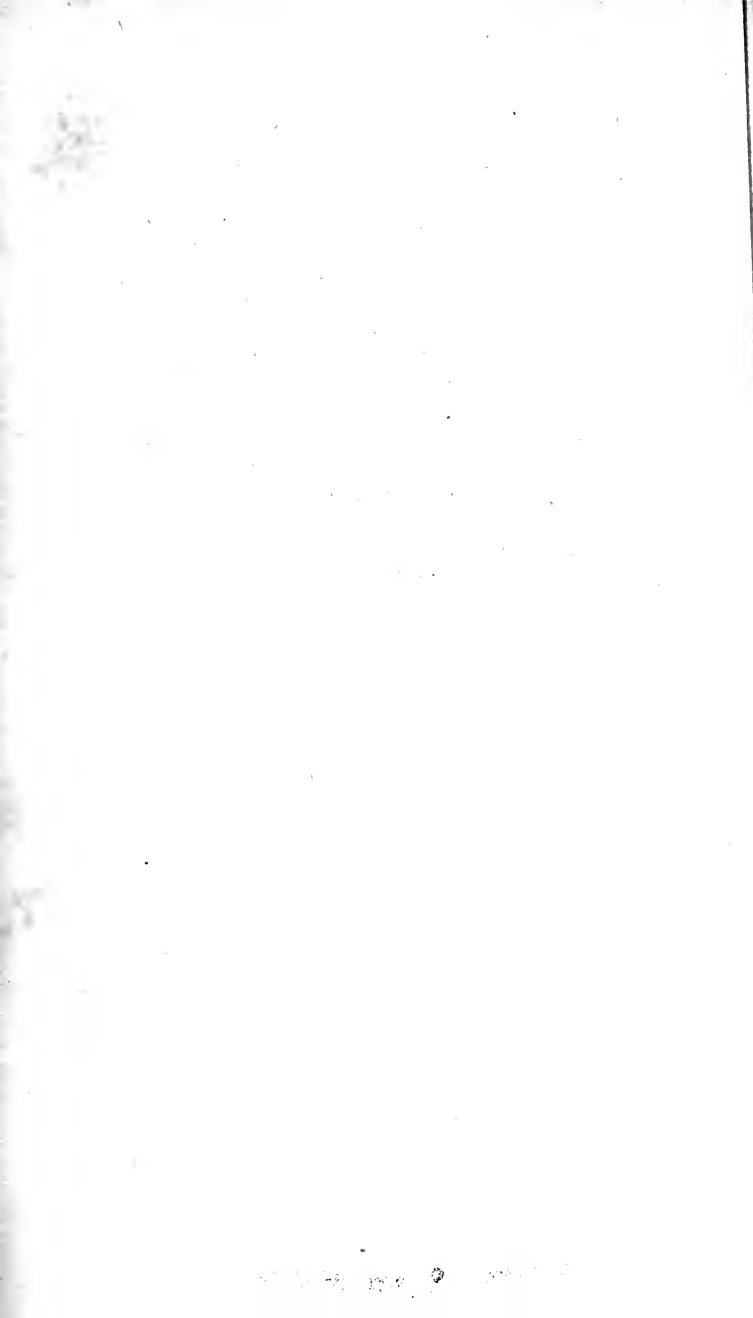
<i>The city began to be built.</i>	Urbs ædificārī cœptā est.
------------------------------------	---------------------------

 If a *passive* infinitive is used with the word *begin*, you must employ the passive form, cœptus sum, instead of cœpi; cœptus eram, instead of cœperam, &c.

(614.) Translate into English.

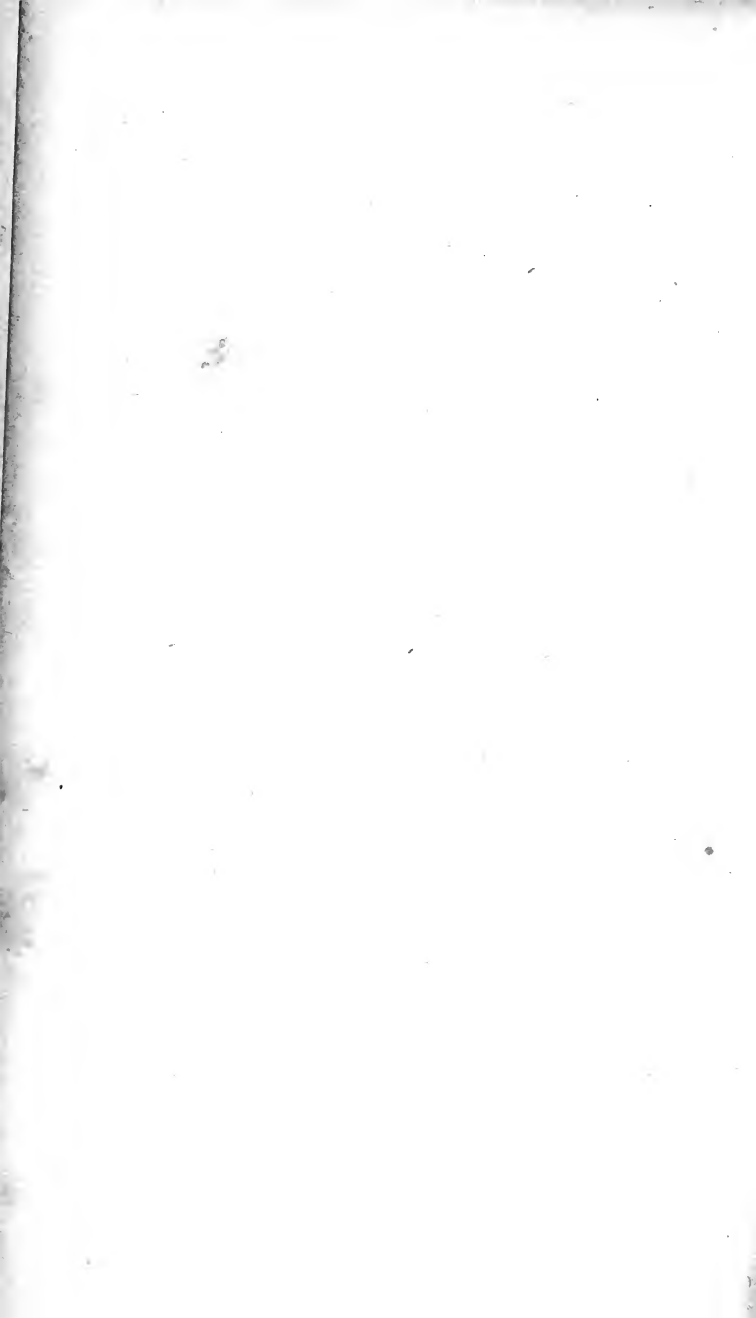
Milītes, vulnēribus dēfessī, pēdem rēferre cœpērunt.—"Quid tū," inquit Labiēnus, "mīles tīro (voc.) tam fērōcūlus ēs?" Tum mīles: "Nōn sum," inquit, "tīro, Labiēnē, sēd dē dēcimā lēgiōnē vētērānus."—Helvētīi nostrōs lācessere cœpērunt.—Hostēs, quī in montem sēsē rēcēpērānt, prælīum rēdintegrāre cœpērunt.—Cæsar dicit (574, a), id fierī possē, sī Æduī fīnitimōrum āgros pōpulārī cœpērīnt (574, b).—

Milites in mūrum lāpīdes jēcōre cœpērunt. — Undīque in mūrum lāpīdes jēcī (613, c, ) cœptī sunt. — Dux militēs hortātur ut vētēris gloriæ mēmīnerint. — Lēgatī dixērunt sē portūs (*accus. pl.*) insūlasque nōvissē. — Multī tē ōdērunt, sī tē solum āmās. — Germānī sūperbiam L. Variī ēt sāvītiām ōdissē cœpērant. — Omnēs immēmōrem bēnēficiī ōdērunt. — Tullus Hostilius, ut Livius ait, fērōcior ētiam Rōmūlō (360, c) fuit. — Sōcrātēs interrōgātus quīnām hōmīnes tranqūilliter vivērent (534, e)? “Quī,” inquit, “nullius turpītūdīnis sibi conscīi sunt.” — Demōnax interrōgātus, quando cœpisset (534, e) philōsōphārī? “Tum,” inquit, “cum cognoscēre meipsum (159) cœpī.” — Hannībal Rōmānos sīc ōdērat, ut in grātiam cum illis rēdire nullō mōdō (55, a) posset (553, b, R.). — Is mīser est, quem omnēs bōnī ōdērunt. — Nōvīnus Aristīdis justītiām, nōvīmus Sōcrātis sāvīntiām. — Nōn āmābīmus bōnōs mōres, sī nōn ōdērīmus mālōs.



PART III.

SUMMARY OF ETYMOLOGY.



SUMMARY OF ETYMOLOGY.

§ 1. LETTERS, QUANTITY, &c.

- (615.) 1. THE letters are the same as in English, with the omission of *w*.
2. Six are *vowels*, *a, e, i, o, u, y* : the remaining nineteen are *consonants*.
3. The consonants are divided into

- (a) *Liquids*, *l, m, n, r* ;
(b) *Spirants*, *h, s, j* ;
(c) *Mutes* ; the remaining consonants, among which there are
(1) *c-sounds*, *c, g (ch) ; q* ;
(2) *p-sounds*, *b, p (ph)* ;
(3) *t-sounds*, *d, t (th)* ;
(4) *Double consonants*, *x, z*.

4. The diphthongs are, *au, eu, ae, oe* (rare, *ei, oi, ui*).

(616.) GENERAL RULES OF QUANTITY.

- (1) A vowel before another is *short* ; e. g., *vīa*.
(2) A vowel before two consonants, or a double one, is *long by position* ; e. g., *amānt*.

[As a mute followed by a liquid causes some exceptions to this rule, we shall mark the quantity, in that case, *doubtful* ; thus, *āgri*.]

- (3) All diphthongs are *long* ; e. g., *mensæ, āu-rum*.
(4) Contracted syllables are *long* ; e. g., *cōgo* (coago).

§ 2. NOUN.

(617.) 1. The *noun* is the name of any object (person or thing). Nouns are *proper* (13, a), *common* (13, b), or *abstract* (13, c).

2. There are *three* genders, *masculine*, *feminine*, and *neuter* : *two* numbers, *singular* and *plural* : *six* cases, *nominative*, *genitive*, *dative*, *accusative*, *vocative*, and *ablative* : and *five* declensions.

3. GENERAL RULES OF GENDER.

Males, rivers, winds, and mountains most we find
With *months* and *nations* MASCULINE declined ;
But *females, cities, countries, trees* we name,
As FEMININE ; most *islands*, too, the same.
COMMON are such as *both* the genders take,
And NEUTER all words undeclined we make.

[There are many exceptions from these rules, which must be learned by observation.]

First Declension.—(Genitive-ending æ.)

(618.)

CASE-ENDINGS.

	Nom., Voc.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	ā.	æ.	æ.	ām.	ā.
Plur.	æ.	ārūm.	īs.	ās.	īs.

Rem. 1. Quantity.—Final syllables all long but ā, *nom.* and *voc.* ; ām, *acc.* ; and ūm, *gen. plur.*

2. *Gender.*—Nouns of first declension are *feminine*, except names of male beings, &c.

Second Declension.—(Genitive-ending ī.)

(619.) MASCULINE nouns of second declension have nominative-ending ūs ; neuter nouns, ūm.

(a) CASE-ENDINGS, MASCULINES.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Voc.	Abl.
Sing.	ūs.	ī.	ō.	ūm.	ē.	ō.
Plur.	ī.	ōrūm.	īs.	ōs.	ī.	īs.

(b) CASE-ENDINGS, NEUTERS.

	N., A., V.	Gen.	Dat., Abl.
Sing.	ūm.	ī.	ō.
Plur.	ā.	ōrūm.	īs.

Rem. 1. Quantity.—Short final syllables, ūs, ē, ūm, ā.

Long " ī, ō, īs, ōs.

2. *Gender.*—A few nouns are feminine in ūs, and a few neuter (see 62, R. 1).

3. *Stems in r.*—(1) All nouns whose stems end in r, reject the ending ūs in nom. and ē in voc.; e. g., *field*, nom., āgēr (not āgēr-ūs); voc., āgēr (not āgēr-ē). (2) Most which have ē in nom. drop it in the remaining cases; e. g., nom., āgēr; gen., āgrī (not āgēr-ī).

4. *Exceptions to Case-endings.*—(1) Proper names in ius, with *filius*, *genius*, *meus*, have voc. in ī; e. g., *Georg-ī*, *fil-ī*, *mī*. (2) *Deūs* has voc., *deūs*, nom. plur., *diī*, dat. and abl. plur., *diīs*. (3) A few take ūm in gen. plur., instead of ōrūm; e. g., *sestertium*.

Third Declension.—(Genitive-ending īs.)

(620.) (a) CASE-ENDINGS, MASCULINES AND FEMININES.

	Nom., Voc.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	—	īs.	ī.	ēm (īm).	ē (ī).
Plur.	ēs.	ūm (ium).	ībūs.	ēs.	ībūs.

(b) CASE-ENDINGS, NEUTERS.

	N., A., V.	Gen.	Dat.	Abl.
Sing.	—	īs.	ī.	ē (ī).
Plur.	ā (iā).	ūm (iūm).	ībūs.	ībūs.

Rem. 1. Quantity.—Final syllables all short but ī and ēs.

2. *Euphonic Rules.*—(a) c-sound + s = x: arc-s = arx; leg-s = lex.

(b) t-sound before s is dropped: laud-s = laus; mont-s = mons.

3. *Rules of Gender from the Formation of the Nominative.*

[Learn these from 355.]

4. *Peculiar Case-endings.*—(1) Acc. in īm: (a) *commonly* in

Febrīs, *puppīs*, *pulvīs*,

Sēcūrīs, *restīs*, *turrīs*:

(b) *always* in

Sītīs, *tussīs*,

Vis, *amussīs*.

(2) Abl. in ī: (a) *sometimes* in those which take īm in acc., with *ignīs*, *cīvīs*: (b) *always* in *vis*; and in neuters whose nom. ends in āl, ār, or ē.

(3) Gen. plur. ium: (a) in all which take ī in abl. sing.; (b) in monosyllables whose stems end in two consonants (e. g., *mont-*, *mont-iūm*); (c) in all which insert a vowel before adding s in nom. (e. g., *nāv-ī-s*, *nāv-iūm*).

Fourth Declension.—(Genitive-ending ūs.)

(621.) MASCULINE nominative-ending ūs ; neuter nominative-ending ū.

• (a) CASE-ENDINGS, MASCULINES.

	Nom., Voc.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	ūs.	ūs.	ūī.	ūm.	ū.
Plur.	ūs.	ūūm.	ībūs.	ūs.	ībūs.

(b) CASE-ENDINGS, NEUTERS.

	Nom., Acc., Voc.	Gen.	Dat., Abl.
Sing.	ū.	ūs, or ū.	ū.
Plur.	ūā.	ūūm.	ībūs.

Rem. 1. *Quantity*.—Ūs long, except in nom. sing., and dat. and abl. plur. ; ū and ī long always.

2. *Genders*.—Only the following nouns are feminine :

Ācūs, mănūs, trībūs,
Dōmūs, portīcūs, and Īdūs.

3. *Peculiar Case-ending*.—The following take ūbūs in dat. and abl. plur., instead of ībūs :

Arēcūs, ācūs, portūs, vērū,
Fīcus, lēcūs, artūs,
Spēcūs, quercūs, also pēcū,
Trībūs too, and partūs.

4. Dōmūs, *house*, is thus declined :

	Nom., Voc.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	dom-ūs.	{ -ūs. -ī.	-ūī.	-ūm.	-ō.
Plur.	dom-ūs.	{ -ūūm. -ōrūm.	-ībūs.	{ -ōs. -ūs (<i>rarely</i>).	-ībūs.

Obs. The genitive dōmī is used only in the sense of *at home*, *at my house*.

Fifth Declension.—(Genitive-ending eī.)

(622.) THERE are but few nouns of this declension : all feminine except dīēs, *day*, and merīdīēs, *midday* ; and even dīēs is feminine in singular when it means a *fixed day*.

(623.) CASE-ENDINGS.

	Nom., Voc.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	ēs.	ēī.	ēī.	ēm.	ē.
Plur.	ēs.	ērūm.	ēbūs.	ēs.	ēbūs.

Rem. 1. *Quantity*.—The e in eī is *long* when a vowel stands before it, as dī-ē-ī ; *short* when a consonant, as fid-ē-ī.

2. The genitive, dative, and ablative plural are wanting in all nouns of this declension except rēs, dīēs, spēcīēs.

§ 3. ADJECTIVE.

(624.) THE *adjective* expresses a quality or property belonging to an object; *e. g.*, *good, small, white, &c.* In Latin, adjectives are divided into three classes, according to their endings.

1. CLASS I. (us, a, um).

(625.) These take the *feminine*-ending of first declension of nouns; *masculine* and *neuter* endings of the second.

(1.) CASE-ENDINGS.

	SINGULAR.				PLURAL.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.		Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	ūs.	ā.	ūm.	N.	ī.	æ.	ā.
G.	ī.	æ.	ī.	G.	ōrūm.	ārūm.	ōrūm.
D.	ō.	æ.	ō.	D.	īs.	īs.	īs.
A.	ūm.	ām.	ūm.	A.	ōs.	ās.	ā.
V.	ē.	ā.	ūm.	V.	ī.	æ.	ā.
A.	ō.	ā.	ō.	A.	īs.	īs.	īs.

(2.) *Stems in er*.—Adjectives whose stem ends in *er* reject *ūs* and *ē* in nom. and voc.

(a) Most of them also drop *ē* in the nom. in the other cases; *e. g.*, *beautiful, pulchēr*.

Nom.	Pulchēr,	pulchrā,	pulchrūm.
Gen.	Pulchrī,	pulchræ,	pulchrī, &c.

(b) But *aspēr, lācēr, libēr, mīsēr, prospēr, tēnēr*, retain the *ē*; *e. g.*,

Nom.	Mīsēr,	mīsērā	mīsērūm.
Gen.	Mīsērī,	mīsēræ,	mīsērī, &c.

(3.) *Peculiar Case-endings*.—Some adjectives, numerals, and adjective pronouns have gen., *iūs*, and dat., *ī*; *e. g.*, *ūnūs, unīūs, unī*. [They are *ūnūs, tōtūs, sōlūs, nullūs, ullūs, āliūs, altēr, ūtēr, neutēr, ūterquē*.]

2. CLASS II. (*Two Endings*).

(626.) Adjectives of the *second class* have *īs* in the nominative singular for masculine and feminine ending, and *ē* for neuter.

(1.) CASE-ENDINGS.

	SINGULAR.				PLURAL.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.		Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N., V.	īs.	īs.	ē.	N., V.	ēs.	ēs.	īā.
G.	īs.	īs.	īs.	G.	īūm.	īūm.	īūm.
D.	ī.	ī.	ī.	D.	ībūs.	ībūs.	ībūs.
Acc.	ēm.	ēin.	ē.	Acc.	ēs.	ēs.	īā.
Abl.	ī.	ī.	ī.	Abl.	ībūs.	ībūs.	ībūs.

(2.) Some adjectives of this *class* take *ēr* for the ending of the nom. sing. masc. instead of *īs*; *e. g.*, *acēr, ācērīs, ācērē*.

- (3.) The ablative has *ě* instead of *ī* in *juvĕnĭs*, *youth*; *œdĭlis*, *œdile*. The genitive plural has *ŭm* instead of *ĭŭm* in *cĕlĕr*, *swift*.

3. CLASS III. (One Ending).

- (627.) (1.) Adjectives of the *third class* have but *one ending* in the nominative for all three genders; *e. g.*, *happy*, *fĕlix* (m., f., n.); *bold*, *audax* (m., f., n.). Participles in *ns* fall under this *class*.
 (2.) The case-endings are those of nouns of third declension (see paradigm, 108). They have *abl. ī* generally, but *ě* in *pauper*, *senex*, and a few others (108, R. 1); *neut. plur.*, *ĭă*; *gen. plur.*, *ĭŭm*. *Vĕtŭs* has *nom. plur.*, *vĕtĕr-ă*, *gen. plur.*, *vĕtĕr-ŭm*.

For participles, *abl.*, *ě* }
 " adjectives, *abl.*, *ī* } is more common.

4. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

- (628.) *Comparative*-ending, *ĭŕ*; *superlative*, *issĭmŭs*.

Brave, *fort-ĭs*, *fort-ĭŕ*, *fort-issĭmŭs*.
Hard, *dŭr-ŭs*, *dŭr-ĭŕ*, *dur-issĭmŭs*.

Rem. The *comparative* is declined (after third declension of nouns) thus:

Nom. *Dŭriŕ*, *dŭriŕ*, *dŭriŭs*.
Gen. *Dŭriŕ-ĭs*, *dŭriorĭs*, *dŭrioris*, &c. (See 358.)

- (629.) Adjectives whose stems end in *r* have *rĭmŭs* for *superlative*-ending (instead of *issĭmŭs*); *e. g.*,

Misĕr, *mĭsĕr-ĭŕ*, *mĭser-rĭmŭs*.
Pulchĕr, *pulchr-ĭŕ*, *pulcher-rĭmŭs*.

- (630.) Several adjectives whose stem ends in *l* have *lĭmŭs* for *superlative*-ending; *e. g.*,

Făcil-ĭs, *făcil-ĭŕ*, *făcil-lĭmŭs*.

They are

Sĭmĭlis, *dissĭmĭlis*, and *făcilĭs*;
Hŭmĭlis, *diffĭcilĭs*, and *grăcilĭs*.

5. IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

- (631.)

Irregulars.

<i>Good.</i>	<i>bĕnŭs</i> .	<i>mĕliŕ</i> .	<i>optĭmŭs</i> .
<i>Bad.</i>	<i>mălŭs</i> .	<i>pĕjŕ</i> .	<i>pessĭmŭs</i> .
<i>Great.</i>	<i>măgnŭs</i> .	<i>măjŕ</i> .	<i>maxĭmŭs</i> .
<i>Much.</i>	<i>multŭs</i> .	{ <i>plŭs</i> (n. sing.).	<i>plărimŭs</i> .
<i>Small.</i>	<i>parvŭs</i> .	{ <i>plŭrĕs</i> , & (pl.).	<i>mĭnimŭs</i> .
<i>Old.</i>	<i>sĕnex</i> .	<i>mĭnŕ</i> .	<i>(wanting.)</i>
<i>Young.</i>	<i>jŭvĕnĭs</i> .	<i>sĕnĭŕ</i> .	<i>(wanting.)</i>
<i>Outward.</i>	<i>extĕrŭs</i> .	<i>jŭnĭŕ</i> .	<i>extrĕmŭs</i> .
<i>Below.</i>	<i>infĕrŭs</i> .	<i>extĕriŕ</i> .	{ <i>infĭmus</i> .
<i>Above.</i>	<i>sŭpĕrŭs</i> .	<i>infĕriŕ</i> .	{ <i>imŭs</i> .
<i>Hind.</i>	<i>postĕrŭs</i> .	<i>sŭpĕriŕ</i> .	{ <i>suprĕmŭs</i> .
		<i>postĕriŕ</i> .	{ <i>summŭs</i> .
			{ <i>postrĕmŭs</i> .

(632.) *Defectives*.—[Comparative and Superlative formed from a Preposition, Adverb, or Obsolete Word.]

(on this side, <i>citra</i> .)	nearer, <i>citēriōr</i> .	nearest, <i>citimūs</i> .
(within, <i>intra</i> .)	inner, <i>intēriōr</i> .	inmost, <i>intīmūs</i> .
(beyond, <i>ultra</i> .)	further, <i>ultēriōr</i> .	{ furthest, } <i>ultīmūs</i> .
		{ last, }
(near, <i>prōpe</i> .)	nearer, <i>prōpiōr</i> .	{ nearest, } <i>proxīmūs</i> .
		{ next, }
(bad, <i>deter</i> .)	worse, <i>dēteriōr</i> .	worst, <i>dētērimūs</i> .
	former, <i>priōr</i> .	first, <i>primūs</i> .
	swifter, <i>ōciōr</i> .	swiftest, <i>ōcissīmūs</i> .

*Rem. 1. Rich, dīves; richer, { ditiōr, ditissīmūs. }
divitiōr; richest, { divitissīmūs. }*

[*Cæsar* uses the shorter form.]

2. Compound adjectives in *dīcūs*, *fīcūs*, *vōlūs*, add *entiōr* for the comparative and *entissīmūs* for the superlative; e. g.,

Bēnēvol-ūs, *bēnēvol-entiōr*, *bēnēvol-entissīmūs*.

3. Adjectives whose stem ends in a vowel prefix to the *positive* *māgīs*, *more*, for the comparative, and *maximē*, *most*, for the superlative.

Pious, piūs,

māgīs piūs,

maximē piūs.

Y

§ 4. NUMERALS.

(633.) NUMERALS are divided into the following classes, of which the first three are adjectives, the fourth adverbs.

CARDINAL.	ORDINAL.	DISTRIBUTIVE.	ADVERBIAL.
<i>One, two, &c.</i>	<i>First, second, &c.</i>	<i>One by one, &c.</i>	<i>Once, twice, &c.</i>
1 Unūs.	Primūs.	Singulī.	Sēmēl.
2 Duō.	Sēcundūs.	Binī.	Bin.
3 Trēs.	Tertiūs.	Ternī.	Tēr.
4 Quattuor.	Quartūs.	Quāternī.	Quātēr.
5 Quinquē.	Quintūs.	Quinī.	Quinquēs.
6 Sex.	Sextūs.	Sēnī.	Sēxiēs.
7 Septēm.	Septimūs.	Septēnī.	Sēptiēs.
8 Octō.	Octāvūs.	Octōnī.	Octiēs.
9 Nōvēm.	Nōnūs.	Novēnī.	Nōviēs.
10 Dēcēm.	Dēcimūs.	Dēnī.	Dēciēs.
11 Undēcīm.	Undēcimūs.	Ūndēnī.	Ūndēcīēs.
12 Duōdēcīm.	Duōdēcimūs.	Duōdēnī.	Duōdēcīēs.
13 Trēdēcīm. [im.	Tertiūs.	Ternī.	Trēdēcīēs.
14 Quattuordēc.	Quartūs.	Quāternī.	Quātiōrdēcīēs.
15 Quindēcīm.	Quintūs.	Quinī.	Quindēcīēs.
16 Sexdēcīm.	Sextūs.	Sēnī.	Sēdēcīēs.
17 Septendēcīm.	Septimūs.	Septēnī.	Dēcīēs & sēptiēs.
18 Octodēcīm.	Octāvūs.	Octōnī.	Duōdēviēciēs.
19 Nōvemdēcīm.	Nōnūs.	Novēnī.	Undēviēciēs.
20 Vigintī.	Vicēsīmūs.	Vicēnī.	Viciēs.
30 Trigintā.	Tricēsīmūs.	Tricēnī.	Triciēs.
40 Quādrāgintā.	Quādrāgēsīmūs.	Quādrāgēnī.	Quādrāgiēs.
50 Quinquāgintā.	Quinquāgēsīmūs.	Quinquāgēnī.	Quinquāgiēs.
60 Sexāgintā.	Sexāgēsīmūs.	Sēxāgēnī.	Sēxāgiēs.
70 Septuāgintā.	Septuāgēsīmūs.	Sēptuāgēnī.	Sēptuāgiēs.
80 Octōgintā.	Octōgēsīmūs.	Octōgēnī.	Octōgiēs.
90 Nōnāgintā.	Nōnāgēsīmūs.	Nōnāgēnī.	Nōnāgiēs.
100 Centum.	Centēsīmūs.	Centēnī.	Cētiēs.
200 Dūcentī.	Dūcentēsīmūs.	Dūcentēnī.	Dūcēntiēs.
300 Trēcentī.	Trēcentēsīmūs.	Trēcentēnī.	Trēcēntiēs.
400 Quādringentī.	Quādringētēsīmūs.	Quādringētēnī.	Quādringētīēs.
500 Quingenī.	Quingentēsīmūs.	Quingētēnī.	Quingētīēs.
600 Sexcentī.	Sexcentēsīmūs.	Sēxcentēnī.	Sēxcentīēs.
700 Septingentī.	Septingētēsīmūs.	Sēptingētēnī.	Sēptingētīēs.
800 Octingentī.	Octingentēsīmūs.	Octingētēnī.	Octingētīēs.
900 Noningentī.	Nongentēsīmūs.	Nōngētēnī.	Nōngētīēs.
1000 Millē.	Millēsīmūs.	Millēnī.	Milliēs.

For the declension of unus, duo, and tres, see 194.

Ducentī, and all the compounds of centī, are declined like the plural of bonus.

Millia, *thousands*, the plural of mille, is declined like a neuter noun of the third declension.

Ordinal numbers are declined like bonus.

Distributives, like the plural of bonus.

All the rest are undeclinable.

In the combination of cardinal numbers, from twenty to one hundred, the smaller with et, or the larger without et, precedes; as quattuor et viginti, or viginti quattuor. Above one hundred the larger number precedes, with or without et; as centum et unus, or centum unus.

§ 5. PRONOUN.

(634.) THE *pronoun* is a substitute for the noun ; e. g., *he, she, it*, may be substitutes for *man, woman, book*.

1. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

(635.) (a) *Substantive Personal*, so called because used as substantives, not as adjectives.

SINGULAR.					PLURAL.			
	N.	G.	D.	Acc., Abl.		N., A.	Gen.	Dat., Abl.
<i>I.</i>	эгō.	мѣі.	мѣі.	мѣ.	<i>We.</i>	нōs.	nostrūm, or nostrī.	nōbīs.
<i>Thou.</i>	tū.	tūі.	tībī.	tē.	<i>You.</i>	vōs.	vestrūm, or vestrī.	vōbīs.
<i>Him, } her, it. }</i>	—	sūі.	sībī.	sē.	<i>Them.</i>	(same as sing.)		

(b) *Adjective Personal*, or *Possessive* (derived from the above).

<i>Mine.</i>	mēūs, ā, ūm (voc., mī).	<i>Ours.</i>	noštēr, nostrā, nostrūm.
<i>Thine.</i>	tūūs, ā, ūm.	<i>Yours.</i>	vestēr, vestrā, vestrūm.
<i>His, hers, its.</i>	sūūs, ā, ūm.	<i>Theirs.</i>	sūūs, suā, sūūm.

2. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

(636.) The *demonstrative pronouns* are so called because they serve to point out an object ; e. g., *this, that, these, those, &c.*

(1.) *Īs, ēā, ĭd, this, that (he, she, it)*, often antecedent of *qui*:

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	īs, ēā, ĭd.	ējūs.	ēī.	ēūm, ēām, ĭd.	ēō, ēā, ēō.
Plur.	īi, ēae, ēā.	ēōrūm, ēārūm, ēōrūm.	īis, or ēīs.	ēōs, ēās, ēā.	īis, or ēīs.

(2.) *Īdēm, ēādēm, ĭdēm, the very same*, compounded of *īs* and *dēm*. Declined like *īs* with *dēm* added ; thus, *ējusdēm, eidēm, eundēm* (not *eumdem*), &c.

(3.) *Hīc, hāc, hōc, this*, points out an object present to the *speaker*, and is called the *demonstrative* of the *first* person. (It is also used for *he, she, it*.)


	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	hīc, hāc, hōc.	hūjūs.	huīc.	hunc, hanc, hōc.	hōc, hāc, hōc.
Plur.	hī, hae, hēc.	hōrūm, hārūm, hōrūm.	hīs.	hōs, hās, hēc.	hīs.

(4.) *Istē, istā, istūd, this, that*, points out an object present to the person *spoken to*, and is called the *demonstrative* of *second* person.


	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	istĕ, istā, istŭd.	istĭŭs.	istĭ.	istŭm, istām, istŭd.	istō, istā, istō.
Plur.	isti, istæ, istā.	istōrŭm, istārŭm, is- tōrŭm.	istīs.	istōs, istās, istā.	istīs, istīs, istīs.

 Iste is often used to express contempt.

- (5.) Illĕ, illā, illŭd, points out an object remote from the *speaker* (*that, the former*, opposed to *hic*), and is called *demonstrative* of *third person*. (It is often used for *he, she, it*.)

 Declined throughout like istĕ, istā, istŭd.

- (6.) Ipsĕ, ipsā, ipsŭm, *self*, is added to other pronouns, mĕ, tĕ, sĕ, &c., and expresses *myself, thyself, himself, &c.*, accordingly.

 Declined like istĕ, except that neuter is ipsŭm (not ipsŭd).

3. RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

(637.) The *relative pronoun* (*who, which, what*) is so called because it commonly refers to some other word called the antecedent.

- (1.) Quī, quæ, quōd, *who, which, what*.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	quī, quæ, quōd.	cŭjŭs.	cui.	quĕm, quām, quōd.	quō, quā, quō.
Plur.	quī, quæ, quæ.	quōrŭm, quārŭm, quōrŭm.	quībŭs.	quōs, quās, quæ.	quībŭs.

- (2.) Quicunque, quæcunque, quodcunque (*whoever, whichever, whatever*), declined like quī, quæ, quōd, with *cunque* added.

- (3.) Quisquis (*whoever, whatever*), used *without* a substantive. The following cases only occur, and of these only *quisquis* and *quicquid* commonly.

	Nom.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	quisquis (m., f.). quicquid (n.).		quemquem (m., f.), quidquid (n.).	quōquō, quā- quā, quōquō.
Plur.	quīquī (m., f.).	quībŭsquī- bŭs.		

4. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

f (638.) The *interrogative pronouns* (*who? which? what?*) are used in asking questions.

- (1.) Quīs, quæ, quīd (*who? which? what?*), is declined precisely like the *relative* quī, except that in nom. sing. masc. it has quīs, and in nom. and acc. sing. neut., quīd. [Quī, quæ, quōd, is also used interrogatively, as an *adjective* (172).]

- (2.) Quisnām, quænām, quidnām, is more *emphatic* than quīs. (*Pray, what are you doing? quidnām agīs?*) It is declined like quīs, quæ, quīd.

5. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

(639.) The *indefinite pronouns* denote an object in a general way, without reference to a particular individual (*any one, some one, &c.*).

- (1.) *Quidā, quēdā*, { *quoddā*, used as an *adjective*, } a certain (one); plur., *some*. Declined like *quī*; but takes *n* generally before *d* instead of *m*; *e. g.*,

Quendā, quorundā (not *quemdam, quorumdam*).

- (2.) *Quīvis*, { (*any you please*). Declined like *quī*. In neut., *Quilibēt*, } *quōd* used as *adjective*, *quīd* as *substantive*.

- (3.) *Quisquam* (*any, any one; e. g.*, when it is denied that there are any). Neut., *quicquam* or *quidquam*. Declined otherwise like *quī*. [This pronoun is used chiefly in negative sentences.]

- (4.) *Quispīam, quēpīam*, { *quodpīam*, used as *adj.*, } *somebody*,
 { *quidpīam*, used as *subst.*, } *some*.


- (5.) *Āliquīs, āliquā*, { *āliquōd*, as *adj.*, } *some one, something*.
 { *āliquīd*, as *subst.*, }

- (6.) *Quisquē, quēquē*, { *quodquē*, as *adj.*, } *each*.
 { *quidquē*, as *subst.*, }

Ūnusquisquē, -quēquē, { *-quodquē*, as *adj.*, } *each one*
 { *-quidquē*, as *subst.*, }
 (stronger than *quisquē*). *Genitive*, *ūnīuscūjusquē, &c.*, both *ūnūs* and *quis* being declined.

- (7.) *Ecquīs?* Used interrogatively (*does*); *any one, anything*.

Ecquīs, ecquē, or ecquā, { *ecquōd*, as *adj.*, } neut. plural,
 { *ecquīd*, as *subst.*, } *ecquā*.

 *Ecquīs* expects the answer *none*.

6. CORRELATIVE PRONOUNS.

(640.) *Correlative pronouns* are such as answer to each other; *e. g.*, *how great? so great; as many, so many, &c.*

- (1.) The following are declined

- (a) Like adjectives of Class I. (625):

Tantūs, so great, so much; *quantuscunquē, however great*
Quantūs, as great; *āliquantūs, somewhat great.*

- (b) Like adjectives of Class II. (626):

Talīs, such.
Qualīs, as, of what kind.
Qualiscunque, of whatever kind.

- (2.) The following are indeclinable:

Tōt, so many; *āliquōt, some.*
Tōtīdēm, just so many; *quotquōt, however many.*
Quōt, as many.

§ 6. VERBS.

(641.) THE *verb* declares something of a person or thing: the eagle *flies*; the queen *loves* her daughter.

1. CLASSES OF VERBS.

(642.) Verbs are *active*, *passive*, or *deponent*.

(1.) *Active* verbs express *action*: (a) either *transitively*, requiring an object; e. g., the queen *loves* (*whom*?) her daughter; or (b) *intransitively*, not requiring an object; the eagle *flies*.

(2.) *Passive* verbs express the *receiving* or *suffering* of an action; *I am loved*; *I was punished*.

Obviously *intransitive* verbs have no passive form. We cannot say, *I am danced*, *I am slept*.

(3.) *Deponent* verbs have the *passive* form, but an *active* signification.

2. PARTS OF THE VERB.

(643.) The verb is divided into,

(a) The *indefinite* verb, including certain parts which do not refer to a definite person or time.

(b) The *finite* verb, including the parts which always do so refer.

Indefinite Verb.

(644.) (a) The *indefinite* verb includes,

(1.) The *infinitive*, which expresses the action of the verb without relation to a definite person, and partakes also of the nature of a noun; e. g., *to learn*; *to love* is pleasant.

(2.) The *participle*, which expresses the action of the verb under the form of an adjective; *loving*, *blooming*.

(3.) The *gerund*, which expresses the action of the verb under the form of the noun, in all cases but the nominative, and supplies oblique cases to the infinitive.

(4.) The *gerundive*, which expresses the action of the verb as *necessary* or *continued*, under the form of an adjective, in all cases and genders.

(5.) The *supine*, which also expresses the action of the verb in the form of two cases (acc. and abl.) of the noun.

Finite Verb.

(645.) (b) The *finite* verb includes those parts which express the

(1.) Different varieties of affirmation, viz., the *moods*.

(2.) Different times at which the action of the verb takes place, viz., the *tenses*.

(3.) Different relations of the verb to persons or things, viz., the *numbers* and *persons*.

(1.) *The Moods.*

(646.) The verb expresses *affirmation*; the *moods* of the verb are used to vary the character of the affirmation.

- (1.) By the *indicative*, affirmation of a *fact* is expressed; e. g., *I write, I did not write.*
- (2.) By the *subjunctive*, affirmation is expressed *doubtfully, contingently, or indefinitely*; e. g., *I may write, if I should write, perhaps some (may) think.*
- (3.) By the *imperative*, affirmation is expressed as an *injunction or request*; e. g., *write.*

(2.) *The Tenses.*

(647.) Time may be past, present, or future, and the verb has therefore *three tenses* to express these. But action may be represented as *going on* or as *completed*, either in past, present, or future time, and therefore two forms are required for each, making *six* in all.

	Present.	Past.	Future.
Action going on, or imperfect.	<i>I love, or am loving.</i>	<i>I was loving.</i> (Imperfect.)	<i>I shall love, or be loving.</i> (Future.)
Action completed, or perfect.	<i>I have loved.</i> (Perfect.)	<i>I had loved.</i> (Pluperfect.)	<i>I shall have loved.</i> (Future Perfect.)

Rem. 1. The Latin uses its *perfect* form in two ways: (1) like the English perfect, to express action complete in present time; e. g., *āmāvī, I have loved*: (2) like the English imperfect, to express action indefinitely in past time; e. g., *āmāvī, I loved*. This is called the *perfect aorist*. [The latter use is by far the most common. This distinction should be thoroughly understood.]

2. The *subjunctive* mood has no future (it uses the periphrastic form 661).
3. The present, perfect, and future are called *primary* tenses, referring, as they do, either to present or future time; the imperfect, perfect aorist, and pluperfect are called *historical* tenses, referring, as they do, to *past* time.

(3.) *Numbers and Persons.*

(648.) As there may be more than one person engaged in an action, the verb has *two numbers*, singular and plural. These persons must be either *I, thou, we, ye, or some other person or thing*; therefore the verb has *three persons*, 1st, 2d, and 3d, which are denoted in Latin by different *endings*.

3. CONJUGATION.

(649.) Conjugation is the *inflection* (21, R.) of a verb through all its parts. There are in Latin *four* conjugations of verbs, distinguished by the ending of the infinitive; thus:

1.	2.	3.	4.
-ārē.	-ērē.	-ērē.	-īrē.

4 THE AUXILIARY OR SUBSTANTIVE VERB ESSĒ, to be.

(650.) [Before proceeding to the conjugations, we must give the forms of *essĕ, to be*, called an *auxiliary*, because it is used in forming some of the parts of the verb; and *substantive*, because it is the verb expressing simple existence.]

1. INDICATIVE.						
ACTION INCOMPLETE.						
	Singular.			Plural.		
Present.	sūm, <i>I am.</i>	ēs, <i>thou art.</i>	est, <i>he is.</i>	sūmūs, <i>we are.</i>	estīs, <i>ye are.</i>	sunt, <i>they are.</i>
Imperf.	ērām, <i>I was.</i>	ērās, <i>thou wast.</i>	ērāt, <i>he was.</i>	ērāmūs, <i>we were.</i>	ērātīs, <i>ye were.</i>	ērant, <i>they were.</i>
Future.	ērō, <i>I shall be.</i>	ēris, <i>thou, &c.</i>	ērīt, <i>he, &c.</i>	ērīmūs, <i>we, &c.</i>	ērītīs, <i>ye, &c.</i>	ērunt, <i>they, &c.</i>
ACTION COMPLETED.						
	Singular.			Plural.		
Perfect.	fūi, <i>I have been.</i>	fūisti, <i>thou hast been.</i>	fūit, <i>he has been.</i>	fūimūs, <i>we have been.</i>	fūistīs, <i>ye have been.</i>	fūerunt, <i>they have been.</i>
Pluperf.	fūerām, <i>I had been.</i>	fūerās, <i>thou hadst, &c.</i>	fūerāt, <i>he had been.</i>	fūerāmūs, <i>we had been.</i>	fūerātīs, <i>ye had been.</i>	fūerant, <i>they had been.</i>
Fut. Perf.	fūerō, <i>I shall have been.</i>	fūerīs, <i>thou, &c.</i>	fūerīt, <i>he shall, &c.</i>	fūerīmūs, <i>we shall, &c.</i>	fūerītīs, <i>ye shall, &c.</i>	fūerint, <i>they shall, &c.</i>
2. SUBJUNCTIVE.						
INCOMPLETE.						
	Singular.			Plural.		
Present.	sīm, <i>I may be.</i>	sīs, <i>thou, &c.</i>	sīt, <i>he, &c.</i>	sīmūs, <i>we, &c.</i>	sītīs, <i>ye, &c.</i>	sint, <i>they, &c.</i>
Imperf.	essem, <i>I might be.</i>	essēs, <i>thou, &c.</i>	essēt, <i>he, &c.</i>	essēmūs, <i>we, &c.</i>	essētīs, <i>ye, &c.</i>	essent, <i>they, &c.</i>
COMPLETED.						
	Singular.			Plural.		
Perfect.	fūerīm, <i>I may have been.</i>	fūerīs, <i>thou, &c.</i>	fūerīt, <i>he, &c.</i>	fūerīmūs, <i>we, &c.</i>	fūerītīs, <i>ye, &c.</i>	fūerint, <i>they, &c.</i>
Pluperf.	fūissēm, <i>I might have been.</i>	fūissēs, <i>thou, &c.</i>	fūissēt, <i>he, &c.</i>	fūissēmūs, <i>we, &c.</i>	fūissētīs, <i>ye, &c.</i>	fūissent, <i>they, &c.</i>
3. IMPERATIVE.						
	Singular.			Plural.		
	2. ēs, estō, <i>be thou.</i>			2. estē, estōtē, <i>be ye.</i>		
	3. estō, <i>let him be.</i>			3. suntō, <i>let them be.</i>		
4. INFINITIVE.						
Present.	Perfect.		Future.			
Essē, <i>to be.</i>	fuisse, <i>to have been.</i>		fūtūrūs, ā, ūm, esse, <i>to be about to be.</i>			
5. PARTICIPLE.						
Present.			Future.			
Only in compounds; absens, <i>absent</i> (from absūm); præsens, <i>present</i> (from præsūm).			Fūtūrūs, ā, ūm, <i>one who will be.</i>			

5. PARADIGMS OF REGULAR VERBS.

(651.) (1.) *Verb-stem*.—The *stem* of any verb is found by striking off the infinitive-ending; *e. g.*, of *ām-ārē*, *mōn-ērē*, *rēg-ērē*, and *aud-irē* the stems are *ām-*, *mōn-*, *rēg-*, *aud-*, respectively.*

(2.) *Tense-stem*.—Each *tense* has its own *tense-stem*, consisting of the *verb-stem* with or without some additions. Thus, in the first conjugation:

Pres. tense-stem = *verb-stem* = *am-*.

Imperf. tense-stem = *verb-stem* + *ab* = *amab-*.

Perf. tense-stem = *verb-stem* + *av* = *amav-*.

[In the annexed paradigms the *tense-stems* are shown upon the left-hand side. Observe that the *perfect tense-stem* serves also for the stem of the pluperfect and future perfect tenses.]

(3.) *Tense-ending*.—Each *tense* has its own endings, which, added to the *tense-stem*, give the person-forms. Thus:

Imperfect-stem *āmab-* + *ām* = *amabam*, 1st person.

amab- + *ās* = *amabas*, 2d person,† &c.

(4.) The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect of the passive voice are formed by means of the past participle and forms of *essē*; thus:
āmātūs sum, *āmātūs eram*, *āmātūs ēro*.

[No farther explanation of the paradigm is necessary. The student should learn the modes of formation, and the *tense-endings* for each *tense*, apart from the stems *am-*, *mōn-*, &c., and unite them afterward with those or any other stems.]

* In reality, the crude-forms are *ama-*, *mone-*, *audi-* (the three *pure* conjugations), and *rēg-* (the *consonant* conjugation). But the changes of the crude-form in inflection form too great a difficulty for beginners, we therefore present the stem as the language affords it to us, without going into a nicer analysis.

† Farther, the *person-ending* forms part of the *tense-ending*. From the paradigm (active), it will be seen that in every *tense* except the perfect the endings are

o, or m, s, t, mus, tis, nt.

These endings are added to the *tense-stem*, either directly, as *am-o*, or by means of a connecting-vowel, as *reg-i-s*, or of a flexion syllable and connecting-vowel, as *amav-er-a-s*.

PARADIGMS FOR

ACTIVE.						
(652.) INDICATIVE MOOD.						
PRESENT, <i>I love or am loving, thou art loving, &c.</i>						
ām-	ō.	ās.	āt.	āmūs.	ātīs.	ant.
mōn-	ēō.	ēs.	ēt.	ēmūs.	ētīs.	ent.
rēg-	ō.	īs.	īt.	īmūs.	ītīs.	unt.
aud-	īō.	is.	īt.	imūs.	ītīs.	īunt.
IMPERFECT, <i>I was loving, advising, ruling, hearing, &c.</i>						
ām-āb- mōn-ēb- rēg-ēb- aud-iēb-	} ām.	ās.	āt.	āmūs.	ātīs.	ant.
FUTURE, <i>I shall or will love, advise, rule, hear, &c.</i>						
ām-āb- mōn-ēb- rēg- aud-i-	} ō.	īs.	īt.	īmūs.	ītīs.	unt.
	} ām.	ēs.	ēt.	ēmūs.	ētīs.	ent.
PERFECT, <i>I have loved.</i> (PERFECT AORIST, <i>I loved.</i>)						
ām-āv- mōn-ū- (reg-s) rex- aud-iv-	} ī.	istī.	īt.	īmūs.	istīs.	ērunt, or ērē.
PLUPERFECT, <i>I had loved, &c.</i>						
ām-āv- mōn-ū- rex- aud-iv-	} ērām.	ērās.	ērāt.	ērāmūs.	ērātīs.	ērant.
FUTURE PERFECT, <i>I shall have loved, &c.</i>						
ām-āv- mōn-ū- rex- aud-iv-	} ērō.	ērīs.	ērīt.	ērīmūs.	ērītīs.	ērint.
(653.) IMPERATIVE MOOD.						
	2d Singular.	3d Singular.	2d Plural.	3d Plural.		
ām-	a, atō.	ātō.	atē, atōtē.	antō.		
mōn-	ē, etō.	etō.	etē, etōtē.	entō.		
rēg-	ō, itō.	itō.	itē, itōtē.	untō.		
aud-	ī, itō.	itō.	itē, itōtē.	īuntō.		

THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

PASSIVE.						
INDICATIVE MOOD.						
PRESENT, <i>I am loved, &c.</i>						
ām-	ōr.	{ ārīs. ārē.	ātūr.	āmūr.	āmīnī.	āntūr.
mōn-	ēōr.	{ ērīs. ērē.	ētūr.	ēmūr.	ēmīnī.	entūr.
rēg-	ōr.	{ rērīs. rērē.	ītūr.	īmūr.	īmīnī.	untūr.
aud-	īōr.	{ irīs. irē.	itūr.	imūr.	imīnī.	iuntūr.
IMPERFECT, <i>I was loved, &c.</i>						
ām-ab- mōn-ēb- rēg-ēb- aud-iēb-	{ ar.	{ ārīs. ārē.	ātūr.	āmūr.	āmīnī.	antūr.
FUTURE, <i>I shall be loved, &c.</i>						
ām-ab- mōn-ēb- reg- aud-ī-	{ or. ār.	{ ērīs. ērē. ērīs. ērē.	ītūr. ētūr.	īmūr. ēmūr.	īmīnī.* ēmīnī.	untūr. entūr.
PERFECT, <i>I have been loved, &c.</i>						
āmātūs.* mōnītūs.* rectūs.* auditūs.*	{ sūm, or fui.	ēs, or fuisti.	est. or fuit.	sūmūs, or fūimūs.	estīs, or fūistīs.	sunt, or fuerunt.
PLUPERFECT, <i>I had been loved, &c.</i>						
āmātūs.* mōnītūs.* rectūs.* auditūs.*	{ ērām.†	ērās.	ērāt.	ērāmūs.	erātīs.	erant.
FUTURE PERFECT, <i>I shall have been loved, &c.</i>						
āmātūs.* mōnītūs.* rectūs.* auditūs.*	{ ērō.‡	ērīs.	ērīt.	ērīmūs.	ērītīs.	erunt.
IMPERATIVE MOOD.						
	2d Singular.	3d Singular.	2d Plural.	3d Plural.		
ām-	ārē, ātōr.	ātōr.	āmīnī, āmīnōr.	antōr.		
mōn-	ērē, ētōr.	ētōr.	ēmīnī, ēmīnōr.	entōr.		
rēg-	ērē, itōr.	itōr.	īmīnī, imīnōr.	untōr.		
aud-	irē, itōr.	itōr.	imīnī, imīnōr.	iuntōr.		

* The participle must be inflected in gender and number to agree with the subject.

† Sometimes fueram, fueras, &c.

‡ Sometimes fuero, fueris, &c.

(654.)	ACTIVE.											
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.												
PRESENT, <i>I may love, &c.</i>												
ăm-mōn-é-rég-aud-i-	}	ēm.	ēs.	ēt.	ēmūs.	ētīs.	ēnt.					
		ăm.	ās.	ăt.	āmūs.	ătīs.	ânt.					
IMPERFECT, <i>I might love, &c.</i>												
ăm-ar-mōn-ér-rég-ēr-aud-ir-	}	ēm.	ēs.	ēt.	ēmūs.	ētīs.	ent.					
PERFECT, <i>I may have loved, &c.</i>												
ăm-āv-mōn-ū-rex-aud-iv-	}	ărīm.	ěrīs.	ěrīt.	ărīmūs.	ěrītīs.	ěrint.					
PLUPERFECT, <i>I might have loved, &c.</i>												
ăm-āv-mōn-ū-rex-aud-iv-	}	issēm.	issēs.	issēt.	issēmūs.	issētīs.	issent.					
(655.)	INFINITIVE.											
PRESENT [<i>to love or be loving, &c.</i>].												
1. ăm-ărě,	2. mōn-ěrě,	3. rég-ěrě,	4. aud-irě.									
PERFECT [<i>to have loved, &c.</i>].												
1. ămāv-issě,	2. mōnū-issě,	3. rex-issě,	4. audīv-issě.									
FUTURE [<i>to be about to love, &c.</i>].												
1. ămātūrūs essě,	2. mōnitūrūs essě,	3. rectūrūs essě,	4. auditūrūs essě.									
(656.)	PARTICIPLES.											
PRESENT [<i>loving, advising, ruling, hearing</i>].												
1. ăm-ăns,	2. mon-ens,	3. rég-êns,	4. audi-êns.									
PERFECT [<i>having loved, advised, ruled, heard</i>].												
Wanting : supplied by abl. absol., or by quum with subj.												
FUTURE [<i>about to love, advise, rule, hear</i>].												
1. ămātūrūs,	2. mōnitūrūs,	3. rectūrūs,	4. auditūrūs.									
(657.)	GERUND AND											
GERUNDS :	1. ămândī,	2. mōnendī,	3. regendī,	4. audiendī.								
(658.)	SUPINES.											
SUPINE in um :	1. ămătŭm,	2. mōnitŭm,	3. rectŭm,	4. auditŭm.								
" u :	ămătŭ,	mōnitŭ,	rectŭ,	auditŭ.								

PASSIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT, *I may be loved, &c.*

ām-	ēr.	{ ēris.	ētūr.	ēmūr.	ēmīnī.	ēntūr.
mōn-e-	} ār.	{ ērē.				
rēg-		{ ārīs.	atur.	āmūr.	āmīnī.	antūr.
aud-ī-		{ ārē.				

IMPERFECT, *I might be loved, &c.*

ām-ār-	} ēr.	{ ēris.	ētūr.	ēmūr.	ēmīnī.	ēntūr.
mōn-ār-		{ ērē.				
rēg-ēr-						
aud-īr-						

PERFECT, *I may have been loved, &c.*

āmātūs.	} sīm.*	sīs.	sīt.	sīmus.	sītīs.	sint.
mōnītūs.						
rectūs.						
auditūs.						

PLUPERFECT, *I might have been loved, &c.*

āmātūs.	} essēm.†	essēs.	essēt.	essēmūs.	essētīs.	essent.
mōnītūs.						
rectūs.						
auditūs.						

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT [*to be (being) loved, &c.*]

1. ām-ārī,	2. mōn-ārī,	3. rēg-ī,	4. aud-īrī.
------------	-------------	-----------	-------------

PERFECT [*to have been loved, &c.*]

1. āmātūs essē,	2. mōnītūs essē,	3. rectūs essē,	4. auditūs essē.
-----------------	------------------	-----------------	------------------

FUTURE [*to be about to be loved, &c.*]

1. āmātūm irī,	2. mōnītūm irī,	3. rectūm irī,	4. auditūm irī.
----------------	-----------------	----------------	-----------------

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT AND PERFECT [*loved, being loved, having been loved, &c.*]

1. āmātūs,	2. mōnītūs,	3. rectūs,	4. auditūs.
------------	-------------	------------	-------------

GERUNDIVE.

1. GERUNDIVE: āmāndūs,	2. mōnendūs,	3. rēgendūs,	4. audiendūs.
------------------------	--------------	--------------	---------------

* Sometimes fuerim.

† Sometimes fuissem.

6. VERBS IN IŎ OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

(659.) Some verbs of the third conjugation assume *î* before the person-ending in some of the tenses, as shown in the following paradigm of *căp-ě r ě, to take*.

ACTIVE.							
INDICATIVE.							
Pres.	căp-	î-ŏ.	îs.	ît.	îmūs.	îtīs.	î-unt.
Imperf.	căp-î-ĕb-	ăm.	ăs.	ăt.	ămūs.	ătīs.	ant.
Fut.	căp-î-	ăm.	ēs.	ēt.	ēmūs.	ētīs.	ent.
SUBJUNCTIVE.							
Pres.	cap-î-	ăm.	ăs.	ăt.	ămūs.	ătīs.	ânt.
PASSIVE.							
INDICATIVE.							
Pres.	căp-	î-ŏr.	ĕrīs.	îtūr.	îmūr.	îmīni.	î-untūr.
Imperf.	căp-î-ĕb-	ăr.	ărīs.	ătūr.	ămūr.	ămīni.	ântūr.
Fut.	căp-î-	ăr.	ērīs.	ētūr.	ēmūr.	ēmīni.	ëntūr.
SUBJUNCTIVE.							
Pres.	căp-î-	ăr.	ărīs.	ătūr.	ămūr.	ămīni.	ântūr.
IMPERATIVE.							
3d Plur. Active, căp-î-untŏ.				3d Plur. Pass., căp-î-untŏr.			
PARTICIPLES.							
Pres. Active, căp-î-ens.				Fut. Pass., căp-î-endus.			
GERUND, căp-î-ĕnd-î, ŏ, &c.							

7. DEPONENT VERBS.

(660.) (1.) Deponent verbs have the *passive* form with *active* signification. As the endings are the same as those of the passives (Paradigm, p. 263, 265), we need not repeat them.

(2.) But deponents have *three* active participles, while other verbs have but *two*: thus,

Pres., *exhorting*, Perf., *having exhorted*, Fut., *about to exhort*,
hort-ans. hort-ătūs. hortăt-ūrūs.

(3.) Also, all *transitive* deponents have the verbal adjective in *dus*; e. g., *hortandūs*, *one that should be exhorted*: *intransitive* deponents have it only in the *neuter*; e. g., *moriendū est*, *one must die*.

8. PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

(661.) By means of the tenses of *essĕ*, combined with the future participle in *rus*, and the verbal in *dus*, the periphrastic conjugation is formed; e. g., *ămătūrūs sum*, *I am about to love, I intend to love*; *ămăndūs sūm*, *I am to be loved, I must be loved, one must love me*; and so through all the tenses and persons. The deponent verbs employ this periphrastic conjugation also.

1. WITH PARTICIPLE IN *rūs*.

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
āmātūrūs, ā, ūm,	{ sūm, ēs, est, &c. ērām, ērās, &c. fui, fuisti, &c. fuerām, fuērās, &c. ērō, ēris, &c.	āmātūrūs, ā, ūm,	{ sīm, sis, sīt, &c. essēm, essēs, &c. fuērim. fuissēm.
INFINITIVE.			
Pres., āmātūrūs essē, <i>to be about (or intending) to love.</i>			
Perf., āmātūrūs fuissē, <i>to have been about to love.</i>			
Fut., āmātūrūs forē, <i>to intend to love hereafter.</i>			

2. WITH VERBAL IN *dūs*.

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
āmandūs, ā, ūm,	{ sūm. ērām. fui. fuērām. ērō.	āmandūs, ā, ūm,	{ sūm. essēm. fuerim. fuissēm.
INFINITIVE.			
Pres., āmandūs, ā, ūm, essē, <i>ought to be loved.</i>			
Perf., āmandūs, ā, ūm, fuissē, <i>ought to have been loved.</i>			
Fut., āmandūs, ā, ūm, forē, <i>ought to be loved hereafter.</i>			

9. ON THE FORMATION OF THE PERFECT-STEM.

(662.) In the paradigms, the perfect-stems are formed by adding to the verb-stem in the 1st conj. *āv* - (*ām-āv-*); in the 2d, *ū* (*mōn-ū-*); in the 3d, *s* (*reg-s*); in the 4th, *iv* - (*aud-iv-*). But, although most Latin verbs form the perf.-stem thus, many use different endings, which are exhibited in the following classification:

I. FIRST CONJUGATION.

(663.) Four ways of forming the perfect-stem:

- I. By adding *āv* to the verb-stem: *ām-ārē-ām-āv-i.*
- II. " *ū* " *crēp-ārē-crēp-ū-i.*
- III. By reduplicating the first consonant: *d-ārē-dēd-i.*
- IV. By lengthening the stem-vowel: *jūv-ārē-jūv-i.*

II. SECOND CONJUGATION.

Five ways:

- I. By adding *ū* to the verb-stem: *mōn-ērē-mōn-ū-i.*
- II. " *ēv* " *dēl-ērē-dēl-ēv-i.*
- III. " *s* " *alg-ērē-al(g)-s-i.*
- IV. By reduplication: *mord-ērē-mō-mord-i.*
- V. By lengthening the stem-vowel: *cāv-ērē-cāv-i.*

III. Perfect-stem reduplicates the first Consonant with e.

To give, d-o, d-ärē, dēd-i, dā-tūm.

So, also, those compounds of which the first part is a word of *two syllables*; e. g., circumdō, circumdärē, circumdēdi, circumdātum, to surround; but the compounds with *monosyllables* follow the 3d conj.; e. g., addō, addärē, addīdi, additūm, to add.

To stand, st-o, st-ärē, stēt-i, st-ā-tūm.

The compounds have in the perfect stētī, when the first part is a *dissyllable*; e. g., circumstō, circumstētī; but stītī when it is a *monosyllable*; e. g., adstō, adstītī.

IV. Perfect-stem lengthens the Stem-vowel.

To assist,	jūv-o,	jūv-ärē,	jūv-i,	jū-tūm.
To wash,	lāv-o,	lāv-ärē,	lāv-i,	<div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <div style="font-size: 2em; vertical-align: middle;">{</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> lāva-tūm. lau-tūm. lō-tūm. </div> </div>

(665.)

SECOND CONJUGATION.

I. Perfect-stem adds ū to the Verb-stem.

To admonish, mōn-eo, mōn-ērē, mōn-ū-i, mōn-ī-tūm.

II. Perfect-stem adds ēv to the Verb-stem.

To blot out,	dēl-eo,	dēl-ērē,	dēl-ēv-i,	dēl-ē-tūm.
To weep,	fl-eo,	fl-ērē,	fl-ēv-i,	fl-ē-tūm.
To spin,	n-eo,	n-ērē,	n-ēv-i,	n-ē-tūm.
To fill up,	compl-eo,	compl-ērē,	compl-ēv-i,	compl-ē-tūm.
To abolish,	ābōl-eo,	ābōl-ērē,	ābōl-ēv-i,	ābōl-ī-tūm.

The primitives ōleo and pleo are obsolete: like compleo are conjugated impleo, expleo; like aboleo, adoleo, and exoleo.

III. Perfect-stem adds s to the Verb-stem.

Euphonic Rules.

1. A t-sound before s is dropped; e. g., ar(d)-sī = ars-i.
2. A c-sound + s = x; e. g., aug-sī = aux-i.
3. But a c-sound *after* l or r, before s, is dropped; e. g., ful(g)-sī = fuls-i.

To shiver with cold,	{	alg-eo,	alg-ērē,	{	al-s-i (alg-s-i).	{	ars-um.
To burn.		ard-eo,	ard-ērē,	{	ar-s-i (ard-s-i).		
To increase,	{	aug-eo,	aug-ērē,	{	aux-i (aug-s-i).	{	auc-tūm.
To be bright,		fulg-eo,	fulg-ērē,	{	ful-s-i (fulg-s-i).		

<i>To stick,</i>	hær-eo,	hær-ērě,	{ hæs-s-ī (hær-s-ī).	} hæs-sūm.
<i>To indulge,</i>	indulg-eo,	indulg-ērě,	{ indul-s-ī (indulg-s-ī),	} indul-tūm.
<i>To command,</i>	jüb-eo,	jüb-ērě,	jus-s-ī (jub-s-ī),	jus-sūm.
<i>To remain,</i>	mān-eo,	mān-ērě,	man-s-ī,	man-sūm.
<i>To assuage,</i>	mulc-eo,	mulc-ērě,	{ mul-s-ī (mulc-s-ī),	} mul-sūm.
<i>To milk,</i>	mulg-eo,	mulg-ērě,	{ mul-s-ī (mulg-s-ī),	} mule-tūm.
<i>To laugh,</i>	rīd-eo,	rīd-ēre,	rī-s-ī (rīd-s-ī),	rī-sūm.
<i>To advise,</i>	suād-eo,	suād-ērě,	{ suā-s-ī (suad-s-ī),	} suā-sūm.
<i>To wipe,</i>	terg-eo,	terg-ērě,	{ ter-s-ī (terg-s-ī),	} ter-sūm.
<i>To swell,</i>	turg-eo,	turg-ērě,	{ tur-s-ī (turg-s-ī).	
<i>To twist,</i>	torqu-eo,	torqu-ērě,	{ tor-s-ī (torqu-s-ī),	} tor-tūm.
<i>To press,</i>	urg-eo,	urg-ērě,	ur-s-ī (urg-s-ī).	
<i>To shine,</i>	lūc-eo,	lūc-ērě,	lux-ī (lūc-s-ī).	
<i>To mourn,</i>	lūg-eo,	lūg-ērě,	lux-ī (lug-s-ī).	

IV. *Perfect-stem reduplicates first Consonant and Vowel.*

<i>To bite,</i>	mord-eo,	mord-ērě,	mōmord-ī,	mor-sūm.
<i>To hang,</i>	pend-eo,	pend-ērě,	pēpend-ī,	pen-sūm.
<i>To betroth,</i>	spond-eo,	spond-ērě,	spōpond-ī,	spon-sūm.
<i>To shear,</i>	tond-eo,	tond-ērě,	tōtond-ī,	ton-sūm.

The compounds of these verbs drop the reduplication ; *e. g.*, re-spondī (not re-spondī).

V. *Perfect-stem lengthens the Stem-vowel.*

<i>To take care,</i>	cāv-eo,	cāv-ērě,	cāv-ī,	cau-tūm.
<i>To favour,</i>	fāv-eo,	fāv-ērě,	fāv-ī,	fau-tūm.
<i>To cherish,</i>	fōv-eo,	fōv-ērě,	fōv-ī,	fō-tūm.
<i>To move,</i>	mōv-eo,	mōv-ērě,	mōv-ī,	mō-tūm.
<i>To dread,</i>	pāv-eo,	pāv-ērě,	pāv-ī,	
<i>To sit,</i>	sēd-eo,	sēd-ērě,	sēd-ī,	ses-sūm.

In the same manner are conjugated the compounds with dissyllables ; *e. g.*, circumsēdeo, circumsēdērě, circumsēdī, circumsessūm, *to sit around* ; but those with monosyllables change ē of the stem into ī ; *e. g.*, assīdeo, assīdērě, assēdī, assessūm, *to sit by*.

<i>To see,</i>	vīd-eo,	vīd-ērě,	vīd-ī,	vī-sūm.
<i>To void</i>	vōv-eo,	vōv-ērě,	vōv-ī,	vō-tūm.

(666.)

THIRD CONJUGATION.

I. Perfect-stem adds *s* to the Verb-stem.*Euphonic Rules.*1. *b* before *s* = *p* ; e. g., scrib-sī = scrip-sī.2. *c*-sound + *s* = *x* ; e. g., cing-sī = cinx-ī.[*c*, *g*, *h*, *qu*, are regarded as *c*-sounds.]3. *t*-sound (*d* or *t*) before *s* is dropped ; e. g., claud-s-ī = claus-ī.4. *m* before *s* is either changed into *s*, or *p* is interposed (prem-s-ī = pres-sī ; com-s-ī = comp-s-ī).

To write,	scrib-o,	scrib-ěre,	{ scrip-s-ī (scrib-s-ī), }	scrip-tūm.
To bind,	cing-o,	cing-ěre,	cinxī (cing-s-ī),	cinc-tūm.
To carry,	vēh-o,	vēh-ěre,	vexī (veh-s-ī),	vec-tūm.
To cook,	cōqu-o,	cōqu-ěre,	coxī (coqu-s-ī),	coc-tūm.
To shut,	claud-o,	claud-ěre,	{ clau-s-ī (claud-s-ī), }	clau-sūm.

A *u* in the compounds is changed into *ū* ; e. g., inclūdo, inclūd-ěre, inclūsī, inclūsūm, to shut in.

To give way,	cēd-o,	cēd-ěre,	cessī (cēd-s-ī),	ces-sūm.
To scatter,	sparg-o,	sparg-ěre,	{ spar-s-ī (sparg-s-ī), }	spar-sūm.

In the compounds *a* is changed into *e* ; e. g., aspergo, asperg-ěre, asper-s-ī, aspersūm, to besprinkle.

To adorn,	cōm-o,	cōm-ěre,	com-ps-ī,	com-p-tūm.
To press,	prēm-o,	prēm-ěre,	{ press-ī (prem-s-ī), }	pres-sūm.

In the compounds *ě* is changed into *ī* ; e. g., comprīmo, comprīm-ěre, compressī, compressūm, to press together.

To carry,	gěr-o,	gěr-ěre,	gess-ī (gěr-s-ī),	ges-tūm.
-----------	--------	----------	-------------------	----------

II. Perfect-stem adds *u* to the Verb-stem.

(a) Without change of Verb-stem.

To nourish,	āl-o,	āl-ěre,	āl-u-ī,	āl-ī-tūm.
To till,	cōl-o,	cōl-ěre,	cōl-u-ī,	cāl-tūm.
To ask advice,	consūl-o,	consūl-ěre,	consūl-u-ī,	consul-tūm.
To knead,	deps-o,	deps-ěre,	deps-u-ī,	deps-tūm.
To murmur,	frēm-o,	frēm-ěre,	frēm-u-ī,	frēm-ī-tūm.
To groan,	gēm-o,	gēm-ěre,	gēm-u-ī,	gēm-ī-tūm.
To grind,	mōl-o,	mōl-ěre,	mōl-u-ī,	mōl-ī-tūm.
To conceal,	occūl-o,	occūl-ěre,	occūl-u-ī,	occul-tūm.
To grind,	pins-o,	pins-ěre,	pins-u-ī,	pins-ī-tūm.
To snatch,	rāp-io,	rāp-ěre,	rāp-u-ī,	rap-tūm.
To join together	{ sēr-o,	sēr-ěre,	sēr-u-ī,	ser-tūm.

<i>To weave,</i>	tex-o,	tex-ěřě,	tex-u-ī,	tex-tŭm.
<i>To tremble,</i>	trēm-o,	trēm-ěřě,	trēm-u-ī,	
<i>To vomit,</i>	vōm-o,	vōm-ěřě,	vōm-u-ī,	vōm-ī-tŭm.

(b) With change of Verb-stem.

<i>To beget,</i>	gign-o,	gign-ěřě,	gĕn-u-ī,	gĕn-ī-tŭm.
<i>To reap,</i>	mēt-o,	mēt-ěřě,	mess-u-ī,	mes-sŭm.
<i>To place,</i>	pōn-o,	pōn-ěřě,	pōs-u-ī,	pōs-ī-tŭm.

[For compounds of cumbĕřě, see 664, II.]

III. Perfect-stem adds *v* or *iv* to the Verb-stem.

(a) Adds *v*, and lengthens Stem-vowel if short.

<i>To separate,</i>	}	cern-o,	cern-ěřě,	crĕ-v-ī,	crĕ-tŭm.
<i>perceive,</i>					

The perfect and supine of cerno are found only in the compounds
e. g., dĕcerno, dĕcernĕřě, dĕcrĕvī, dĕcrĕtŭm, *to decree*.

<i>To grow,</i>	cresc-o,	cresc-ěřě,	crĕ-v-ī,	crĕ-tŭm.
<i>To smear,</i>	līn-o,	līn-ěřě,	lĕ-v-ī, or lī-v-ī,	lī-tŭm.
<i>To know,</i>	nosc-o,	nosc-ěřě,	nō-v-ī,	nō-tŭm.

So, also, the compounds inter, ig, per, præ-nosco, have ōvī, ōtŭm; but
cog, ag, præcog, recog-nosco, have ōvī, ĭtŭm; e. g., agnosco, agnosc-
ěřě, agnōvī, agnītŭm, *to perceive*.

<i>To feed,</i>	pasc-o,	pasc-ěřě,	pā-v-ī,	pas-tŭm.
<i>To rest,</i>	quiesc-o,	quiesc-ěřě,	quiĕ-v-ī,	quiĕ-tŭm.
<i>To decide,</i>	scisc-o,	scisc-ěřě,	scī-v-ī,	scī-tŭm.
<i>To sow,</i>	sĕr-o,	sĕr-ěřě,	sĕ-v-ī,	sā-tŭm.

The compounds have the supine in ĭtŭm; e. g., consĕro, consĕřĕřĕ
consĕvī, consĭtŭm, *to plant*.

<i>To allow,</i>	sīn-o,	sīn-ěřě,	sī-v-ī,	sī-tŭm.	
<i>To despise,</i>	spĕrn-o,	spĕrn-ěřě,	sprĕ-v-ī,	sprĕ-tŭm.	
<i>To strew,</i>	stĕrn-o,	stĕrn-ěřě,	strā-v-ī,	strā-tŭm.	
<i>To become</i>	}	suesc-o,	suesc-ěřě,	suĕ-v-ī,	suĕ-tŭm.
<i>accustom-</i>					
<i>ed.</i>					

(b) Perfect-stem adds *iv*.

<i>To summon,</i>	arcess-o,	arcessĕřě,	arcess-iv-ī,	arcess-ī-tŭm.
-------------------	-----------	------------	--------------	---------------

In the same manner, capesso, facesso, incesso, lacesso.

<i>To seek,</i>	}	pĕt-o,	pĕt-ěřě,	pĕt-iv-ī,	pĕt-ī-tŭm.
<i>strive af-</i>					
<i>ter,</i>					
<i>To seek,</i>		quær-o,	quær-ěřě,	quæs-iv-ī,	quæs-ī-tŭm.

The compounds change *æ* of the stem into *ī*; e. g., conquīro, con-
quīřĕřĕ, conquīsvī, conquīsitŭm, *to examine*.

<i>To rub,</i>	tĕr-o,	tĕr-ěřě,	{ tr-iv-ī (for tĕr-iv-ī), }	trī-tŭm.
----------------	--------	----------	--------------------------------	----------

IV. *Perfect-stem reduplicates the first Consonant.*

Some of these present vowel-changes, which must be carefully observed. (a) When the first vowel is i, o, u, the first consonant is reduplicated with that vowel; (b) in other verbs with e; (c) the compounds of *dāre*, *to give*, with i.

(a) First Vowel i, o, or u.

To run, curr-o, curr-ērē, cū-curr-ī, cur-sūm.

Most of the compounds have the perfect both with and without the reduplication; e. g., *accurro*, *accurrērē*, *accurrī* and *accūcurrī*, *accursum*, *to run to*.

To learn, disc-o, disc-ērē, dī-dīc-ī.

The compounds also reduplicate; e. g., *perdiscō*, *perdidīcī*, *to learn thoroughly*.

To weigh, pend-o, pend-ērē, pē-pend-ī, pen-sūm.

The compounds do not reduplicate; e. g., *appendō*, *appendērē*, *ap-pendī*, *appensūm*, *to hang to*.

To demand, posc-o, posc-ērē, po-posc-ī.

The compounds reduplicate; e. g., *rēposcērē*, *rēpōposcī*, *to demand back again*.

To prick, pung-o, pung-ērē, pū-pūg-ī, punc-tūm.

Compounds have perf. *punxī*.

To beat, tund-o, tund-ērē, tū-tūd-ī, tun-sūm.

Compounds have supine *tūsum*; e. g., *contundērē*, *contūsūm*, *to crush*.

(b) Other Verbs reduplicate with e.

To fall, cād-o, cād-ērē, cē-cīd-ī, cā-sūm.

To cut, cæd-o, cæd-ērē, cē-cīd-ī, cæ-sūm.

The compounds have *cīdī*, *cīsūm*; e. g., *occidērē*, *occīdī*, *occīsūm*, *to kill*.

To sing, cān-o, cān-ērē, cē-cīn-ī, can-tūm.

The compounds have *cīnūi*; e. g., *succinērē*, *succīnūi*, *to sing to*.

To cheat, fall-o, fall-ērē, fē-fell-ī, fal-sūm.

To bargain, pang-o, pang-ērē, pē-pīg-ī, pac-tūm.

The compounds have *pingō*, *pēgī*, *pactūm*; e. g., *compingērē*, *compēgī*, *compactūm*, *to fasten together*.

To spare, parc-o, parc-ērē, pē-perc-ī, par-sūm.

To bring forth, pār-io, pār-ērē, pē-pēr-ī, par-tūm.

To drive, pell-o, pell-ērē, pē-pūl-ī, pul-sūm.

To touch, tang-o, tang-ērē, tē-tīg-ī, tac-tūm.

The compounds have *tingo*, *tingērē*, *tīgī*, *tactūm*; *e. g.*, *attingērē*, *attīgī*, *attactūm*, *to reach*.

(c) Compounds of *dare*, reduplicate with *i*.

<i>To hide</i> ,	ab-do,	abd-ērē,	ab-dīd-ī,	ab-dī-tūm.
<i>To add</i> ,	ad-do,	add-ērē,	ad-dīd-ī,	ad-dī-tūm.
<i>To lay up</i> ,	con-do,	con-d-ērē	con-dīd-ī,	con-dī-tūm.
<i>To believe</i> ,	crē-do,	crēd-ērē,	crē-dīd-ī,	crē-dī-tūm.
<i>To surrender</i> ,	dē-do,	dēd-ērē,	de-dīd-ī,	dē-dī-tūm.
<i>To publish</i> ,	ē-do,	ēd-ērē,	ē-dīd-ī,	ē-dī-tūm.
<i>To put in</i> ,	in-do,	ind-ērē,	in-dīd-ī,	in-dī-tūm.
<i>To oppose</i> ,	ob-do,	obd-ērē,	ob-dīd-ī,	ob-dī-tūm.
<i>To destroy</i> ,	per-do,	perd-ērē,	per-dīd-ī,	per-dī-tūm.
<i>To betray</i> ,	prō-do,	prod-ērē,	pro-dīd-ī,	pro-dī-tūm.
<i>To restore</i> ,	red-do,	redd-ērē,	red-dīd-ī,	red-dī-tūm.
<i>To deliver</i> ,	trā-do,	trad-ērē,	tra-dīd-ī,	tra-dī-tūm.
<i>To sell</i> ,	ven-do,	vend-ērē,	ven-dīd-ī,	ven-dī-tūm.

V. Perfect-stem lengthens the Stem-vowel of the Verb.

(a) Without Vowel-changes.

<i>To take</i> ,	ēm-o,	ēm-ērē,	ēm-ī,	em-tūm.
------------------	-------	---------	-------	---------

Compounds, *coēmo*, *adīmō*, *exīmō*.

<i>To dig</i> ,	fōd-io,	fōd-ērē,	fōd-ī,	fos-sūm.
<i>To fly</i> ,	fūg-io,	fūg-ērē,	fūg-ī,	fūg-ī-tūm.
<i>To pour</i> ,	fund-o,	fund-ērē,	fūd-ī,	fū-sūm.
<i>To read</i> ,	lēg-o,	lēg-ērē,	lēg-ī,	lec-tūm.

The compounds with *per*, *præ*, *re*, and *sub* retain *ē*; *e. g.*, *perlēgērē*, *perlēgī*, *perlectūm*, *to read through*; but those with *col*, *de*, *e*, *se* change *ē* into *ī*; *e. g.*, *colligērē*, *collēgī*, *collectūm*, *to collect*: *three*, *dilīgo*, *I love*; *intellīgo*, *I understand*; *neglīgo*, *I neglect*, *have* *exī*, *ectūm*; *e. g.*, *dilīgērē*, *dilexī*, *dilectūm*.

<i>To leave</i> ,	linqu-o,	linqu-ērē,	liqu-ī,	lic-tūm.
<i>To burst</i> ,	rump-o,	rump-ērē,	rūp-ī,	rup-tūm.
<i>To conquer</i> ,	vinc-o,	vinc-ērē,	vīc-ī,	vīc-tūm.

(b) With Vowel-change.

<i>To drive</i> ,	āg-o,	āg-ērē,	ēg-ī,	ac-tūm.
-------------------	-------	---------	-------	---------

Three of the compounds retain *ā*, *circumāgo*, *perāgo*, *sātāgo*: two undergo contraction, *cōgo* (*con* + *āgo*), *dēgo* (*de* + *āgo*): compounds with *ab*, *amb*, *ad*, *ex*, *prod*, *sub*, change *ā* into *ī*; *e. g.*, *ābīgērē*, *ābēgī*, *abactūm*, *to drive away*.

<i>To take</i> ,	cāp-io,	cāp-ērē,	cēp-ī,	cap-tūm.
------------------	---------	----------	--------	----------

All the compounds change *ā* into *ī*, and have supine *ceptūm*; *e. g.*, *accīp-ērē*, *accēpī*, *acceptūm*, *to receive*.

<i>To make,</i>	}	făc-io,	făc-ěřě,	fēc-i,	fac-tŭm.
<i>To do,</i>					

1. Compounds with verbs retain ă; *e. g.*, lăbefăcěrě, lăbėfēcī, labe-factŭm, *to weaken.*

2. Compounds with prepositions change ă into ĭ; *e. g.*, affīcěrě, affēcī, affectŭm, *to affect.*

<i>To break,</i>	frang-o,	frang-ěřě,	frēg-i,	frac-tŭm.
------------------	----------	------------	---------	-----------

Compounds change a into ĭ; *e. g.*, refringěrě, refrēgī, refractŭm, *to break open.*

<i>To cast,</i>	jăc-io,	jăc-ěřě,	jēc-i,	jac-tŭm.
-----------------	---------	----------	--------	----------

Compounds ab, ad, de, e, in, ob, re, trans, all change ă into ĭ; *e. g.*, abjīcěrě, abjēcī, abjectŭm, *to throw away.*

VI. The Perfect-stem presents the simple Verb-stem.

(a) Stems ending in u or v.

<i>To refuse,</i>	abnu-o,	abnu-ěřě,	abnu-i.	
<i>To sharpen,</i>	ăcu-o,	acu-ěřě,	ăcu-i,	acŭ-tŭm.
<i>To show,</i>	argu-o,	argu-ěřě,	argu-i,	argŭ-tŭm.
<i>To agree,</i>	congru-o,	congru-ěřě,	congru-i.	
<i>To put off,</i>	exu-o,	exu-ěřě,	exu-i,	exŭ-tŭm.
<i>To put on,</i>	indu-o,	indu-ěřě,	indu-i,	indŭ-tŭm.
<i>To imbue,</i>	imbu-o,	imbu-ěřě,	imbu-i,	imbŭ-tŭm.
<i>To pay,</i>	lu-o,	lu-ěřě,	lu-i.	lŭ-tŭm.
<i>To fear,</i>	mětu-o,	mětu-ěřě,	mětu-i.	
<i>To lessen,</i>	mīnu-o,	mīnu-ěřě,	mīnu-i,	mīnŭ-tŭm.
<i>To rush,</i>	ru-o,	ru-ěřě,	ru-i,	rŭ-tŭm.
<i>To loose,</i>	solv-o,	solv-ěřě,	solv-i,	solŭ-tŭm.
<i>To spit,</i>	spu-o,	spu-ěřě,	spu-i,	spŭ-tŭm.
<i>To place,</i>	stātu-o,	statu-ěřě,	statu-i,	statŭ-tŭm.
<i>To sneeze,</i>	sternu-o,	sternu-ěřě,	sternu-i,	sternu-tŭm.
<i>To sew,</i>	su-o,	su-ěřě,	su-i,	sŭ-tŭm.
<i>To give,</i>	tribu-o,	tribu-ěřě,	tribu-i,	tribu-tŭm.
<i>To roll,</i>	volv-o,	volv-ěřě,	volv-i,	volŭ-tŭm.

(b) Consonant-stems.

<i>To weigh,</i>	append-o,	append-ěřě,	append-i,	appen-sŭm.
------------------	-----------	-------------	-----------	------------

So, also, the other compounds of pendo.

<i>To attend,</i>	attend-o,	attend-ěřě,	attend-i,	atten-sŭm.
-------------------	-----------	-------------	-----------	------------

So, also, the other compounds of tendo.

<i>To drink,</i>	bīb-o,	bīb-ěřě,	bīb-i,	bībī-tŭm.
<i>To forge,</i>	cūd-o,	cūd-ěřě,	cūd-i,	cŭ-sŭm.
<i>To eat,</i>	ěd-o,	ěd-ěřě,	ěd-i,	ē-sŭm.
<i>To lick,</i>	lamb-o,	lamb-ěřě,	lamb-i.	
<i>To chew,</i>	mand-o,	mand-ěřě,	mand-i,	man-sŭm.
<i>To spread,</i>	pand-o,	pand-ěřě,	pand-i,	pas-sŭm.

<i>To take,</i>	prĕhend-o,	prĕhend-ĕrĕ,	prĕhend-i.	prĕhen-sŭm.
<i>To scratch,</i>	scāb-o,	scāb-ĕrĕ,	scāb-i.	
<i>To climb,</i>	scand-o,	scand-ĕrĕ,	scand-i.	scan-sŭm.

Compounds (a, e, de, con, in) change *ă* into *ĕ*; e. g., *ascendo*.

<i>To sink down,</i>	sid-o,	sid-ĕrĕ,	sid-i.	
----------------------	--------	----------	--------	--

The compounds take the perf. and supine from *sĕdeō*; e. g., *consīdĕrĕ*, *consĕdī*, *consessŭm*, *to sit together*.

<i>To hiss,</i>	strid-o,	strid-ĕrĕ,	strid-i.	
<i>To turn,</i>	vert-o,	vert-ĕrĕ,	vert-i,	ver-sŭm.

Deverto, *præverto*, and *rĕverto* are also used in the passive form as deponents; e. g., *rĕvertōr*, *rĕvertī*, *reversŭs sŭm*, *I turn back*.

<i>To brush,</i>	verr-o,	verr-ĕrĕ,	verr-i,	ver-sŭm.
<i>To pluck,</i>	vell-o,	vell-ĕrĕ,	vell-i,	vul-sŭm.

Compounds of *candō* and *fendō* belong here, viz.,

<i>To burn,</i>	incend-o,	incend-ĕrĕ,	incend-i,	incen-sŭm.
<i>To defend,</i>	dĕfend-o,	dĕfend-ĕrĕ,	dĕfend-i,	dĕfen-sŭm.

(667.)

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

I. Perfect-stem adds *iv* to the Verb-stem.

(Obs.) This class contains most of the verbs of the fourth conjugation; the following alone has a peculiar supine:

<i>To bury,</i>	sĕpĕl-io,	sĕpĕl-irĕ,	sĕpĕl-iv-i,	sĕpul-tŭm.
-----------------	-----------	------------	-------------	------------

II. Perfect-stem adds *u* to the Verb-stem.

<i>To clothe,</i>	āmīc-io,	āmīc-irĕ,	āmīc-u-i,	āmīc-tŭm.
<i>To open,</i>	āpĕr-io,	āpĕr-irĕ,	āpĕr-u-i,	āper-tŭm.*
<i>To cover,</i>	ōpĕr-io,	ōpĕr-irĕ,	ōpĕr-u-i,	ōper-tŭm.
<i>To leap,</i>	sāl-io,	sāl-irĕ,	sāl-u-i,	sal-tŭm.

Compounds change *ă* into *ī*; e. g., *dĕsīlirĕ*, *dĕsīlui*, *dĕsultŭm*, *to leap down*.

III. Perfect-stem adds *s* to the Verb-stem.

<i>To cram,</i>	farc-io,	farc-irĕ,	{ far-s-i (farc-s-i), }	farc-tŭm.
-----------------	----------	-----------	----------------------------	-----------

The compounds change *a* into *e*; e. g., *confercire*, *confersi*, *confertŭm*, *to fill up*.

<i>To prop,</i>	fulc-io,	fulc-irĕ,	{ ful-s-i (fulc-s-i), }	ful-tŭm.
<i>To draw,</i>	haur-io,	haur-irĕ,	{ hau-s-i (haur-s-i), }	haus-tŭm.
<i>To decree,</i>	sanc-io,	sanc-irĕ,	{ sanc-i (sanc-s-i), }	sanc-i-tum and sanc-tŭm.

* The compounds of *par-iō* which begin with a vowel have *ui*, *ertŭm*, as in Class II.; those beginning with a consonant have *i*, *ertŭm*, as in Class V.

<i>To patch,</i>	sarc-io,	sarc-irě,	{ sar-s-i (sarc-s-i),	{ sar-tūm.
<i>To feel,</i>	sent-io,	sent-irě,	{ sen-s-i (sent-s-i),	{ sen-sūm.

Instead of *assentiō*, *assentiōr*, deponent is more common.

<i>To hedge in,</i>	sēp-io,	sēp-irě,	sēp-s-i,	sep-tūm.
<i>To bind,</i>	vinc-io,	vinc-irě,	{ vi-x-i (vinc-s-i),	{ vinc-tūm.

IV. Perfect-stem lengthens the Stem-vowel.

Contains but a single simple verb.

<i>To come,</i>	vēn-io,	vēn-irě,	vēn-i,	ven-tūm.
-----------------	---------	----------	--------	----------

V. Perfect-stem takes the simple Verb-stem.

<i>To ascertain,</i>	compēr-io,	compēr-irě,	compēr-i,	comper-tūm.*
<i>To discern,</i>	rēpēr-io,	rēpēr-irě,	rēpēr-i,	rēper-tūm.*

(668.)

DEPONENT VERBS.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

<i>To exhort,</i>	hort-ōr,	hort-ārī,	hort-āt-ūs.
-------------------	----------	-----------	-------------

The deponents of the first conjugation are the most numerous, but are formed like *hortōr*, with *ārī*, *ātūs*.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

<i>To acknowledge,</i>	fāt-eōr,	fāt-ērī,	fas-sūs.
------------------------	----------	----------	----------

The compounds make *fīteōr*, *fessūs*; e. g., *confīteōr*, *confītērī*, *confessūs*, *to confess*: *diffīteor* has no participle.

<i>To bid,</i>	līc-eōr,	līc-ērī,	līc-īt-ūs.
<i>To heal,</i>	mēd-eōr,	mēd-ērī.	
<i>To deserve,</i>	mēr-eōr,	mēr-ērī,	mēr-īt-ūs.
<i>To pity,</i>	mīser-eōr,	mīser-ērī,	{ mīser-īt-ūs, or miser-tūs.
<i>To think,</i>	r-eōr,	r-ērī,	rā-tūs.
<i>To look upon,</i>	tu-eōr,	tu-ērī,	{ tu-īt-ūs, or tū-tūs.
<i>To fear,</i>	vēr-eōr,	vēr-ērī,	vēr-īt-ūs.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

<i>To devise,</i>	commīnisc-ōr,	commīnisc-ī,	commen-tūs
-------------------	---------------	--------------	------------

Rēminiscor, *to remember*, has no perfect.

<i>To obtain,</i>	ādīpisc-ōr,	ādīpisc-ī,	ādep-tūs.
<i>To be weary,</i>	dēfetisc-ōr,	dēfetisc-ī,	dēfes-sūs.

* See note, p. 276.

<i>To awake,</i>	expergisc-ör,	expergisc-ī,	experrec-tūs.
<i>To enjoy,</i>	fru-ör,	fru-ī,	{ fruc-tūs and fru-īt-us.
<i>To perform,</i>	fung ör,	fung-ī,	func-tūs.
<i>To proceed,</i>	grād iör,	grād-ī,	gres-sūs.

Compounds change the ä into ë ; e. g., aggrēdi, aggressūs, *to assail*.

<i>To be angry,</i>	irasc-ör,	irasc-ī.	
<i>To fall,</i>	lāb-ör,	lāb-ī,	lap-sūs.
<i>To speak,</i>	lōqu-ör,	lōqu-ī,	lēcū-tūs.
<i>To die,</i>	mör-iör,	mör-ī,	mor-tuūs.
<i>To obtain,</i>	nancisc-ör,	nancisc-ī,	nac-tūs.
<i>To be born,</i>	nasc-ör,	nasc-ī,	nā-tus.
<i>To lean upon, to strive,</i>	{ nīt-ör,	nīt-ī,	{ nī-sus, or nix-ūs.
<i>To forget,</i>	ōblivisc-ör,	oblivisc-ī,	oblī-tus.
<i>To bargain,</i>	pācisc-ör,	pācisc-ī,	pac-tūs.
<i>To feed,</i>	pasc-ör,	pasc-ī,	pas-tūs.

This verb is the passive of pascērē, *to give food*.

<i>To suffer,</i>	pāt-iör,	pāt-ī,	pas-sus.
-------------------	----------	--------	----------

Perpētiör, perpassūs, *to endure*, changes ä into ë.

(From plectō, *to twine*.)

<i>To embrace,</i>	{ amplect-ör,	amplect-ī,	amplex-ūs.
	{ complect-ör,	complect-ī,	complex-ūs.
<i>To set out,</i>	prōficisc-ör,	prōficisc-ī,	prōfec-tūs.
<i>To complain,</i>	quēr-ör,	quēr-ī,	ques-tūs.
<i>To grin,</i>	ring-ör,	ring-ī.	
<i>To follow,</i>	sēqu-ör,	sēqu-ī,	sēcū-tūs.
<i>To revenge,</i>	ulcisc-ör,	ulcisc-ī.	ul-tus.
<i>To use,</i>	ūt-ör,	ūt-ī,	ū-sus.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

<i>To assent,</i>	assent-iör,	assent-irī,	assen-sūs.
<i>To flatter,</i>	bland-iör,	bland-irī,	bland-īt-ūs.
<i>To try,</i>	expēr-iör,	expēr-irī,	exper-tūs.
<i>To bestow money,</i>	larg-iör,	larg-irī,	larg-īt-ūs.
<i>To lie,</i>	ment-iör,	ment-irī,	ment-īt-ūs.
<i>To measure,</i>	mēt-iör,	mēt-irī,	men-sūs.
<i>To move a mass,</i>	mōl-iör,	mōl-irī,	mōl-īt-ūs.
<i>To wait for,</i>	oppēr-iör,	oppēr-irī,	opper-tūs.
<i>To begin,</i>	ord-iör,	ord-irī,	or-sūs.

To rise,	ör-iör,	ör-irī,	or-tūs.
To divide,	part-iör,	part-irī,	part-it-ūs.
To possess myself of, }	pöt-iör,	pöt-irī,	pöt-it-ūs.
To cast lots,	sort-iör,	sort-irī,	sort-it-ūs.

(669.)

INCHOATIVE VERBS.

Inchoatives are verbs derived from nouns, adjectives, or other verbs, expressing a *beginning* or *becoming* of the act or state denoted by the primitive. Their stems always end in *sc*, and they all follow the form of the 3d conj.; e. g.,

From *puer*, *boy*, we have *puerasc-ěřě*, to become a boy (*again*).

“ *mātūr-ūs*, *ripe*, we have *mātūresc-ěre*, to become ripe.

“ *dorm-irě*, to sleep, we have *obdormisc-ěřě*, to fall asleep.

(1.) It is enough to observe on those derived from *adjectives* and *nouns* that they either *have* no perfect, or else form it in *uī*.

(2.) As to those derived from verbs,

(a) Most are from verbs in the *second* conjugation, and form their perfect-stem by adding *u* to the stem, rejecting *sc*; or, in other words, their perf.-stem is the same as that of the simple verb from which they are derived; e. g.,

To become gray, *canesc-ěřě* (*caněřě*), *canu-ī*.

To grow sour, *acesc-ěřě* (*acěre*), *acu-ī*.

(b) Those derived from verbs of the other conjugations take the perfects of the simple verbs from which they are derived.

To grow old, *inveterasc-ěřě* (*inveterārě*), *inveterāv-ī*, *inveterā-tum*.

To come to life, *řěvivisc-ěřě* (*řěvěřě*), *řěviv-ī*, *řěvic-tum*.

To fall asleep, *obdormisc-ěřě* (*dormīřě*), *obdormīv-ī*, *obdormī-tum*.

11. IRREGULAR VERBS.*

(670.)

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Tenses for Incomplete Action.

Present and Imperfect.

1. *possě*, to be able.
2. *vellě*, to be willing.
3. *nollě*, to be unwilling.
4. *mallě*, to be more willing.
5. *ěděřě*, or *essě*, to eat.
6. *ferrě*, to bear.
7. *fīērī*, to become.
8. *ferřī*, to be borne.

Tenses for Complete Action.

Perfect and Pluperfect.

- pōtuissě*, to have been able.
vōluissě, to have been willing.
nōluissě, to have been unwilling.
māluissě, to have been more willing.
ědissě, to have eaten.
tūlissě, to have borne, or suffered.
factūm essě, to have been made, or done.
lātūm essě, to have been borne.

* See note, next page.

(671.)			INDICATIVE MOOD.		
PRESENT, <i>I am able, &c.</i>			PERFECT, <i>I have been able, &c.</i>		
1. possūm,*	pōtēs,	pōtest,	1. pōtu-ī,	istī,	īt,
possūmūs,	pōtestīs,	possunt.	pōtu-īmūs,	istīs,	ērunt or ērē.
2. vōlō,	vis,	vult,	2. vōlu-ī,	isti,	īt,
vōlūmūs,	vultīs,	volunt.	vōlu-īmūs,	istīs,	ērunt or ērē.
3. nōlō,	nonvis,	nonvult,	3. nōlu-ī,	istī,	īt,
nōlūmūs,	nonvultīs,	nōlunt.	nōlu-īmūs,	istīs,	ērunt or ērē.
4. malō,	mavis,	mavult,	4. malū-ī,	isti,	īt,
malūmūs,	mavultīs,	malunt.	malū-īmūs,	istīs,	ērunt or ērē.
5. ēdō,	ēdis or es,	ēdit or est,	5. ēd-ī,	isti,	īt,
ēdimūs,	ēditīs or estīs;	ēdunt.	ēd-īmūs,	istīs,	ērunt or ērē.
6. fērō,	fers,	fert,	6. tūl-ī,	isti,	īt,
fērīmūs,	fertīs,	fērunt.	tūl-īmūs,	istīs,	ērunt or ērē.
7. fio,†	fis,	fit,	7. factus sūm,	ēs,	est,
fimūs,	fitīs,	fiunt.	facti sūmūs,	estīs,	sunt.
8. fērōr,	ferris or ferre;	fertur,	8. lātūs sūm,	ēs,	est,
fērīmūr,	fērīmīnī,	fēruntur.	lati sūmūs,	estīs,	sunt.
IMPERFECT, <i>I was able, &c.</i>			PLUPERFECT, <i>I had been able, &c.</i>		
1. pōt-ērām,	ērās,	ērāt,	1. pōtu-ērām,	ērās,	ērāt,
pōt-ērāmūs,	ērātīs,	ērant.	pōtu-ērāmūs,	ērātīs,	ērant.
2. vōl-ēbām,	ēbās,	ēbāt,	2. vōlu-ērām,	ērās,	ērāt,
vōl-ēbāmūs,	ēbātīs,	ēbant.	vōlu-ērāmūs,	ērātīs,	ēbant.
3. nōl-ēbām,	ēbas,	ēbāt,	3. nōlu-ērām,	ērās,	ērāt,
nōl-ēbāmūs,	ēbātīs,	ēbant.	nōlu-ērāmūs,	ērātīs,	ēbant.
4. mal-ēbām,	ēbas,	ēbāt,	4. malū-ērām,	ērās,	ērāt,
mal-ēbāmūs,	ēbātīs,	ēbant.	malū-ērāmūs,	ērātīs,	ēbant.
5. ēd-ēbām,	ēbas,	ēbāt,	5. ēd-ērām,	ērās,	ērāt,
ēd-ēbāmūs,	ēbātīs,	ēbant.	ēd-ērāmūs,	ērātīs,	ēbant.
6. fēr-ēbām,	ēbas,	ēbāt,	6. tūl-ērām,	ērās,	ērāt,
fēr-ēbāmūs,	ēbātīs,	ēbant.	tūl-ērāmūs,	ērātīs,	ēbant.
7. fi-ēbām,	ēbas,	ēbāt,	7. factūs ērām,	ērās,	ērāt,
fi-ēbāmūs,	ēbātīs,	ēbant.	facti ērāmūs,	ērātīs,	ēbant.
8. fēr-ēbār,	ēbāris or ē,	ēbātūr,	8. lātūs ērām,	ērās,	ērāt,
fēr-ēbāmūr,	ēbāmīnī,	ēbantūr.	lati ērāmūs,	ērātīs,	ēbant.
FUTURE, <i>I shall or will be able, &c.</i>			FUTURE PERFECT, <i>I shall or will have been able, &c.</i>		
1. pōt-ērō,	ērīs,	ērīt,	1. pōtu-ērō,	ērīs,	ērīt,
pōt-ērīmūs,	ērītīs,	ērunt.	pōtu-ērīmūs,	ērītīs,	ērint.
2. vōl-ām,	ēs,	ēt,	2. vōlu-ērō,	ērīs,	ērīt,
vōl-ēmūs,	ētīs,	ent.	vōlu-ērīmūs,	ērītīs,	ērint.
3. nōl-ām,	ēs,	ēt,	3. nōlu-ērō,	ērīs,	ērīt,
nōl-ēmūs,	ētīs,	ent.	nōlu-ērīmūs,	ērītīs,	ērint.
4. mal-ām,	ēs,	ēt,	4. malū-ērō,	ērīs,	ērīt,
mal-ēmūs,	ētīs,	ent.	malū-ērīmūs,	ērītīs,	ērint.
5. ēd-ām,	ēs,	ēt,	5. ēd-ērō,	ērīs,	ērīt,
ēd-ēmūs,	ētīs,	ent.	ēd-ērīmūs,	ērītīs,	ērint.
6. fēr-ām,	ēs,	ēt,	6. tūl-ērō,	ērīs,	ērīt,
fēr-ēmūs,	ētīs,	ent.	tūl-ērīmūs,	ērītīs,	ērint.
7. fi-ām,	ēs,	ēt,	7. factus ērō,	ērīs,	ērīt,
fi-ēmūs,	ētīs,	ent.	facti ērīmūs,	ērītīs,	ērint.
8. fēr-ār,	ērīs or ērē,	ētūr,	8. lātūs ērō,	ērīs,	ērīt,
fēr-ēmūr,	ēmīnī,	entūr.	lati ērīmūs,	ērītīs,	ērint.

* As many of these verbs are nearly related to each other, it seems unnecessary to separate their forms of inflection. The correspondent numbers will be sufficient direction in tracing the several tenses of each verb.

† Fio, contrary to the general rule (24, a), has *i* long throughout, before vowels: but before *er* it is short: as. *fīrī*.

(672.)

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

NOTE.—*Possum, volo, malo*, have no imperative mood.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 3. nōli, or nōlitō, <i>be thou unwilling.</i>
nōlitē, or nōlitōtē, <i>be ye, &c.</i>
5. ēdē, ēditō, or ēs, estō, <i>eat thou.</i>
ēditē, ēditōtē : 3. ēduntō.
6. fēr, or fertō, <i>bear thou.</i>
fertē, or fertōtē : 3. fēruntō. | 7. fī, or fitō, <i>become thou.</i>
fitē, or fitōtē : 3. fiuntō.
8. ferrē, or fertōr, <i>be thou borne.</i>
fērūmīnī, or fērīmīnōr : 3. fēruntōr. |
|--|--|

(673.)

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT, *I may be able, &c.*

- | | | |
|-------------|--------------|--------|
| 1. poss-īm, | īs, | īt, |
| poss-īmūs, | ītīs, | int. |
| 2. vēl-īm, | īs, | īt, |
| vēl-īmūs, | ītīs, | int. |
| 3. nōl-īm, | īs, | īt, |
| nōl-īmūs, | ītīs, | int. |
| 4. māl-īm, | īs, | īt, |
| māl-īmūs, | ītīs, | int. |
| 5. ēd-ām, | ās, | āt, |
| ēd-āmūs, | ātīs, | ant. |
| 6. fēr-ām, | ās, | āt, |
| fēr-āmūs, | ātīs, | ant. |
| 7. fī-ām, | ās, | āt, |
| fī-āmūs, | ātīs, | ant. |
| 8. fēr-ār, | āris or arē, | ātūr, |
| fēr-āmūr, | āmīnī, | antūr. |

PERFECT, *I may have been able, &c.*

- | | | |
|----------------|---------|--------|
| 1. pōtu-ērīm, | ērīs, | ērīt, |
| pōtu-ērīmūs, | ērītīs, | ērint. |
| 2. vōlu-ērīm, | ērīs, | ērīt, |
| vōlu-ērīmūs, | ērītīs, | ērint. |
| 3. nōlu-ērīm, | ērīs, | ērīt, |
| nōlu-ērīmūs, | ērītīs, | ērint. |
| 4. mālu-ērīm, | ērīs, | ērīt, |
| mālu-ērīmūs, | ērītīs, | ērint. |
| 5. ēd-ērīm, | ērīs, | ērīt, |
| ēd-ērīmūs, | ērītīs, | ērint. |
| 6. tūl-ērīm, | ērīs, | ērīt, |
| tūl-ērīmūs, | ērītīs, | ērint. |
| 7. factus sīm, | sis, | sīt, |
| facti sīmūs, | sītīs, | sint. |
| 8. lātis sīm, | sis, | sīt, |
| lāti sīmūs, | sītīs, | sint. |

IMPERFECT, *I might be able, &c.*

- | | | |
|-----------------------|--------------|--------|
| 1. Poss-ēm, | ēs, | ēt, |
| poss-ēmūs, | ētīs, | ent. |
| 2. vell-ēm, | ēs, | ēt, |
| vell-ēmūs, | ētīs, | ent. |
| 3. noll-ēm, | ēs, | ēt, |
| noll-ēmūs, | ētīs, | ent. |
| 4. mall-ēm, | ēs, | ēt, |
| mall-ēmūs, | ētīs, | ent. |
| 5. ēdēr-ēm or essēm ; | ēs, | ēt, |
| ēdēr-ēmūs, | ētīs, | ent. |
| 6. ferr-ēm, | ēs, | ēt, |
| ferr-ēmūs, | ētīs, | ent. |
| 7. fiēr-ēm, | ēs, | ēt, |
| fiēr-ēmūs, | ētīs, | ent. |
| 8. ferr-ēr, | ērīs or ērē, | ētūr, |
| ferr-ēmūr, | ēmīnī, | entūr. |

PLUPERF., *I might have been able, &c.*

- | | | |
|------------------|----------|---------|
| 1. pōtu-issēm, | issēs, | issēt, |
| pōtu-issēmūs, | issētīs, | issent. |
| 2. vōlu-issēm, | issēs, | issēt, |
| vōlu-issēmūs, | issētīs, | issent. |
| 3. nōlu-issēm, | issēs, | issēt, |
| nōlu-issēmūs, | issētīs, | issent. |
| 4. mālu-issēm, | issēs, | issēt, |
| mālu-issēmūs, | issētīs, | issent. |
| 5. ēd-issēm, | issēs, | issēt, |
| ēd-issēmūs, | issētīs, | issent. |
| 6. tūl-issēm, | issēs, | issēt, |
| tūl-issēmūs, | issētīs, | issent. |
| 7. factūs essēm, | essēs, | essēt, |
| facti essēmūs, | essētīs, | essent. |
| 8. lātūs essēm, | essēs, | essēt, |
| lāti essēmūs, | essētīs, | essent. |

(674.)

GERUNDS.

- | |
|---|
| 2. vōlendī, volendō, volendūm, <i>of being, in being, to be, willing.</i> |
| 3. nōlendī, rōlendō, nōlendūm, " " " <i>unwilling.</i> |
| 4. mālendī, malendō, malendūm, " " " <i>more willing.</i> |
| 5. ēdendī, ēdendō, edendūm, <i>of eating, in eating, to eat.</i> |
| 6. fērendī, fērendō, fērendūm, <i>of bearing, in bearing, to bear.</i> |

(675.)

SUPINES.

- | | |
|--|---|
| Accusative. 5. ēsum, <i>to eat.</i>
6. lātum, <i>to bear.</i> | Ablative. ēsū, <i>to be eaten, to eat.</i>
lātū, <i>to be borne.</i> |
|--|---|

(676.)

PARTICIPLES.

Active. 1. pōtens, *being able.*
 2. vōlens, " *willing.*
 3. nōlens, " *unwilling.*
 4. mālens, " *more willing.*
 5. ēdens, *eating.* ēsūrus, *about to eat.*
 6. fērens, *bearing.* lātūrus, *about to bear.*
 7. faciendūs, *to be made or done.*
 8. fērendūs, *to be borne.*

Passive. 7. factūs, *being or having been made or done.*
 8. lātūs, *being or having been borne or suffered.*

(677.)

Eo, I go.

Eō, I go, is conjugated like *audio*, except in the following tenses :

	Singular.	Plural.
<i>Imp. Ind. Pres.</i> eō,	is, it.	imūs, itīs, eunt.
<i>Past.</i> ībām,	ības, ībāt.	ībāmūs, ībātīs, ībant.
<i>Fut.</i> ībō,	ībīs, ībit.	ībīmūs, ībitīs, ībunt.
<i>Imperative.</i>	ī, or itō.	itē, or itōtē. 3. euntō.
<i>Imp. Pot. Pres.</i> eām,	eās, eāt.	eāmūs, eātīs, eant.
<i>Gerunds.</i>	eundi, eundō, eundūm.	
<i>Particip. Pres.</i> iens (<i>gen. euntīs</i>), <i>going.</i>		<i>Fut.</i> itūrūs, <i>about to go.</i>
<i>Supines.</i>	itūm, itū.	

Rem. In like manner, the compounds of eo are formed : also, queo, *to be able*, and nequeo, *to be unable* ; except that these two have no imperative mood or gerunds.

12. DEFECTIVE VERBS

(678.) Are those which have only some particular tenses and moods ;
as, aio, *I say* ; ausīm, *I dare* ; avē, *hail !* &c.

(1.) Aio, I say.				
		Singular.	Plural.	
<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	aio,	āis, āit.		āiunt.
<i>Imperfect.</i>	ai-ēbam,	ēbās, ēbāt.	ēbāmūs, ēbātīs,	ēbant.
<i>Imperative.</i>		āi.		
<i>Subj. Pres.</i>		aiās, aiāt.		aiant.
<i>Participle.</i>	aiens.			
(2.) Ausīm, I dare.				
<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	ausīm,	ausīs, ausīt.		ausint.
(3.) Āvē, hail !				
<i>Imperative.</i>	āvē, or āvēto.		āvētē, or āvētōtē.	
<i>Infinitive.</i>	āvērē.			
(4.) Salvē, God save you !				
<i>Imperative.</i>		salvē, or salvētō.	salvētē, or salvētōtē.	
<i>Infinitive.</i>	salvērē.			
<i>Ind. Fut.</i>		salvēbis.		

(5.) Cēdo, <i>give me.</i>				
<i>Imperative.</i>	Singular.		Plural.	
	cēdō.		cēdītē.	
(6.) Faxo, or faxim (for <i>faciam</i>), <i>I will or may do it.</i>				
<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	fax-o, or fax-īm,	is,	it.	imūs, itīs, int.
(7.) Quæsō, <i>I pray.</i>				
<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	quæs-ō,	īs,	it.	ūmūs.
<i>Infinitive.</i>	quæsērē.			
<i>Participle.</i>	quæsens.			
(8.) Inquām, or Inquiō, <i>I say.</i>				
<i>Impf. Ind. Pres.</i>	inqu-iō, or am,	īs,	it.	īmus, iunt.
<i>Past.</i>			inquiēbat.	inquiē-
<i>Fut.</i>		inquiēs,	inquiēt.	[bant.
<i>Perf. Ind. Pres.</i>		inquistī.		
<i>Imperative.</i>	inquē,	inquitō.		inquitē.
<i>Participle.</i>	inquiens.			

(9.) These verbs,

Nōv-ī, *I know* ;
 Mēmīn-ī, *I remember* ;
 Cœp-ī, *I begin* ;
 Od-ī, *I hate*,

have the forms of the perfect tenses combined with the meanings of the imperfect. *Nosco*, the present of *nōvī*, is in use, and denotes *to learn*, whence *nōvī* expresses the actual knowledge which is the result of past learning.

Nōv-	{	ī,	istī, &c.	(Pres.)
Memīn-	{	ērām,	ērās, &c.	(Past.)
Cœp-	{	ērō,	ērīs, &c.	(Fut.)
Od-	{	ērīm,	ērīs, &c.	(Subj. Pres.)
	{	issēm,	issēs, &c.	(Subj. Past.)
	{	issē,		(Infinitive.)
Mementō, mementōtē. (Imperative.) *				
Ōsūs, ōsūrūs ; cœptus, cœptūrūs. (Participles.)				

13. IMPERSONAL VERBS

(679.) Are those which have no *subject*, and take the pronoun *it* before them in English ; e. g., pluīt, *it rains*.

1. Impersonals never used personally.

libēt, libuit, <i>it pleases.</i>	*pœnitēt, pœnituit, <i>it repents.</i>
licēt, licuit, or } <i>one may,</i>	*pūdēt, pūduit, { <i>it shames,</i>
licitum est, } <i>it is lawful.</i>	{ <i>one is ashamed.</i>
oportēt, oportuit, { <i>one ought,</i>	*tædēt, pertæsūm est, { <i>it wearies,</i>
{ <i>it behooves.</i>	{ <i>disgusts.</i>
*mīserēt, <i>one pities.</i>	rēfert, <i>it concerns.</i>
*pīgēt, <i>it grieves (one).</i>	

* Those marked * take *acc.* of person and *gen.* of the thing (or object of the feeling).

2. Impersonals sometimes used personally in third person singular or plural.

fulmināt,	} <i>it lightens.</i>	vingit,	<i>it snows.</i>
fulgurāt,		luit,	<i>it rains.</i>
grandināt,		tonāt,	<i>it thunders.</i>
lucescit,		vesperascit,	<i>it grows dark.</i>

3. Personal verbs used specially as impersonals in third person singular.

accidit,	<i>it happens.</i>	fīt,	<i>it happens.</i>
accēdit,*	<i>it is added.</i>	intērest,	<i>it concerns.</i>
apparēt,	<i>it appears.</i>	jūvāt,	<i>it is pleasant.</i>
attinēt,	<i>it belongs to.</i>	lātēt,	{ <i>it is unknown, concealed.</i>
condūcit,	<i>it is conducive.</i>	liquēt,	
constāt,	{ <i>it is known,</i> <i>it is agreed upon.</i>	pātēt,	<i>it is plain, open.</i>
contingit,		<i>it happens.</i>	plācēt,
convenit,	<i>it suits, agrees.</i>	præstāt,	<i>it is better.</i>
delectāt,	<i>it is delightful.</i>	restāt,	<i>it remains.</i>
dēcēt,	<i>it is becoming.</i>	sōlēt,	{ <i>it happens usually.</i>
dēdēcēt,	<i>it is unbecoming.</i>	assolēt,	
evēnit,	<i>it turns out.</i>	stāt,	<i>it suffices.</i>
expēdit,	<i>it is expedient.</i>	sufficit,	<i>(I) have leisure.</i>
excidit,†	<i>it has escaped me.</i>	vācāt,	

Rem. These may be used in the different tenses of indic. and subj. moods.

4. The third person singular of many intransitive verbs is used impersonally in the passive; e. g., *currītūr*, *they run* (it is run by them); *pugnātū est*, *they fought* (it was fought by them). Those which govern the dative, govern it also in the impersonal form; e. g., *I am envied*, *mīhī invidētūr*.

* Accēdit quod (or ūt) = *moreover*.

† i. e., *dē mēmōriā excidit* = *it has slipped from my memory—is forgotten*.

§ 7. ADVERB.

THE adverb qualifies a verb, adjective, or another adverb.

I. *Derivative Adverbs.*

(680.) *Derivative adverbs* (a) are nearly all formed from *adjectives* or *participles*, by adding *ě* or *itěr* to their stems:

1. Add *ě* to stem of adjectives in *ūs*, *ǎ*, *ŭm*; e. g.,

clār-ūs, *illustrious.* clār-ě, *illustriously.*

Rem. B ōnūs makes b ěn ě, *well*; and mǎlūs (*bad*); mǎl ě, *badly*.
All others end in *ě* (*long*).

2. Add *itěr* to the stem of adjectives of 2d or 3d class; e. g.,

brěv-īs, *brief.* brěv-itěr, *briefly.*
fěrox (ferōc-s), *fierce.* fěrōc-itěr, *fiercely.*

Rem. 1. Those which end in *ns* do not take the connecting vowel *ĭ*;
e. g.,

prūdēns, *prudent.* prūden-těr, *prudently.*

2. Audax, *bold*, makes audac-těr, *boldly.*

(b) A few are formed from nouns, by adding *tūs* or *tīm* to the stem by means of a connecting vowel; e. g.,

cœl-ŭm, *heaven.* cœl-ĭ-tūs, *from heaven.*
fund-ūs, *bottom.* fund-ĭ-tūs, *from the bottom, totally.*
grex (greg-s), *flock.* grěg-ā-tīm, *by flocks.*

(c) Cases of adjectives, especially in the *neuter*, are often used as adverbs; e. g., dulcě, *sweetly*; fals ō, *falsely*, &c.

II. *Primitive Adverbs.*

(681.) *Primitive adverbs* are such as cannot conveniently be classed among the derivatives above mentioned. The most common are arranged in the following lists:

I. ADVERBS OF PLACE (fivefold).

(1.) <i>In a Place.</i>			
ūbī ? hic, illic, istic, ībī, intūs, fōrīs,	<i>where ? here. there. there, where you are. there. within. without.</i>	ūbīquē, nusquām, ālicūbī, ālibī, ūbīvis, ībidēm,	<i>everywhere. nowhere. somewhere. elsewhere. { anywhere (you please). in the same place.</i>
(2.) <i>To a Place—(o, uc).</i>			
quō ? hūc, illūc, istūc, intrō,	<i>whither ? hither. thither. { thither, to where you are. to within.</i>	fōrās, eō, aliō, aliquō, eōdēm,	<i>to without. to that place. to another place. to some place. to the same place.</i>
(3.) <i>Towards a Place.</i>			
quorsūm, versūs, sursūm, deorsūm,	<i>whitherward ? towards. upward. downward.</i>	rētrorsūm, dextrorsūm, sinistrorsūm,	<i>backward. to the right hand. to the left hand.</i>
(4.) <i>From a Place—(nc, nde).</i>			
undē ? hinc, illic, īstinc, indē,	<i>whence ? hence. thence. { thence, from where you are. thence.</i>	aliundē, ālicundē, sicundē, utrinquē, sūpernē, infernē,	<i>from elsewhere. from some place. if from any place. on both sides. from above. from below.</i>
(5.) <i>Through or by a Place.</i>			
quā ? hāc, illāc,	<i>which way ? this way. that way.</i>	istāc, aliā,	<i>that way, by you. another way.</i>

2. ADVERBS OF TIME (threefold).

(1.) *Being in time, either,*

1. <i>Present.</i>		protinus, instantly.	
nunc, now.		illico, straightway.	
hodiē, to-day.			(Remote.)
2. <i>Past.</i>		crās, to-morrow.	
tunc, } then.		postridie, the day after.	
tūm, } yesterday.		perendie, two days hence.	
hērī, } heretofore.		nondum, not yet.	
dūdūm, } the day before.			4. <i>Indefinite.</i>
pridēm, } lately.		quandō ? when ?	
pridiē, } sometimes.		aliquandō, } sometimes.	
nūpēr, } (Very Near.)		nonnunquām, } always.	
		interdum, } never.	
jamjam, } presently.		sempēr, } in the mean time.	
mox, } immediately.		nunquām, } daily.	
statim, } by-and-by.		intērim, }	
		intēreā, }	
		quōtidie, }	

(2.) *Continuance of Time.*

quamdiū ? how long ?	jamdiū, } long ago.
diū, long.	jamdūdūm, }
tamdiū, so long.	jampridēm, }

(3.) *Vicissitude, or Repetition of Time.*

1. <i>Indefinite.</i>		subindē, immediately after.	
quōtiēs ? how often ?		identidēm, several times.	
sæpē, often.			2. <i>Definite, or in Number.</i>
tōtiēs, so often.		sēmēl, once.	
aliquōtiēs, for several times.		bīs, twice.	
vicissim, by turns.		tēr, thrice.	
rursus, again.		quatēr, four times.	
itērūm, a second time.			

3. ADVERBS OF ORDER.

indē, then.	deinceps, successively.	primo,* -um,† first.
deindē, thereafter.	dēnuō, anew.	secundō,† secondly.)
dehinc, henceforth.	deniquē, finally.	&c.
porrō, moreover.	(postrēmō,† lastly.	

4. ADVERBS OF QUALITY, MANNER, &c.

ādēō, so, and therefore.	nempē, truly.
adrōdūm, very, greatly.	nīmīum, too much.
ān, whether ? or else ?	nōn, not.
cūr, why.	nūm ? whether ?
dēmūm, at length.	omnīnō, at all, in general.
ētiam, likewise, yes.	pārūm, little.
fērē, almost.	sātis, enough.
haud, not.	sic, so, thus.
immō, yes, truly.	scilicēt, namely.
itā, so, thus.	videlicīt, namely.
māgīs, more.	vix, scarcely.
nē, not.	

* Primo = *at first*; primūm = *first, in the first place*.

† These fall under (680, c).

§ 8. PREPOSITION.

(682.) 1. PREPOSITIONS governing the *accusative*:

Antē, apūd, ad, adversūs,
Circūm, circā, citrā, cīs,
Ergā, contrā, intēr, extrā,
Infra. intrā, juxtā, ob,
Pēnēs, pōnē, post, and prætēr,
Prōpē, proptēr, pēr, sēcundūm,
Sūprā, versūs, ultrā, trans.

[Versūs is placed *after* the noun which it governs.]

2. Governing the *ablative*:

Absquē, ā, āb, abs, and dē.
Cōrām, clām, cūm, ex, and ē.
Tēnūs. sinē, prō, and prae.

3. Governing both *accusative* and *ablative*:

in, sub, supēr, subter

§ 9. CONJUNCTION.

(683.) CONJUNCTIONS connect words and sentences. They may be divided into the following classes:

- I. *Copulative*, which simply unite sentences together (*and*): they are *et*, *atquē* or *ac*, *quē*, *nēquē* or *nēc*, *necnōn*, *ētiām*, *quōquē*, with the adverbials *itēm* and *itīdēm*.
- II. *Disjunctive*, which connect *unlike* prepositions (*or*): they are *aut*, *vēl*, the suffix *vě*, and *sivě* or *seu*; (*either—or*): *aut—aut*, *věl—věl*; (*whether—or*): *sivě—sivě*.
- III. *Comparative* (*as, like, as if, &c.*): they are *ūt*, *sicūt*, *vělūt*, *proūt*, *ceu*, *quām*, *tamquām*, *quāsī*, *utsī*, *acsī*, together with *ac* and *atquē*, when they mean *as*.
- IV. *Adversative*, expressing *opposition* of thought (*but*): they are *sěd*, *autēm*, *věrō*, *āt* and its compounds, *tāměn* (and its compounds with *at* *sed* and *verum*), and *cēterum*.
- V. *Concessive*, expressing something *granted* (*although, even if*): they are *etsī*, *etiāmsī*, *tāmetsī*, *quamquām*, *quamvis*, *quantumvis*, *quamlibět*, *licět*, with *ūt* and *quum*, when they mean *although*.
- VI. *Conditional*, expressing a *condition* (*if, if only, if but*): they are *sī*, *sīn*, *nī* or *nīsī*, *sīmōdō*, *dummōdō*, *mōdone*, and some times *dūm* and *mōdō* used alone.
- VII. *Conclusive*, expressing a *conclusion* or *inference* (*therefore*): they are *ergo*, *īgītūr*, *itāquē*, *eō*, *ideō*, *idcircō*, *proindē*, *proptēreā*, and the relatives (*wherefore*) *quāproptēr*, *quārē*, *quamobrēm*, *quōcircā*, *undē*.
- VIII. *Causal*, expressing a *cause* or *reason* (*for, because*): *nām*, *namquē*, *ēnīm*, *ētēnīm*, *quiā*, *quōd*, *quōniām*, *quippē*, *quum*, *quandō*, *quandōquīdēm*, *sīquīdēm*.
- IX. *Final*, expressing a *purpose* or *aim* (*in order that, in order that not*): *ūt* or *ūtī*, *quō*, *nē*, *utnē*, *nēvē*, *neu*, *quīn*, *quōmīnūs*.
- X. *Temporal*, expressing a *relation of time* (*when, as soon as, after that, just as*): *quum*, *ūt*, *ūbī*, *postquām*, *antēquām*, *priusquām*, *quandō*, *sīmūl*, *sīmūlāc*, *dūm*, *usquē dūm*, *dōnēc*, *quoad*.
- XI. *Interrogative*, used in asking questions: *nām*, *utrūm*, *ān*, *ně* (suffix)

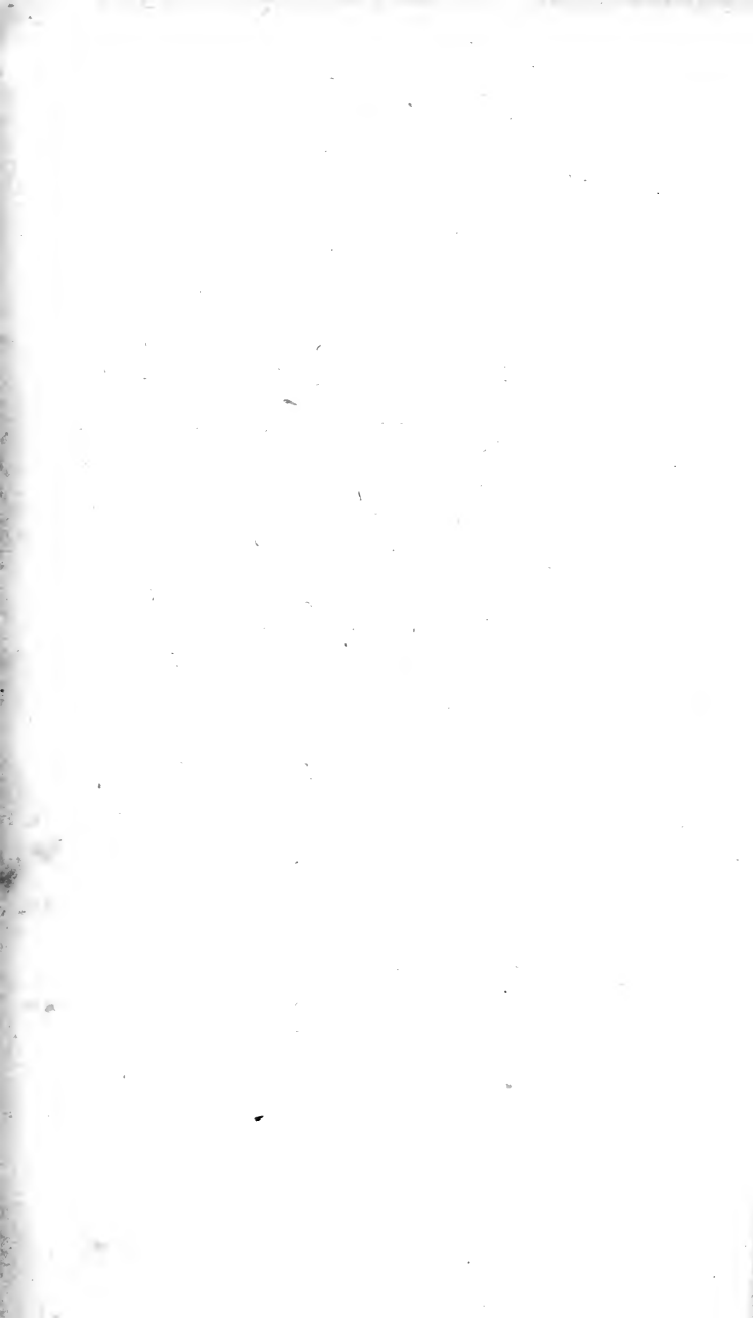
§ 10. INTERJECTION.

(684.) INTERJECTIONS are simply signs of emotion.

āh,	<i>ah !</i>	hēm,	<i>hem ! how !</i>
āpāgē,	<i>away !</i>	iō,	<i>huzza !</i>
eccē,	<i>behold !</i>	ōh,	<i>oh ! alas !</i>
eccūm,	<i>see him !</i>	pāpæ,	<i>O strange ! good !</i>
eū,	<i>lo !</i>	prō,	<i>alas !</i>
heī, heū,	<i>alas !</i>	væ,	<i>woe !</i>
		vah,	<i>O rare !</i>

PART IV

SUMMARY OF SYNTAX.



SYNTAX.

INTRODUCTION.

(685.) A *proposition* is a thought expressed in words ; e. g., *the rose blooms ; the rose is beautiful.*

(686.) A *simple sentence* consists of a single proposition ; e. g., *the messenger was sent ; the swift messenger arrived.*

(687.) A *compound sentence* is one made up of two or more propositions ; e. g., *the messenger, who had been sent, arrived.*

(688.) SYNTAX treats of the use of words in the formation of sentences, and of the relation of sentences to each other. We speak first,

PART I.

OF SIMPLE SENTENCES.

I. SUBJECT AND PREDICATE.

§ 1. Definition of Subject and Predicate.

(689.) Every sentence (e. g., *the eagle flies*) consists of two parts, the *subject* (e. g., *eagle*) and the *predicate* (e. g., *flies*).

(a) The *subject* is that of which anything is declared, and is generally (1) a *noun*, or (2) some word used instead of a noun.

1. The *eagle flies*. Here the noun *eagle* is the subject.

2. *To err* is human. Here the infinitive *to err* is used as a noun, and forms the subject.

(b) The *predicate* is that which is declared of the subject, and is generally either (1) a *verb*, (2) an *adjective* or *participle*, or (3) a *noun*, connected with the subject by some form of the verb *to be*.

1. The *eagle flies*. Here the verb *flies* is the predicate.

2. *To err* is human. Here the adjective *human* is the predicate.

3. John is a *man*. Here the noun *man* is the predicate.

§ 2. Agreement.

(690.) RULE I. The verb of the predicate agrees with the subject in number and person.

The trees are green.

| *Arbores virent.*

Art thou happy ?

| *Esne tu beatus ?*

Rem. 1. If the subj. consists of two or more singular nouns denoting persons, the verb is generally in the plural.

2. A *collective* noun sometimes has a plural verb.

The crowd rushes. | *Turba ruunt.*

[This construction is not used by Cicero, and seldom, if at all, by Cæsar.]

3. A plural verb is sometimes used with *uterque* and *quisque*.

Each of them leads his army out of the camp. | *Uterque eorum ex castris exercitum educunt.*

4. The verb agrees with the first person rather than the second; the second rather than the third.

If you and Tullia are well, Cicero and I are well. | *Si tu et Tullia valetis, ego et Cicero valemus.*

(691.) An adjective may stand either

- (1.) As predicate; *e. g.*, the man is *happy*;
- (2.) As modifying the subject; *e. g.*, the *good* man is happy;
- (3.) As modifying the predicate; *e. g.*, the good man is a *happy* man.

In either case we have

RULE II. Adjectives agree with the nouns to which they refer in gender, number, and case.

[This rule applies to all adjectives, pronouns, and participles.]

Rem. If there be two or more nouns denoting *persons*, the most worthy* gender prevails; if *things*, the neuter is used.

My father and mother are dead. | *Pater mihi et mater mortui sunt.*
Labour and enjoyment are united. | *Labor voluptasque juncta sunt.*

(692.) **RULE III.** If the predicate be a noun, it takes the case of the subject.

Numa was made king. | *Numa rex creabatur.*

§ 3. *Apposition.*

(693.) A noun may stand

- (a) In the subject, denoting the same person or thing with the subject-noun; *e. g.*, the general, a *brave man*, led the army.
- (b) In the predicate, denoting the same person or thing with a noun in the predicate; *e. g.*, we have sent the consul, a *brave man*.

Nouns thus expressing the same person or thing, whether in the subject or predicate, are said to be in *apposition* with each other; and in either case we have

RULE IV. Nouns in apposition with each other agree in case.

* The *masculine* is said to be more worthy than the *feminine*; the *feminine* than the *neuter*.

The <i>commander, a brave man</i> , led the army.	Imperator, vir fortis, exercitum duxit.
We sent the <i>consul, a brave man</i> .	Consulem, virum fortem, misimus.

Rem. 1. A noun in apposition with two or more nouns is commonly put in the plural.

M. Antony and C. Crassus, <i>tribunes</i> of the people.	M. Antonius, C. Crassus, tribuni plebis.
--	--

2. A noun in apposition with the name of a town may be put in the ablative, with or without the preposition *in*.

At *Rome*, the chief city of Italy. | Rómæ, (in) prima urbe Italiæ.

II. USE OF CASES.

§ 4. Nominative.

(694.) *Subject-nominative*.—The subject of a proposition takes the nominative case, and is called the *subject-nominative*.

(2.) *Predicate-nominative*.—The predicate-nominative (692) is always connected with the subject by *esse*, *to be*, or some verb expressing an incomplete idea.

Rem. Of this class of verbs are *to appear*, apparere, videri; *to become*, fieri, evadere, existere; *to be named*, dici, appellari, nominari; *to be esteemed*, existimari, haberi, &c.

<i>Ariovistus was called king by the senate.</i>	Ariovistus a senatu rex appellatus est.
--	---

§ 5. Genitive.

(695.) **RULE V.** The genitive answers the questions *whose?* *of whom?* *of what?* *e. g.*, the love of glory, amor gloriæ; Cicero's orations, Ciceronis orationes.

Rem. The genitive is *subjective* when it denotes that which does something, or to which a thing belongs; *e. g.*, Ciceronis orationes. It is *objective* when it denotes that which is affected by the action or feeling spoken of; *e. g.*, amor gloriæ: *the taking of the town*, expugnatio urbis.

(696.) **RULE VI.** *Genitive of Quality*.—The genitive (with an adjective, or pronoun of quality, number, &c.) is used to express the *quality* of a thing.

<i>A man of great bravery.</i>	Vir magnæ virtutis.
<i>A ditch of fifteen feet.</i>	Fossa quindecim pedum.

Rem. 1. The *ablative* is also used in the same way (724).

2. If the two nouns are connected, not immediately, but by another part of speech, the *accusative* must be used: fossa quindecim pedes lata.

(697.) RULE VII. *Partitive-genitive*.—The genitive is used to express the *whole* of which anything is a part. Hence,

(a) With comparatives and superlatives :

The more learned of the two brothers. | Doctior fratrum duorum.

The most learned of the Romans. | Doctissimus Romanorum.

(b) With all words expressing *number* or *quantity*, whether adjectives, pronouns, numerals, or adverbs; e. g., *many of the soldiers*, multi militum; *which of you?* quis vestrum? *the last of the Romans*, ultimus Romanorum; *enough eloquence*, satis eloquentiæ; *where* (in what part) *of the world?* ubinam gentium?

Rem. This rule includes the neuters tantum, quantum, aliquantum, quid, aliquid, &c.

(698.) RULE VIII. *Genitive of Mental Affections*.—The genitive is used with verbs and adjectives expressing certain operations of the mind or feelings, to denote the *object* thereof.

(a) *Operations of the mind.*

1. Adjectives of *knowledge* and *ignorance*, *remembering* and *forgetting*, *certainty* and *doubt*.

Mindful of a kindness.

| Beneficii memor.

He was not ignorant of the result of the war.

| Eventus belli non erat ignarus.

2. Verbs of *remembering* and *forgetting* (recordor, memini, reminiscor, obliviscor).

To remember past events.

| Meminisse præteritorum.

He exhorts the Æduans to forget their disputes.

| Cohortatur Æduos ut controversiarum obliviscantur.

[The thing remembered is often put in the accusative.]

(b) *Operations of the feelings.*

1. Adjectives expressing *desire* or *aversion*, *patience* or *impatience*, *appetite* or *passion*. Participles used as adjectives fall under this rule.

Desirous of praise.

| Avidus laudis.

A lover of (= one loving) virtue.

| Amans virtutis.

2. Verbs.

(a) Those expressing *pity*, viz., miseresco, misereor.

I pity the unfortunate.

| Miseresco infelicium.

(b) The impersonals pudet, piget, pœnitet, tædet, miseret (*shame, disgust, repentance, loathing, pity*).

<i>I am not only sorry for my folly, but ashamed of it.</i>	Me non solum pœnitet stultitiæ meæ, sed etiam pudet.
<i>I am weary of my life.</i>	Me tædet vitæ.

Rem. 1. Observe that the *person* feeling is expressed by the accusative.

2. The cause of feeling may be a verb, or part of a sentence, instead of a noun in the genitive.

<i>I am not sorry (= it does not repent me) that I have lived.</i>	Non pœnitet me vixisse
--	------------------------

(699.) RULE IX. *Genitive of Participation*.—The genitive is used with adjectives and participles expressing (1) *plenty* or *want*, (2) *power* or *weakness*, (3) *sharing* or its opposite, (4) *likeness* or *unlikeness*.

(1.) <i>Full of wrath.</i>	Plenus iræ.
(2.) <i>Master of one's faculties.</i>	Compos mentis.
(3.) <i>He is like his brother.</i>	Similis est fratris.
(4.) <i>Man is a sharer of reason.</i>	Homo particeps est rationis.

Rem. 1. Those of *plenty* and *want* take also ablative (716, R. 4).

2. Those of *likeness* and *unlikeness* take also the dative (704, 4).

(700.) RULE X. *Genitive of Value*.—The genitive of certain adjectives is used with verbs of *valuing*, *esteeming*, *buying*, *selling*, &c., to denote the price or value.

<i>The poor man estimates riches at a great value.</i>	Pauper divitias magni æstimat.
--	--------------------------------

Rem. 1. Such genitives are *magni*, *permagni*, *pluris*, *maximi*, *minoris*, and others.

2. If the price be a noun, the ablative is used (719). Also, the ablatives *magno*, *permagno*, *plurimo*, *parvo*, *minimo*, *nihi- lo*, are often used.

(701.) RULE XI. *Genitive of Crime*.—The genitive is used with verbs of *accusing*, *condemning*, *acquitting*, &c., to denote the *crime* or *offence* charged.

<i>To accuse of treachery.</i>	Proditionis accusare.
<i>The judge acquitted the prisoner of the crime.</i>	Prætor reum criminis absolvit.

(702.) RULE XII. *Genitive of Property*.—The genitive is used with *esse* to denote (1) that to which something belongs; (2) that to which something is peculiar.

(1.) <i>This book belongs to my father.</i>	Hic liber est mei patris.
(2.) <i>It is peculiar to the brave to endure pain with fortitude.</i>	Fortium est dolorem fortiter pati

Rem. 1. Under this last head come the following constructions

It is	{	the property peculiarity duty mark characteristic &c.	}	of a wise man = <i>est sapientis</i> .
-------	---	--	---	--

2. Observe carefully, that instead of the genitive of the personal pronouns (*mei, tui, &c.*), the neuter possessives (*meum, tuum, suum, nostrum, vestrum*) are used; *e. g., it is my duty, &c.; est meum, &c.*

(703.) RULE XIII. The genitive is used with the impersonal interest (*it concerns*), to express the person concerned.

<i>It concerns my brother.</i>	<i>Mei fratris interest.</i>
--------------------------------	------------------------------

<i>It concerns the state.</i>	<i>Reipublicæ interest.</i>
-------------------------------	-----------------------------

Rem. But instead of the genitives of the personal pronouns (*mei, tui, &c.*), the possessive forms *mea, tua, &c.*, are always used; and with them the impersonal *refert* has the same force as *interest*.

<i>It concerns you.</i>	<i>Tua interest (not tui interest)</i>
<i>It is of great importance to me to see you.</i>	<i>Magni mea refert ut te videam</i>

§ 6. Dative.

(704.) RULE XIV. The dative case is used to express the person or thing *to or for whom* (or *which*), *to or for whose advantage or disadvantage* anything is done or tends.

✎ Almost every instance in which the dative occurs may be explained by a proper application of this rule. For the sake of fuller illustration, however, we add the following heads:

(1.) *Dative of Remote Object.*—The dative is used to express the *remote object*,

(a) With *transitive verbs* governing also a *direct object*.

<i>I send you a book.</i>	<i>Mitto tibi librum.</i>
<i>Pisistratus conquered the Megarenses for himself.</i>	<i>Pisistratus sibi Megarenses vicit.</i>

Rem. The accusative is often omitted, and the dative alone appears with the verb; *e. g., I persuade you, tibi suadeo; he told the general, nuntiavit imperatori.*

(b) With *intransitive verbs* expressing an action done *to or for* some person or thing.

<i>I have leisure for philosophy.</i>	<i>Vaco philosophiæ.</i>
---------------------------------------	--------------------------

(2.) On the same principle (*advantage or disadvantage*), the dative is used with verbs of the following meanings, viz. :

*Envy, profit, please, displease, obey,
Help, hurt, resist, excel, or disobey,
Command, indulge, be angry, spare, upbraid,
Marry, heal, favour, meet, trust, and persuade.*

Rem. 1. Juvo, lædo, delecto, offendo, rego, gubernō, govern the accusative.

2. Impero, credo, minor, comminor, are also used transitively, with accusative and dative.

(3.) *Dative with Compound Verbs.*—The dative is used with *most* verbs compounded with ad, con, in, inter, ob, præ, sub; and with *many* of those compounded with ab, ante, de, e, post, præ, re, super.

Rem. These verbs govern the dative when they acquire a meaning from the preposition which calls for the dative; e. g., *to join*, jungere, takes accusative; but *to join to*, adjungere, takes dative also. When they are transitive, they take both accusative and dative; but when intransitive, the dative only.

<i>To prefer unknown men to known.</i>	Ignotos notis anteferre.
<i>Vices creep upon us.</i>	Vitia nobis obrepunt.

(4.) So, also, the dative is used with *adjectives* expressing *advantage, likeness, usefulness, fitness, facility, nearness to*, and their opposites.

<i>Be kind to all.</i>	Cunctis esto benignus.
<i>Hurtful to the body.</i>	Corpori perniciosum.
<i>A place fit for ambush.</i>	Locus insidiis aptus.
<i>They are neighbours to the Germans.</i>	Proximi sunt Germanis.

Rem. 1. Adjectives of *likeness* or *unlikeness* may take the genitive (699, 3).

2. Those of *fitness* and *unfitness* often take the accusative with ad; e. g., locus ad insidias aptus.

(705.) **RULE XV. Dative of Possession.**—The dative is used with *esse* to express the person who has or possesses something.

<i>I have a book.</i>	Est mihi liber (= habeo librum).
-----------------------	----------------------------------

Rem. 1. *I have a name* = est mihi nomen; but if the name be expressed, it may be put either in nominative or dative; e. g., *my name is Lælius* = mihi est nomen Lælius (or Lælio).

2. The possessor is expressed by the *dative* when the mind refers chiefly to the *possession* (e. g., *I have a book* = est mihi liber); but by the *genitive* when the mind refers chiefly to the *possessor* (e. g., *this book is my father's* = hic liber est mei patris).

(706.) **RULE XVI. Dative of the End (Double Dative).**—Two datives are used with *esse*, and with verbs of *giving, coming, sending, imputing*; one to express the *person*, the other the *object or end*.

The Boians were (for) a protection to the rear. | *Boii novissimis præsidio erant.*

Pausanias came to aid (for an aid to) the Athenians. | *Pausanias venit Atheniensibus auxilio.*

Rem. The verbs used with double dative are *esse, dare, ducere, tribuere, vertere, accipere, relinquere, deligere, mittere, venire, habere*.

[The dative is used with gerundives, for which see 737, *b.*]

§ 7. Accusative.

(707.) The **ACCUSATIVE** is the case of the *direct object*, and answers the questions *whom? what? to what place?*

☞ Under this general statement we make three heads: (1) the accusative with verbs; (2) the accusative with prepositions; (3) the accusative according to the usage of the language.

I. Accusative with Verbs.

(708.) **RULE XVII. Accusative of the Direct Object.**—The accusative is used with transitive verbs, to express the *direct object*.

Cæsar recalls the lieutenant. | *Cæsar legatum revocat.*

Rem. 1. Some verbs are used both transitively and intransitively; the use of these must be learned by practice.

2. Some *intransitives* (especially those of motion), compounded with prepositions, acquire a transitive force easily recognised from their meaning; thus: *to go, ire; to go across, transire*, which takes the accusative.

3. Some *intransitives* take an accusative of a noun from the same root with themselves; *e. g., to live a life, vivere vitam*.

(709.) **RULE XVIII. Accusative with Impersonals.**—The accusative of the *person affected* is used with the impersonals *pudet, piget, tædet, miseret, pœnitet*.

I am tired of life. | *Tædet me vitæ.*

Rem. *Decet* and its compounds (which admit a personal subject), also *juvat* and *delectat*, take the accusative.

Anger becomes wild beasts. | *Decet ira feræ.*

(710.) **RULE XIX. Double Accusative.**

(a) Two accusatives, one of the *person*, the other of the

thing, are used with verbs of *teaching, concealing, asking, or entreating*, and also with those verbs whose passives have a double nominative (694, 2, R.).

- | | |
|---|----------------------------------|
| (1.) <i>Who taught Epaminondas music?</i> | Quis musicam docuit Epaminondam. |
| (2.) <i>I conceal nothing from you.</i> | Nihil tē celo. |
| (3.) <i>I ask this of you earnestly.</i> | Hoc te vehementer rogo. |
| (4.) <i>Avarice renders men blind.</i> | Avaritia homines cæcos reddit. |

Rem. 1. With verbs of *asking, demanding*, the ablative with a preposition is used instead of one of the accusatives.

<i>The ambassadors were asking peace of Cæsar.</i>	Legati pacem a Cæsare poscebant.
--	----------------------------------

2. *Petere* and *postulare* always take the ablative with *ab*; and *quærere*, the ablative with *ab*, *de*, or *ex*.

(b) Two accusatives are used also with verbs compounded with *trans*.

<i>Cæsar led the army across the Rhine.</i>	Cæsar exercitum Rhenum transduxit.
---	------------------------------------

The *trans* is often repeated; e. g., Cæsar exercitum *trans* Rhenum transduxit.

Rem. 1. In the passive construction of verbs which take a double accusative, the *person* takes the nominative, but the *thing* generally remains in the accusative.

<i>I was asked my opinion.</i>	Ego rogatus sum sententiam.
<i>The multitude is led across the Rhine.</i>	Multitudo Rhenum transducitur.

2. But with verbs of *demanding* the ablative with a preposition is generally used.

<i>Money is demanded of me.</i>	Pecunia a me poscitur.
---------------------------------	------------------------

II. Accusative with Prepositions.

(711.) **RULE XX.** The accusative is used with the prepositions *ad, apud, ante, adversus, cis, citra, circa, circum, circiter, contra, erga, extra, infra, inter, intra, juxta, ob, penes, per, pone, post, præter, prope, propter, secundum, supra, trans, versus, ultra*. Also, with *in* and *sub*, when motion is expressed; with *super*, when it means *over*, and with *subter* nearly always.

III. Accusative according to the Usage of the Language.

(712.) **RULE XXI.** *Accusative of Measure.*—The accusative is used in answer to the questions *how far? how deep? how*

thick? how broad? how old? how long? (whether of *time* or *distance*).

<i>The city is two miles off.</i>	Urbs duo millia abest.
<i>The ditch is ten feet wide (deep, or long).</i>	Fossa decem pedes lata (alta, longa).
<i>Only one hour.</i>	Unam modo horam.
<i>Twenty years old.</i>	Viginti annos natus.

Rem. 1. *How far?* is sometimes answered by the ablative.

<i>Six miles from Cæsar's Camp.</i>	Millibus passuum sex a Cæsaris castris.
-------------------------------------	---

2. For *time how long*, the accusative with *per* is sometimes used, and sometimes the ablative alone.

<i>Through the whole night.</i>	Per totam noctem.
<i>He was absent six months.</i>	Sex mensibus absuit.

(713.) **RULE XXII. Accusative of Direction, Whither?**—The accusative is used with names of *towns* and *small islands*, in answer to the question, *whither?*

<i>To set out for Athens.</i>	Athenas proficisci.
-------------------------------	---------------------

Rem. 1. With names of *countries* or *large islands* the prepositions *in*, *ad*, must be used.

<i>He crossed into Europe.</i>	In Europam trajecit.
--------------------------------	----------------------

2. *Domus* and *rus* follow this rule.

<i>To go home.</i>	Ire domum.
<i>I will go into the country.</i>	Rus ibo.

(714.) **Greek Accusative.**—The accusative is used to express a special limitation.

<i>Naked as to his limbs.</i>	Nudus membra.
<i>For the most part (men) say so.</i>	Maximam partem ita dicunt.

Rem. This is a Greek usage, common in Latin poetry, but not in prose.

(715.) **Exclamations.**—The accusative is used in exclamations, either with or without an interjection.

<i>Miserable me!</i>	Me miserum.
<i>Behold, four altars!</i>	En quattuor aras.

[For the accusative with the infinitive, see 751.]

§ 8. Ablative.


(716.) **RULE XXIII. General Rule.**—The ablative is used to express the (1) *cause*; (2) *manner*; (3) *means, material*, or *instrument*; (4) *supply*.

1. *Cause*.—The ablative of cause is used with passive verbs, and with the participles *natus*, *genitus*, *ortus*, *contentus*.

The world is illuminated by the sun. | *Sole mundus illustratur.*

I am content with my lot. | *Sorte mea contentus sum.*

O thou, born of a goddess! | *Nate Dea!*

 If the cause be a *person* (or a thing *personified*), a or ab must be used with passive verbs.

The world was built by God. | *A Deo mundus ædificatus est.*

2. *Manner*.—(a) This ablative generally occurs in nouns *denoting* manner; e. g., *mos*, *modus*, *ratio*, &c.

In this way I wrote. | *Hoc modo scripsi.*

(b) With other nouns, *cum* is generally used, unless an *adjective* is joined with the noun.


He hears with pleasure. | *Cum voluptate audit.*

He bears the injury with firmness. | *Æquo animo fert injuriam.*

3. *Means, Material, Instrument*.—Ablative without a preposition.

To travel by horse, carriage, ships. | *Equo, curru, navibus, vehi.*

Bulls defend themselves with their horns. | *Cornibus tauri se tutantur.*

 If the instrument or means be a *person*, *per* or *propter* is used, with the accusative.

I was freed by you. | *Per te liberatus sum.*

4. *Supply*.—As supply may be either abundant or defective, the ablative is used with verbs and adjectives of *abounding*, *wanting*, *filling*, *emptying*, &c.; e. g., *abundare*, *egere*, *carere*, *inops*, *refertus*, *præditus*, &c.

Germany abounds in rivers. | *Germania fluminibus abundat.*

The mind is endowed with perpetual activity. | *Mens est prædita motu sempiterno.*

(717.) RULE XXIV. The ablative of the *thing needed*, and the dative of the *person*, are used with *opus est* (*there is need*).

We have need of a leader. | *Duce nobis opus est.*

Rem. If *opus est* be used personally, the *thing needed* is put in the nominative as subject.

Leaders are necessary for us. | *Duces nobis opus sunt.*

(718.) RULE XXV. The ablative is used with the *deponents* *utor*, *fruo*, *fungor*, *potior*, *vescor*.

To make use of advice. | *Consilio uti.*

They were enjoying peace. | *Pace fruebantur.*

Rem. Potior is used also with the genitive.

To obtain possession of all Gaul. | Totius Galliae potiri.

(719.) **RULE XXVI. Ablative of Price.**—The ablative is used with verbs of *buying, selling, valuing, &c.*; also with the adjectives *dignus* and *indignus*, to express the *price* or *value*.

He sold his country for gold.

Patriam auro vendidit.

Worthy of hatred.

Odio dignus.

That battle cost the blood of many.

Multorum sanguine ea victoria stetit.

☞ If the price or value be an *adjective*, it is generally put in the genitive (760).

(720.) **RULE XXVII. Ablative of Limitation.**—The ablative is used to denote the limitation generally expressed in English by *as to, in respect of, in regard to*.

Older (i. e., greater in age).

Major natu.

Skilled in the law.

Jure peritus.

In affection a son.

Pietate filius.

(721.) **RULE XXVIII. Ablative of Separation.**—The ablative is used with verbs of *removing, freeing, depriving*, and the like.

Cæsar removed his camp from the spot.

Cæsar castra loco movit.

The trees are stripped of leaves.

Arbores foliis nudantur.

Rem. Many of these verbs also take the prepositions *a, ab, de, ex*.

(722.) **RULE XXIX. Ablative of Quality.**—The ablative is used (with an adjective of quality) to express that one thing is a quality or property of another.

Cæsar was a man of consummate talent.

Cæsar summo fuit ingenio.

Agesilaus was a man of low stature.

Agesilaus statura fuit humili.

Rem. The genitive is also thus used (696).

(723.) **RULE XXX. Ablative of Comparison.**—The ablative is used with the comparative degree (*quam* being omitted) to express the object with which another is compared.

Cicero was more eloquent than Hortensius.

Cicero fuit eloquentior Hortensio.

(724.) RULE XXXI. *Ablative of Measure.*—The ablative of measure is used,

- (a) With *comparatives* and *superlatives*, to express the measure of excess or defect.
- (b) To express the measure of *time before or after* any event.

Much greater.

Themistocles lived many years before Demosthenes.

Multo major.

Themistocles permultis annis ante fuit quam Demosthenes.

(725.) RULE XXXII. *Ablative of Time When.*—The ablative is used to express the point of time at which anything occurs.

On the sixth day.

Sexto die.

Rem. The time *within which* anything occurs is expressed by the ablative with or without *in* or *de*.

Within ten years.

Decem annis.

Within those days.

In his diebus.

(726.) RULE XXXIII. *Ablative of Place.*

- (a) The place *whence* is expressed by the ablative.

He departed from Corinth.

Corintho profectus est.

- (b) The place *where* is expressed by the ablative, if the noun be of the *third* declension or *plural* number.

Alexander died at Babylon.

Alexander Babylone mortuus est.

At Athens.

Athenis.

Rem. If the noun be of the 1st or 2d declension singular, the genitive is used.

At Rome. At Corinth.

Romæ. Corinthi.

(Domi follows this rule.)

(727.) The ablative is used with the following prepositions.
viz. :

Absque, a, ab, abs, and de,

Coram, clam, cum, ex, and e,

Tenus, sine, pro, and præ.

Also with *in* and *sub* (implying *rest*, not *motion*), and *super*, when it means *upon*. *Subter* is sometimes, also, used with ablative.

(728.) RULE XXXIV. *Ablative with Compound Verbs.*—The ablative is used with some verbs compounded with a (*ab, abs*), *de, e* (*ex*), and *super*.

To be absent from the city.

Urbe abesse.

Cæsar resolved to desist from battle.

Cæsar præliū supersedere statuit.

Rem. The preposition is sometimes repeated.

To depart from life (= to die). | Exire de vita.

[For the Ablative Absolute, see 750.]

(729.) Verbs followed by genitive, dative, or ablative, where *we* use *no* preposition, and should therefore be likely to put the accusative. (Those with asterisks take also an accusative of the *thing*, though some of them only when the accusative is a neuter pronoun.)*

GENITIVE.			
obtain,	potior (abl.).	hurt,	noceo.
pity,	{ misereor.	indulge,	*indulgeo.
forget,	{ miserescor.	marry,	nubo.
remember,	{ obliviscor (acc.).	obey,	{ pareo.
recollect,	{ memini (acc.).		{ obedio.
require,	{ recorder (acc.).		{ obtempero.
need,	{ reminiscor (acc.).	pardon,	*ignosco.
	{ egeo } (abl.).	permit,	*permitto.
	{ indigeo }	persuade,	*persuadeo.
		please,	placeo.
		resist,	{ resisto.
		oppose,	{ repugno.
		rival,	æmulor (acc.).
		satisfy,	satisfacio.
		spare,	parco.
		suit,	convenio.
		threaten,	{ *minor.
			{ *minitor.
		trust,	{ fido }
			{ confido } (abl.).
DATIVE.		ABLATIVE.	
abuse,	{ maledico.	abuse,	abutor.
revile,	{ *suadeo.	discharge,	{ fungor.
advise,	{ *respondeo.	perform,	fruo.
answer,	credo.	enjoy,	potior (gen.).
believe,	*impero.	obtain,	{ egeo }
command,	*mando.	require,	{ indigeo } (gen.).
commission,	{ *gratulo.	need,	{ egeo }
charge,	{ displiceo.	want,	{ indigeo }
congratulate,	{ *præcipio.	use,	utor.
displease,	{ *invideo.	want,	{ careo.
direct,	faveo.	am without,	
envy.	adulor (acc.).		
favour,	*do.		
flatter,	{ auxilior.		
give,	{ opitulo.		
help,	{ subvenio.		
aid,	{ succorro.		
assist,	{ medeor.		
succour,			
heal,			
cure,			

III. USE OF THE INDEFINITE VERB.

§ 9. Infinitive.

(730.) RULE XXXV. *Infinitive as Subject*.—The infinitive is used as the *subject* of a verb, and is then regarded as a neuter noun.

To love (= loving) is pleasant. | Jucundum est amare.

* Arnold.

(731.) RULE XXXVI. *Infinitive as Complementary Object.*

—The infinitive is used (exactly as in English) to complete the imperfect ideas expressed by certain words.

I wish to learn.

| Cupio discere.

Worthy to be loved.

| Dignus amari.

Rem. 1. The complementary infinitive occurs after *verbs* denoting *to wish, to be able, to be accustomed, ought (debere), to hasten, &c.*; after the adjectives *dignus, indignus, audax, &c.*

2. Observe that this construction, which occurs after *all* verbs in English, can only stand in Latin after those expressing imperfect ideas, as above stated. A *purpose* cannot be expressed in Latin, as in English, by the simple infinitive; *e. g., he comes to learn = venit ut discat, not venit discere.*

(732.) *Historical Infinitive.*—In animated narrative the infinitive is sometimes used for the indicative.

The Romans hastened, made ready, &c.

| Romani festinare, parare, &c.

(This construction is quite common in Sallust.)

[For Accusative with Infinitive, see 751.]

§ 10. *Participle.*

(733.) RULE XXXVII. The participle agrees with its noun in gender, case, and number, and the active participle governs the same case as its verb.

The honoured man.

| Vir laudatus.

The blooming rose.

| Rosa florens.

I saw him reading a book.

| Eum legentem librum vidi.

(734.) The participle future active is used to express a *purpose* (where in English we should use *to, in order to*, with the infinitive).

Alexander goes to Jupiter Ammon, in order to inquire concerning his descent.

| Alexander ad Jovem Ammonem pergit, consulturus de origine sua.

(735.) The passive participle is often used to supply the place of a noun.

After Tarentum taken (= after the taking of Tarentum).

| Post Tarentum captum.

From the city built (= from the building of the city).

| Ab urbe condita.

[For Participle in Subordinate Sentences, see 749.]

§ 11. *Gerund*.

(736.) RULE XXXVIII. As the *infinitive* is used as a noun in the nominative or accusative, so the *gerund* is used in the remaining cases, and governs the same case as its verb.

Nom.	<i>Writing is useful.</i>		<i>Scribere est utile.</i>
Gen.	The art of <i>writing</i> is useful.		<i>Ars scribendi est utilis.</i>
Dat.	Paper is useful <i>for writing</i> .		<i>Charta scribendo est utilis.</i>
Acc.	{ I learn <i>writing</i> .		<i>Scribere disco.</i>
	{ I learn <i>during writing</i> .		<i>Inter scribendum discō.</i>
Abl.	We learn <i>by writing</i> .		<i>Scribendo discimus.</i>

Rem. 1. With a preposition the gerund in the accusative must be used, *not* the infinitive: *ad* (inter, ob) *scribendum*, *not* *ad* (inter, ob) *scribere*.

2. The general rules for the use of cases of nouns (695-728) apply to the cases of the infinitive and gerund, as above given.

Special Remark. The gerund is *not* used in the *dative* or *accusative* with an active government; *e. g.*, we can say *scribendi epistolas*, *of writing letters*, or *scribendo epistolas*, *by writing letters*, but *not* *charta utilis est scribendo* (*dat.*) *epistolas*, nor *charta utilis est ad scribendum literas*. In these last cases the *gerundive* must be used (738).

§ 12. *The Gerundive, or Verbal in dus, da, dum.*

(737.) RULE XXXIX. (a) The gerundive in the *nominative neuter* (*dum*) is used with the tenses of *esse*, to denote that an action *should* or *must* be done; and these may govern the case of the verb.

(One) *must write.* | *Scribendum est.*

(b) The person by whom the action *should* or *must* be done is put in the dative.

<i>I must write.</i>		<i>Scribendum est mihi.</i>
<i>Caius must write.</i>		<i>Scribendum est Caio.</i>
<i>One must use reason.</i>		<i>Ratione utendum est.</i>

(738.) RULE XL. (a) The gerundive is used with *esse*, in all cases and genders, as a verbal adjective, agreeing with the noun, to express *necessity* or *worthiness*.

<i>I am to be loved. she is to be loved, &c</i>		<i>Amandus sum; amanda es, &c.</i>
---	--	--

(b) When the person is specified, it must be put in the dative.

I must love Tullia.

All things were to be done by Cæsar at one time.

Tullia mihi amanda est.

Cæsari omnia uno tempore erant agenda.

Rem. a or ab with ablative is sometimes used instead of the dative.

My cause must be managed by the consuls.

A consulibus mea causa suscipienda est.

(739.) RULE XLI. The gerundive is used (*to express continued action*) as a verbal adjective, in all genders and cases (but the nominative) *agreeing* with the noun, instead of the gerund *governing* the noun; *e. g.*,

Gen. Of writing a letter.

Scribendæ epistolæ, instead of *scribendi epistolam*.

Dat. To or for writing letters.

Scribendis epistolis, instead of *scribendo epistolas*.

Acc. To write a letter.

Ad scribendam epistolam, instead of *ad scribendum epistolam*.

Abl. By, &c., writing a letter.

Scribenda epistola, instead of *scribendo epistolam*.

Rem. As observed in (736), the gerundive *must* be used for the dative or accusative of the gerund when it has an active government. It *may* be used for it in any other case, unless the object of the gerund is a neuter adjective or pronoun; *e. g.*, *of learning the true* = *vera discendi*, not *verorum discendorum*; *of hearing this* = *hóc audiendi*, not *hujus audiendi*.

§ 13. *Supines.*

(740.) RULE XLII. (1.) The supine in *um* is used with verbs of motion, to express the *design* of the motion, and governs the same case as its verb.

I come to ask you.

| Venio te rogatum.

(2.) The supine in *u* is used,

(a) With *adjectives*, to show in *what respect* they are used; *e. g.*,

Pleasant as to taste.

| Dulce gustatu.

(b) With the nouns *fas*, *nefas*, *opus*, in the same sense: *fas est dictu.*

PART II.

OF COMPOUND SENTENCES.

(741.) A compound sentence is one made up of two or more simple sentences. The sentences thus combined are either co-ordinate or subordinate.

I. CO-ORDINATE SENTENCES.

§ 14. *Classes of Co-ordinate Sentences.*

(742.) Co-ordinate sentences are united together, but yet *independent* of each other :* co-ordination is either,

- (a) *Copulative*; e. g., His father has abandoned him, and his friends have deserted him, *and* the son remains.
- (b) *Disjunctive*; e. g., Either his father has abandoned, *or* his friends have deserted him.
- (c) *Adversative*; e. g., His father has abandoned him, *but* his friends have not.
- (d) *Causal*; e. g., His friends will abandon him, *for* his father has done so.
- (e) *Conclusive*; e. g., His father has abandoned him, *therefore* his friends will desert him.

II. SUBORDINATE SENTENCES.

§ 15. *Classes of Subordinate Sentences.*

(743.) Subordinate sentences are so united to others (called *principal sentences*) as to be *dependent* upon them.

The messenger, <i>who was sent</i> , announced.		Nuntius, qui missus est, nuntiavit.
---	--	-------------------------------------

Here *the messenger announced* is the principal sentence; *who was sent*, the subordinate sentence.*

(744.) Subordinate sentences are of five classes :

- A. *Participial sentences.*
- B. *Accusative with infinitive.*
- C. *Conjunctive sentences, i. e.,* such as are introduced by a conjunction or adverb of time.
- D. *Relative sentences, i. e.,* such as are introduced by a relative word.
- E. *Interrogative sentences, i. e.,* such as are introduced by an interrogative word.

We shall treat these in order, premising a few remarks upon the use of the moods and tenses, which must be thoroughly understood.

§ 16. *The Moods.*

(745.) The verb expresses affirmation. The moods of the verb are used to vary the character of the affirmation.

* It must be obvious that *all co-ordinate* sentences are, for grammatical purposes, *principal* sentences. Moreover, the doctrines and rules applied to *simple sentences* (Part I.) are applicable to all *principal* sentences: it is only in *subordinate* sentences that difficulty is likely to occur. The pupil should, therefore, obtain as accurate a knowledge as possible of the various kinds of subordinate sentences, and the different modes of affirmation which they express, as it is upon these that their syntax depends.

1. By the *indicative*, affirmation of a fact is expressed ; e. g., *I write, I did not write.**
2. By the *subjunctive*, affirmation is expressed *doubtfully, contingently, or indefinitely* ; e. g., *I may write, if I should write, perhaps some (may) think.*
3. By the *imperative*, affirmation is expressed as an *injunction or request* ; e. g., *write.*

(746.) It must be obvious that in principal sentences the indicative mood chiefly occurs, and in subordinate sentences the subjunctive, as affirmations of fact are made more frequently in the former than in the latter. But,

- (a) The subjunctive is used (of course), even in principal sentences, when the affirmation is doubtful, contingent, or indefinite (745, 2).
- (b) The indicative is used, even in subordinate sentences, when the affirmation is positive.

True friendships are everlasting, because nature cannot be changed.	Veræ amicitiae sempiternæ sunt, quia natura mutari non potest.
--	---

§ 17. The Tenses.

(a) DIVISION.

(747.) The tenses are either primary or historical (647, R. 3).

	Present.	Future.	Pres. Perf.
(a) Primary,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{amat,} \\ \text{he loves.} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{amabit,} \\ \text{he will love.} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{amavit,} \\ \text{he has loved.} \end{array} \right.$
	Imperfect.	Pluperfect.	Perf. Aorist.
(b) Historical,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{amabat,} \\ \text{he was loving.} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{amaverat,} \\ \text{he had loved.} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{amavit,} \\ \text{he loved.} \end{array} \right.$

(b) SUCCESSION OF TENSES.

(748.) RULE XLIII. If there be a primary tense in the principal sentence, there must be a primary tense in the subordinate ; if an historical tense in the principal, an historical in the subordinate.

Principal.	Subordinate.	Principal.	Subordinate.
<i>I know</i>	what you <i>are doing.</i>	<i>Scio,</i>	quid agas.
<i>I was knowing</i>	what you <i>were doing.</i>	<i>Sciebam,</i>	quid ageres.
<i>I have learned</i>	what you <i>are doing.</i>	<i>Cognovi,</i>	quid agas.
<i>I learned</i>	what you <i>were doing.</i>	<i>Cognovi,</i>	quid ageres

(A.) § 18. Participial Sentences.

[The participle is used to abridge discourse, instead of a relative, adverb, or conjunction with a verb. Thus (1), Tarquin, *when he was expelled*

* Of course the action may be either positive or negative, without affecting the affirmation.

from Rome = Tarquin, expelled from Rome. (2) Cæsar, when the work was finished, departed = Cæsar, the work having been finished, departed

These are abridged subordinate sentences, (1) being called the *conjunctive participial construction*, and (2) the *ablative absolute*.]

(749.) *Conjunctive Participial Construction*.—The participle in a subordinate sentence which has for its subject the subject or object of the principal sentence, agrees with this last in gender, number, and case.

Aristides, when he was expelled from his country, fled to Lacedæmon.	Aristides, patria pulsus, Lacedæmonem fugit.
--	--

☞ Observe, in this example, that Aristides is the subject of both the principal and the subordinate sentence, and pulsus agrees with Aristides in gender, number, and case. In English such sentences are generally expressed by an adverb or conjunction with a verb.

(750.) *RULE XLIV. Ablative Absolute*.—If the subordinate sentence contains a noun and participle independent of the subject of the leading sentence, both noun and participle are placed in the ablative. (This construction is called the *ablative absolute*.)

When Tarquin was reigning, Pythagoras came into Italy.	Pythagoras, Tarquinio regnante, in Italiam venit.
All things having been provided, they appoint a day.	Omnibus rebus comparatis, diem dicunt.

Rem. Nouns, adjectives, and pronouns are often used in the ablative absolute without a participle.

Under the guidance of Nature (= Nature being guide).	Natura duce.
In the consulship of Manlius.	Manlio consule.

(B.) § 19. *Accusative with Infinitive*.

(751.) *RULE XLV*. Many subordinate sentences, which in English are introduced by the conjunction *that* (especially after verbs of *thinking, saying, knowing, &c.*), are expressed in Latin by the *accusative with the infinitive*.

They said that they did not fear the enemy.	Dicebant non se hostem vereri.
He knows that Cicero is eloquent.	Scit Ciceronem esse eloquentem.

Rem. 1. Observe that the *subject* of the sentence thus subordinated is put in the accusative, and the *predicate* in the infinitive. If the predicate contain an adjective, it must agree with the subject.


I perceive *that the water is cold.* | Sentio aquam frigidam esse.

2. The accusative with infinitive occurs chiefly,

(a) After verba sentiendi et dicendi (*thinking, feeling, perceiving, knowing, saying, announcing, willing, forbidding, &c.*).

(b) After such expressions as apparet (*it is evident*), constat (*it is known*), opus est, oportet, necesse est, justum est (*it is necessary, right, just, &c.*). In this case the accusative with infinitive becomes the *subject* of the entire sentence.

It is known to all *that the Romans were very brave.* | Constat inter omnes Romanos fuisse fortissimos.

 Oportet and necesse est may take the subjunctive, instead of the accusative with infinitive.

We ought (= it behooves us) *to practice virtue.* | Oportet nos virtuti studere; or Virtuti studeamus oportet.

(C.) § 20. Conjunctive Sentences.

Relation of Conjunctions to the Moods.

(752.) From what has been said (745, 746), it is obvious, that as the *moods* express the varieties of affirmation, and as the *conjunctions* are used to indicate different relations of thought (as *positive, conditional, causal, &c.*), there must be a close connexion between the use of the conjunctions and that of the moods. It must be borne in mind, however, that the *nature of the affirmation* (except, perhaps, in purely idiomatic expressions) decides both the mood and the conjunction that shall be used. It cannot properly be said, therefore, that the conjunctions *govern* the moods; but, for convenience' sake, we treat them together.

GENERAL RULE.

(753.) The subjunctive is used in all subordinate sentences in which affirmation is expressed as *dependent* upon some previous affirmation, either as *purpose, aim, consequence, condition, or imaginary comparison.*

SPECIAL RULES.

1. *Final Conjunctions, ut, ne, quin, quo, quominus.*

(754.) RULE XLVI. The subjunctive is used in sentences expressing a *purpose* or a *consequence*, introduced by the final conjunctions *ut, ne, quin, quo, quominus.*

1. Ut, ne, expressing *purpose*.

I did not write that <i>in order to</i>	Ea non ut te instituerem
<i>instruct you.</i>	scripsi.

I beseech you <i>not to do this.</i>	Te obsecro ne hoc facias.
--------------------------------------	---------------------------

2. Ut, expressing *consequence*.

The soldiers went with <i>such violence that the enemy took themselves to flight.</i>	Eo impetu milites ierunt, ut hostes se fugæ mandarent.
---	--

(3.) Quo is used to express a purpose, instead of ut, especially when a comparative enters into the sentence.

Cæsar erects forts, <i>that he may the more easily keep off the</i>	Cæsar castella communit, quo facilius Helvetios prohibere possit.
Helvetians.	

(4.) Quin is used in the sense of "but that" (*as not*, &c.) after negative sentences, and after non dubito, non dubium est, &c.

<i>There is no one but thinks.</i>	Nemo est quin putet.
<i>It is not doubtful but that the soldiers will fight bravely.</i>	Non dubium est quin milites fortiter pugnaturi sint.

(5.) Quominus is used (in preference to ne) after verbs of *hindering, preventing, standing in the way of*, &c. (It can generally be rendered in English by "*of*" or "*from*" with a participle.)

Nothing hinders him <i>from doing this.</i>	Nihil impedit quominus hoc faciat.
---	------------------------------------

2. Conditional Conjunctions, si, nisi, dum, dummodo, modo.

(755.) RULE XLVII. Conditional conjunctions take the indicative if the condition is expressed as *real* or *certain*, the subjunctive, where it is not.

<i>If he has any money, he will give it (it is uncertain whether he has any).</i>	Si pecuniam habeat, dabit.
---	----------------------------

Rem. 1. If the condition is represented, as *impossible* or *unreal*, (1) the imperfect subjunctive must be used for present or future time (2) the pluperfect subjunctive for past time.

(1) <i>If he had any money, he would give it (but he has none).</i>	Si pecuniam haberet, daret.
(2) <i>If he had had any money, he would have given it.</i>	Si pecuniam habuisset, dedisset.

Rem. 2. As dum, dummodo, modo, in the sense of *provident that*, can never express a *real*, existing condition, they always take the subjunctive.

3. *Concessive Conjunctions* (683, 5).

(756.) The *concessive conjunctions* take the indicative when they introduce a definite statement of fact, but the subjunctive when something is expressed as possible, not actual. *Etsi*, *quamquam*, and *tametsi* are used principally in the *former* sense; in the *latter*, *etiamsi* more commonly, and *licet* and *quamvis** nearly always. Hence,

RULE XLVIII. *Licet* and *quamvis* (*although*) are always followed by the subjunctive: *etiamsi*, generally.

Though truth should obtain no defender.

Veritas licet nullum defensorem obtineat.

The wise man endures pain patiently, *even though it be grievous.*

Sapiens dolorem patienter tolerat, quamvis acerbus sit.

Rem. The comparative conjunctions, when used concessively, *velut*, *quasi*, *acsi*, *tanquam*, &c. (meaning *as if*, *as though*), always take the subjunctive, for the reason given (756) for *licet* and *quamvis*.

Why do I use witnesses, *as though the matter were doubtful?*

Quid testibus utor, quasi res dubia sit?

4. *Temporal Conjunctions.*

(757.) *Temporal conjunctions* (*when*, *after that*, *as soon as*, *just as*, &c.) of course generally take the *indicative*.

After Caesar drew up the line of battle.

Postquam Cæsar aciem instruxit.

Every animal, as soon as it is born.

Omne animal, simulac ortum est.

SPECIAL REMARKS.

(A.) *Quum* has two uses: *temporal* and *causal*.

(a) *Temporal.*

1. As a *pure particle of time*, *quum* takes the indicative.
2. In *historical narrative* (especially where the principal clause has the indicative perfect) *quum* temporal is followed by the *subjunctive* imperfect or pluperfect.

When *Cæsar had conquered Pompey*, he crossed over into *Italy*.

Cæsar, quum Pompeium vicisset, in Italiam trajecit.

[In many such cases, the action introduced by *when* is in some sense the *cause* of the action in the principal sentence.]

* *Quamvis* is used by the later writers in the sense of *quamquam*, with the indicative:

(b) *Quum* causal, expressing the relation of *cause* and *effect* (*since, because, although*), obviously requires the *subjunctive*.

Since *these things are so.*

| *Quæ cum ita sint.*

Hence,

RULE XLIX. *Quum* causal is always followed by the *subjunctive*; and *quum* temporal by the imperfect or pluperfect *subjunctive*, when the aorist perfect indicative is used in the principal sentence.

(B.) *Antequam* and *priusquam* are used,

1. To express simple *priority* of one action to another, and here the *indicative* is obviously required.

All these things were done before
Verres touched Italy.

| *Hæc omnia ante facta sunt*
quam Verres Italiam attigit.

2. To express a *connexion* between one action and another, and here the *subjunctive* is obviously required.

Before Cæsar attempted anything,
he orders Divitiacus to be sum-
moned.

| *Cæsar, priusquam quidquam*
conaretur, Divitiacum ad se
vocari jubet.

3. To introduce a *general* or *indefinite* statement, requiring, of course, the *subjunctive*.

The tempest threatens before it
rises.

| *Tempestas minatur, antequam*
surgat.

(C.) *Dum, donec, quoad*, in the sense of *until*, take the *subjunctive* when the affirmation is expressed as *possible* or *future*.

He was unwilling to leave the
spot until Milo came.

| *Dum Milo veniret, locum relin-*
quere nolit.

[For interrogatives, see § 22.]

(D.) § 21. *Relative Sentences.*

(758.) In the compound sentence, "the messenger, *who was sent*, announced," the clause "the messenger announced" is the principal sentence; and the clause "*who was sent*" the relative sentence. The word "messenger" is the *antecedent* of the relative "*who*."

1. *Agreement.*

(759.) RULE L. The relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number; but its *case* depends upon the construction of the relative sentence.

The bridge which was at Geneva
he orders to be cut down.

| *Pontem, qui erat ad Genevam,*
jubet rescindi.

This was a kind of fighting in <i>which the Germans had exercised themselves</i>	Genus hoc erat pugnae, quo Germani se exercuerant.
---	--

Rem. The verb in the relative sentence takes the *person* of the antecedent.

We who write.

| Nos qui scribimus.

2 The Moods in Relative Sentences.

(760.) (a) The *indicative* mood occurs in the relative sentence only when it states a fact distinctly, with reference to a particular subject.

The messenger who was sent. | Nuntius qui missus est.

(b) But *qui* is used in Latin very commonly (1) to avoid the use of a conjunction, and (2) to introduce indefinite statements, or the words or opinions of another; and in such cases is always followed by the subjunctive.

(761.) **RULE LI.** The subjunctive is used in relative sentences expressing the *purpose*, *result*, or *ground* of the principal sentence.

1. Purpose (*qui* = *ut* with demonstrative).

They sent ambassadors <i>to sue for</i> (= <i>who should sue for</i>) peace.	Miserunt legatos, qui pacem peterent (= <i>ut</i> ii pacem peterent).
--	---

2. Result (*qui* = *ut* after *is*, *tam*, *talis*, *dignus*, *ita*, &c.).

<i>I am not the man to do this</i> (= I am not such who can do).	Non is sum qui hoc faciam.
--	----------------------------

<i>Pollio is worthy of our love</i> (= worthy, whom we may love).	Dignus est Pollio, quam diligamus.
---	------------------------------------

3. Ground or cause (*qui* = *cur* or *quod*).

You err, <i>who think</i> (= <i>because you think</i>)—	Erras qui censeas—
--	--------------------

Hannibal did wrong in wintering (= <i>because he wintered</i>) at Capua.	Male fecit Hannibal qui Capuam hiemarit.
--	--

(762.) **RULE LII.** The subjunctive is used in relative sentences containing *indefinite statements*, especially after the words *there are*, *there can be found*, *there is no one*, &c.

There are those who say.

| Sunt qui dicant.

I have nothing *whereof to accuse*
(= no reason to blame) old age.

| Nihil habeo quod incusem senectutem.

Rem. When the sentence introduced by the relative expresses the

sentiments of another (rather than of the writer), the subjunctive is used.

<i>The Helvetians determined to get together those things which (they thought) belonged to marching (were necessary for setting out).</i>	<i>Helvetii constituerunt ea quæ ad proficiscendum pertinerent comparare.</i>
---	---

§ 22. Interrogative Sentences.

1. Questions.

(763.) Questions are often expressed in English without any interrogative word; e. g., *Is Caius writing?* but in the Latin, almost invariably, an interrogative word is used. These are either (a) interrogative particles, (b) interrogative pronouns, or (c) interrogative adverbs or conjunctions.

(a) *Interrogative Particles*: ne, nonne, num, utrum, an.

(1.) Ne simply asks for information.

<i>Is Caius writing?</i>	<i>Scribitne Caius?</i>
--------------------------	-------------------------

(2.) Nonne expects the answer YES.

<i>Do you not think the wise man happy?</i>	<i>Nonne putas sapientem beatum esse?</i>
---	---

(3.) Num expects the answer NO.

<i>Do you think the fool happy?</i>	<i>Num putas stultum esse beatum?</i>
-------------------------------------	---------------------------------------

(4.) Utrum is used in *double* questions, with an (*whether—or*).

(Whether) is that your fault or ours?	<i>Utrum ea vestra an nostra culpa est?</i>
---------------------------------------	---

(b) *Interrogative Pronouns*: quis, qui, qualis, quantus, ecquis, &c.

Who taught <i>Epaminondas music?</i> &c.	<i>Quis Epaminondam musicam docuit?</i>
--	---

(c) *Interrogative Adverbs or Conjunctions*: quare, cur, quando, ubi, quomodo, &c.

(764.) Questions are either *direct* or *indirect*: direct, when they are not dependent on any word or sentence going before; e. g., *Is Caius writing?* Indirect, when they are so dependent; e. g., *Tell me if Caius is writing.*

2. Use of the Moods in Questions.

(a) Direct.

(765.) In *direct* questions the *indicative* is used when the question is put *positively*, and the *subjunctive* when it is put *doubtfully*; e. g.,

(Positive.) <i>What are you doing?</i>	<i>Quid agis? (Indic.)</i>
--	----------------------------

(Doubtful.) <i>What can we do?</i>	<i>Quid agamus?</i>
------------------------------------	---------------------

(b), *indirect.*

(766.) RULE LIII. In *indirect* questions the *subjunctive* is always used.

I do not know <i>what</i> book you are reading.	Nescio quem librum legas.
Tell me <i>what</i> you are doing.	Dic, quid agas.

§ 23. Oratio Obliqua.

1. Nature of Oratio Obliqua.

(767.) When any one relates the words or opinions of another, he may do it in two ways :

- (a) He may represent him as speaking in the *first person*, and give his words precisely as they were uttered; e. g., Ariovistus said, "*I have crossed the Rhine*"—Ariovistus dixit, Rhenum transii. This is called *oratio recta*, *direct discourse*.
- (b) He may *state* the substance of what the speaker said in narrative form; e. g., Ariovistus said *that he had crossed the Rhine*—Ariovistus dixit se Rhenum transisse. This is called *oratio obliqua*, *indirect discourse*.

2. The Moods in the Oratio Obliqua.

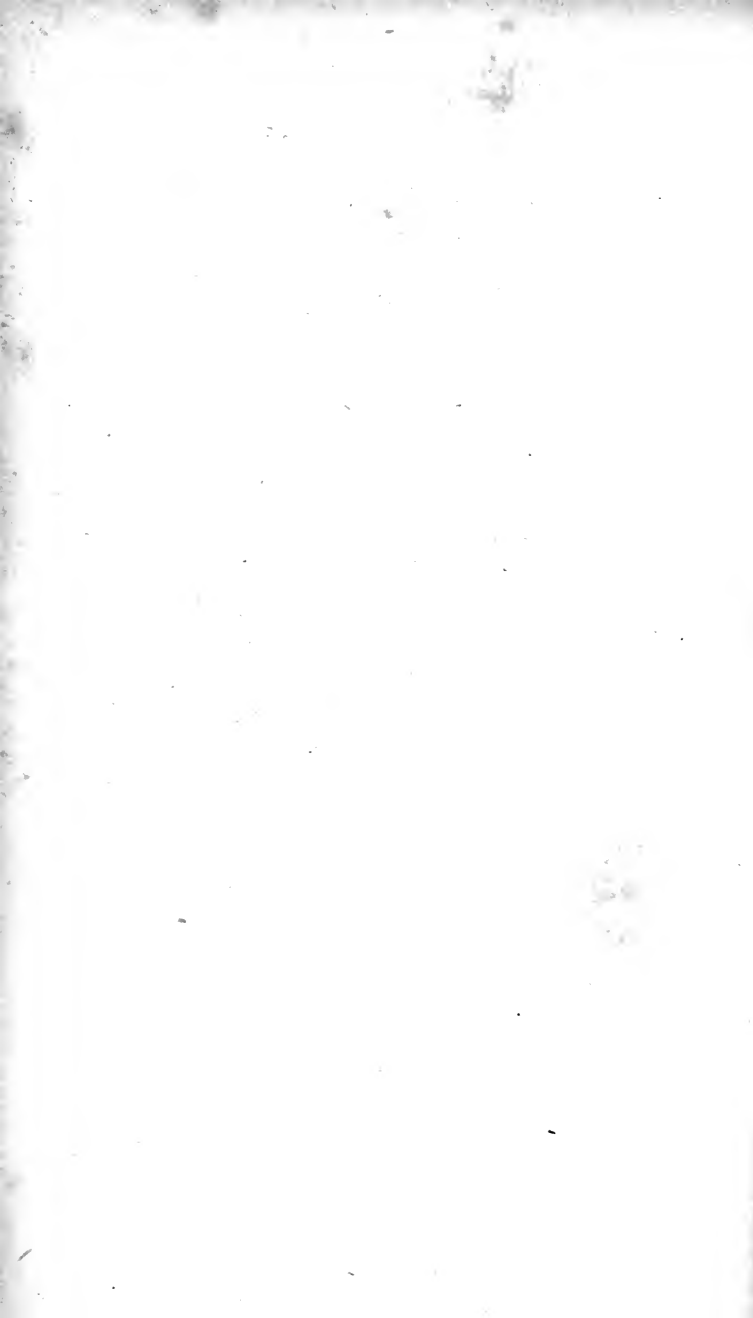
(768.) The sentences introduced in the *oratio obliqua* are either *principal* or *subordinate*; e. g., Ariovistus said that he would not wage war on the Æduans if they paid the tribute yearly. Here the sentence *that he would not wage war upon the Æduans* is a principal sentence, and *if they paid the tribute yearly* is a subordinate sentence.

(769.) RULE LIV. (a) *Principal sentences* in the *oratio obliqua* are expressed by the accusative with the infinitive; e. g., Ariovistus dixit, se Æduis bellum non esse illaturum.

Rem. If the principal sentence contains a *command* or *wish*, it is expressed by the *subjunctive*; e. g.,

The leader said <i>that the troops</i> <i>should consult their own safety.</i>	Dux dixit, milites suæ salutis sulerent.
---	---

(b) *Subordinate sentences* in *oratio obliqua* always take the *subjunctive*; e. g., Ariovistus dixit, se Æduis bellum non esse illaturum, si stipendium quotannis penderent (*if they paid the tribute yearly*).



APPENDICES



APPENDIX I.

OF PROSODY.

§ 1. Quantity.

[THE rules of quantity in Lesson XLII. should be reviewed, and the following additional rules learned.]

1. Penults.

(770.) DISSYLLABIC SUPINES lengthen the penult; *e. g.*, visum.

Rem. The following are short, viz.:

Datum, ratum, satum, statum, itum,
Citum, litum, situm, rutum, quitum.

(771.) REDUPLICATED PERFECTS shorten both penult and antepenult, *e. g.*, cecidi, didici.

Rem. Penult is long in cecidi (cædere) and pēpēdi (pēdere).

(772.) In ADJECTIVE PENULTS observe the following:

1. *Short Penults*: -acus, -icus, -idus, -imus; *e. g.*, Ægyptiācus, modicus, cupidus, legitimus.

Exceptions.—Merācus, opācus, amicus, apricus, anticus, posticus, mendicus, umbilicus, fidus, infidus, bimus, trimus (of two, three years, &c.), matrīnus, opīmus, patrīnus, imus, primus.

2. *Long Penults*: -ālis, -ānus, ūdus, ūtus, with all before -rus, -vus, -sus; *e. g.*, dotālis, montānus, percrūdus, astātus, avārus, sincērus, delirus, decōrus, octāvus, æstivus, famōsus.

Exc.—Infēri, postēri, barbārus, opipārus.

3. *Penults sometimes long, sometimes short*: -ilis, -inus.

(a) -ilis, from verbs, is short; from nouns, long; *e. g.*, facilis (*short*); civilis (*long*). Exilis, subtilis, and the names of months (Aprilis &c.), are long.

(b) -inus, from nouns denoting time or material, is short; from other words, long; *e. g.*, crastinus, elephantinus (*short*); caninus, Latinus (*long*).

2. Compound Words.

(773.) Compound words generally retain the quantity of the simple words; *e. g.*, per+lēgo = perlēgo; per+lēgi = perlēgi.

Rem. 1. A change of vowels does not affect the rule; $e + l\ddot{e}go = el\ddot{i}go$.

2. *Dejĕro*, *pejĕro* (*jĕro*); *maledĭcus*, &c. (*dĭco*); *cognĭtum*, *agnĭtum* (*nĭtum*), are short, though the simple words are long.

(774.) *a*, *ē*, *dē*, *dī*, *prō*, *sē*, in composition are long, but *rē* is short.

Exc.—*Dirimo*, *dĭsertus*, *rĕfert*. *Pro* is short in Greek words, and in the compounds of *cello*, *fanum*, *fari*, *fateor*, *festus*, *fugio*, *fundo*, *nepos*, *neptis*, *torvus*; also in *prōficiscor*. In *prōpago*, *prōpino*, it is doubtful.*

(775.) If the first part of a compound word end in *a*, it is generally long; if in *e*, *i*, or *u*, generally short; *e. g.*, *trāduco*, *trādo* (contracted from *trans*); *trēcenti*, *agrĭcola*, *quadrūpes*.

§ 2. *Rhythm, Arsis, Thesis, Verse, Feet.*

(776.) (a) By *Rhythm* we mean a regular alternation of elevations (stress) and depressions of the voice. In poetry this alternation follows certain fixed laws.

(b) The effort of voice by which stress is laid upon one syllable is called *Ictus*, or rhythmical accent. A syllable so raised by the ictus stands in the *Arsis*. The syllable or syllables on which the voice rests or sinks are said to be in the *Thesis*.

(c) A *Foot* is formed by the union of arsis and thesis. A combination of feet forms a *Verse*.

Thus, in the line *vīsĕrĕ mōntēs*, the ictus falls on the syllables marked with the accent; *vīs* and *mōn*, therefore, are in the arsis, *sĕrĕ* and *tēs* in the thesis. The union of arsis and thesis in *vīsĕrĕ* forms a foot; so also in *mōntēs*. The combination of these two feet forms the verse

Vīsĕrĕ mōntēs.

(d) A *Dactyl* is a foot composed of one long syllable (arsis) and two short syllables (thesis); *e. g.*, *vīsĕrĕ*: a *Spondee* of two long (arsis and thesis); *e. g.*, *mōntēs*.

§ 3. *Scanning.*

(777.) **SCANNING** is the measuring of a verse into the feet which compose it. Observe the following points in scanning:

1. *Synalæpha* cuts off a vowel at the end of a word when the next word begins with a vowel or *h*; *e. g.*, instead of *regina ad*, we read *regin' ad*; instead of *atque hinc*, *atqu' hinc*.
2. *Ecthlipsis* cuts off *m* with the vowel before it at the end of a word

* The following lines contain the exceptions:

*At rape quæ fundo, fugio, neptisque, neposque,
Et cello, fari, fateor, fanumque, festumque;
Atque procus, proficiscor, cumque propheta, profecto.*

when the next begins with a vowel; *e. g.*, instead of *ignōtum est*, we read *ignōt' est*.

3. The last syllable of a word ending with a consonant is always long if the next word begins with a consonant; *e. g.*, *manibūs tremor*; here *būs* (naturally short) is made long.
4. *Synæresis* contracts two syllables into one; *e. g.*, *aurēā* into *aurēā* (pronounced *aurya*).
5. *Diæresis* divides one syllable into two; *e. g.*, *pictæ*, *pictai*.

§ 4. *Hexameter Verse.*

(778.) (a) **HEXAMETER** verse is so called because it has *six measures*, of a foot each. The first *four* feet may be either dactyls or spondees; the *fifth* is regularly a dactyl, the *sixth* a spondee.

1.	2.	3.	4.	5.	6.
Séd fūgīt	intērē-	ā fūgīt	irrēpā-	rābīlē	tēmpūs.
īnfān-	dūm Rē-	gīnā jū-	bēs rēnē-	vārē dō-	lōrēm.

Rem. 1. Sometimes a spondee is found in the 5th place, especially when anything grave or solemn is expressed. The line is then called *spondaic*.

2. The final syllable of a verse is always reckoned *long*; *e. g.*, *rem*, in *dolorem*.

(b) *Cæsura* is the separation, by the end of a word, of syllables entering into a foot. If the feet of a verse be marked off like bars in music, whenever a bar falls in the middle of a word there is a *cæsura*; *e. g.*, the following hexameter has *five* *cæsuras*:

Illē la- | tūs nīvē- | ūm mōl- | lī fūl- | tūs, hŷā- | cīnthō.

(c) The *cæsural pause* in hexameter verse is a pause or rest of the voice on a *cæsural syllable*, designed to give harmony to the entire verse.

- (1.) The most approved *cæsural pause* (*the heroic*) falls on the arsis of the *third foot*, as in the following examples:

Séd fūgīt	intērē-	a	fūgīt	irrēpā	rābīlē	tēmpūs.
Illē lā-	tūs nīvē	ūm	mōl-	lī fūl	tūs hŷā-	cīnthō.

- (2.) Next in excellence is the *cæsural pause* in the thesis of the third foot, or in the arsis of the fourth. Occurring in other places, it mars the harmony of the verse.

E E

APPENDIX II.

(779.)

GREEK NOUNS.

1st Decl.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Ænē-ās, æ, æ, am (an), ā, ā.} \\ \text{Anchis-es, æ, æ, ēn, ē, ē. Voo. sometimes ā and ā} \\ \text{Pēnēlōp-ē, ēs, æ, ēn, ē, ē.} \end{array} \right.$					
2d Decl.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Del-ōs, i, o, um, or ōn, e, o.} \\ \text{Orph-eūs, eī, eo, eum, or ēā, eū eo.} \\ \text{(or, N. eūs, G. eos, D. ēi (ēi), Acc. ēā poetical.)} \\ \text{Ath-ōs, ō, ō, ōn, or ō, ōs, ō. (In Greek, ως.)} \\ \text{Poēs-is, is, } \left\{ \begin{array}{l} i, im, \end{array} \right\} \text{ is, i. } \left \begin{array}{l} es, eōn \text{ (ībus not found).} \\ \text{(eos,) } \text{ (in,) } \end{array} \right.$					
3d Decl.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Nerē-is,} \\ \text{G. Nerēid-is, } \left\{ \begin{array}{l} i, em, \end{array} \right\} \text{ (Nerēi), ē. } \left \begin{array}{l} es, um, ibus, es. \\ \text{(ōs,) } \text{ (ā,) } \end{array} \right. \text{ (ās.) } \\ \text{Pericl-ēs, is, } \left\{ \begin{array}{l} i, em, \end{array} \right\} \text{ es, } \left\{ \begin{array}{l} e. \\ i, \end{array} \right\} \text{ ea, } \left\{ \begin{array}{l} e, \\ e, \end{array} \right\} \\ \text{Did-ō, ūs, ō, ō, ō. } \left \text{ (also, ōnis, \&c.)} \end{array} \right.$					

Obs. Neuters in *a*, gen. *ātis*, have dat. plur. in *ātis*; thus: *poēma*, dat. plur. *poēmātis*, not *poēmatibus*.

(780.)

EXAMPLES OF PATRONYMICS

(OR NAMES FROM A FATHER OR ANCESTOR).

	Ænēas,	Anchises,	Tyndārus,	Theseus,	Atlas (antis).
Masc.	Æneādes,	Anchisiādes,	Tyndarīdes,	Thesīdes,*	Atlantīdes,
					Atlantiādes.
Fem.	(Æneīs),	Anchisias,	Tyndāris,	Thesēis,	Atlantis,
					Atlantias.

(781.)

EXAMPLES OF NAMES

(DERIVED FROM ONE'S TOWN OR NATIVE COUNTRY).

Masc.	Persa,	Cres,	Tros,	Thrax,	Laco (Lacon),	Phoenix.
Fem.	Persis,	Cressa,	Troas,	Threissa,	Lacena,	Phænissa.
		Cretis,		Thressa.		
Romānus	Clusīnus	Atheniensis	Abderītēs (fem., Abderītis).			
(Roman).	(of Clusium).	(an Athenian).	(of Abdera).			
	Milesius		Arpīnas			
	(of Miletus).		(of Arpinum).			

* For *Thesēides*. Hence *ides* comes from nom. in *eus*.


APPENDIX III.

(782.)

THE CALENDAR.

(1.) THE Roman months had the same number of days as ours, but were differently divided.

1. The *Kalends* were the 1st day of the month.
2. The *Nones* " 5th or 7th day of the month.
3. The *Ides* " 13th or 15th day of the month.

 We make in *March, July, October, May,*
The *Nones* the *seventh*, the *Ides* the *fifteenth* day.

In all the other months the 5th and 13th were used.

(2.) The names of the months are used as adjectives agreeing with *Kalendæ, Nonæ, and Idus.*

<i>The 1st of January.</i>	<i>Kalendis Januariis.</i>
<i>The 5th of June.</i>	<i>Nonis Juniis.</i>
<i>The 13th of September.</i>	<i>Idibus Septembribus.</i>

(3.) (a) Instead of beginning at the 1st of the month and numbering the days regularly 2d, 3d, &c., as we do, the Romans counted them backward from the *Kalends, Nones, and Ides*. Thus, the 2d of January was called the 4th day before the *Nones of January*, *quarto (die ante) Nonas Januarias*; the 3d, *tertio Nonas*; the 4th, *pridie Nonas*; the 5th, *Nonis*.

(b) From the above cases it will be seen that the day with which the reckoning commences is included (except *pridie*), i. e., the 2d day before the *Nones* is *tertio Nonas*; the 3d day before, *quarto Nonas*, &c.

<i>The 13th of October.</i>	<i>Tertio (die ante) Idus Octobres.</i>
<i>The 3d of June.</i>	<i>Tertio (die ante) Nonas Junias.</i>

(c) Special care must be taken, in designating any day between the *Ides* of one month and the *Kalends* of another, to ensure correctness. Thus, III. (die ante) *Kalend. Januar.* will be December 30; but III. *Kal. Maias* = 29th April, inasmuch as December has 31 days and April but 30. So III. *Kal. Martias* = 27th February.

(4.) The following table, exhibiting the correspondence between the Roman calendar and ours, can now be readily understood :

The Days of our Months.	March, May, July, and October (have 31 days).	January, August, and December (have also 31 days).	April, June, September, and November (have 30 days).	February (has 28, and in Leap-years 29 days).
1.	<i>Kalendis.</i>	<i>Kalendis.</i>	<i>Kalendis.</i>	<i>Kalendis.</i>
2.	VI. } ante	IV. } ante	IV. } ante	IV. } ante
3.	V. } ante	III. } Nonas.	III. } Nonas.	III. } Nonas.
4.	IV. } Nonas.	Pridie Nonas.	Pridie Nonas.	Pridie Nonas.
5.	III. } Nonis.	Nonis.	Nonis.	Nonis.
6.	Pridie Nonas.	VIII. }	VIII. }	VIII. }
7.	Nonis.	VII. }	VII. }	VII. }
8.	VIII. }	VI. } ante	VI. } ante	VI. } ante
9.	VII. }	V. } Idus.	V. } Idus.	V. } Idus.
10.	VI. } ante	IV. }	IV. }	IV. }
11.	V. } Idus.	III. }	III. }	III. }
12.	IV. }	Pridie Idus.	Pridie Idus.	Pridie Idus.
13.	III. }	Idibus.	Idibus.	Idibus.
14.	Pridie Idus.	XIX. }	XVIII. }	XVI. }
15.	Idibus.	XVIII. }	XVII. }	XV. }
16.	XVII. }	XVII. }	XVI. }	XIV. }
17.	XVI. }	XVI. }	XV. }	XIII. }
18.	XV. }	XV. }	XIV. }	XII. }
19.	XIV. }	XIV. }	XIII. }	XI. }
20.	XIII. }	XIII. }	XII. }	X. }
21.	XII. }	XII. }	XI. }	IX. }
22.	XI. }	XI. }	X. }	VIII. }
23.	X. }	X. }	IX. }	VII. }
24.	IX. }	IX. }	VIII. }	VI. }
25.	VIII. }	VIII. }	VII. }	V. }
26.	VII. }	VII. }	VI. }	IV. }
27.	VI. }	VI. }	V. }	III. }
28.	V. }	V. }	IV. }	Prid. Kalendas
29.	IV. }	IV. }	III. }	Martias.
30.	III. }	III. }	Prid. Kalendas	
31.	Prid. Kalendas (of the following month).	Prid. Kalendas (of the following month).	(of the following month).	

(5.) The 5th day before the Kalends of April (for instance) may be expressed in three ways :

(a) Die quinto ante Kalendas Apriles.

(b) Quinto Kalendas Apriles.

(c) Ante diem quintum Kalendas Apriles; or, abbreviated, a. d. V. Kal. Apr.

APPENDIX IV.

ABBREVIATIONS.

(783.) THE following abbreviations of words occur in Latin authors.

(a)

NAMES.

A. Aulus.	M'. Manius.	Sept. Septimius.
Ap. Appius.	M. Marcus.	Serv. Servius.
C. Caius.	Mam. Mamercus.	Sex. Sextus.
Cl. Claudius.	M. T. C. Marcus Tulli-	Sp. Spurius.
Cn. Cnæus.	us Cicero.	T. Titus.
D. Decimus.	N. Numerius.	Ti. or } Tiberius.
D. Decius.	P. Publius.	Tib. }
L. Lucius.	Q. Quintus.	Tull. Tullius.

(b)

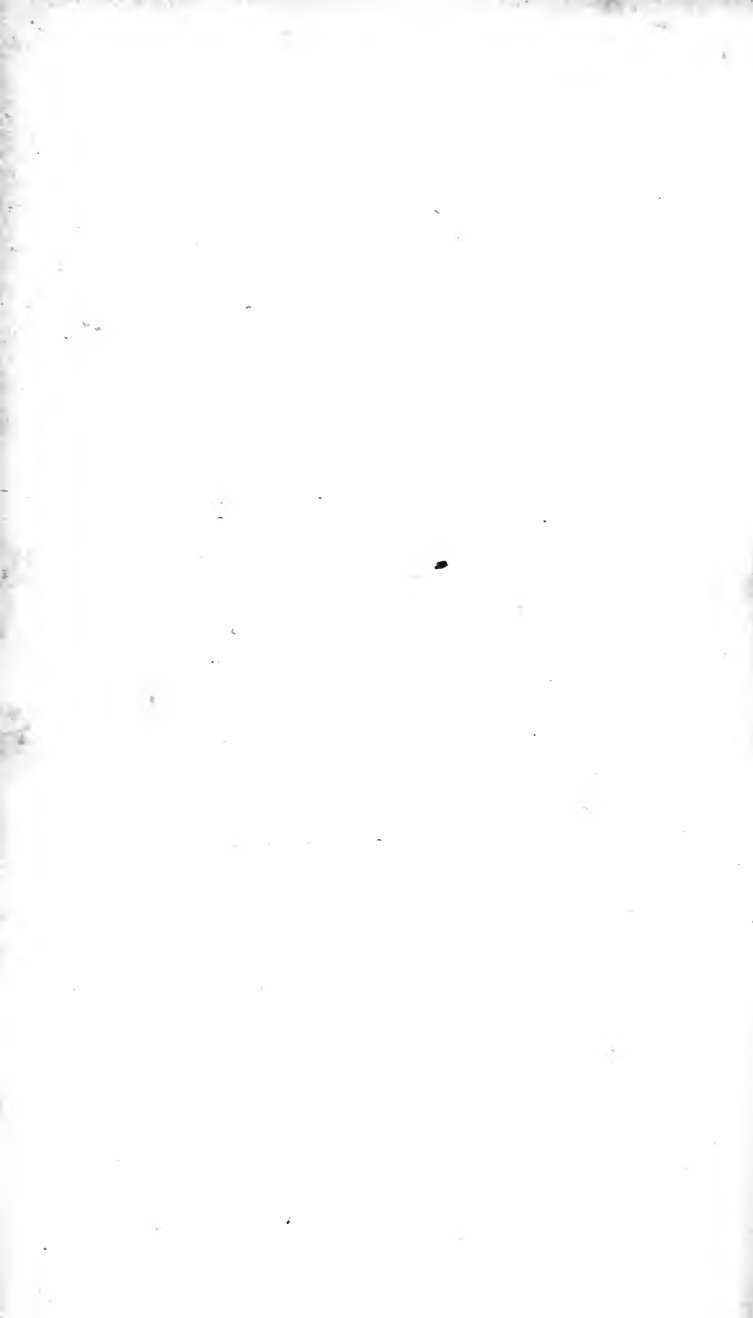
PUBLIC EXPRESSIONS.

Æd. Ædilia.	Id. Idus.	Pr. Prætor.
Aug. Augustus.	Imp. Imperator.	Præf. Præfectus.
Cal. or } Kalendæ.	Imp. Imperatores.	Pont. Max. Pontifex
Kal. }	Non. Nonæ.	Maximus.
Cos. Consul.	O. M. Optimus Maxi-	Resp. Respublica.
Coss. Consules.	mus.	S. Senatus.
D. Divus.	P. C. Patres Con-	S. C. Senatus consul-
Des. Designatus.	scripti.	tum.
Eq. Rom. Eques Ro-	Pl. Plebis.	S. P. Q. R. Senatus po-
manus.	Pop. Populus.	pulusque Rom.
F. Filius.	P. R. Populus Rom.	Tr. Tribunus.

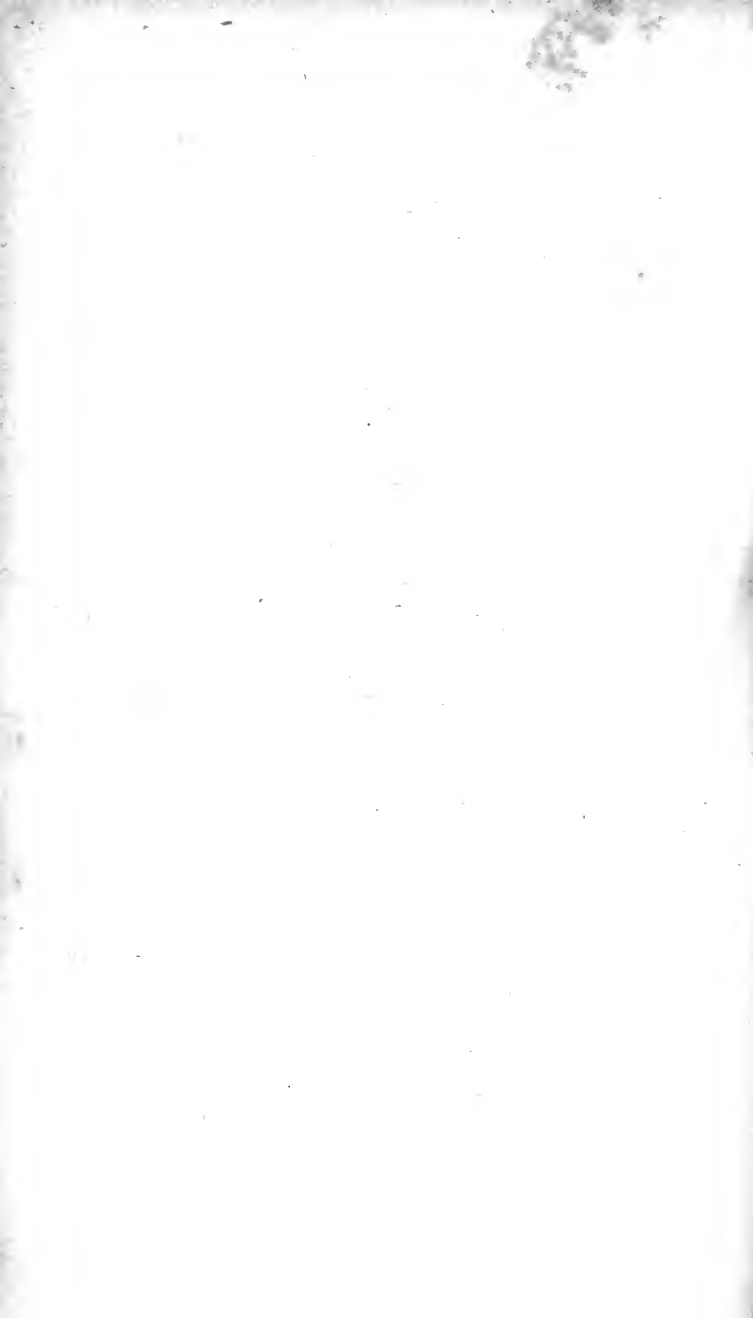
(c)

OTHER ABBREVIATIONS.

A. Anno.	S. Salutem.
A. C. Anno currente.	S. P. D. Salutem dicit plurimam
A. pr. Anno præterito.	c. caput.
A. M. Anno mundi.	cf. confer.
A. Chr. Anno Christi.	e. g. exempli gratia.
A. D. Anno Domini.	i. e. id est.
A. U. C. Anno urbis conditæ.	l. c. loco citato
D. D. Dono dedit.	pag. m. pagina mea.
D. D. D. Dono dedit dicavit.	q. d. quasi dicat.
D. D. C. q. Dedit dicavit consecra-	q. l. quantum libet.
vitque.	q. s. quantum sufficit.
D. M. Diis Manibus.	scil. scilicet.
L. S. Loco sigilli.	seq. sequens.
M. S. Manuscriptus.	v. versus.
P. S. Postscriptum.	v. g. verbi gratia.
Q. D. B. V. Quod Deus bene vertat.	viz. videlicet.
S. V. B. E. E. V. Si vales bene est	vid. vide.
ego valeo.	



WORD-BUILDING
AND
READING LESSONS.



WORD-BUILDING.

(784.) 1. THE *generic* meaning of a word is contained in its *root*; the *specific* meaning is generally given by its *ending*. Thus, in all the words *am-o* (*I love*), *am-or* (*love*), *am-ātor* (*a lover*), *am-īcus* (*friend*), we find the same generic idea (*love*) expressed by the root *am*; while the specific meanings, *I love* (verb), *love* (noun), *lover* (noun), *friend* (adjective noun), are given by the endings *o*, *or*, *ātor*, *īcus*, respectively.

2. The meanings of words are farther modified by certain *prefixes*; e. g., *ire* (*to go*), *amb-ire* (*to go round*).

3. Again, words may be compounded with each other, and form new words; e. g., with *agr-* (the stem of *ager*, *field*), and *col-* (the stem of *colēre*, *to till*), we form *agricol-a*, *a tiller of the field* = *a farmer*.

Thus there are three modes of forming words: by *suffixes*, *prefixes*, and *composition*. We treat them in order.

(I.) WORD-BUILDING BY SUFFIXES.

(A.) Nouns.

(785.) *First Declension.*

1. The ending *-a*, suffixed to verb-stems, expresses an *agent* or *doer*.

scrib-a, *writer*, from *scrib-ēre*, *to write*.

perfüg-a, *deserter*, from *perfüg-ēre*, *to desert*.

- 2 *-ia*, *-itia*, with adjective-stems, a *disposition* or *condition*.

ignav-ia, *cowardice*, from *ignav-us*, *cowardly*.

prudent-ia, *prudence*, from *pruden(t)-s*, *prudent*.

trist-itia, *sadness*, from *trist-is*, *sad*.

victor-ia, *victory*, from *vict-or*, *victorious*

3. *-ūra*, with supine-stems, the *action* or *condition* of the verb.

pict-ura, *painting*; *pingēre* (*pict-*), *to paint*.

præfect ura, *præfectship*; *præficēre* (*præfect-*), *to place over*.

(786.) *Second Declension.*

1. *-us*, *-ius*, with verb-stems, form nouns denoting the *agent* or the *action* of the verb.

serv-us, *slave*; *serv-ire*, *to serve*.

fluv-ius, *river*; *flu(v)-ēre*, *to flow*.

coqu-us, *cook*; *coqu-ēre*, *to cook*.

lud-us, *sport*; *lud-ēre*, *to play*.

2. -um, -ium, with verb-stems, gives a *result* o. the action of the verb.

jug-um,	yoke,	jung-ĕre,	to join.
vad-um,	ford;	vad-ĕre,	to go.
incend-ium,	fire;	incend-ĕre,	to burn.

3. -ium, with noun-stems, (a) *an office*, or (b) *an assemblage of men* exercising an office or function.

(a) sacerdot-ium,	office of sacerdos.
minister-ium,	office of minister.
(b) colleg-ium,	assemblage of collegæ.
conviv-ium,	assemblage of convivæ.

4. -mentum, with verb-stems, the *means* of doing what the verb expresses.

teg-u-mentum,	covering;	teg-ĕre,	to cover.
adju-mentum,	aid;	adjuv-āre,	to assist.

5. -ulum, -bulum, -culum, with verb-stems, *means* or *instrument*.

jac-ulum,	javelin;	jac-ĕre,	to hurl.
venab-ulum,	hunting-spear;	ven-āri,	to hunt.
vehi-culum,	carriage;	veh-ĕre,	to carry.

Rem. culum also sometimes—the *place where*; e. g., cœna-culum, cubi-culum.

6. -crum, -strum, with verb-stems, *place* or *thing prepared* for any purpose.

lava-crum,	bath;	lav-āre,	to wash.
claus-trum,	lock;	claud-ĕre,	to shut.

(787.) *Diminutives of First and Second Declensions.*

lus, -la, -lum, with noun-stems, form diminutive nouns, of masculine, feminine, and neuter genders.

- (a) Connecting vowels *i, o, u*, the latter sometimes with *c*.

fili-o-lus, fili-o-la, *little son, daughter*—(filius); frater-culus (frater); opus-culum (opus).

- (b) Sometimes *l* is doubled: lap-illus (lapis); codic-illus (codex, codicis); sac-ellum (sacrum).

(788.) *Third Declension.*

1. -tās, -tūs (with or without *i* as connecting vowel), form, with adjective-stems, abstract nouns denoting *quality*, &c.

bon-i-tas,	goodness;	bon-us,	good.
hones-tas,	honour;	honest-us,	honourable.
fort-i-tudo,	bravery;	fort-is,	brave.

2. (a) -or, with verb-stems, the *action* or *condition* of the verb.

pav-or,	<i>fear</i> ;	pav-ère,	<i>to fear</i> .
am-or,	<i>love</i> ;	am-äre,	<i>to love</i> .

- (b) -or, with supine-stems, the *agent* or *doer*.

doct-or,	<i>teacher</i> ;	doc-ère (doct-),	<i>to teach</i> .
monit-or,	<i>adviser</i> ;	mon-ère (monit-),	<i>to advise</i> .

3. -io, with supine-stems, the *action* of the verb, especially the doing of it.

act-io,	<i>action</i> ;	ag-ère (act-),	<i>to act, do</i> .
caut-io,	<i>caution</i> ;	cav-ère (caut-),	<i>to take care</i> .

4. -tudo, with adjective-stems, the *abstract quality*.

fort-i-tudo,	<i>bravery</i> ;	fort-is,	<i>brave</i> .
--------------	------------------	----------	----------------

(789.) *Fourth Declension.*

Most nouns of the 4th declension are abstracts formed from verb-stems or supine-stems.

us-us,	<i>use</i> ;	uti (us-),	<i>to use</i> .
mōt-us,	<i>motion</i> ;	mōv-ère (mōt-),	<i>to move</i> .

(790.) *Fifth Declension.*

1. -es, -ies, -ities, with verb or adjective-stems, a *property*, *operation*, *quality*, &c.

fid-es (fid-ère); ser-ies (ser-ère); fac-ies (fac-ère); dur-ities (dur-us); mund-ities (mund-us).

2. [Those in -ities coexist with others in -itia (784, 2); e. g. munditia, duritia, &c.]

(B.) *Adjectives.*

(791.) *First Class, us, a, um.*

1. -us, *quality* in general (coexisting with verb and noun stems).

alb-us,	<i>white</i> ;	alb-äre,	alb-umen.
curv-us,	<i>curved</i> ;	curv-äre,	curv-amen.
dur-us,	<i>hard</i> ;	dur-äre,	dur-ities.
viv-us,	<i>alive</i> ;	viv-ère,	vit-a.

2. -idus and uus, chiefly with stems of intransitive verbs, the *quality* of the verb, without addition.

turg-idus,	<i>swelling</i> ;	turg-ère,	<i>to swell</i> .
cal-idus,	<i>warm</i> ;	cal-ère,	<i>to be warm</i> .
noc-uus,	<i>hurtful</i> ;	noc-ère,	<i>to hurt</i> .

3. -bundus, with verb-stems, force of present participle, intensified.

hæsita-bundus, *full of hesitation*; hæsit-äre, *to hesitate*.
lacryma-bundus, *weeping profusely*; lacrym-äre, *to weep*.

4. -cundus, same as bundus, generally with the additional idea of *permanency*.

ira-cundus, *passionate*; ira-sc-i, *to be angry*
vere-cundus, *bashful*; verē-ri, *to fear*.

5. -icus, with noun-stems, *belonging or relating to a thing*.

class-icus, *belonging to a fleet*; class-is, *fleet*.
civ-icus, *civic*; civ-is, *citizen*.

6. -eus, -aceus, -icius, with noun-stems, *material or origin*.

ferr-eus, *of iron*; ferr-um, *iron*.
chart-aceus, *of paper*; chart-a, *paper*.

7. -inus, with noun-stems, *similarity, quality, or material*.

asin-inus, *asinine, like an ass*; asin-us, *an ass*
mar-inus, *marine*; mar-e, *the sea*.
crystall-inus, *crystalline*; crystall-um, *crystal*.

8. -anus, with names of towns ending in a or æ, a *native of such place*.

Rom-anus, *a Roman*; Roma, *Rome*.

9. -osus, -lentus, with noun-stems, *fulness, abundance* (like the English -ous).

fam-osus, *famous*; fam-a, *fame*.
vino-lentus, *drunken*; vin-um, *wine*.

(792.) *Second Class, is, is, e.*

1. -is, *quality in general* (coexisting commonly with noun and verb forms).

lev-is, *light*; lev-āre, *lev-it-as*.

2. -ilis, -ibilis, with verb-stems, the *quality* of the verb, or the *capacity* of it, in two senses, (a) *active* and (b) *passive*.

(a) terri-bilis, *exciting terror*; terr-ēre, *to terrify*.

(b) doc-ilis, *docile*; doc-ēre, *to teach*.

amāb-ilis, *amiable*; am-āre, *to love*.

3. -ilis (i long), with noun-stems, *belonging or relating to a thing*.

civ-ilis, *belonging to a citizen, civil*; civ-is, *citizen*.

host-ilis, *hostile*; hos-tis, *enemy*.

[Observe that *ilis*, with verb-stems, is *short*; with noun-stems, *long*.]

4. -alis, -aris, with noun-stems, *of or belonging to*.

conviv-alis, *convivial*; conviv-a.

capit-alis, *capital*; caput, *head*.

consul-aris, *consular*; consul.

5. -ensis, with names of towns—a *native of such town*.

Cann-ensis, *an inhabitant of Cannæ*.

Arimin-ensis, *an inhabitant of Ariminum*.

(793.) *Third Class*, one ending.

-**ax**, with verb-stems, the *tendency* of the verb, generally in a bad sense.

pugn- ax ,	<i>pugnacious</i> ;	pugn- äre ,	<i>to fight</i> .
rap- ax ,	<i>rapacious</i> ;	rap- öre ,	<i>to seize</i> .

(C.) *Verbs*.(794.) *First Conjugation*.

1. -**äre**, generally a *transitive* ending, with noun-stems.

numer- äre ,	<i>to count</i> ;	numer- us ,	<i>number</i> .
nomin- äre ,	<i>to name</i> ;	nomen (nomin- is),	<i>name</i> .

2. FREQUENTATIVE verbs, expressing a *repetition* or *increase* of the action of the original verb, are formed by the endings -**äre** and -**itare** ; thus :

(a) -**äre**, added to supine-stems.

curs- äre ,	<i>to run to and fro</i> ;	currere (curs- um),	<i>to run</i> .
dormit- äre ,	<i>to be sleepy</i> ;	dormire (dormit- um),	<i>to sleep</i> .

(b) -**itare**, added to verb-stems.

rog- itare ,	<i>to ask often</i> ;	rog- äre ,	<i>to ask</i> .
vol- itare ,	<i>to fly to and fro</i> ;	vol- äre ,	<i>to fly</i> .

3. -**ari**, deponent-ending, with noun-stems, is much used for expressing "*to be that which, or of the character that,*" the noun indicates.

comit- ari ,	{ <i>to attend as com-</i> <i>panion</i> ;	comes (comit- is),	<i>companion</i> .
domin- ari ,	<i>to rule as master</i> ;	domin- us ,	<i>master</i> .

(795.) *Second Conjugation*.

-**äre**, frequently an *intransitive* ending, with noun and adjective stems.

alb- äre ,	<i>to be white</i> ;	alb- us ,	<i>white</i> .
luc- äre ,	<i>to shine</i> ;	lux (luc- is),	<i>light</i> .

(796.) *Third Conjugation*.

INCHOATIVE verbs express the *beginning* or *increase* of the action of the verb from which they are derived. They are formed by adding *sc* to the verb-stem, with the connecting-vowels *a*, *e*, or *i*. Most of them are formed on stems of verbs of second conjugation.

palesc- äre ,	<i>to grow pale</i> ;	pall- äre ,	<i>to be pale</i> .
labasc- äre ,	<i>to totter</i> ;	lab- äre ,	<i>to waver</i> .

(797.) *Fourth Conjugation*.

DESIDERATIVE verbs express a *desire* of that which is implied in the primitive, and are formed by adding -**ürire** to supine-stems.

es- ürire ,	<i>to want to eat</i> ;	edere (es- um),	<i>to eat</i> .
--------------------	-------------------------	-------------------------	-----------------

(II.) WORD-BUILDING BY PREFIXES.

(798.) Under this head we place only the *inseparable prepositions* (229), viz., amb-, dis- (di-), re-, se.

1. Amb = *about, around, on both sides*; e. g., amb-ire, *to go round* (amb+ire).

☞ Before *p* the *b* is dropped; e. g., am-plector: before *c*-sounds amb is changed into an; e. g., an-ceps, an-qui-ro.

2. Dis (di) = *asunder*; e. g., dis-jungere, *to disjoin* (dis+jungere).

☞ Di is used before *d, g, l, m*; e. g., digerere, &c. Before *f* the *s* is assimilated; e. g., differre (dis+ferre).

3. Re = *back, again, away, un-*; e. g., re-pellere, *drive-back* (re+pellere); re-ficere, *refit* (re+facere).

☞ Before vowels, *d* is inserted; e. g., re-d-ire (re+ire).

[Re long occurs only in re-fert.]

4. Se = *aside*; e. g., se-ducere, *lead astray seduce* (se+ducere); se-ponere, *lay aside* (se+ponere).

(III.) WORD-BUILDING BY COMPOSITION.

I. Prepositions in Composition with other Words.

(799.) ☞ Most prepositions are used to form compound words, and generally modify their meaning in a way easily understood; e. g., stare, *to stand*; pre-stare, *to stand before, to excel*. We notice here only those which present some peculiarities.

1. a, ab, abs = *away, from*. (a) *a* is used before *m* and *v*; e. g., a-mittere, *to send away, lose*; a-vertere, *turn away*. (b) *au* is used before *ferre* and *fugere*: auferre, *aufugere*. (c) *as*, before *p* or *sp*: asper-to, asper-nor.

2. ad = *to*. (a) Assimilated before consonants, except *d, j, v, m*; e. g., arripere, assurgere, adducere, &c. (b) *d* dropped before *gn*; e. g., agnoscere, agnatus.

3. con (a variation of cum) = *with*. (a) *co* before *h* and vowels; e. g., co-ortus, co-hibere. (b) *com* before *b, p*: com-burere, com-pellere. (c) Assimilated before *l, m, r*: col-ligere, com-movere, cor-ripere.

4. e or ex = *out of*. (a) Assimilated before *f*; e. g., efferro (ex+ferro). (b) *e* before liquids and *b, d, g, v*.


5. in, with verbs = *into, on, in, against*; with adjectives has privative force; e. g., doctus, *learned*; indoctus, *unlearned*.

(a) Assimilated before *l, r*, e. g., illatum (in+latum); irrum-pere (in+rumpere).


* And sometimes before vowels: comedere.

(b) Changed into *im* before *b, p*; e. g., *imbibĕre* (*in+bibere*); *imponĕre* (*in+ponere*).

6. *ob* = *against*; e. g., *obtrudĕre* (*ob+trudere*), *thrust against*.

 Assimilated before *c, f, p*; e. g., *oc-cĭdere* (*ob+cadere*); *of-ferre*, *op-ponĕre*.

7. *pro* = *forth, forward*; e. g., *projicĕre* (*pro+jacere*), *cast forth*.

 Before vowels, *d* is inserted; e. g., *prod-esse* (*pro+esse*).


8. *præ* = *before*; e. g., *præcĕdere* (*præ+cedere*), *to go before, to surpass*.

9. *sub* = *under, from under*; e. g., *subducĕre*, *to draw from under*.

(a) Generally assimilated; e. g., *sum-movĕre*, *sup-ponere*, &c.

(b) Sometimes *sus-*; e. g., *sus-cipĕre*, *sus-tinĕre*, &c.

10. *trans* = *across, over*; e. g., *transducere*, *to lead across*.

 *Trā*, instead of *trans*, occurs in *trādere*, *trāducĕre*, *trā-jicĕre*.


(800.) II. *Adverbs in Composition with other Words.*

1. *nē, vĕ*, have a *privative* force; e. g., *nĕfas*, *wicked* (*ne+fas*); *vĕsanus*, *insane* (*vĕ+sānus*).

2. *benĕ*, *well*; *malĕ*, *ill*; *satis*, *enough*; e. g., *beneficium*, *a good deed*; *maleficium*, *an evil deed*; *satisfacĕre*, *to satisfy* (= *to do enough*).

3. *bis* (and other numerals), *twice* (*thrice*), &c.: *bicorpor*, *two-bodied* (*bis+corpor-us*).

(801.) III. *Nouns and Adjectives in Composition with other Words.*


 When a noun or adjective is compounded with another word, the connecting vowel is always short *i*.

agri-cōla (*agr+col-*), *a husbandman*.

arti-fex (*art+fac-*), *an artificer*.

(802.) IV. *Verbs in Composition with other Words.*

None occur, except in composition with *facere*; e. g., *calefacere* (*calĕre+facere*), *to make hot*; *patefacere* (*patĕre+facere*), *to lay open*.

 Observe that the vowel *a* in *facere* remains unchanged.]

(803.) V. *Common Vowel-changes in Composition.*

1. *a* into *i*; e. g., *arrĭpĕre* (*ad+rapere*), *conficĕre* (*con+facere*), *constituĕre* (*con+statuere*), &c.

2. *a* into *e* (more rarely); e. g., *ascendĕre* (*ad+scandere*).

3. *e* into *i* (not always); e. g., *colligĕre* (*con+legere*), *abstinĕre* (*abs+tenere*), &c.

4. *æ* into *i*; e. g., *occidĕre* (*ob+cædere*), *rĕquirĕre* (*rĕ+quærerere*).

READING LESSONS.

I.


GALLIA est omnis divisa¹ in partes tres.—Belgæ unam incolunt;² Aquitani alteram; Celtæ tertiam.—Hi, ipsorum* linguâ³ Celtæ⁴ appellantur;⁵ nostrâ* linguâ, Galli.⁴

Gallia est omnis divisa in partes tres; quæ unam incolunt Belgæ, alteram Aquitani, tertiam qui⁶ ipsorum linguâ Celtæ, nostrâ Galli appellantur.

Hi omnes inter se differunt.⁷—Linguâ, institutis,⁸ legibus differunt.—Garumnâ⁹ flumen Gallos ab Aquitanis dividit.—Matrôna flumen Gallos a Belgis dividit.—Horum omnium¹⁰ fortissimi sunt Belgæ.—Ab humanitate¹¹ Provinciæ longe absunt.¹²—A cultu¹³ Provinciæ longissime absunt.—Minime ad eos mercatores¹⁴ commeant.—Quædam¹⁵ animos effeminant.¹⁶—Quædam ad effeminandos animos pertinent.¹⁷

Hi omnes lingua, institutis, legibus, inter se differunt.—Gallos ab Aquitanis Garumna flumen, a Belgis Matrôna et Sequana dividit.—Horum omnium fortissimi sunt Belgæ, propterea quod a cultu atque humanitate Provinciæ longissime absunt, minimeque ad eos mercatores sæpe commeant, atque ea, quæ ad effeminandos animos pertinent,¹⁸ important.¹⁹

Proximi sunt Germanis.²⁰—Germani trans Rhenum incolunt.—Belgæ cum Germanis continenter²¹ bellum gerunt.

¹ 435, c.—² in+colere.—³ 716.—⁴ 694, 2, R.—⁵ ad+pellare (*obsolete*), 799, 2, a.—⁶ 167, d, 4.—⁷ 798, .—⁸ 786, 2, instituere = in+statuere, 803, 1.—⁹ 225, a.—¹⁰ 697, a.—¹¹ 788, 1 (*humanus*), humanitas = *refinement*.—¹² ab+sum, 799, 1.—¹³ cultus (*civilization*), from colere (*cult-*), 789.—¹⁴ mercator, from mercari (*mercât-*), 788, 2, b.—¹⁵ *Some things*.—¹⁶ effeminare (*to make effeminate*), ex+feminare, 799, 4, a: feminare, from femina (*woman*), 794, 1.—¹⁷ *tend to make minds effeminate*, 739.—¹⁸ per+tenere, 803, 3.—¹⁹ in+portare, 799, 5, b.—²⁰ 704, 4.—²¹ from continens (*con+tenere*) 215, 2, b.

* Ipsorum and nostra precede linguâ, instead of following it, because *opposed* to each other, and therefore *emphatic*.

Proximi sunt Germanis, qui trans Rhenum incolunt, qui
b u s c u m ²² continenter bellum gerunt.

II.

Helvetii quoque¹ reliquos² Gallos virtute³ præcedunt.⁴—Fere
quotidianis præliis cum Germanis contendunt.—Aut⁵ suis finibus
Germanos prohibent,⁶ aut ipsi in eorum finibus bellum gerunt.

Quã⁷ de causã⁸ Helvetii quoque reliquos Gallos virtute
præcedunt, quod⁹ fere quotidianis præliis cum Germanis con-
tendunt, quum aut suis finibus eos prohibent, aut ipsi in eorum
finibus bellum gerunt.

Galli unam partem obtinent.¹⁰—Unam partem Gallos¹¹ obti-
nere dictum est.¹²—Eã pars initium capit a flumine Rhödänö.
—Continetur Garumnã flumine,¹³ Oceano,¹³ finibus¹³ Belgarum.
—Attingit¹⁴ ab Sequãnis flumen Rhenum.—Vergit ad Septen-
triones.—Belgæ ab extremis¹⁵ Galliæ finibus oriuntur.—Pertin-
ent¹⁶ ad inferiorem partem fluminis Rheni.—Spectant* in
Septentriones et orientem¹⁷ solem.

Eorum una pars, quam¹⁸ Gallos obtinere dictum est, ini-
tium capit a flumine Rhodano; continetur¹⁹ Garumna flumine,
Oceano, finibus Belgarum; attingit etiam ab²⁰ Sequanis et
Helvetiis flumen Rhenum; vergit ad Septentriones.—Belgæ
ab extremis Galliæ finibus oriuntur; pertinent ad inferiorem
partem fluminis Rheni; spectant in Septentriones et orientem
solem.

Aquitania a Garumna flumine ad Pyrenæos montes pertinet.
—Una pars Oceani est ad²⁰ Hispaniam.—Aquitania ad eam

²² 125, II., b.

¹ Quoque never begins a sentence.—² from relinquere (reliqu-), 791, 1.
—³ 718, in valour.—⁴ 799, 8.—⁵ 519, R. 4.—⁶ 721.—⁷ 89, II.—⁸ Qua de cau-
sa = for which reason.—⁹ because.—¹⁰ ob+tenere, 803, 3.—¹¹ 751.—¹² 751,
R. 2.—¹³ 716.—¹⁴ ad+tangere, 799, 2, a, 803, 1.—¹⁵ 78, II., b.—¹⁶ Pertinent
= they extend, per+tenere.—¹⁷ 438, a.—¹⁸ 759.—¹⁹ is bounded.—²⁰ on the
side of, or near.

* Spectant in Septentriones, &c.: they look into the north and the rising sun;
i. e., they lie in a N.E. direction.

partem Oceani, quæ est ad Hispaniam, pertinet.—Spectat inter occasum²¹ solis et Septentriones.

Aquitania a Garumna flumine ad Pyrenæos montes, et eam partem Oceani, quæ est ad Hispaniam, pertinet; spectat* inter occasum solis et Septentriones.

III.

Orgetorix nobilis fuit.—Apud Helvetios nobilissimus fuit Orgetorix.—Apud Helvetios longē ditissimus¹ fuit Orgetorix.—Is regni cupiditate² inductus conjurationem³ nobilitatis⁴ fecit.—Is civitati⁵ persuadet, ut de finibus suis exeant.⁶—De finibus suis exeunt.—Perfacile erat totius Galliæ imperio⁷ potiri.—Perfacile esse⁸ (dixit), quum virtute omnibus præstarent,⁹ totius Galliæ imperio potiri.

Apud Helvetios longe nobilissimus et ditissimus fuit Orgetorix.—Is, Marco Messalā et Marco Pisone consulibus,¹⁰ regni cupiditate inductus, conjurationem nobilitatis fecit; et civitati persuasit, ut de finibus suis cum omnibus copiis exirent:¹¹ perfacile esse (dixit), quum virtute omnibus præstarent, totius Galliæ imperio potiri.

Id facile eis persuadet.¹²—Id hoc facilius eis persuasit.—Undique naturā loci¹³ Helvetii continentur.—Unā ex parte continentur flumine Rheno latissimo atque altissimo.—Alterā ex parte continentur monte Jurā altissimo; tertiā ex parte lacu Lemanno et flumine Rhodano.—Flumen Rhenus agrum Helvetium a Germanis dividit.—Mons Jurā est inter Sequanos et Helvetios.—Flumen Rhodanus provinciam nostram ab Helvetiis dividit.

²¹ 789, from occidere, ob+cadere.

¹ 371, *R.* 1.—² from cupid-us, by 788, 1.—³ 788, 3, con+jurare.—⁴ 788, 1.—⁵ 704, 2: *he persuades the state*; i. e., *the citizens*.—⁶ ut exeant = *to go out of*: subj. pres., 754 (ex+ire).—⁷ abl., 718.—⁸ The sentence *perfacile esse*, &c., is in orat. obliqua; 769, *a*, applies.—⁹ 799, 8.—¹⁰ 458, *b*.—¹¹ Why is exirent in subj. imperf.? 748.—¹² suadere, *to recommend*; persuadere, *recommend thoroughly*, i. e., *persuade*.—¹³ *by the nature of the country*.

* *It looks between the setting of the sun and the north*; i. e., *in a N.W. direction*

Id hoc facilius eis persuadet, quod undique loci naturā Helvetii continentur; unā ex parte, flumine Rheno latissimo atque altissimo, qui agrum Helvetium a Germanis dividit; alterā ex parte, monte Jurā altissimo, qui est inter Sequanos et Helvetios; tertiā, lacu Lemanno et flumine Rhodano, qui provinciam nostram ab Helvetiis dividit.

Minus latē vagantur.—His rebus fit,¹⁴ ut minus late vagentur.¹⁵—Bellum inferunt.¹⁶—Bellum inferre¹⁷ possunt.—Minus facile bellum finitimis¹⁸ inferre possunt.—His rebus fit, ut minus facile bellum finitimis inferre possent.—Magno dolore afficiebantur.¹⁹—Bellandi²⁰ erant cupidi.²¹

His rebus fiebat, ut et minus late vagarentur, et minus facile finitimis bellum inferre possint.—Quā de causa, homines bellandi cupidi magno dolore afficiebantur.

IV.

Pro¹ multitudine² hominum, angustos habebant fines.—Pro gloria³ belli atque fortitudinis,² angustos habebant fines.—Angustos se⁴ fines habere arbitrabantur.⁵—Hi (i. e., fines) millia passuum ducenta (CC.) patebant.⁶—Hi in longitudinem³ millia⁷ passuum ducenta et quadraginta (XL.) patebant.

Pro multitudine autem⁸ hominum, et pro gloria belli atque fortitudinis, angustos se fines habere arbitrabantur, qui in longitudinem millia passuum CCXL., in latitudinem centum et octoginta (CLXXX.) patebant.

Ducti sunt.—Adducti⁹ sunt.—Moti sunt.—Permoti¹⁰ sunt.—Auctoritate¹¹ Orgetorigis adducti et permoti sunt.—Quædam ad proficiscendum¹² pertinent.—Constituerunt¹³ ea comparare.¹⁴—Constituerunt jumenta et carros emere.¹⁵—Constituerunt se-

¹⁴ By these circumstances it is brought about.—¹⁵ 754, 2.—¹⁶ in+ferre.—¹⁷ 731.—¹⁸ 704, 3.—¹⁹ ad+facere, 799, 2; 803, 1.—²⁰ 736.—²¹ cupere, 791, 2.

¹ For, or, in view of.—² mult-us, 788, 4.—³ reputation for war and courage.—⁴ 471.—⁵ from arbit-er, by 794, 3.—⁶ extended.—⁷ 712.—⁸ 522, b.—⁹ Ducti sunt = they were led: adducti sunt = they were led to, i. e., they were induced.—¹⁰ Moti sunt = they were moved: permoti sunt = they were thoroughly moved, i. e., prevailed upon.—¹¹ 788, 1.—¹² 487.—¹³ con+statuere, 803, 1.—¹⁴ con+parare, 799, 3, b.—¹⁵ 731.

mentes magnas facere,¹⁶ ut in itinere copia frumenti suppet-
eret.¹⁷—Cum proximis civitatibus pacem et amicitiam¹⁸ con-
firmant.

His rebus adducti, et auctoritate Orgetorigis permoti,
constituerunt, ea, quæ¹⁹ ad proficiscendum pertinērent, com-
parare; jumentorum et carrorum quam maximum nu-
merum²⁰ coemere;²¹ sementes quam maximas²² facere, ut
in itinere copia frumenti suppeteret; cum proximis civitatibus
pacem et amicitiam confirmare.

Biennium Helvetiis²³ satis erat.—Biennium sibi²³ Helvetii satis
esse duxerunt.²⁴—Ad eas res conficiendas²⁵ biennium satis erat.
—Profectionem²⁶ lege confirmant.²⁷—In tertium annum profec-
tionem lege confirmant.—Ad eas res conficiendas²⁵ Orgetorix
deligitur.²⁸—Is sibi legationem²⁶ suscepit.²⁹—In eo itinere per-
suadet Castico.—Casticus Catamantalēdis erat filius, Sequānus.
—Pater Castici regnum in Sequanis multos annos³⁰ obtinuerat.
—Pater Castici a senatu populi Romani amicus appellatus erat.
—Orgetorix Castico persuadet, ut regnum in civitate suā occu-
paret.³¹

Ad eas res conficiendas biennium sibi satis esse duxerunt;
in tertium annum profectionem lege confirmant. Ad eas res
conficiendas Orgetorix deligitur. Is sibi legationem ad civi-
tates suscepit. In eo itinere persuadet Castico, Catamantale-
cis filio, Sequano, cujus pater regnum in Sequanis multos
annos obtinuerat, et a senatu populi Romani amicus appellatus
erat, ut regnum in civitate sua occuparet, quod³² pater ante
habuerat.

V.

Item Dumnorigi persuadet.—Dumnorix erat Æduus.—
Dumnorix erat frater Divitiaci.—Dumnorix principatum¹ in

¹⁶ to make great sowings, i. e., to sow much land.—¹⁷ Sub+petere, 799, 9, a, neuter; suppeteret=might be in store: subjunc. by 754, 1.—¹⁸ 785, 2.—¹⁹ 759, Rem.—²⁰ As great a number as possible.—²¹ con+emere, to buy together, to buy up, 799, 3.—²² As great sowings as possible.—²³ 704.—²⁴ reckoned.—²⁵ 498, d.—²⁶ 788, 3.—²⁷ They fix the departure by a law
²⁸ de+legere, 803, 3.—²⁹ 799, 9, b.—³⁰ 712.—³¹ 754.—³² 759.

¹ chief power, from princeps.

civitate obtinebat. — Dumnorix plebi³ acceptus³ erat. — Dumnorigi, ut idem conaretur persuadet,* eique filiam suam in matrimonium dat.

Item quæ Dumnorigi Æduo, fratri Divitiaci, qui eo tempore⁴ principatum in civitate obtinebat, ac maximè⁵ plebi acceptus erat, ut idem conaretur persuadet, eique filiam suam in matrimonium dat.

Perfacile factu⁶ erat conata perficere.⁷ — Ipse suæ civitatis imperium obtenturus erat. — Totius⁸ Galliæ plurimum Helvetii possunt. — Non est dubium quin plurimum Helvetii possint.⁹ — Ipse illis regnum conciliaturus¹⁰ erat. — Ipse, suis copiis suoque exercitu, illis regnum conciliaturus erat.

(*Oblique Narration*, 769.) “Perfacile factu esse,” illis probat, “conata perficere, propterea quod ipse suæ civitatis imperium obtenturus esset; non esse dubium, quin totius Galliæ plurimum Helvetii possent;” “Se, suis copiis suoque exercitu, illis regna conciliaturum,” confirmat.

Helvetii jam¹¹ se¹² ad eam rem paratos esse arbitrantur. — Oppida sua omnia, numero ad duodecim,¹³ incendunt. — Vicos suos ad quadringentos incendunt. — Reliqua¹⁴ privata ædificia¹⁵ incendunt. — Frumentum secum portaturi erant. — Frumentum omne comburunt. — Domum¹⁶ reditionis¹⁷ spes sublata¹⁸ est. — Paratiores ad omnia pericula subeunda¹⁹ erant.

Ubi²⁰ jam se ad eam rem paratos esse arbitrati sunt, oppida sua omnia, numero ad duodecim, vicos ad quadringentos, reliqua privata ædificia incendunt; frumentum omne, præter quod secum portaturi erant, comburunt, ut, domum reditionis spe²¹ sublata,²¹ paratiores ad omnia pericula subeunda essent.²²

² 702, was acceptable to the common people (a favourite). — ³ ad + capere, 803, 1. — ⁴ 725. — ⁵ 376. — ⁶ 380. It was a very easy thing to do. — ⁷ to accomplish, per + facere, 803, 1. — ⁸ Of the whole of Gaul, the Helvetians are the most powerful. — ⁹ 754, 4. — ¹⁰ 446. — ¹¹ jam = at last. — ¹² 751. — ¹³ in number (amounting) to twelve. — ¹⁴ relinquere. — ¹⁵ 801, ædes + facere. — ¹⁶ 713, Rem. 2. — ¹⁷ 788, 3. — ¹⁸ tollere. — ¹⁹ sub + ire, gerundive, 739. — ²⁰ when. — ²¹ 750. — ²² 754.

* Cæsar often uses the *historical present*, as in this instance, instead of the perfect aorist. If persuadet were used really as the present, then conaretur would have to be conetur, by 748; but, as the historical present, it requires a past tense in the subordinate sentence.

VI.

Omnes res ad profectionem comparant.—Diem dicunt¹ qua die omnes conveniant.²—Is dies erat ante diem quintum Kalendas³ Aprilis, Lucio Pisone, Aulo Gabinio consulibus.—Is dies erat a. d. V. Kal. Apr., L. Pisone, A. Gabinio Coss.

Omnibus rebus⁴ ad profectionem comparatis, diem dicunt, qua die ad ripam Rhodani omnes conveniant: is dies erat ante diem quintum Kalendas Aprilis, Lucio Pisone, Aulo Gabinio Consulibus.

Helvetii per provinciam nostram iter⁵ facere conantur.—Id Cæsari nuntiatum erat.—Cæsari nuntiatum erat, eos per provinciam nostram iter facere⁶ conari.⁷—Maturat ab urbe proficisci,⁸ et magnis itineribus in Galliam contendit, et ad Genevam pervenit.—De ejus adventu⁹ Helvetii certiores facti sunt.—Legatos ad eum mittunt.—Helvetiis est in animo⁹ sine ullo maleficio¹⁰ iter per provinciam facere; aliud iter habent nullum; rogant, ut, Cæsaris voluntate, id facere liceat.¹¹

Cæsari quum id nuntiatum esset,¹² eos per provinciam nostram iter facere conari,⁷ maturat ab urbe proficisci, et quam maximis potest itineribus, in Galliam ulteriorem contendit, et ad Genevam pervenit. Ubi de ejus adventu Helvetii certiores facti sunt, legatos ad eum mittunt,¹³ qui dicerent,¹⁴ “*sibi¹⁵ esse in animo sine ullo maleficio iter per provinciam facere, propterea quod aliud iter habeant nullum; rogare, ut ejus voluntate id sibi facere liceat.*”

Lucius Cassius, consul, ab Helvetiis occisus erat.—Exercitus¹⁶ Cassii ab Helvetiis pulsus¹⁷ erat, et sub jugum missus.—Eā Cæsar memoriā¹⁸ tenebat.—Concedendum¹⁹ non putabat.—Facultas²⁰ per provinciam itineris faciendi²¹ non data est.—

¹ *They appoint.*—² con+venire; subj. pres., 766.—³ 782, 5.—⁴ 750.—⁵ iter facere = *to make journey = to march.*—⁶ 731.—⁷ 751.—⁸ advenire (advent-), 789.—⁹ 468, b.—¹⁰ 800, 2.—¹¹ 754.—¹² 757, A. 2.—¹³ historical present.—¹⁴ 761, 1.—¹⁵ oblique narration.—¹⁶ exercere, 789.—¹⁷ pellere.—¹⁸ memoriā tenebat, *held in memory, i. e., remembered.*—¹⁹ 737 (esse understood, 504, a).—²⁰ power of marching through, or permission to march through.—²¹ facultas, 788, 1, from facil-is; facio.—²¹ 496.

Homines inimico²² animo ab injuria et maleficio non temperant.

Cæsar, quod memoria tenebat, L. Cassium consulem occisum, exercitumque ejus ab Helvetiis pulsum et sub jugum missum, concedendum non putabat; neque²³ homines inimico animo, data facultate per provinciam itineris faciendi, temperaturos ab injuria²⁴ et maleficio, existimabat.

VII.

Hujus legationis Divico princeps fuit.—Divico, bello Cassiano,¹ dux Helvetiorum fuerat.—Is ita cum Cæsare egit.²—Helvetii in eam partem ibunt, atque ibi erunt, ubi Cæsar constituerit.³—Cæsar veteris incommodi⁴ reminiscitur.⁵—Cæsar pristinae virtutis⁶ Helvetiorum reminiscitur.

(*Oblique Narration, present time.*) Is ita cum Cæsare agit: “Si pacem populus Romanus cum Helvetiis faciat,⁸ in eam partem ituros⁹ atque ibi futuros⁹ Helvetios, ubi eos Cæsar constituerit atque esse voluerit; sin bello persequi perseveret,¹⁰ reminiscatur¹¹ et veteris incommodi populi Romani et pristinae virtutis Helvetiorum.”

Hujus legationis Divico princeps fuit, qui bello Cassiano dux Helvetiorum fuerat. Is ita cum Cæsare egit (*obl. narr., past time*): “Si pacem populus Romanus cum Helvetiis faceret, in eam partem ituros, atque ibi futuros Helvetios, ubi Cæsar eos constituisset atque esse voluisset; sin bello persequi perseveraret, reminisceretur et veteris incommodi populi Romani et pristinae virtutis Helvetiorum.”

²² 722.—²³ neque existimabat = *nor did he think*.—²⁴ outrage.

¹ *In the Cassian war*, i. e., in which Cassius had been the Roman general.—² *He treated with Cæsar as follows*.—³ 803, 1; subj. by 766.—⁴ *incommodum, disaster*, in+commodus, 799, 5; con+modus, 799, 3, c; genitive by 698, a, 2.—⁵ *re+miniscor, stem of meminī, meno*.—⁶ *vir, gen.*, 698, a, 2.—⁷ *Observe carefully the tenses in this and the following paragraph*.—⁸ *If the Roman people will make peace*.—⁹ 484, a.—¹⁰ 542, b.—¹¹ 528 b

His Cæsar ita¹² respondet.—Cæsari nihil dubitationis¹³ datur.¹⁴—Legati Helvetii quasdam res commemoravērunt.¹⁵—Eas res Cæsar in memoria tenet.¹⁶—Eo¹⁷ Cæsari minus dubitationis datur, quod eas res, quas legati Helvetii commemoraverunt, in memoria tenet.—Eas res graviter¹⁸ fert.¹⁹—Eæ res non merito²⁰ populi Romani accidērunt.²¹—Eas res graviter fert, quod non merito populi Romani acciderunt.—Eo²² gravius fert, quo²³ minus merito Populi Romani acciderunt.

His Cæsar ita respondet²⁴ (*oblique narration, present time*): “*Eo sibi minus dubitationis dari, quod eas res, quas legati Helvetii commemoravērunt, memoria teneat: atque eo gravius ferre, quo minus merito populi Romani accidērunt.*”

His Cæsar ita respondit (*oblique narration, past time*): “*Eo sibi minus dubitationis dari, quod eas res, quas legati Helvetii commemorassent, memoria teneret: atque eo gravius ferre, quo minus merito populi Romani accidissent.*”

VIII.

Helvetii postēro die¹ castra ex eo loco movent.—Idem² Cæsar facit.—Quas in partes³ hostes iter faciunt?⁴—Equitatum⁵ omnem præmittit.⁶—Hi vidēbunt, quas in partes hostes iter faciant.⁷—Equitatus ex omni Provincia et Æduis atque eorum sociis coactus⁸ erat.—Hunc equitatum præmittit, qui videant,⁹ quas in partes hostes iter faciant.⁷—Hi cupidius¹⁰ novissimum¹¹ agmen insequuntur.¹²—Cum equitatu Helvetiōrum prælium commit-

¹² as follows.—¹³ 788, 3, dubitare (dubitāt).—¹⁴ To Cæsar nothing of doubt is given = Cæsar has no doubt.—¹⁵ con + memorare (memor).—¹⁶ holds in memory, i. e., remembers.—¹⁷ On this account Cæsar has less doubt, because.—¹⁸ 215, 2, a.—¹⁹ ferre graviter = to bear heavily, to be indignant at.—²⁰ 716.—²¹ accidere = ad + cādere, 803, 1, to happen.—²² By so much.—²³ by how much.—²⁴ Observe the moods and tenses carefully in this and the following paragraph of oblique narration.

¹ 725.—² 150.—³ Into what parts (of the country)?—⁴ 765.—⁵ Equitare (equitat-), 789.—⁶ 795, 8.—⁷ 766.—⁸ had been collected; cogere = con + agere.—⁹ who may see, i. e., to see, 761, 1.—¹⁰ too eagerly, adv., 376.—¹¹ novissimum agmen = the newest rank, i. e., the rear rank.—¹² in + sequi.

tunt.—Alieno¹³ loco prœlium committunt.—Pauci de nostris cadunt.

Postero die castra ex eo loco movent: idem Cæsar facit; equitatumque omnem ad num̃erum quattuor millium, quem ex omni provincia et Æduis atque eorũ sociis coactum habebat, præmittit, qui videant quas in partes hostes iter faciant.—Qui, cupidius novissimum agmen insecũti,¹⁴ alieno loco cum equitatu Helvetiorum prœlium committunt, et pauci de nostris cadunt.

Hoc prœlio sublãti¹⁵ sunt Helvetii.—Quingentis equitibus tantam multitudinem equitum propulserant.¹⁶—Audacius¹⁷ subsistere¹⁸ cœperunt.—Nonnunquam¹⁹ et²⁰ prœlio²¹ nostros lacessere cœperunt.—Cæsar suos a prœlio continebat.²²—Hostem rapinis,²³ pabulationibusque prohibere²⁴ volebat.—Hoc satis habebat in præsencia.²⁵

Quo prœlio sublati Helvetii, quod quingentis equitibus tantam multitudinem equitum propulerant, audacius subsistere, nonnunquam et novissimo agmine prœlio nostros lacessere cœperunt.—Cæsar suos a prœlio continebat, ac satis habebat in præsencia hostem rapinis pabulationibusque²⁶ prohibere.

IX.

Multa¹ antehac tacuerat² Liscus.—Hæc oratione³ Cæsaris adductus proponit⁴.—Sunt nonnulli,⁵ quorum auctoritas apud plebem plurimum⁶ valet.—Hi privãtim⁷ plus possunt⁸ quam ipsi

¹³ *In a place not their own*, i. e., *on disadvantageous ground*.—¹⁴ 451, c.—¹⁵ *sub+latus*, irreg. perf. of *tollere*: *the Helvetians were elated*.—¹⁶ *they had driven off*, *pro+pellere*.—¹⁷ 376.—¹⁸ *to halt*, *sub+sistere*; inf., 731.—¹⁹ *non+nunquam*, *not never*, i. e., *sometimes*.—²⁰ *also*.—²¹ *by an assault*.—²² *to hold together*, i. e., *to restrain*.—²³ 721, *from plunder and from foraging parties*.—²⁴ *pro+habere*.—²⁵ acc. pl. of *præsens*; in *præsencia* (*tempora*), *for the present*.—²⁶ 517, a.

¹ *Many things, before this, Liscus had kept secret*.—² *tacere*, *intrans* = *to be silent*; *trans* = *to keep secret*.—³ 788, 3, *orare* (*orât*).—⁴ *pro+ponere*, *to set before, to relate*.—⁵ *non+nullus*, *not none*, i. e., *some*.—⁶ *plurimum valet* = *avails very much (has very great weight)*.—⁷ 215, 3.—⁸ *plus possunt* = *can more*, i. e., *have more power*.

magistrātus.⁹—Hi seditiōsa¹⁰ atque imprōba¹¹ oratione multitudinem deterrent.¹²—Frumentum non confērunt.¹³—Hi multitudinem deterrent, ne frumentum conferant.¹⁴—Ipsi quidem principātum Galliæ obtinēre non possunt. — Sati¹⁵ est Gallōrum quam Romanōrum imperia perferre.¹⁶

Si Helvetios superavērunt¹⁷ Romāni, una¹⁸ cum reliqua Gallia Æduis libertātem eripient.¹⁹—Dubitare non debent, quin Romani Æduis libertatem sint ereptūri.²⁰—Sati¹⁵ est si jam principatum Galliæ obtinere non possint, Gallorum quam Romanorum imperia perferre.

Tum demum Liscus,²¹ oratione Cæsaris adductus, quod antea tacuerat proponit.—(*Oratio obliqua*): “Esse nonnullos, quorum auctoritas apud plebem plurimum valeat; qui privatim plus possint quam ipsi magistratus; hos seditiosa atque improba oratione multitudinem deterrere, ne frumentum conferant, quod præstare debeant. Si jam principatum Galliæ obtinere non possint, Gallorum quam Romanorum imperia perferre satius esse, neque dubitare debere, quin si Helvetios superaverint Romani, una cum reliqua Gallia Æduis libertatem sint erepturi.”

X.

Hac oratiōne Lisci, Dumnōrix, Divitiaci frater, designabatur.¹—Id Cæsar sentiēbat.²—Pluribus præsenti³bus eas res jactāri⁴ nolēbat.—Celeriter⁵ concilium dimittit; Liscum retinet.—Quærit,⁶ ex solo,⁷ ea quæ in conventu⁸ dixerat.—Dicit liberius⁹ atque audacius.⁹—Eādem secrēto¹⁰ ab aliis quærit.—Repērit¹¹ esse vera.

⁹ *The magistrates themselves.*—¹⁰ 791, 9 (seditio).—¹¹ in+probus, 799, 5.—¹² de+terrere.—¹³ con+ferre, contribute.—¹⁴ ne conferant, *that they may not contribute*, i. e., deter them from contributing, 548, b.—¹⁵ Sati¹⁵, compar. of satis, 376: *it is better.*—¹⁶ per+ferre, to endure.—¹⁷ 542, b, 2.—¹⁸ *they will wrest liberty from the Æduans, together with the rest of Gaul.*—¹⁹ ē+raperē, 803, 1.—²⁰ 754, 4.—²¹ *Then, finally (then, and not till then).*

¹ *was alluded to, de+signare.*—² *was aware of.*—³ 750, many being present, i. e., in the presence of many.—⁴ 794, 2, a; from jacio (jact-): jactare = to toss to and fro; hence, to discuss.—⁵ 215, 2.—⁶ *He inquires into.*—⁷ ex solo = of him alone.—⁸ 789.—⁹ 376.—¹⁰ *privately.*—¹¹ *He finds (the statements) are true.*

Ipse est Dumnōrix,¹³ summa audacia,¹³ magna apud plebem propter liberalitatem gratia,¹⁴ cupidus rerum¹⁵ novarum.—Complures annos¹⁶ portoria¹⁷ reliquaque omnia Æduorum vectigalia habet.—Hæc vectigalia parvo pretio¹⁸ redempta sunt.¹⁹—Vectigalia²⁰ parvo pretio redempta habet, propterea quod, illo²¹ licente,²² contra liceri²³ audet nemo.—His rebus suam rem familiarem auxit.—His rebus facultates²⁴ ad largiendum²⁵ magnas comparavit.—Magnum numerum equitatus suo sumptu²⁶ semper alit.—Magnum numerum equitatus semper circum se habet.—Non solum domi,²⁷ sed etiam apud finitimas civitates largiter²⁸ potest.

Cæsar hac oratione Lisci Dumnorīgem, Divitiaci fratrem, designari sentiebat: sed, quod pluribus presentibus eas res jactari nolebat, celeriter concilium dimittit, Liscum retinet: querit, ex solo, ea quæ in conventu dixerat. Dicit liberius atque audacius. Eadem secreto ab aliis querit; reperit esse vera: “Ipsum esse Dumnorīgem, summa audacia, magna apud plebem propter liberalitatem gratia, cupidum rerum novarum: complures annos portoria reliquaque omnia Æduorum vectigalia parvo pretio redempta habere, propterea quod illo licente contra liceri audeat nemo. His rebus et suam rem familiarem auxisse, et facultates ad largiendum magnas comparasse: magnum numerum equitatus suo sumtu semper alere et circum se habere: neque solum domi, sed etiam apud finitimas civitates largiter posse.”

XI.

Ad has suspensiones certissimæ res¹ accedebant.—Dumnorix per fines Sequanorum Helvetios transduxerat.²—Obsides inter eos dandos³ curaverat.—Ea omnia jussu⁴ Cæsaris fecerat.—Ea

¹³ *Dumnorix is the very person, (a man) of the highest audacity, &c.—*
¹³ 722.—¹⁴ *influence.*—¹⁵ 698, *b.*—¹⁶ 712.—¹⁷ *transit duties, custom duties.*
—¹⁸ 719.—¹⁹ *were contracted for.*—²⁰ *vectigalia . . . habet, he holds the*
taxes contracted for at a low price; i. e., holds them under a very favour-
able contract.—²¹ 456, *a*, *when he bids.*—²² *liceor, liceri, to bid.*—²³ 731.
—²⁴ *Means for making largesses.*—²⁵ 489.—²⁶ *suo sumptu, at his own*
expense. Sumptus, 789, from sumere.—²⁷ 726, *R.*, *at home.*—²⁸ *largiter*
potest, he can largely, i. e., he has extensive power.

¹ *certissimæ res = most certain (or undoubted) facts.—accedebant =*
were added; ad+cedere, intransitive.—² *trans+ducere.*—³ 504, *a.*—⁴ 789;
from jubere (juss-): by the command, 716.

omnia injussu⁵ Cæsaris et⁶ civitatis fecerat.—Ea omnia inscientibus ipsis⁷ fecerat.—Ea omnia non modo injussu Cæsaris et civitatis, sed etiam inscientibus ipsis fecerat.—A magistratū⁸ Æduōrum accusabātur.—Satis est caussæ,⁹ quare in eum animadvertat.¹⁰—Satis est caussæ, quare in eum civitatem animadvertēre jubeat.—Satis erat caussæ, quare in eum aut ipse animadvertēret, aut civitatem animadvertere jubēret.—Satis esse¹¹ caussæ arbitrabātur.

Quibus rebus cognitis,¹² quum¹³ ad has suspiciones certissimæ res accedērent—quod per fines Sequanorum Helvetios transduxisset¹⁴—quod obsides inter eos dando curasset—quod ea omnia non modo injussu suo et civitatis, sed etiam inscientibus ipsis, fecisset—quod a magistratu Æduorum accusarētur; satis esse caussæ arbitrabatur, quare in eum aut ipse animadvertēret, aut civitatem animadvertere juberet.

His omnibus rebus¹⁵ unum repugnābat.¹⁶—Divitiaci fratris¹⁷ summum in populum Romānum studium¹⁸ cognoverat Cæsar.—Divitiaci summam in se voluntatem cognoverat.—Divitiaci egregiam fidem, justitiam,¹⁹ temperantiam,¹⁹ cognoverat.—Dumnorīgis supplicio²⁰ Divitiaci animum offendet.—Ne²¹ Divitiaci animum offēdat, verētur.—Ne²² Divitiaci animum offēderet, verebātur.

His omnibus rebus unum repugnabat, quod Divitiaci fratris summum in populum Romanum studium, summam in se voluntatem, egregiam fidem, justitiam, temperantiam cognoverat: nam ne ejus supplicio Divitiaci animum offēderet, verebatur.

⁵ *without the command*; in+jussū.—⁶ The English idiom demands or instead of *and*: *without the command of Cæsar or the state*.—⁷ *themselves not knowing it*, i. e., without the knowledge of Cæsar and the Æduan government.—⁸ *By a magistrate*, 93, II., b.—⁹ 697, b.—¹⁰ in eum animadvertere, *to animadvert upon him*, i. e., *to punish him*.—¹¹ 751, R. 2.—¹² Quibus rebus cognitis = *Which things being known by inquiry*, i. e., *after he had inquired into these things*.—¹³ *Since (seeing that)*, 757, A, b.—¹⁴ transduxisset, curasset, &c., are subjunctives, because they express, not Cæsar's own sentiments or knowledge, but what he had heard from others: *certissimæ res accederent*.—¹⁵ 704, *To all these considerations one (thing) opposed itself*.—¹⁶ re+pugnare.—¹⁷ *Of his brother Divitiacus*, i. e., the brother of Dumnorix.—¹⁸ *zeal*.—¹⁹ 785, 2.—²⁰ *By the punishment of Dumnorix he will hurt the feelings of Divitiacus*.—²¹ *veretur ne . . . he fears that he shall*.—²² *verebatur ne . . . he feared that he should*.

XII.

Cæsar graviter¹ in² Dumnorigem statuet.—Divitiacus Cæsarem complectitur.—Divitiacus multis³ cum lacrymis Cæsarem complectitur.—Obsecrâre incipit ne⁴ quid gravius⁵ in² fratrem statuât.—Scit Divitiacus illa esse vera.—Nemo ex eo⁶ plus quam Divitiacus doloris⁷ capit.—Divitiacus gratiâ⁸ plurimum domi atque in reliqua Gallia poterat.—Dumnōrix minimum⁹ propter adolescentiam poterat.—Dumnōrix per Divitiacum crevit.¹⁰—His opibus¹¹ ac nervis¹² ad minuendam¹³ gratiam Divitiaci utitur.—His opibus ad perniciem¹⁴ Divitiaci utitur.—Quibus opibus ac nervis non solum ad minuendam gratiam, sed pene ad perniciem Divitiaci utitur.—Divitiacus tamen et¹⁵ amore fraterno et existimatione¹⁶ vulgi commovetur.¹⁷—Divitiacus summum locum amicitiae apud Cæsarem tenet.—Nemo existimabit non ejus voluntate factum.¹⁸—Ex hac re tōtius Galliae animi a Divitiaco avertentur.¹⁹

(*Direct Narration, Present Time.*²⁰) Scit Divitiacus illa esse vera, nec quisquam ex eo plus quam ipse doloris capit, propterea quod, quum ipse gratiâ plurimum domi atque in reliqua Gallia, ille minimum propter adolescentiam posset, per se crevit; quibus opibus ac nervis non solum ad minuendam gratiam, sed pene ad perniciem ipsius utitur. Divitiacus tamen et amore fraterno et existimatione vulgi commovetur, quod, si²¹ quid fratri a Cæsare acciderit, quum²² ipse talem locum amicitiae apud eum teneat, nemo existimabit non

¹ graviter statuet = will decide severely.—² against.—³ 89, II.—⁴ 548, a.
⁵ quid gravius = anything more severe (than usual): anything at all severe.—⁶ from him, i. e., Dumnōrix.—⁷ plus doloris, more pain, 697.—⁸ by his influence (popularity).—⁹ minimum poterat = had very little power.—
¹⁰ crescere: grew (in power).—¹¹ resources.—¹² sinews, abl. by 716.—
¹³ 739, for diminishing the influence of Divitiacus.—¹⁴ 790, 1.—¹⁵ 517, c.
¹⁶ existimare, 788, 3: existimatione vulgi = by the opinion of the public.
¹⁷ con+movēre; commovētur = is strongly moved.—¹⁸ No one will think it was not done with his (Divitiacus's) consent.—¹⁹ a+vertere: the affections of all Gaul will be turned away from him.—²⁰ Observe carefully the moods and tenses in the following paragraphs of direct and oblique narration.—²¹ if anything happen to his brother from Cæsar.— quum ipse teneat, seeing that he himself holds.

ejus voluntate factum; qua ex re fiet²³ uti totius Galliae animi ab eo avertantur.²⁴

(*Direct Narration, Past Time.*) Sciebat Divitiacus illa esse vera, nec quisquam ex eo plus quam ipse doloris capiēbat, propterea quod, quum ipse gratia plurimum domi atque in reliqua Gallia, ille minimum propter adolescentiam posset, per se crevērāt; quibus opibus ac nervis non solum ad minuendam gratiam, sed pæne ad perniciem ipsius utebātur. Divitiacus tamen et amore fraterno et existimatione vulgi commovēbātur, quod si quid fratri a Cæsare gravius accidisset, quum ipse talem locum amicitiae apud eum tenēret, nemo erat existimatūrus non ejus voluntate factum, qua ex re futurum erat uti totius Galliae animi ab eo averterentur.

Divitiacus, multis cum lacrymis Cæsarem complexus obsecrare incipit (*oblique narration, present time*), “Ne quid gravius in fratrem statuatur; scire se, illa esse vera, nec quemquam ex eo plus quam se doloris capere, propterea quod, quum ipse gratia plurimum domi atque in reliqua Gallia, ille minimum propter adolescentiam posset, per se crevērīt; quibus opibus ac nervis non solum ad minuendam gratiam, sed pæne ad perniciem suam utātur: sese tamen et amore fraterno et existimatione vulgi commovēri, quod, si quid ei gravius a Cæsare accidērit, quum ipse eum locum amicitiae apud eum teneat, neminem existimaturum non sua voluntate factum; qua ex re futurum uti totius Galliae animi a se avertantur.”


Divitiacus multis cum lacrymis, Cæsarem complexus, obsecrare cœpit (*oblique narration, past time*), “Ne quid gravius in fratrem statuēret; scire se, illa esse vera, nec quemquam ex eo plus quam se doloris capere, propterea quod, quum ipse gratia plurimum domi atque in reliqua Gallia, ille minimum propter adolescentiam posset, per se crevisset; quibus opibus ac nervis non solum ad minuendam gratiam, sed pæne ad perniciem suam uterētur: sese tamen et amore fraterno et existimatione vulgi commoveri, quod si quid ei a Cæsare gravius accidisset, quum ipse eum locum amicitiae apud eum tenēret, neminem existimaturum non sua voluntate factum; qua ex re futurum, uti totius Galliae animi a se averterentur.”

²³ from which thing it will result.—²⁴ 754, 2.

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.



LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

 THE numbers refer to paragraphs. In verbs, the perfect and supine-stems are placed in brackets, immediately after the infinitive endings. The declensions of nouns may be known by the genitive endings : the conjugations of verbs by the infinitive endings.

- A, ab, abs, prep. with abl., *by, from*.
 Abesse (abfu-, ab+esse), *to be away from, to be distant, to be absent*.
 Abrog-äre (av-, at-), *to abrogate*.
 Abstin-äre (abstinu-, abstent-, abs+tenere), *to abstain from (with abl.)*.
 Abund-äre (av-, at-), *to abound (with abl.)*.
 Ac, conj., *and, as well as*.
 Acced-äre (accēss-, access-, ad+ced-ere, 401, 3), *to approach*.
 Accid-äre (accid-, ad+cadere), *to happen*.
 Accidit, impers., 583, *it happens*.
 Accip-äre (io, accēp-, accept-, 666, V., b), *to receive : acceptus erat, he was popular, or acceptable*.
 Accurr-äre (accurr-, and accucurr-, accurs-, ad+curre), *to run to, to run up to*.
 Accus-äre (av-, at-), *to accuse*.
 Acer, acris, acre, 105, R. 1, *sharp, spirited*.
 Acerrime (superl. of acriter), *very spiritedly*.
 Acies, ei, *line of battle*.
 Acriter, adv., 217, *sharply, spiritedly*.
 Acut-us, a, um, *sharp, acute*.
 Ad, prep. with accus., *to, near*.
 Add-äre (addid-, addit-, ad+dare, 411, c), *to add*.
 Adduc-äre (addux-, adduct-), *to lead to, induce*.
 Adeo, adv., *to this point, to such a degree*.
 Adesse (adfu-, ad+esse), *to be present (with dat.)*.
 Adhib-äre (adhibu-, adhibit-, ad+habere), *to apply, employ, admit*.
 Adhort-äri (at-), dep., *to exhort*.
 Adjung-äre (adjunx-, adjunct-), *to join to*.
 Adjuv-äre (adjäv-, adjüt-), *to assist*.
 Admōdum, adv., *very*.
 Admon-äre (admonu-, admonit-), *to advise, admonish*.
 Adolescens, (adolescent) is, *young man*.
 Adolescenti-a, æ, *youth*.
 Ador-äre (av-, at-), *to adore, worship*.
 Advent-us, ūs, *approach*.
 Adversus, or adversum, prep. with accus., *against, towards*.
 Ædific-äre (av-, at-), *to build*.
 Ædifici-um, i, *building*.
 Ædu-us, i, Æduan (people of Gaul).
 Ægens, (ëgent) is, 107, *poor*.
 Æger, gra, grum, *sick*.
 Ægritudo, (ægritudin) is, 339, *sorrow, affliction, sickness*.
 Ægrot-äre (av-, at-), *to be sick*.
 Ægyptus, i, f., 25, a, *Ægypt*.
 Æquor, (æquör) is, 327, *sea*.
 Æstas, (æstat) is, 293, *summer*.

- Ætas, (ætāt) is, 293, *age, time of life*.
 Æternitas, (ætērnitāt) is, 293, *eternity*.
 Ætern-us, a, um, *eternal*; in æternum, *forever*.
 Affectio, (affection) is, 293, *affection*.
 Afferre (attul-, allat-, ad+ferre), *to bring, bring to, adduce*.
 Affic-ēre (affēc-, affect-, ad+facere), *to affect, move, influence*.
 Afric-a, æ, *Africa*.
 African-us, i, *Africanus*.
 Ager, gri, 64, *field*.
 Ag-ēre (ēg-, act-), *to do, act, drive; to treat* (as an ambassador).
 Agmen, (agmin) is, 344, *a, army on march, or in marching order; novissimum agmen, the rear*.
 Agn-us, i, *lamb*.
 Agricola, æ, m., *husbandman*.
 Agricultur-a, æ, *agriculture*.
 Agripp-a, æ, *Agrippa*.
 Aio, 609, *I say, say yes, affirm*.
 Al-a, æ, *wing*.
 Al-ēre (alu-, alt-), *to nourish, support, maintain*.
 Alexander, -dri, *Alexander*.
 Alien-us, a, um, *foreign, belonging to another*.
 Aliquando, *at some time, some day, at last*.
 Aliquant-us, a, um, 184, *somewhat great; aliquantum agri, a pretty large piece of ground*.
 Aliquis, quæ, quid (quod), 178, 5, *some one, something; aliquid novi, something new*, 180.
 Aliter, *otherwise*.
 Ali-us, a, ud, gen. alius, &c., 194, R. 1, *other, another*. [of Gaul.
 Allobroges, um, *Allobroges, people*
 Allu-ēre (allu-), *to wash*.
 Alpes, ñum, *Alps, mountains between Gaul and Italy*.
 Alter, a, um, gen. ius, 194, R. 1, *another, the second* (in a series).
 Alt-us, a, um, *high, lofty, deep; altum, i, the deep, the sea*.
 Amabilis, is, e, 104, *amiable*.
 Am-are (av-, at-), *to love*.
 Ambo, æ, o, *both*.
 Ambul-are (av-, at-), *to walk*.
 Amiciti-a, æ, *friendship*.
 Amic-us, i, *friend*.
 Amitt-ēre (amis-, amiss-), *to lose*.
 Amplē, adv., *largely*.
 Amplius, comp. of amplē, *more, larger, greater than*.
 Ancill-a, æ, *maid-servant*.
 Angli-a, æ, *England*.
 Angusti-æ, arum, *defiles*, 57, R
 Angust-us, a, um, *narrow*.
 Animadvert-ēre (vert-, vers-), animum+ad+vertere), *to turn the mind to, to observe; with in, to punish; Cæsar in Dumnorigem animadvertit, Cæsar punishes Dumnorix*.
 Animal, (animal) is, 325, *animal*.
 Animans, (animant) is, *living; as noun, a living being*.
 Anim-us, i, *soul, mind*.
 Ann-us, i, *year*.
 Anser, (anser) is, 319, *goose*.
 Ante, prep. with accus., *before*.
 Antehac, adv., *before, before this*.
 Antepon-ēre (posu-, posit-), *to place before, to prefer*.
 Antonin-us, i, *Antonine*.
 Antoni-us, i, *Antony*.
 Aper-ire (aperu-, apert-, 427, II.), *to open*.
 Apert-us, a, um, *open*.
 Apis, (Ap-) is, *Apis, Egyptian deity*.
 Appell-are (av-, at-), *to call, name*.
 Aprilis, is (sc. mensis), m., 25, *a, April*. [proach,
 Appropinqu-are (av-, at-), *to approach*.
 Apud, prep. with accus., *among; apud te, with you* (at your house);
 apud Ciceronem, *in Cicero* (i. e., his writings).

Aqu-a, æ, *water*.
 Aquil-a, æ, *eagle*.
 Aquitan-us, i, *Aquitanian* (people of Gaul).
 Arâr, (Arâr) is, *the Saone* (river of Gaul).
 Ar-äre (av-, at-), *to plough*.
 Arbitr-äri (at-), dep., *to judge, think*.
 Arbor, (arbör) is, *f., tree*.
 Arcess-äre (arcessiv-, arcessit-), *to send for*.
 Arethus-a, æ, *Arethusa*.
 Argent-um, i, *silver*.
 Arid-um, i, *the sand* (neuter of aridus, a, um, *dry*).
 Ariovist-us, i, *Ariovistus*, a German chieftain.
 Aristides, (Aristid-) is, *Aristides*.
 Arma, orum, *arms*.
 Arm-äre (av-, at-), *to arm*.
 Arrip-äre (arripu-, arrept-, ad+rap-ere), *to snatch up, to seize*.
 Arroganti-a, æ, *haughtiness, obstinacy, arrogance*.
 Ars, (art) is, 293, *art*.
 Asper, a, um, *rough*.
 At, conj., *but*.
 Athenæ, arum, *Athens*.
 Atheniensis, is, *an Athenian*.
 Atque, conj., *and*.
 Atrox, (atröc) is, 107, *fierce*.
 Attent-e, adv., *attentively*.
 Attent-us, a, um, *attentive*.
 Attic-a, æ, *Attica*.
 Atting-äre (attig-, attact-), *to touch on, border upon*.
 Auctoritas, (auctorität) is, 293, *authority, influence*.
 Audacious, comp. of audacter, 376, *more boldly*.
 Audacter, adv., *boldly*.
 Aud-äre (ausus sum), *to dare*.
 Aud-ire (audiv-, audit-), *to hear*.
 Aug-äre (aux-, auct-), *to increase*.
 August-us, i, *Augustus*.
 Aur-um, i, *gold*.

Aut, conj., *or*.
 Autem, conj., 315, *but, moreover, also*.
 Auxili-um, i, *assistance*; auxilia, pl., *auxiliary troops*.
 Avar-us, i, *avaricious*.
 Avert-äre (avert-, avers-), *to turn away*.
 Avien-us, i, *Avienus*.
 Avis, (av) is, 300, *bird*.

B.

Barbar-us, a, um, *barbarian, foreign*; used as a noun, *a barbarian*.
 Beat-us, a, um, *happy*.
 Beat-ë, 215, 1, *happily*.
 Belg-a, æ, *a Belgian*, people of Gaul.
 Bell-äre (av-, at-), *to wage war*.
 Bellicos-us, a, um, *warlike*.
 Bell-um, i, *war*.
 Benë, adv., *well*, 215, 1, R.
 Benefici-um, i, *good deed, act of kindness*.
 Benign-us, a, um, *kind*, with dat.
 Besti-a, æ, *beast, brute*.
 Bib-äre (bib-, bibit-), *to drink*.
 Bienni-um, i, *space of two years*.
 Bini, æ, a, dist., 189, *two apiece, two at a time*.
 Bis, 189, *twice*.
 Bonitas, (bonität) is, 293, *goodness*.
 Bon-us, a, um, *good*; bona, neut. pl., *blessings, advantages*.
 Bos, bovis, 351, 2, *ox or cow*.
 Brevis, is, e, 104, *short*.
 Britanni-a, æ, *Britain*.
 Britann-us, i, *a Briton*.
 Brut-us, i, *Brutus*.

C.

Cad-äre (cecid-, cas-, 411, b), *to fall*.
 Cadm-us, i, *Cadmus*.
 Caduc-us, a, um, *frail*.
 Cæd-äre (cecid-, cæs-, 411, b), *to fell, kill, cut down*.
 Cæsar, (Cæsär) is, *Cæsar*

- Caius, i, *Caius*.
 Calamitas, (calamitat) is, *calamity*.
 Calcar, (calcār) is, 325, *spur*.
 Camp-us, i, *field, plain*.
 Can-is, (can) is, *c, dog*.
 Cant-āre (av-, at-), *to sing*.
 Cant-us, ūs, *singing*.
 Cap-ĕre (cēp-, capt-), *to take*.
 Captiv-us, i, *captive, prisoner*.
 Car-ĕre (caru-, 398), *to want, with abl.*
 Carmen, (carmin) is, 344, *a, song*.
 Caro, (carn) is, 340, R., *flesh*.
 Carthaginiensis, is, *a Carthaginian*.
 Carthago, (Carthagin) is, *Carthage*.
 Carr-us, i, *wagon*.
 Car-us, a, um, *dear*.
 Cassi-us, i, *Cassius*.
 Castell-um, i, *fortress, tower*.
 Castic-us, i, *Casticus*.
 Castra, orum, *camp*.
 Cas-us, ūs, *accident, chance*.
 Catamentales, edis, *Catamentales*, proper name.
 Catilin-a, æ, *Catiline*, proper name.
 Cato, (Catōn) is, *Cato*.
 Caus-a, æ, *cause, reason*; abl., causā, *for the sake of*, 135, II., b; salutis causā, *for the sake of safety*.
 Cant-us, a, um, *cautious*.
 Celebr-āre (av-, at-), *to celebrate*.
 Celer, (celer) is, 107, *swift*.
 Celeriter, adv., 215, 2, b, *swiftly*.
 Celta, æ, *a Celt*, people of Gaul.
 Centum, indecl., *a hundred*.
 Cens-ĕre (censu-, cens-), *to think, judge, believe*.
 Centurio, (centurion) is, *centurion*.
 Cern-ĕre (crev-, cret-), *to separate, decide, judge*.
 Cert-us, a, um, *certain*; certiore facere, *to make more certain*, i. e., *to inform*.
 Cerv-us, i, *stag*.
 Ceteri, orum, *the rest*.
 Christ-us, i, *Christ*.
 Cicero, (Cicerōn) is, *Cicero*.
 Cing-ĕre (cinx-, cinct-), *to gird, surround*.
 Circa, prep. with acc., *about, around*.
 Circiter, prep. with acc., *about, near*; circiter viginti, *about twenty*.
 Circum, prep. with accus., *about, around*.
 Circumst-āre (or circumstistĕre), circumstĕt-, 391, 1, *to surround, to stand about*.
 Citō, adv., *quickly*.
 Cit-us, a, um, *quick, swift*.
 Civis, (civ) is, *c, citizen*.
 Civitas, (civitāt) is, 293, *state*.
 Clamor, (clamōr) is, 319 *noise, clamour*.
 Clar-us, a, um, *illustrious*.
 Classis, (class-) is, 300, *fleet*.
 Claud-ĕre (claus-, claus-), *to shut*.
 Cliens, (client) is, m., *a dependant*.
 Coel-um, i, *firmament, heaven*.
 Coem-ĕre (coēm-, coempt-), *to buy up* (con+emere).
 Cœn-āre (av-, at-), *to sup*.
 Cœpi, used only in perf. tenses. I begin, 611.
 Cog-ĕre (coēg-, coact-), *to bring together, collect, compel*.
 Cogit-āre (av-, at-), *to think*.
 Cognosc-ĕre (cognov-, cognit-), *to learn, find out, know*.
 Cohors, (cohort) is, 293 *cohort*, the tenth part of a legion.
 Cohort-ari (at-), dep., *to encourage*.
 Col-ĕre (colu-, cult-), *to cultivate, serve, honour*.
 Collig-ĕre (collĕg-, collect-, con+legere), *to collect*.
 Collis, (coll) is, m., 302, R., *hill*.
 Colloc-āre (av-, at-), *to place*.
 Colloqui-um, i, *conference*.
 Color, (colōr) is, 319, *colour*.
 Columb-a, æ, *dove*. [burn up
 Combur-ĕre (combuss-, combust-), *to*

- Comes, (comit) is, *c, companion.*
- Comme-äre (av-, at-), *to go to, to go and return.*
- Commemor-äre (av-, at-), *to mention, to call to mind.*
- Committ-äre (commis-, commiss-), *to intrust to, with dative; prælium committere, to join battle.*
- Commov-äre (commöv-, commöt-), *to move greatly, to excite.*
- Commun-äre (iv-, it-), *to fortify.*
- Communis, is, e, 104, *common.*
- Commut-äre (av-, at-), *to change.*
- Commutatio, (commutatiön) is, *change.*
- Compar-äre (av-, at-), *to get together, procure.*
- Compell-äre (compul-, compuls-, con+pellere), *to compel, drive on.*
- Comper-äre (comper-, compert-, 427, V.), *to find out, discover.*
- Complect-i (complex-), dep., *to embrace.*
- Compl-äre (compläv-, complät-, 395, II.), *to fill up.*
- Complures, ium, 327, *very many.*
- Con-ari (at-), *to attempt, try.*
- Conat-um, i, *attempt.*
- Conced-äre (concess-, concess-), *to yield to, to grant, give way.*
- Concess-us, üs, *grant.*
- Concili-äre (av-, at-), *to gain (for another).*
- Concili-um, i, *assembly, council.*
- Concit-äre (av-, at-), *to stir up, to excite.*
- Concupisc-ere (concupiv-), *to desire.*
- Concurr-äre (concurr-, concurs-), *to run together.*
- Condemn-äre (av-, at-), *to condemn,* 348.
- Conditio, (conditiön) is, 333, R., *condition.*
- Conditor, (conditör) is, *builder, founder.* [lead or bring together.
- Conduc-äre (condux-, conduct-), *to*
- Conferre (contul-, collat-), *to bring together, contribute.*
- Confic-äre (confec-, confect-), *to finish.*
- Confid-äre (confisus sum), *to trust to, to confide in.*
- Confirm-äre (av-, at-), *to confirm. establish, affirm, fix.*
- Conflu-äre (conflux-, conflux-), *to flow together.*
- Congreg-äre (av-, at-), *to gather into flocks.*
- Congress-us, üs, *meeting.*
- Conjic-ere (conjec-, conject-, con+jacere, 416), *to hurl.*
- Conjung-ere (conjunx-, conjunct-), *to join together, unite.*
- Conjur-äre (av-, at-), *to conspire, plot.*
- Conjuratio, (conjuratiön) is, 333, R., *conspiracy.*
- Conjux, (conjug) is, *c, husband or wife.*
- Conscend-äre (conscend-, conscens-, con+scandere, 309), *to climb up.*
- Conscisc-äre (consciv-, conscit-), *to decree, determine; mortem sibi consciscere, to commit suicide,* 555.
- Consci-us, a, um, *conscious, privy to.*
- Conscrib-äre (conscrips-, conscript-), *to enrol, levy.*
- Consent-äre (consens-, consens-), *to agree.*
- Consid-äre (consed-, consess-), *to sit down, to encamp.*
- Consili-um, i, *plan, judgment, counsel, deliberation.*
- Consist-äre (constit-, constit-), *to stand, halt.*
- Conspect-us, üs, *sight, beholding.*
- Conspic-äre (conspex-, conspect-), *to see, get sight of.*
- Const-äre (stit-, stit- or stat-), *to stand together, to halt.*
- Constitu-äre (constitu-, constitüt-

- con+statuere), to place, fix, appoint.
- Consuesc-ĕre (consuev-, consuet-), to be accustomed.
- Consuetudo, (consuetudin) is, 339, custom, usage.
- Consul, (consŭl) is, consul, chief magistrate of Rome.
- Consul-ĕre (consulu-, consult-), to consult.
- Consult-um, i, decree.
- Consum-ĕre (consumps-, consumpt-, con+sumere), to consume.
- Contemn-ĕre (contemps-, contempt-), to despise.
- Contempl-āri (at-), dep., to contemplate.
- Contend-ĕre (contend-, content-), to contend, strive after, hasten.
- Content-us, a, um, content, with abl.
- Contin-ĕre (continu-, content-, con+tenere), to contain, restrain, hold together.
- Continens, (continent) is, 107, successive, continued.
- Continenter, 215, 2, b, continually.
- Contingit, impers., 580, it happens.
- Continuatio, (continuatiō) is, 333, R., continuance.
- Contra, prep. with accus., against; adv., in opposition to.
- Contrah-ĕre (contrax-, contract-, con+trahere), to draw together, collect.
- Convĕn-ire (convĕn-, convent-, con+venire), to come together, meet, agree.
- Convent-us, ūs, meeting, assembly.
- Convert-ĕre (convert-, convers-), to turn completely round.
- Convoc-āre (av-, at-, con+vocare), to call together.
- Coor-iri (coort-), dep., to rise, as a storm.
- Copi-a, æ, abundance; pl., copiæ, arum, troops, forces.
- Cor, (cord) is, n., heart.
- Corinth-us, i, f., Corinth.
- Corniger, a, um, horned.
- Corn-u, 111, horn, wing of an army.
- Coron-a, æ, crown.
- Corpus, (corpōr) is, 344, b, body.
- Corrig-ĕre (correx-, correct-, con+regere), to correct, make straight.
- Corv-us, i, crow.
- Cras, adv., to-morrow.
- Crass-us, i, Crassus.
- Cre-āre (av-, at-), to create.
- Creber, bra, brum, frequent.
- Cred-ĕre (credid-, credit-), to believe, intrust, with dat.
- Crep-āre (crepu-, crepit-, 387, II.), to chide, creak (as a door).
- Cresc-ĕre (crĕv-, crēt-), to grow.
- Crimen, (crimin) is, 344, a, crime.
- Crus, (crur) is, n., leg.
- Cubicul-um, i, bed-chamber.
- Cubile, (cubil) is, 314, bed, place to lie down.
- Culmen, (culmin) is, 344, a, top, summit.
- Culp-a, æ, fault.
- Cultus, ūs (from colere), cultivation, civilization, refinement.
- Cum, prep. with abl., with; cum, conj., same as quum, when.
- Cunct-āri (at-), dep., to delay.
- Cunct-us, a, um, all, the whole.
- Cup-ĕre (io, 199, cupiv-, cupit-), to desire.
- Cupidē, adv., with desire, 215, 1 (cupidus).
- Cupiditas, (cupiditat) is, 293, desire.
- Cupid-us, a, um (with gen.), desirous, eager.
- Cūr, adv., why.
- Cur-a, æ, care.
- Cur-āre (av-, at-), to take care, to see that.
- Curi-a, æ, senate-house.
- Curr-ĕre (cucurr-, curs-, 411, a), to run.

Curs-us, ūs, *course, running.*

Custos, (custod) is, 25, *a, guard, guardian.*

Cyrus, i, *Cyrus.*

D.

Danubi-us, i, *Danube (river).*

D-āre (dēd-, dat-), *to give.*

Dari-us, i, *Darius, Persian king.*

De, prep. with abl., *of, from, concerning.* De tertia vigilia, in (about, or after) the third watch.

Deb-ēre (debu-, debit-), *to owe—ought.*

Deced-ēre (decess-, decess-, de+cedere), *to go away, depart, retire.*

Decem, indecl., *ten.*

Decern-ēre (decrēv-, decrēt-, 407), *decree, determine.*

Decert-āre (av-, at-), *to contend, fight.*

Decet, impers., 583, *dequit, it is becoming.*

Decim-us, a, um, *tenth.*

Ded-ēre (dedīd-, dedīt-), *to surrender.*

Deditio, (deditiō) is, 333, R., *surrender.*

Deduc-ēre (dedux-, deduct-), *to lead away.*

De-esse (defu-, de+esse), *to be wanting (with dat.), to be away.*

Defend-ēre (defend-, defens-), *to defend.*

Defess-us, a, um (part. of defetisci, obsol.), *wearied, worn out.*

Defic-ēre (defēc-, defect-, de+facere), *to fail, to be wanting, with dat.*

Delect-āre (av-, at-), *to delight.*

Del-ēre (delēv-, delēt-), *to destroy.*

Deliber-āre (av-, at-), *to deliberate.*

Delig-ēre (delēg-, delect-, de+legere), *to choose.*

Demetri-us, i, *Demetrius (proper name).*

Demum, adv., *finally, at last.*

Denique, adv., *at last, in short.*

Dens, (dent) is, m., 295, R. 1 *tooth.*

Dens-us, a, um, *thick, dense.*

Depon-ēre (deposu-, deposit-, de+ponere), *to lay aside, put down.*

Deser-ēre (deseru-, desert-), *to leave, desert.*

Desert-um, i, *a desert.*

Desil-ire (desilu-, desult-, de+salire, 428), *to leap down.*

Design-āre (av-, at-), *to point out, allude to.*

Desper-āre (av-, at-, de+sperare), *to despair.*

Desperatio, (desperatiō) is, *despair*

Deterr-ēre (deterru-, deterrit-), *to deter, frighten from.*

Dens, i, *God, 62, R.*

Dic-ēre (dix-, dict-), *to say, tell.*

Dictio, (dictiō) is, 333, R., *speaking, pleading.*

Dies, ei, *day.*

Differre (distul-, dilat-, dis+ferre), *to differ, to put off.*

Difficilis, is, e (dis+facilis), *difficult.*

Dignitas, (dignitat) is, 293, *dignity, rank.*

Dign-us, a, um, *worthy, with abl.*

Diligens, (diligent) is, *careful, diligent.*

Diligenter, 215, 2, b, *carefully, diligently.*

Dilig-ēre (dilex-, dilect-, di+legere), *to love (with esteem).*

Dimitt-ēre (dimis-, dimiss-, di+mittere), *to send away, dismiss.*

Dirip-ēre (diripu-, dirept-, di+rapere), *to plunder.*

Disced-ēre (discess-, discess-, dis+cedere, 401, 3, b), *to go away, depart.*

Disc-ēre (didic-, 411, a), *to learn.*

Discess-us, ūs, *departure.*

Disciplin-a, æ, *instruction, discipline*

Discipul-us, i, *scholar, pupil.*

Disert-us, a, um, *fluent, eloquent*.
 Displic-ĕre (displīcu-, displicīt-, dis+placere), *to displease*, with dat.
 Dispon-ĕre (disposu-, disposit-, dis+ponere), *to place in different directions, arrange, dispose*.
 Disput-āre (av-, at-), *to dispute, discuss*.
 Dissent-ĭre (dissens-, dissens-, dis+sēntire, 427, III.), *to differ in opinion, dissent*.
 Disser-ĕre (disseru-, dissert-, 407), *to treat of, discuss*.
 dissolv-ĕre (dissolv-, dissolut-, dis+solvere), *to dissolve*.
 Dist-āre, *to be distant, or apart* (dis+stare).
 Distribu-ere (distribu-, distribūt-), *to divide or distribute among*, 422.
 Ditissimus, superl. of dives.
 Diu, adv., *long*; compar., diutius, *longer*.
 Divers-us, a, um, *different*.
 Dives, (divit) is, 371, R. 1, *rich*.
 Divico, (Divicōn) is, *Divico*, proper name.
 Divid-ĕre (divis-, divis-), *to divide*.
 Divin-us, a, um, *divine*.
 Divitiac-us, i, *Divitiacus*, proper name.
 Divitiæ, arum, 57, R., *riches, wealth*.
 Doc-ĕre (docu-, doct-), *to teach*.
 Docilis, is, e, 104, *docile, teachable*.
 Dol-ĕre (dolu-, dolit-), *to grieve*.
 Dolor, (dolōr) is, 319, *grief, pain*.
 Dol-us, i, *fraud, deceit*.
 Dom-āre (domu-, domit-, 387, II.), *to subdue*.
 Domicili-um, i, *dwelling*.
 Domin-us, i, *master*, of house or slaves.
 Dom-us, i and us, 112, 3, *house, home*; domi, *at home*; domum, *to one's house*.
 Dorm-ĭre (dormiv-, dormīt-), *to sleep*.
 Draco, (dracōn) is, 331, *dragon*.

Druides, um, *Druids*, priests of ancient Britain.
 Dubit-āre (av-, at-), *to doubt, hesitate*.
 Dubitatio, (dubitatiōn) is, 333, R., *doubt*.
 Dubi-us, a, um, *doubtful*.
 Duc-ĕre (dux-, duct-), *to lead*.
 Dulcis, is, e, 104, *sweet*.
 Dum, conj., *while, so long as, until*.
 Dumnorix, (Dumnorig) is, *Dumno*rix, proper name.
 Duo, two, 194.
 Duodecim, indecl., *twelve*.
 Duplic-āre (av-, at-), *to double*.
 Dur-āre (-av-, at-), intrans., *to endure last*; trans., *to harden*.
 Dur-us, a, um, *hard*.
 Dux, (duc) is, *leader, guide, commander*.

E.

E or ex, prep. with abl., *out of, from*.
 Ecquis, interrog. pron., 178, 7, *any one?*
 Ed-ĕre, or esse (ed-, es-, 601), *to eat*.
 Educ-āre (av-, at-), *to train, educate*.
 Educ-ĕre (edux-, educt-), *to lead out*.
 Effect-us, ūs, *effect*.
 Effemin-āre (av-, at-, ex+femina), *to effeminate, make womanish*.
 Ego, I, 120.
 Egregi-us, a, um, *excellent, remarkable*.
 Elegans, (elegant) is, 107, *elegant*.
 Eloquens, (eloquent) is, 107, *eloquent*.
 Em-ĕre (ēm-, empt-), *to buy*.
 Emic-āre (emicu-), 387, II., *to shine or flash forth*.
 Enim, conj., *for*, 442, e.
 Enunti-āre (av-, at-), *to divulge*.
 Eo, adv., *there, to that place, on that account, by so much*.
 Eodem, adv., *to the same place*.

Epistol-a, æ, *letter*.
 Eques, (equit) is, *horse soldier*.
 Equester, tris, tre, 428, a, *belonging to cavalry*. Equestri prælio, in a *battle of cavalry*.
 Equit-äre (av-, at-), *to ride on horse-back*.
 Equitat-us, ūs, *cavalry*.
 Equ-us, i, *horse*.
 Erip-ëre (eripu-, erept, e+rapere), *to take away from, snatch away*.
 Err-äre (av-, at-) *to err, wander*.
 Erump-ëre (erūp-, erupt-), *to burst forth, sally out*.
 Esse, *to be*, 650; esse, *to eat*, see edere.
 Et, conj., *and*. Et—et, both—and.
 Etenim, conj., *for*.
 Etiam, conj., *also, even*.
 Etsi, conj., *although*.
 Europ-a, æ, *Europe*.
 Evoc-äre (av-, at-, e+vocare), *to call out*.
 Ex, prep. with abl. See E.
 Exced-ëre (excess-, excess-, ex+cedere), *to go away, depart out of*.
 Exclam-äre (av-, at-), *to cry out*.
 Excip-ëre (excēp-, except-, ex+capere), *to receive*.
 Excit-äre (av-, at-), *to raise, kindle, excite*.
 Excusatio, (excusation) is, 333, R., *excuse*.
 Exe-dere (exēd-, exes-, ex+edere), *to eat up, consume, corrode*.
 Exempl-um, i, *example*.
 Exerc-ëre (exercu-, exercit-), *to exercise, practice*.
 Exercit-us, ūs, *army*.
 Exigu-us, a, um, *small*.
 Ex-ire (exiv- and exi-, exit-), *to go out, depart*.
 Existim-äre (av-, at-), *to think, judge*.
 Existimatio, (existimation) is, 333, R., *opinion*.
 Expect-äre (av-, at-), *to wait for*.

Expedit, impers., 583, *it is expedient*.
 Expeditio, (expedition) is, 333, R., *military expedition*.
 Expell-ere (expul-, expuls-, ex+pellere), *to expel, drive out*.
 Experts, (expert) is, 107, *devoid of*, with gen. or abl., 336.
 Expet-ëre (expetiv-, expetit-), *to covet, desire earnestly*.
 Explorator, (explorator) is, 319, *scout*.
 Expon-ëre (exposu-, exposit-, ex+ponere), *to place out, set forth, explain*.
 Expugn-äre (av-, at-, ex+pugnare), *to take by storm*.
 Extra, prep. with accus., *outside of, without*.
 Extrem-us, a, um, superl. of exterus, 370, *the last, outermost*.
 Exur-ëre (exuss-, exust-, ex+urere), *to burn up*.

F.

Faber, bri, *artificer, workman*.
 Fabul-a, æ, *fable, story*.
 Fac-ere (io, fēc-, fact-), *to make, do*.
 Facilē, adv., *easily*.
 Facilis, is, e, 104, *easy*.
 Facultas, (facultāt) is, 293, *power of doing; hence means, resources*.
 Facund-us, a, um, *eloquent*.
 Fall-ere (fefell-, fals-), *to deceive*.
 Fam-a, æ, *rumour, fame*.
 Fames, (fam) is, 300, *hunger*.
 Famili-a, æ, *family, gang of slaves*.
 Familiaris, e, *belonging to the familia*. Res familiaris, *property*.
 Fat-ëri (fass-), dep., *to confess*.
 Fat-um, i, *fate*.
 Fav-ëre (fav-, faut-, 395, v.), *to favour*.
 Felix, (felix) is, 104, *happy*.
 Femin-a, æ, *woman*.
 Fer-a, æ, *wild beast*.
 Fere, adv., *almost*.
 Ferre (tul-, lat-, 596), *to bear*

Ferocul-us, a, um, *surly*.
 Ferox, (ferōc) is, 107, *fierce*.
 Ferr-um, i, *iron*.
 Festin-are (av-, at-), *to hasten*.
 Fid-es, ei, *faith*.
 Fieri (fact-), 600, used as pass. of facere; *to be made, to become*.
 Figur-a, æ, *figure*.
 Fili-a, æ, *daughter*, dat. and abl. pl. filiabus.
 Fili-us, i, *son*, 62, R., 2.
 Fin-is, (fin) is, m., *end, boundary*; fines, *boundaries, territories*.
 Finitim-us, a, um, *neighbouring*.
 Firm-us, a, um, *strong, firm*.
 Fit, *it happens*, pres. indic. of fio, fieri.
 Flagiti-um, i, *disgraceful crime, infamy*.
 Flamm-a, æ, *flame*.
 Fl-ère (flēv-, flēt-, 395, II.), *to weep*.
 Flet-us, ūs, *weeping*.
 Flos, (flōr) is, 331, *b, flower*.
 Fluct-us, ūs, *wave*.
 Flumen, (flumin) is, 344, *a, river*.
 Fluvi-us, i, *river*.
 Fœdus, (fœdēr) is, 344, *b, treaty, league*.
 Foli-um, i, *leaf*.
 Fons, (font) is, m., 293, R., *fountain*.
 Foris, (for) is, 300, *door*; used mostly in plur., fores.
 Form-a, æ, *form*.
 Formid-are (av-, at-), *to fear, be afraid of*.
 Formos-us, a, um, *handsome*.
 Forsitan, adv., *perhaps*.
 Forte, adv., *by chance*.
 Fort-is, is, e, 107, *brave*.
 Fortiter, 215, 2, *b, bravely*.
 Fortitudo, (fortitudin) is, 339, *fortitude, courage*.
 Fortun-a, æ, *fortune*.
 Fortunat-us, a, um, *fortunate*.
 For-um, i, *forum*.
 Foss-a, æ, *ditch*.

Fræn-um, i, *bridle*, 296; pl., fræni and fræna.
 Frater, (fratr) is, *brother*.
 Fratern-us, a, um, *fraternal*.
 Fraus, (fraud) is, 293, *fraud*.
 Frigus, (frigōr) is, 344, *b, cold*.
 Fruct-us, ūs, *fruit*.
 Frument-āri (frumentat-), dep., *to collect corn*.
 Frument-um, i, *corn*.
 Frustra, adv., *in vain*.
 Fug-a, æ, *flight*.
 Fug-are (av-, at-), *to rout, put to flight*.
 Fug-ax, (fugāc) is, 107, *fugitive, fleeting*.
 Fug-ère (io, fūg-, fugit), *to flee*.
 Fulgur, (fulgūr) is, 325, *lightning*.
 Fund-ere (fūd-, fūs-), *to pour out, to overthrow, discomfit*.
 Funditor, (funditōr) is, 319, *slinger*.
 Futur-us, a, um, *future*.

G.

Galb-a, æ, *Galba*.
 Galli-a, æ, *Gaul*.
 Gallin-a, æ, *hen*.
 Gall-us, i, *a Gaul*.
 Garum-n-a, æ, *Garonne (river)*.
 Gaud-ère (gavisus sum), *to rejoice*.
 Gaudi-um, i, *joy*.
 Gener, i, *son-in-law*.
 Genev-a, æ, *Geneva*.
 Gens, (gent) is, 293, *nation*.
 Genus, (gener) is, 344, *b, race, class*.
 Ger-ère (gess-, gest-), *to carry on*; gerere bellum, *to carry on war*.
 German-us, i, *a German*.
 Gladi-us, i, *sword*.
 Glori-a, æ, *glory*.
 Græc-us, a, um, *Greek*.
 Grando, (grandin) is, 339, *hail*.
 Grati-a, æ, *influence, favour, popularity*.
 Gratul-ari (gratulat-), dep., *to congratulate*.

Grat-us, a, um, *agreeable*.
 Gravis, is, e, *heavy, severe*.
 Graviter, adv., *heavily, disagreeable*; *graviter fert, he is indignant at*.
 Gregatim, adv., *in flocks*.
 Gubern-āre (av-, at-), *to steer, direct, govern*.
 Gubernator, (gubernatōr) is, 319, *pilot, governor*.

H.

Hab-ēre (habu-, habit-), *to have, hold, esteem*.
 Hannibal, (Hannibal) is, *Hannibal*.
 Haud, adv., *not*.
 Helveti-us, i, *a Helvetian*.
 Herb-a, æ, *herb*.
 Hercyni-us, a, um, *Hercynian*; *Hercynia sylva, the Hercynian forest*.
 Heri, adv., *yesterday*.
 Hibern-a, orum, *winter-quarters*.
 Hiberni-a, æ, *Ireland*.
 Hic, hæc, hoc, *this*, 156.
 Hiem-āre (av-, at-), *to winter*.
 Hiems, (hiem) is, 293, *winter*.
 Hirundo, (hirundin) is, 339, *swallow*.
 Hispani-a, æ, *Spain*.
 Hispan-us, i, *a Spaniard*.
 Histori-a, æ, *history*.
 Hodie, adv., *to-day*.
 Homer-us, i, *Homer*.
 Homo, (homin) is, m., *man*.
 Honest-e, adv., *honourably*.
 Honest-us, a, um, *honourable*.
 Honor, (honōr) is, 319, *honour*.
 Hor-a, æ, *hour*.
 Horati-us, i, *Horace*.
 Hort-ari (hortāt-), *to exhort, dep.*
 Hort-us, i, *garden*.
 Hospes, (hospit) is, c, *guest, host*.
 Hostis, (host) is, c, *enemy*.
 Human-us, a, um, *human*.
 Humanitas, (humanitāt) is, 293, *cultivation, refinement, humanity*.
 Humilis, is, e, 107, *low*.

I.

Ibi, adv., *there*.
 Idem, eadem, idem, *the same*, 150.
 Idone-us, a, um, *fit, suitable*.
 Idus, iduum (4th declen.), *the Ides*, 112, 2.
 Ignavi-a, æ, *indolence, cowardice*.
 Ignav-us, a, um, *indolent, cowardly*.
 Ignis, (ign) is, m., 302, R., *fire*.
 Ignomini-a, æ, *disgrace, ignominy*.
 Ignor-āre (av-, at-), *to be ignorant*.
 Ignoratio, (ignoratiō) is, 333, R., *ignorance*.
 Ille, illa, illud, *this, that*, 158.
 Imago, (imagin) is, 339, *image*.
 Imber, (imbr) is, 320, *shower of rain*.
 Immemor, (immemor) is, 107, *unmindful, with gen.*
 Immens-us, a, um, *immense*.
 Immortalis, is, e, 104, *immortal*.
 Impediment-um, i, *hinderance*; *impedimenta, pl., the baggage of an army*.
 Imped-ire (iv-, it-), *to hinder, impede*.
 Impend-ēre, *to hang over*.
 Imper-āre (av-, at-), *to command, with dat.*
 Imperator, (imperatōr) is, 319, *commander, general*.
 Imperi-um, i, *command*.
 Impetr-āre (av-, at-), *to accomplish, effect, obtain*.
 Impet-us, ūs, *onset, attack*; *impetum facere, to make an attack*.
 Impiē, adv., 215, 1, *impiously*.
 Impi-us, a, um, *impious*.
 Impl-ēre (implēv-, implēt-), *to fill up*.
 Implor-āre (av-, at-), *to implore*.
 Impon-ēre (imposu-, imposit-, in+ponere, 407), *to place in or upon*.
 Import-āre (av-, at-), *to bring in import*.
 Improb-us, a, um, *wicked, dishonest*.
 In, prep. with acc., *into, against* with abl., *in, among*.

- Incend-ĕre (incend-, incens-), *to set fire to, to burn.*
- Incert-us, a, um, *doubtful, uncertain.*
- Incip-ĕre (io, incĕp-, incept-), *to begin.*
- Incol-a, æ, *inhabitant.*
- Incol-ĕre (incolu-, incult-), *dwelt in, inhabit.*
- Incommod-um, i, *inconvenience.*
- Incredibilis, is, e, 104, *incredible.*
- Increp-āre (increpu-, increpit-, 390), *to chide.*
- Incus-āre (av-, at-), *to blame.*
- Inde, adv., *thence.*
- Indici-um, i, *private information.*
- Indign-us, a, um, *unworthy.*
- Induc-ĕre (indux-, induct-), *to lead to, induce.*
- Indulg-ĕre (induls-, indult-), with dat., *to indulge.*
- Ineptiæ, arum, 57, R., *folly.*
- Inerti-a, æ, *idleness.*
- Infans, (infant) is, c, *infant; (in-fari, that cannot speak).*
- Inferior, (inferiōr) is, comp. of inferus, 370, *inferior, lower.*
- Inferre (intul-, illat-, in-ferre), *to bring upon; bellum alicui inferre, to wage war upon any one.*
- Ingeni-um, i, *talent.*
- Ingens, (ingent) is, 107, *great, enormous.*
- Inimicitia, æ, *enmity.*
- Inimic-us, a, um, *hostile, unfriendly, with dat.*
- Initi-um, i, *beginning.*
- Injuri-a, æ, *injury, outrage.*
- Injust-us, a, um, *unjust.*
- Innocens, (innocent) is, 107, *innocent.*
- Innocenti-a, æ, *innocence.*
- Innumerabilis, is, e, 104, *innumerable.*
- Inops, (inop) is, 107, *poor.*
- Inquam, *I say; inquit, says he, 610.*
- Insciens, (inscient) is, 107, *not knowing.*
- Insect-um, i, *insect.*
- Insequ-ī (insecūt-), dep., *to pursue.*
- Insidi-æ, arum, 57, R., *snares, ambush.*
- Instig-āre (av-, at-), *to instigate.*
- Institut-um, i, *purpose, plan.*
- Instru-ĕre (instrux-, instruct-, in-struere), *to draw up in battle array.*
- Insul-a, æ, *island.*
- Intellig-ĕre (intellex-, intellect-), *to perceive, understand.*
- Intent-us, a, um, *intent, bent upon.*
- Inter, prep. with accus., *between among.*
- Interced-ĕre (intercess-, intercess-), *to intervene.*
- Interdiu, adv., *by day.*
- Interdum, adv., *sometimes.*
- Inter-esse (interfu-), *to be among, to differ; nihil interest, it makes no difference.*
- Interfector, (interfectōr) is, 319 *slayer.*
- Interfic-ĕre (interfēc-, interfec-, inter-facere), *to slay, kill.*
- Interim, adv., *in the mean while.*
- Iteritus, ūs, *perishing, destruction, death.*
- Interregn-um, i, *interreign.*
- Interrog-āre (av-, at-), *to ask, interrogate.*
- Intu-ĕri (intuit-), dep., *to look upon.*
- Inven-īre (invēn-, invent-), *to find, discover.*
- Invoc-āre (av-, at-), *to call upon, invoke.*
- Ipse, a, um, 159, *self.*
- Ir-a, æ, *anger.*
- Iracundi-a, æ, *wrathfulness, wrath.*
- Īre (īv-, īt-), 605, *to go.*
- Irrump-ĕre (irrup-, irrupt-, in-trumpere), *to break into.*
- Is, ea, id, *this, that, he, she, it, 153.*

Iste, a, ud, *that*, 157.

Ita, adv., *so, thus*.

Itali-a, æ, *Italy*.

Iter, (itiner) is, n., *journey, way, march*.

J.

Jac-ère (jēc-, jact-), *to cast, hurl*.

Jact-äre (av-, at-), *to discuss*.

Jacul-um, i, *dart*.

Jam, adv., *now, already*.

Jan-us, i, *Janus*.

Jub-ère (juss-, juss-), *to order*.

Jucund-us, a, um, *pleasant*.

Judex, (judic) is, 306, *judge*.

Judic-äre (av-, at-), *to judge*.

Judici-um, i, *trial, judgment*.

Jugurth-a, æ, *Jugurtha*.

Jug-um, i, *yoke*.

Jument-um, i, *beast of burden*.

Jung-ère (junx-, junct-), *to join*.

Juno, (Junōn) is, f., *Juno* (goddess).

Jupiter, Jovis, 351, *Jupiter*.

Jur-a, æ, *Jura* (mountain east of Gaul).

Jur-äre (av-, at-), *to swear*.

Jus, (jūr) is, 344, *law, right*.

Juss-us, ūs, *command*.

Justiti-a, æ, *justice*.

Just-us, a, um, *just*.

Juv-äre (jāv-, jūt-), *to help*.

Juvenis, is, *a youth*.

Juventus, (juventūt) is, 293, *youth*.

Juxta, prep. with acc., *near*.

K.

Kalend-æ, arum, *Kalends*.

L.

Labienus, i, *Labienus*, one of Cæsar's lieutenant-generals.

Labor, (labōr) is, 319, *labour, toil*.

Labor-äre (äv-, ät-), *to labour*.

Lac, (lact) is, 346, 2, *milk*.

Lacess-ère (iv-, it-, 406, III., b), *to provoke, harass*.

Lacrym-a, æ, *tear*

Lac-us, ūs, *lake*.

Lapis, (lapid) is, 295, 3, *stone*.

Larg-iri (it-), dep., *to give largess, to bribe*, 515.

Larg-iter, adv., 215, 2, b, *largely*; largiter potest, *he can largely*, i. e., *he is quite powerful*.

Lat-ē, adv., 215, 1, *widely* (lat-us, wide).

Latin-us, a, um, *Latin*.

Latitudo, (latitudin) is, 340, *breadth* (from latus, broad).

Latius, adv., *more widely* (compar of latē, 376).

Latro, (latron) is, 331, *a, robber*.

Lat-us, a, um, *broad, wide*.

Laud-äre (äv-, ät-), *to praise*.

Laus, (laud) is, 293, *praise*.

Legatio, (legation) is, 333, R., *embassy*.

Legat-us, i, *lieutenant, ambassador*.

Lēg-ère (lēg-, lect-, 416, a), *to read*.

Legio, (legion) is, 333, R., *legion*.

Lemann-us, i, *Lake Lemman, or Geneva*.

Leo, (leon) is, 333, *lion*.

Lepus, (lepōr) is, m., 345, 4, *hare*.

Lev-äre (äv-, ät-), *to lighten, alleviate*.

Lex, (leg-) is, 293, *law*.

Libenter, adv., *willingly, gladly*.

Liber, libri, 64, *book*.

Liberalitas, (liberalitat) is, 293, *liberality*.

Liber-ē, 215, 1, *freely* (from liber, free).

Liber-i, orum, 65, R., *children*.

Liber-tas, (libertat) is, 293, *freedom, liberty*.

Libet, 583, libebat, libuit, or libitum est, impers., *it is agreeable, it pleases, it suits*.

Lic-ēri (licit), dep., *to bid money, to offer a price*.

Licet, licuit, licitum est, *it is allowed, it is lawful, one must*, 583.

Lili-um, i, *lily*.

Lingu-a, æ, *language*.

Litter-a, æ, *a letter* (as of the alphabet); litter-æ, arum (pl.), *a letter*, i. e., *an epistle*.

Littus, (littor) is, 344, *b, shore*.

Livi-us, i, *Livy*, a Roman historian.

Loc-us, i, pl., i and a, 309, *place*.

Long-ē, adv., 215, 1, *far, long*: (long-us.)

Longitudo, (longitudin) is, 339, *length*: (longus.)

Long-us, a, um, *long*.

Loqu-i (locūt-), dep., *to speak*.

Lubet. See libet.

Luct-us, ūs, *grief*.

Lud-ēre (lūs-, lūs-, 401, 3, *b*), *to play*.

Lud-us, i, *sport, game, play*.

Lun-a, æ, *moon*.

Lup-us, i, *wolf*.

Lux, (luc) is, 293, *light*.

M.

Macul-āre (av-, at-), *to stain*.

Magis, adv., *more*.

Magister, tri (64), *master, teacher*.

Magistrat-us, ūs, *a magistrate*.

Magnanimus, a, um (magr-us+animus), *high-spirited, magnanimous*.

Magnitudo, (magnitudin) is (340), *extent, greatness*.

Magnus, a, um, *great*; comp., major, *greater*.

Malē, adv. (215, 1, R.), *badly*.

Maleficium, i (800, 2), *evil deed, crime*.

Malle (592), *to be more willing, to prefer*; perf., malui.

Mālum, i, *evil, misfortune*.

Man-ēre (mans-, mans-), 665, III., *to remain*.

Manus, ūs (f., 112, 2), *hand, band of soldiers*.

Mare, (mar) is (314), *sea*

Massilia, æ, *Marseilles*.

Mater, (matr) is (f., 25, 2), *mother*.

Matrimonium, i, *matrimony*.

Matrona, æ, *the Marne*, a river of Gaul.

Matur-āre (av-, at-), *to hasten*.

Maxim-ē (adv., 376), *most, most greatly, in the highest degree*.

Maxim-us, a, um (sup. of magnus, 370), *greatest*.

Me (acc. and abl. of ego, I), *me*; mecum, *with me* (125, II., *b*).

Medicin-a, æ, *medicine*.

Mediterrane-us, a, um, *Mediterranean* (medi-us+terr-a).

Medi-us, a, um, *middle*.

Meli-us, adv. (376), *better*.

Memini (defect., 611), *I remember*; meminisse, *to remember*.

Memori-a, æ, *memory*; memoriā tenēre, *to hold in memory, to remember*.

Mens, (ment) is, f., *mind*.

Mercatōr, (mercatōr) is (319), *merchant*.

Meridi-es, ei (m., 115), *mid-day, noon*.

Merit-um, i, *merit, desert*.

Metall-um, i, *metal*.

Met-ēre (messu-, mess-, 666, II., *b*), *to reap*.

Met-iri (mens-), dep., *to measure*.

Metu-ēre (metu-, 666, VI., *a*), *to fear*.

Me-us, a, um (122), *my, mine*.

Mic-āre (micu-, 664, II.), *to glitter, shine*.

Migr-āre (av-, at-), *to migrate*.

Miles, (milit) is, *soldier*.

Mille (sing. indecl., pl. millia, ium), *thousand*.

Minerv-a, æ, *Minerva*.

Minim-us, a, um, *least* (superl. of parvus, 370).

Minor (minus), 358, *less* (compar. of parvus, 370).

Minu-ēre (minu-, minūt-), *to diminish*.

Mirabil-is, is, e, *wonderful*.
 Mirifico-us, a, um, *causing wonder, astonishing* (mir-us+facere).
 Miser, a, um (77, b), *miserable, wretched*.
 Miseret (impers., 579, a), *one pities; me miseret, I pity*.
 Mitig-are (av-, at-), *to mitigate*.
 Mitt-ere (mis-, miss-, 401, 3, b), *to send*.
 Mod-us, i, *measure, manner*.
 Mœnia, ium (used only in pl.), *walls*.
 Mœror, (mœrôr) is (319), *sadness*.
 Mon-ere (monu-, monit-), *to advise, warn, remind*.
 Monstr-are (av-, at-), *to show*.
 Mord-ere (momord-, mors-, 395, IV.), *to bite, champ*.
 Mor-i, and mor-iri (mort-), dep., *to die*.
 Mortal-is, is, e, *mortal*.
 Mors, (mort) is, 293, *death*.
 Mos, (môr) is, 331, 1, b, *custom, manner*.
 Mot-us, ūs, *motion, moving*.
 Mov-ere (mōv-, mōt-, 395, V.), *to move*.
 Mūlier, (mūlier) is, (f.), *woman*.
 Multitudo, (multitudin) is, 340, *multitude*.
 Mult-us, a, um, *much, many*.
 Mund-us, i, *world*.
 Mun-ire (iv-, it-), *to fortify*.
 Munitio, (munition) is, 333, R., *fortification*.
 Munus, (muner) is, 344, 3, b, *office, gift*.
 Murus, i, *wall*.
 Mut-are (āv-, at-), *to change*.

N.

Nam, conj., *for*.
 Nasc-i (nāt-), dep., *to be born, spring from*.
 Nat-are (āv-, at-), *to swim*.
 Naut a, æ (m.), *sailor*

Natio, (natiōn) is, 333, R., *nation*.
 Natur-a, æ, *nature*.
 Naval-e, (naval) is, 314, *a dock-yard*.
 Navigatio, (navigation) is, 333, R., *navigation, voyage*.
 Nav-is, (nav) is, 300, *ship*.
 Nē, interrogative particle, 135, II., a.
 Nē, adv., *not*, used imperatively, 534, a, conj., *that not*, 548, b.
 Nec, conj., *nor*.
 Neg-are (āv-, at-), *to deny, refuse*.
 Neglig-ere (neglex-, neglect-, 666, V., a), *to neglect*.
 Negligens, (negligent) is, 107, *negligent*.
 Negoti-um, i, *matter, business*.
 Nemo, (nemin) is, c, *no one*.
 Neque, conj., *neither, nor*, 515.
 Nequidem, adv., *not even*, 217; always separated by the words which have the emphasis; e. g., ne Socrates quidem, *not even Socrates*.
 Nervi-us, i, *a Nervian* (people of Gaul).
 Nerv-us, i, *a sinew*.
 Nesc-ire (iv-, it-), *to be ignorant, not to know* (ne+scire).
 Neuter, tra, trum, 194, 1, *neither of the two*.
 Nidific-are (āv-, at-), *to build a nest* (nidus+facere).
 Niger, nigra, nigrum, 77, a, *black*.
 Nihil, n., indecl., *nothing*.
 Nimi-us, a, um, *too much*.
 Nit-i (nis- and nix-), dep., *to strive*.
 Nisi, conj., *unless, if not*.
 Nobilis, is, e, *noble, illustrious*.
 Nobilitas, (nobilitat) is, 293, *nobility*.
 Noc-ere (nocū-, nocīt-), *to hurt, with dat*.
 Noctū, adv., *by night*.
 Nolle, nolui, *to be unwilling*, 592.
 Nomen, (nomin) is, 344, a, *name*.
 Nōn, adv., *not*.

- Nonne**, interrogative particle (expects answer *yes*).
Nonnullus, a, um, *some*; *nonnulli*, *some (persons)*.
Nonnunquam, adv., *sometimes*.
Non-us, a, um, *ninth*.
Nos, *we*, 120.
Nosc-ĕre (nōv-, nōt-), *to learn, know*.
Noster, tra, trum, 122, *our*.
Nōv-i (gen. of novus), *news*, 174 (vocab.).
Nōv-i, defective, *I know*, 611; *novisse*, *to know*.
Novissimus, a, um (superl. of novus), *newest, latest*; *novissimum agmen*, *the rear-rank*.
Novitas, (novitāt) is, 293, *novelty* (novus).
Nov-us, a, um, *new*.
Nox, (noct) is, 293, *night*.
Nub-es, (nub) is, 300, *cloud*.
Nud-us, a, um, *naked*.
Nullus, a, um, gen. nullius, dat. nulli, 194, 1, *no one, none*.
Num (interrog. particle), *whether* (expects the answer *no*, 174).
Numa, æ (m.), *Numa*.
Numer-us, i, *number*.
Nunti-āre (āv-, āt-), *to announce*.
Nunti-us, i, *a messenger*.
Nunquam, adv., *never*.
Nuptiæ, ārum, 57, R., *a marriage*.
Nutrix, (nutric) is, 293, *nurse*.
- O.
- Ob** (prep. with acc.), *on account of*.
Obærat-us, a, um, *a debtor*.
Obscur-āre (āv-, āt-), *to obscure*.
Obsecr-āre (āv-, āt-), *to beseech*.
Obses, (obsid) is (c), *hostage*.
Obstring-ĕre (obstrinx-, obstrict-), *to bind*: ob+stringere.
Obtin-ĕre (obtinu-, obtent-), *to hold, maintain*: ob+tenĕre.
Occas-us, ūs, *setting, e. g., of the sun*; occasū solis, *sunset*, 118, II., c.
- Occidens**, (occident) is, m. (sol understood), *west*.
Occid-ĕre (occid-, occās-, ob+cadere), *to fall, set, die*.
Occid-ĕre (occid-, occis-, ob+cādere), *to slay, kill*.
Occup-āre (āv-, āt-), *to seize, take possession of*.
Oceanus, i, *ocean*.
Octavus, a, um, *eighth*.
Octoginta (indecl.), *eighty*.
Octoni, æ, a, *eight each, eight at a time*, 197.
Ocul-us, i, *eye*.
Odi (defect., 611), *I hate*; *odisse*, *to hate*.
Odi-um, i, *hatred*.
Offend-ĕre (offend-, offens-, ob+fendere), *to offend*.
Olim, adv., *once upon a time, formerly*.
Omnino, adv., *altogether, in all*.
Omnis, is, e, *all, every, the whole*; omnis res, *the whole affair*.
Onus, (oner) is, 344, b, *burden, load*.
Oper-a, æ, *toil, labour*.
Oportet (impers., 583), oportebat, oportuit, *it behooves, one ought*.
Oppidan-us, a, um, *of or belonging to a town, a townsman*.
Oppid-um, i, *a town*.
Opprim-ĕre (oppress-, oppress-, ob+premĕre), *to repress, crush*.
Oppugn-āre (āv-, āt-), *to attack, besiege* (ob+pugnare).
Ops, opis, 293, *power*; opes, *resources, means*.
Optim-us, a, um, *best* (superl. of bonus).
Opulens, (opulent) is, 107, *rich, opulent*.
Opus, (oper) is, 344, b, *work*.
Oracul-um, i, *oracle*.
Or-āre (āv-, āt-), *to pray, beg, beseech*.
Oratio, (oratiō) is, 333, R., *oration, speech*.

Orator, (oratōr) is, 319, *orator*.
 Orb-is, (orb) is (m., 302, R.), *orb, circle*; orbis terrarum, *the world*.
 Ordo, (ordin) is (m., 340, exc.), *order*.
 Orgetorix, (Orgetorig) is, *Orgetorix*, a Helvetian chieftain.
 Origo, (origin) is, 339, *origin*.
 Or-iri (ort-), dep., *to rise*.
 Orn-äre (äv-, ät-), *to adorn*.
 Ornatus, a, um, *adorned*, part. of ornare.
 Ostend-äre (ostend-, ostens-, ob+tendere), *to show*.
 Ostent-äre (äv-, ät-), *to vaunt*.

P.

Pabulatio, (pabulation) is, 333, R., *foddering, foraging*.
 Pæne, adv., *almost*.
 Pag-us, i, *village, canton*.
 Palūs, (palūd) is, 293, *marsh*.
 Par-äre (äv-, ät-), *to prepare*.
 Parat-us, a, um, *prepared, ready* (part. pass. of parare).
 Parc-äre (peperc-, pars- and parcit-, 666, IV., b), *to spare*, with dat.
 Par-äre (paru-), with dat., *to obey*.
 Pars, (part) is, 293, *part*.
 Parsimoni-a, æ, *parsimony, frugality*.
 Parv-us, a, um, *small, little*.
 Pastor, (pastōr) is, 319, *shepherd*.
 Pater, (patr) is, *father*; patres, um, *patricians of Rome*.
 Pat-äre (patū-), *to be open, extend*.
 Pat-i, (pass-), dep., *to suffer*.
 Patienter, adv., 215, 2, b, *patiently*.
 Patienti-a, æ, *patience, endurance*.
 Paucitas, (paucitat) is, 293, *fewness*.
 Pauci, æ, a, *few*.
 Paullisper, adv., *for a little while*.
 Paullo, adv., *a little*; paullo longius, *a little too far*.
 Pauper, (pauper) is, 107, *poor*.
 Paupertas, (paupertat) is, 293, *poverty*.

Pax, (pac) is, 293, *peace*.
 Pecc-äre (äv-, ät-), *to sin*.
 Peccat-um, i, *sin*.
 Pecuni-a, æ, *money*.
 Pedes, (pedit) is, 306, *foot-soldier*.
 Pell-äre (pēpül-, puls-, 411, b), *to drive, rout, expel, defeat*.
 Pellis, (pell) is, 300, *hide, skin*.
 Pend-äre (pend-, pens-, 666, IV., a), *to weigh, pay*.
 Pene, adv., *almost*.
 Peninsul-a, æ, *peninsula* (peno+insula).
 Per (prep. with accus.), *through, during*.
 Perdives, (perdivit-) is, 107, *very rich*.
 Perduc-äre (perdux-, perduct-, per+ducere), *to lead through, bring along*.
 Perfacilis, is, e, *very easy*.
 Perferre (pertül-, perlät-, per+ferre), *to convey, bear through*.
 Perfic-äre (perfec-, perfect-, per+facere), *to accomplish, finish, bring to pass*.
 Perfring-äre (perfreg-, perfract-, per+frangere), *to break through*.
 Perfug-a, æ, *deserter*.
 Perg-äre (perrex-, perrect-), *to go on, go straight*.
 Pericul-um, i, *danger*.
 Per-iro (peri-, perit-, per+ire), *to perish*.
 Peritus, a, um, *skilful, skilled in* (with gen.).
 Permöv-äre (permöv-, permöt-), *to move thoroughly, to induce*.
 Pernici-es, ei, *destruction*.
 Perpauci, æ, a, *very few*.
 Perpetu-us, a, um, *perpetual*.
 Perrump-äre (perrüp-, perrupt-, per+rumpere), *to break through*.
 Pers-a, æ, *a Persian*.
 Persequ-i (persecüt-, per+sequi), dep., *to follow after, pursue*.

- Persever-āre (āv-, at-), *to persevere.*
 Persolv-ēre (persolv-, persolūt-, per-
 +solvere), *to pay up, pay in full*;
 pœnas persolvere, *to suffer full*
punishment.
 Perspic-ēre (perspex-, perspect-), *to*
observe, get sight of, see plainly.
 Persuad-ēre (persuas-, persuas-), *to*
persuade, convince.
 Pērrer-ēre (perterrū-, perterrīt-), *to*
frighten thoroughly.
 Pertin-ēre (pertinu-, per+tenere), *to*
reach, belong to, extend to.
 Perturb-āre (āv-, at-), *to disturb, con-*
found.
 Pervēn-īre (vēm-, vent-), *to arrive at,*
come to.
 Pes, (ped) is (m., 295, 3), *foot*; pe-
 dem referre, *to draw back the*
foot, to retreat.
 Pet-ēre (petiv-, petīt-), *to seek, aim*
at, strive after.
 Petr-a, æ, *rock.*
 Phalanx, (phalang) is, 293, *phalanx.*
 Pharsalus, i, *Pharsalus, a town in*
Thessaly.
 Philosoph-āri (at-), dep., *to philoso-*
phize.
 Piget (impers., 579, a), piguit, *it*
grieves, pains, disgusts; *I am*
 Pil-um, i, *javelin.* [grieved at.
 Pisc-is, (pisc) is (m., 302, R.), *fish.*
 Pius, a, um, *pious.*
 Plac-ēre (placū-, placīt-), *to please*
(with dat.).
 Placet (impers., 584, a), placuit, *it*
pleases; Cæsari placuit, *Cæsar*
determined.
 Placid-us, a, um, *calm, placid.*
 Plant-a, æ, *plant.*
 Plan-us, a, um, *level, plain.*
 Plato, (Platōn) is, *Plato.*
 Plebs, (plēb) is, 293, *common people.*
 Plen-us, a, um, *full.*
 Plerique, pleræque, pleraque, *most,*
the greater part.
 Plerumque, adv., *for the most part.*
 Plum-a, æ, *feather.*
 Plurim-us, a, um (superl. of multus),
most, very many.
 Plurimum, adv., *very much, in the*
highest degree.
 Pocul-um, i, *cup.*
 Pœn-a, æ, *punishment*; pœnas per-
 solvere, *pay the full penalty.*
 Pœnitet (impers., 579), pœnituit, *it*
repents; me pœnitet, *I repent.*
 Poet-a, æ (m.), *poet.*
 Pompeius, i, *Pompey.*
 Pon-ēre (posū-, posīt-), *to place,*
castra ponere, to pitch the camp.
 Pons, (pont) is (m., 295, 1), *bridge.*
 Popul-āri (at-), dep., *to plunder, lay*
waste.
 Popul-us, i, *people.*
 Port-a, æ, *gate.*
 Port-āre (āv-, at-), *to carry.*
 Port-ūs, ūs, *harbour.*
 Portori-um, i, *tax, customs duty.*
 Posc-ēre (poposc-, 411, a), *to demand*
(admits two accusatives).
 Posse, potui, *to be able, can, 587.*
 Possessio, (possessiōn) is, 333, R.,
possession.
 Possid-ēre (possēd-, possess-), *to*
possess.
 Post, prep. with acc., *after, behind.*
 Postea, adv., *afterward.*
 Poster-us, a, um, *after*; postero die,
on the day after, on the next day.
 Postquam, adv., *after that.*
 Postul-āre (āv-, at-), *to demand.*
 Potens, (potent) is, 107, *powerful.*
 Potestas, (potestat) is, 293, *power.*
 Pot-iri (it-), dep., with gen. or abl.
to acquire, get possession of.
 Præ (prep. with abl.), *before.*
 Præb-ēre (præbu-, præbit-), *to af-*
ford.
 Præced-ere (cess-, cess-), *to go be-*
fore, excel.
 Præceps, (præcipit) is, 107, *headlong.*

Præceptor, (præceptōr) is, a teacher, preceptor.

Præcept-um, i, precept.

Præcip-ēre (cēp-, cept-, præ + capere), to command, enjoin.

Præclar-us, a, um, illustrious.

Præco, (præcōn) is, herald.

Præd-a, æ, booty, prey.

Præd-ari (at-), dep., to plunder, get booty.

Prædic-are (āv-, at-), to declare.

Prædo, (prædōn) is, pirate.

Præesse, præfui, to be over, command (præ + esse), with dat.

Præferre (tūl-, lāt-), to prefer.

Præfic-ēre (fēc-, fect-, præ + facere), to place over.

Præmitt-ēre (nīs-, miss-), to send before.

Præmi-um, i, reward.

Prænunti-a, or prænuncia, æ, har-binger.

Præsertim, adv., especially.

Præsidi-um, i, garrison, defence.

Præstans, (præstant) is, 107, excel-lent.

Præst-are (stīt-, stīt-), to stand before, excel.

Præter, prep. with acc., besides, except.

Præter-ire (iv- and ī-, it-, præter + ire, 605, 2), to pass by.

Prætor, (prætōr) is, a prætor (Roman magistrate).

Preti-um, i, price, reward.

Prex, (prec) is, 293, prayer.

Primus, a, um, first.

Princeps, (princip) is, 107, chief (used only as a noun).

Principat-ūs, ūs, chieftainship, chief authority.

Principi-um, i, beginning, principle.

Pristīn-us, a, um, ancient, former.

Privatim, adv., privately.

Privat-us, a, um, private.

Prisquam, adv., before that.

Pro (prep. with abl.), before, for, in view of.

Prob-are (āv-, at-), to prove.

Prob-itas, (probitāt) is, 293, honesty.

Prob-us, a, um, honest.

Proced-ēre (cess-, cess-, 401, 3, b), to advance, go forward.

Procell-a, æ, tempest.

Procurr-ēre (curr-, curs-, pro + currere), to run forward.

Prod-esse (pro + esse), to profit, with dat.

Prælium, i, battle, fight.

Profectio, (profectiōn) is, 333, R., setting out, departure.

Proficisc-i (profect-), dep., to set out, depart.

Prohib-ēre (prohibu-, prohibit-, pro + habēre), to restrain, keep off.

Projic-ēre (jēc-, ject-, pro + jacere), to throw forward, throw.

Prope (prep. with acc.), near, nigh to; propius, nearer; proxime, nearest.

Propell-ēre (pul-, puls-, pro + pel-lere), drive on, drive away.

Propër-are (āv-, at-), hasten.

Propinquus, a, um, near to, related to; propinquus (used as noun), a relation.

Propius. See prope.

Propon-ēre (posu-, posit-, pro + po-nere), to set before, propose.

Propter (prep. with accus.), on account of.

Propterea, adv., therefore; propterea quod, because, for the reason that.

Propuls-are (āv-, at-), to ward off, avert, repel.

Prorsus, adv., straight on, truly, precisely.

Prosequ-i (prosecūt-), dep., to pursue.

Proverbi-um, i, proverb.

Providenti-a, æ, Providence (pro + vidēre).

Provinci-a, æ, *province*.
 Proxim-us, a, um (superl., 371), *next*.
nearest.
 Ptolemæus, i, *Ptolemy*.
 Pudet (impers., 579, a), pūduit, *it*
shames, one is ashamed.
 Puell-a, æ, *girl*.
 Puer, i, *boy*.
 Pugn-āre (āv-, at-); *to fight*.
 Pulvis, (pulver) is, 331, b, *dust*.
 Pun-ire (iv-, it-), *to punish*.
 Put-āre (āv-, at-), *to suppose, think,*
reckon.
 Pyrenæi (montes), *the Pyrenees,*
mountains between Gaul and
Spain.

Q.

Quadringenti, æ, a, *four hundred*.
 Quær-ēre (quæsiv-, quæsīt-), *to seek,*
ask, inquire into.
 Qualis, is, e, *of what kind; talis—*
qualis, such—as, 184.
 Quam, conj., *than*.
 Quamdiu, adv., *how long*.
 Quamvis, conj., *although*.
 Quando, adv., *when*.
 Quantus, a, um, *how great*, 184.
 Quantuscunque, -acunque, -umcun-
 que, *however great*, 184.
 Quasi, adv., *as if*.
 Quatern-i, æ, a, *four apiece, four at*
a time, 189.
 Quattuor, indecl., *four*.
 Que, conj., *and*, 517, a.
 Queo, *I am able*, 606.
 Quer-i (quest-), *to complain*.
 Qui, quæ, quod, *who, which, what,*
 164.
 Quia, conj., *because*.
 Quid, neut. of quis, used interrog.,
what? as adv., why?
 Quicunque, *whosoever*, 164, R.
 Quidam, quædam, quoddam, *or quid-*
dam, a certain one; plur., some,
 178, 1.

Quidem, adv., *indeed*.
 Quilibet, quælibet, quodlibet, *any*
one, any you please, 178, 2.
 Quin, conj., *but that, that not*, 558, b
 Quindecim, indecl., *fifteen*.
 Quingent-i, æ, a, *five hundred*.
 Quinque, indecl., *five*.
 Quint-us, a, um, *fifth*.
 Quire, *to be able*, 606.
 Quis, quæ, quid, interrog., *who,*
which, what? 170.
 Quisnam, quænam, quidnam? *pray*
who? what? 171.
 Quispiam, quæpiam, quodpiam, quid-
 piam, *somebody, some*, 178, 4.
 Quisquam, quicquam, *or quodquam,*
any, any one, 178, 3.
 Quisque, quæque, quodque, quid-
 que, *each, every one*, 178, 6.
 Quisquis, *whoever, whatever*, 637, 3.
 Quivis, *any one you please*, 178, 2.
 Quō, adv., *whither, in which direc-*
tion?
 Quō, conj., *to the end that, that, so*
that, 558, a.
 Quod, conj., *because*.
 Quod, rel. pron. neut. of qui.
 Quominus, *that the less, that not, af-*
ter verbs of hindering, &c., 558, c.
 Quondam, adv., *formerly, at one*
time.
 Quoniam, conj., *since, because*.
 Quoque, conj., *also*.
 Quot, *so many, how many?* 184.
 Quotannis, adv., *yearly*.
 Quotidian-us, a, um, *daily*.
 Quot-us, a, um, *what one? quota*
hora, what o'clock?
 Quum, conj., *when, since*, 561

R.

Rapin-a, æ, *rapine, plunder*.
 Ratio, (ration) is, 333, R., *reason,*
manner, plan.
 Rauracus, i, *a Rauracian, people of*
Gaul.

- Rebellio, (rebelliō) is, 333, R., *rebellion*.
 Reced-ēre (cess-, cess-, 401, 3, b), *to give way, retreat*.
 Recip-ēre (cēp-, cēpt-, re+capere, io, 416, c, 199), *to receive back, take back; se recipere, to take one's self back, to go back*.
 Rect-ē, adv., 215, 1, *rightly*.
 Redd-ēre (reddid-, reddit-, re+dare), 666, IV., c), *give back, return, restore*.
 Redintegr-āre (āv-, āt-), *to renew*.
 Redim-ēre (redēm-, redempt-, re+emere), *to buy back, redeem, farm (as revenues)*.
 Reditio, (reditiō) is, 333, R., *return (redire)*.
 Reduc-ēre (dux-, duct-, re+ducere), *to bring, bring back*.
 Referre (retūl-, relat-; re+ferre), *to bring back, to draw back; pedem referre, to retreat*.
 Refert, *it matters, it concerns, it interests*, 584, d.
 Refic-ēre (fēc-, fect-, re+facere), *to renew, rebuild*.
 Reg-ēre (rex-, rect-) *to rule*.
 Regin-a, æ, *queen*.
 Regn-āre (av-, at-), *to reign*.
 Regn-um, i, *kingdom, royal power*.
 Relinqu-ēre (reliqu-, relict-), *to leave*.
 Reliqui-æ, arum, 57, R., *remains, remnant*.
 Reliqu-us, a, um, *remaining*.
 Reminisc-i (dep-), *to remember (with gen-)*.
 Remōv-ēre (remōv-, remōt-), *to remove*.
 Renunti-āre (av-, at-), *to bring back word, report*.
 Repell-ēre (repūl-, repuls-, re+pellere), *to repel, drive back*.
 Repente, adv., *suddenly*.
 Repentin-us, a, um, *sudden; repentina res, the sudden occurrence*.
 Reper-ire (reper-, report-, 427, V.), *to find out, to discover*.
 Repet-ēre (repetiv- and repeti-, repetit-), *to demand back, to ask again*.
 Repugn-āre (av-, at-, re+pugnare) *to oppose, resist*.
 Res, rei, *thing; res novæ (pl.), revolution; res familiaris, private property*.
 Rescind-ēre (rescid-, resciss-), *to cut down, to cut in pieces*.
 Resist-ēre (restīt-, restit-), 390, intrans., *to halt, stop; with dat., to resist*.
 Respond-ēre (respond-, respons-, 665, IV.), *to answer*.
 Respublic-a, reipublicæ, 351, 3, *republic, state*.
 Ret-e, (ret) is, 312, *net*.
 Retin-ēre (retinū-, retent-, re+tenere), *to restrain, hold back, retain*.
 Revert-ēre (revert-, revers-, 422), *to turn back, return*.
 Revert-i (revers-), dep., *to return*.
 Revoc-āre (av-, at-), *to call back, recall*.
 Rex, (reg) is (m.), *king*.
 Rhen-us, i, *Rhine (river)*.
 Rhetoric-a, æ, *rhetoric*.
 Rhodan-us, i, *Rhone (river)*.
 Rid-ēre (ris-, ris-), *to laugh*.
 Rip-a, æ, *bank of a river*.
 Ris-us, ūs, *laughter*.
 Robur, (robor) is, 344, *a, strength*.
 Rog-āre (av-, at-), *to ask*.
 Roman-us, a, um, *Roman; Romanus (used as noun), a Roman*.
 Romul-us, i, *Romulus*.
 Ros-a, æ, *a rose*.
 Rot-a, æ, *wheel*.
 Ruber, bra, brum, 77, *a, red*.
 Rumor, (rumōr) is, 319, *rumour, report*.
 Rursus, adv., *backward, again*.

- S.
 Sacer, *cra, crum*, 77, *a, sacred*. Mons
 Sacer, *the Sacred Mount*; *sacra*,
orum, sacred rites.
 Sæpe, *adv., often*.
 Sæviti-a, *æ, cruelty*.
 Sagittari-us, *i, archer*.
 Sagunt-um, *i, Saguntum, a town in*
Spain.
 Salt-äre (av-, at-), *to dance*.
 Salus, (salüt) is, 293, *safety*.
 Salv-us, *a, um, safe*.
 San-äre (av-, at-), *to heal, cure*.
 Sanct-us, *a, um, sacred*.
 Sanguis, (sanguin) is (m.), *blood*.
 Sapiens, (sapiënt) is, 107, *wise, a*
wise man.
 Sapienter, 215, 2, *b, wisely*.
 Sapienti-a, *æ, wisdom*.
 Satis, *adv., enough*.
 Sati-us, *comp. of satis; satius est, it*
is better.
 Schol-a, *æ, school*.
 Scienti-a, *æ, science, knowledge*.
 Scind-ère (scid-, sciss-), *to cut, cut*
down.
 Scipio, (Scipiön) is, *Scipio*.
 Sc-ire (sciv-, scit-), *to know*.
 Scrib-ère (scrips-, script-), *to write*.
 Scriptor, (scriptör) is, 319, *writer*.
 Se, *acc. of sui*, 142.
 Seced-ère (secess-, secess-), *to se-*
cede.
 Secretö, *adv., secretly, privately*.
 Secund-us, *a, um, second, following*.
 Sed, *but*.
 Sed-ère (sêd-, sess-, 394, V.), *to sit,*
sit down.
 Seditios-us, *a, um, seditious*.
 Semel, *adv., once; semel atque ite-*
rum, once and again.
 Sementis, (sement) is, *a sowing (of*
corn).
 Semper, *adv., always*.
 Sempitern-us, *a, um, eternal*.
 Senat-us, *ūs, senate*.
 Senex, (sen) is, 107, *old, old man*.
 Senectus, (senectüt) is, 293, *old age*.
 Sen-i, *æ, a, six each, six at a time,*
distrib., 189.
 Sententi-a, *æ, opinion*.
 Sent-ire (sens-, sens-), *to feel, think,*
perceive.
 Separ-äre (av-, at-), *to separate*.
 Septem, *indecl., seven*.
 September, bris (m.), *September*.
 Septentrion-es, *um, the north, the*
seven stars composing Ursa Major.
 Septim-us, *a, um, seventh*.
 Septuaginta, *indecl., seventy*.
 Sequan-a, *æ, Seine (river)*.
 Sequan-us, *i, Sequanian (people of*
Gaul).
 Sequ-i (secüt-), *dep., to follow*.
 Ser-ère (sêv-, sät-), *to sow, plant*.
 Sermo, (sermön) is, 331, *speech*.
 Serv-äre (av-, at-), *to keep, preserve*.
 Serv-us, *i, slave*.
 Severitas, (severitât) is, 293, *sever-*
ity.
 Sex, *indecl., six*.
 Sext-us, *a, um, sixth*.
 Si, *conj., if*.
 Sic, *adv., so, thus*.
 Sicut, *conj., so as, just as*.
 Sidus, (sider) is, 344, *b, star, con-*
stellation.
 Sign-um, *i, standard, signal*.
 Simil-is, *is, e, 104, like (with gen. or*
dat.).
 Simul, *adv., together, at the same*
time; simulac, simulatque, as soon
as.
 Sin, *conj., but if*.
 Sine, *prep. with abl., without*.
 Sitis, (sit) is, 300, *thirst*.
 Socer, *i, 65, R., father-in-law*.
 Societas, (societât) is, 293, *society,*
fellowship.
 Soci-us, *i, companion, ally*.
 Socrates, (Socrat) is, *Socrates*.
 Söl, (Söl) is, *the Sun*.

- Solum, adv., *only*; non solum—sed etiam, *not only—but also*.
 Solum, a, um, gen. solius, 194, R. 1, *alone*.
 Somnus, i, *sleep*.
 Sordidus, a, um, *sordid, mean*.
 Soror, (soror) is, *sister*.
 Sors, (sort) is, 293, *lot*.
 Spatium, i, *space, opportunity*; spatium arma capiendi. *time for taking up arms*, 492, a.
 Species, ei, *appearance*.
 Spectare (av-, at-), *to look, look at*.
 Spes, ei, *hope*.
 Splendidus, a, um, *brilliant, splendid*.
 Splendor, (splendor) is, 319, *splendour, glare*.
 Stare (stet-, stat-, 387, III.), *to stand*.
 Statim, adv., *immediately*.
 Statio, (station) is, 333, R., *station, post*.
 Statuere (statu-, statu-), *to appoint, fix, decide*.
 Stella, æ, *star*.
 Stipendium, i, *tribute, tax*.
 Stipendiarius, a, um, *tributary*.
 Stoicus, i, *a Stoic*.
 Stringere (strinx-, strict-), *to draw* (as a sword).
 Studiosus, 215, 1, *zealously, studiously*.
 Studium, i, *zeal, study, desire*.
 Stultitia, æ, *folly*.
 Stultus, a, um, *foolish*; stultus, a *fool*.
 Suadere (suas-, suas-), *to advise, to persuade*.
 Suavis, is, e, 104, *sweet*.
 Sub, prep. with acc., *up to, under*; with abl., *under*.
 Subesse (sub+esse), *to be under, to be near*.
 Subigere (subeg-, subact-, sub+agere), *to subdue*.
 Subire (iv-, it-), *to go under, to undergo*; ad pericula subeunda, *for undergoing perils*.
 Subito, adv., *suddenly*.
 Subicere (subjec-, subject-, sub+jacere), *to throw under, to throw up*.
 Sublatus, a, um, part. of tollere, *elated, puffed up, taken away*.
 Subsistere (substit-), *to stand still, to halt*.
 Subsidiium, i, *assistance, a reserve of troops*.
 Suevus, i, *a Suevian* (people of Germany).
 Sufferre (sustul-, sublat-, sub+ferre) *to bear, sustain*.
 Sui, reflex. pron., 142, *himself, herself, &c.*
 Sum, *I am*. (See esse.)
 Sumere (sumps-, sumpt-, 401, 4, b), *to take*.
 Summus, a, um (superl. of superus, 370), *highest, top of a thing*; in summo monte, *on the top of the mountain*.
 Sumptus, us, *expense*; sumptus suus, *at his own expense*.
 Superare (av-, at-), *to overcome*.
 Superior, oris (compar. of superus, 370), *higher*.
 Suppetere (suppetiv- and suppeti-, suppetit-), *to be at hand, to be in store*.
 Supplicium, i, *punishment*.
 Suscipere (suscep-, suscept-, sub+capere), *to undertake*.
 Suspicio, (suspicion) is, 333, R., *suspicion*.
 Sustinere (sustinu-, sustent-, sub+tenere), *to sustain*.
 Suus, a, um, *one's own*, 143.

T.

- Tacere (tacu-, tacit-), intrans., *to be silent*; trans., *to keep secret*.
 Tædet, pertæsum est (impers., 576),

- it wearies, it disgusts; me tædet, I am disgusted.*
- Talis, is, e, 184, *such*.
- Tam, adv., *so*.
- Tamen, conj., *nevertheless*.
- Tang-ère (tetig-, tact-, 411), *to touch*.
- Tanquam, adv., *as, like*.
- Tantum, *so much* (neut. of tantus); tantum auri, *so much gold*, 186.
- Tant-us, a, um, 184, *so great*.
- Tard-äre (av-, at-), *to delay*.
- Taur-us, i, *bull*.
- Tel-um, i, *weapon, dart*.
- Temerē, adv., *rashly*.
- Temeritas, (temeritāt) is, 293, *rashness*.
- Temper-äre (av-, at-), *to refrain from; ab injuria temperare, to refrain from outrage*.
- Temperanti-a, æ, *temperance*.
- Tempestas, (tempestāt) is, 293, *storm, tempest*.
- Templ-um, i, *temple; templum de marmore, temple of marble, marble temple*.
- Tempus, (tempōr) is, 344, *b, time*.
- Tenax, (tenāc) is, 107, *tenacious, firm*.
- Tener, a, um, 77, *b, tender*.
- Ten-ère (tenu-, tent-), *to hold*.
- Terg-um, i, *back*.
- Terni, æ, a (distrib., 189), *three apiece, three at a time*.
- Terr-a, æ, *earth; terra marique, by land and sea*.
- Terr-ère (terru-, territ-), *to terrify*.
- Terti-us, a, um, *third*.
- Tiberi-us, i, *Tiberius*.
- Themistocles, (Themistocl) is, *The-mistocles*.
- Tigurinus pagus, *The canton of Zurich*.
- Tim-ère (timu-), *to fear*.
- Timid-us, a, um, *timid*.
- Timor, (timōr) is, 319, *fear*.
- Tiro, (tirōn) is, 107, *inexperienced, raw*.
- Toler-äre (av-, at-), *to endure*.
- Toll-ère (sustul-, sublāt-), *to lift up, take away*.
- Tōt, *so many*, 184.
- Tot-us, a, um, gen. ius, 194, R. 1, *whole, all*.
- Trabs, (trab) is, *beam*, 293.
- Trad-ère (tradid-, tradit-), *to surrender*.
- Tragul-a, æ, *a dart* (used by the Gauls).
- Trah-ère (trax-, tract-, 401, 2), *to draw*.
- Traject-ère (trajēc-, traject-), transit., *to throw or convey over; intrans., to cross over*.
- Tranquill-iter, adv., *calmly, tranquilly* (215, 2, tranquillus, *tranquil*).
- Transduc-ère (transdux-, transduct-) *to lead across*.
- Trans-ire (iv-, it-), *to cross or pass over*.
- Transn-äre (āv-, āt-), *to swim across*.
- Tredecim, indecl., *thirteen*.
- Tres, tria, 194, *three*.
- Tribun-us, i, *tribune*.
- Triginta, *thirty*.
- Triplex, (triplic) is, 107, *triple, three-fold*.
- Tripartitō, adv., *in three divisions*.
- Tristiti-a, æ, *sadness*.
- Tu, thou, 130.
- Tullus Hostilius, *Tullus Hostilius*.
- Tum, adv., *then*.
- Turbo, (turbin) is (m., 340), *whirl wind*.
- Turp-is, is, e, 104, *base*.
- Turpiter, adv., 215, 2, *a, basely*.
- Turris, (turr) is, 302, *tower*.
- Tut-us, a, um, *safe*.
- Tu-us, a, um, thy, thine, 134.

U.

- Ubi, adv., *where, when*.
 Ubinam? *where in the world?* 297, *d.*
 Ull-us, a, um, gen. ius, 194, 1, *any*.
 Ulterior, ius (compar. of ultra, 371),
farther.
 Ultrô, adv., *of one's own accord*.
 Ulysses, (Ulyss) is, *Ulysses*.
 Umbr-a, æ, *shade, shadow*.
 Unā, adv., *together*.
 Unde, adv., *whence*.
 Undecim, indecl., *eleven*.
 Undique, adv., *from all sides*.
 Univers-us, a, um, *universal, the whole*.
 Unquam, adv., *ever*.
 Un-us, a, um, gen. unius, 194, *one*.
 Unusquisque, 178, 6, *each one*.
 Urbs, (urb) is, 293, *city*.
 Usque, adv., *as far as; usque ad, even up to*.
 Ut, or uti, conj., *that*, 546.
 Uter, utra, utrum, 194, *which of the two*.
 Ut-i (ūs-), dep. (with abl., 316, R.), *to use, employ*.
 Util-is, is, e, 104, *useful*.
 Utinam, conj., *would that, O that*, 528.
 Utrum, conj., *whether; utrum—an, whether—or*.
 Uxor, (uxôr) is (f.), *wife*.

V.

- Vac-äre (av-, at-), *to be empty, to remain unoccupied*.
 Vag-äri (vagät-), dep., *to wander*.
 Val-äre (valū-), *to avail; plurimum valet, is most powerful*.
 Valid-us, a, um, *strong*.
 Valdē, adv., *greatly, very much*.
 Valetudo, (valetudin) is, 339, *health*.
 Vall-um, i, *rampart*.
 Vast-äre (av-, at-), *to lay waste*.
 Vast-us, a, um, *vast*. [ute.
 Vectigal, (vectigäl) is, 325, *tax, trib-*
- Veh-äre (vex-, vect-), *to carry, drive*.
 Vehementer, adv., *vehemently*, 215, 2, *b.*
 Vel, conj., *or*, 519, 2.
 Velle, volui, 592, *to wish, to be able*.
 Velox, (velōc) is, 107, *swift*.
 Venator, (venatör) is, *hunter*.
 Vener-äri (at-), dep., *to revere, to venerate*.
 Venetus, a, um, *Venetian*.
 Veni-a, æ, *pardon*.
 Vēn-äre (vēm-, vent-, 426, IV.), *to come*.
 Vent-us, i, *wind*.
 Ver, (ver) is, n., 325, *spring*.
 Verber-äre (äv-, at-), *to flog*.
 Verb-um, i, *word*.
 Ver-äri (verit-), dep., *to fear*.
 Verg-äre (vers-), *to incline, tend*.
 Vero, conj., *but, truly, certainly*, 173.
 Verres, (Verr) is, *Verres*.
 Vert-äre (vert-, vers-, 421, b), *to turn*.
 Ver-us, a, um, *true*.
 Versus, prep. with acc., *towards*.
 Vester, tra, trum, *your*, 134.
 Veteran-us, a, um, *veteran*.
 Vetus, (veter) is, 108, R. 2, *old*.
 Vexill-um, i, *standard*.
 Vi-a, æ, *way; Via Sacra, the Sacred Way, a street in Rome*.
 Victori-a, æ, *victory*.
 Vic-us, i, *village*.
 Vid-äre (vid-, vis-, 394, V.), *to see; videri, pass., to seem, appear*.
 Vigilanti-a, æ, *vigilance*.
 Vigil-äre (av-, at-), *to watch*.
 Vigili-a, æ, *watch; de tertia vigilia, about or after the third watch*.
 Viginti, indecl., *twenty*.
 Vil-is, is, e, 104, *cheap, vile*.
 Vinc-äre (vic-, vict-), *to conquer*.
 Vincul-um, i, *bond*.
 Vindex, (vindic) is, *avenger*.
 Vin-um, i, *wine*.
 Viol-äre (av-, at-), *to violate, lay waste*.
 Vir, i, *man*.

Virgili-us, i, *Virgil*.

Virgo, (virgin) is, 339, *virgin*.

Viriliter, adv., *manly, courageously*.

Virtūs, (virtūt) is, 293, *valour, virtue*.

Vis, vim, vi, 301, 2, *strength, force*;
pl.; vires, ium.

Vit-a, æ, *life*.

Vit-āre (av-, at-), *to shun, avoid*.

Viti-um, i, *vice*.

Viv-ĕre (vix-, vict-) *to live*.

Vix, adv., *scarcely*.

Voc-āre (av-, at-), *o call*.

Vol-āre (av-, at-), *to fly*.

Volo, *I wish*. (See velle.)

Voluntas, (voluntāt) is, 293, *will, wish*.

Voluptas, (voluptāt) is, 293, *pleasure*.

Volv-ĕre (volv-, volūt-), *to roll*

Vos, *you*, 130.

Vox, (voc) is, 293, *voice*.

Vulg-us, i, n., 62, R. 1, *the common people*.

Vulner-āre (av-, at-), *to wound*.

Vulnus, (vulner) is, 344, *b, wound*.

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.



ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.

A.

Ability, facultas, (facultat) is, 293.
Able (to be), posse, quire (queo).
Abode, domicilium, i.
Abound, abundare.
About, circiter (concerning); de, *abl.*
Abrogate, abrogare.
Absent (to be), abesse.
Abstain from, abstinere (abstinu-, abstent-).
Accuse, incusare.
Accustomed (to be), consuescere (suev-, suet-).
Acquit, absolvēre, 421, *a.*
Act, agere.
Act of kindness, beneficium, i.
Add, addere, 411, *c.*
Admire, mirari, admirari (dep.).
Admonish, monere.
Adore, adorare.
Adorn, ornare.
Advice, consilium, i.
Advise, monere, admonere.
Æduan, Æduus, i.
Affair, res, 117.
Affection, affectio, 333, *R.*
Affirm, confirmare.
Afford, præbere, 527.
After, post (with accus.); de (with abl.).
After that, postquam.
Again, rursus; iterum, *adv.*
Against, contra; adversus (with accus.); *against Cicero*, in Cicero-nem.
Age (time of life), ætas, (ætät) is, 293.
Agree, consentire, 427, *III.*
Agreeable, gratus. a, um (with dat.); *it is agreeable*, libet, or lubet, 583.

Aid, auxilium, i; *to aid*, adjuvare. 390.

Alarm, perturbare.

All, omnis, e; cunctus, a, um; *in all* *adv.*, omnino.

Allowed (it is), licet, 583.

Ally, socius, i.

Almost, fere; pene, *adv.*

Alone, solus, 194, *R.* 1; unus.

Already, jam, *adv.*

Also, etiam, *adv.*

Altogether, omnino, *adv.*

Although, quamvis, *conj.*

Always, semper.

Ambassador, legatus, i.

Ambush, insidie, 57, *R.*

Amiable, amabilis, e, 104.

Among, inter (with acc.).

Ancients (the), veteres; *pl. of vetus*, -old.

And, et, que, ac, atque; *and not*, neque.

Anger, ira, æ.

Animal, animal, 325.

Announce, nuntiare.

Answer, respondere.

Antony, Antonius, i.

Any, ullus, a, um, 194, *R.* 1; *any one*, *any you please*, &c. See 178.

Apart (to be), distare.

Apiece, use the distrib. numerals, 189.

Apply, adhibere (u-, it-).

Appoint, constituere, 421, *a.*

Approach, adventus, ūs; *to approach*, appropinquare: accedere.

Archer, sagittarius, i.

Arise (as a storm), cooriri (coort-). dep.

Arm, armare.

Arms, arma, orum.
Army, exercitus, ūs.
Arrange, disponĕre, 406, b.
Arrival, adventus, ūs.
Arrive at, pervenĭre, 427, IV.
Art, ars, (art) is, 293.
Artificer, faber, fabri, 77, a.
As, conj., ut; *as*, of what kind, qualis, 184; *as far as to*, usque; *as soon as*, simulatque.
Ashamed (one is), pudet, 579.
Ask, rogāre, postulāre.
Assemble, convenĭre, 427, IV.
Assist, adjuvāre, 390.
Assistance, auxilium, i.
Association, societas, (societāt) is.
Assure, confirmāre. [293.
At, ad, apud; *at home*, domi; *at length*, demum.
Athenian, Atheniensis, is.
Athens, Athenæ, arum.
Attack (noun), impetus, ūs; (verb), oppugnāre.
Austerity, severitas, (severitāt) is, 293.
Auxiliaries, auxilia, orum.
Avail, valĕre.
Avaricious, avarus, i.
Avoid, vitāre.
Await, expectāre.

B.

Back, tergum, i.
Badly, malĕ, adv., 215, R.
Band (of men), manus, ūs.
Barbarian, barbarus, i.
Base, turpis, e, 104; *basely*, turpiter, 215, 2, a.
Battle, prælĭum, i.
Be, csse; *be among*, interesse, 174; *be over*, præesse; *be wanting*, deesse, with dat.
Beam, trabs, (trab) is, 293.
Bear (verb), ferre, 596.
Beast, bestia, æ; *beast of burden*, jumentum, i

Beautiful, pulcher, chra, chrum, 77, a.
Because, conj., quod, quia, propterea quod.
Becoming (it is), decet, 583.
Bed, cubile, (cubil) is, 312, *bed chamber*, cubiculum, i.
Before, prep., ante (acc.); adv., antea; *before that*, antequam.
Beg, rogāre, orāre.
Begin, incipĕre, 416, c; *I begin*, cœpi, 611.
Beginning, initium, i.
Behold, spectāre.
Behooves (it), oportet, 583.
Belgian, Belga, æ.
Believe, credĕre, 411, c.
Belong, pertinĕre, 394, I.
Benevolent, benevolus, a, um.
Benevolence, benevolentia, æ.
Beseech, obsecrāre.
Besiege, oppugnāre.
Best, optimus, a, um, 370.
Betake one's self, se recipere, 418, a.
Better, melior, 370.
Between, inter.
Bind, obstringere.
Bird, avis (avis), 300.
Bit, frænum, i; pl., i and a, 396.
Bite, mordĕre, 395, IV.
Black, niger, gra, grum, 77, a.
Blame, incusāre, vituperāre.
Blood, sanguis, (sanguin) is (m.).
Blooming, florens, (florent) is, 107.
Boast, prædicāre.
Body, corpus, (corpor) is, 344.
Bond, vĭnculum, i.
Book, liber, bri.
Booty, præda, æ.
Born (to be), nasci (nat), dep.
Boundary, finis, (fin) is (m.).
Boy, puer, i.
Brave, fortis, e; *bravely*, fortiter, 215, 2.
Bravery, virtus, (virtut) is, 293.
Break through, perfringĕre (page 275); perrumpĕre, 666, V., a.

Bridge, pons, (pont) is, 295, R. 1.
Bring, ducere, agere; *bring back*, re-ducere; *bring back word*, renun-
 tiare; *bring to pass*, perficere;
bring together, cogere, 416, b.
Britain, Britannia, æ; *Briton*, Bri-
 tannus, i.
Broad, latus, a, um.
Brother, frater, (fratr) is.
Build, ædificare; *build a nest*, nidi-
 ficare.
Bull, taurus, i.
Burn, incendere; *burn up*, exurere,
 545.
Burden, onus, (oner) is, 344.
Burst into, irrumpere, 666, V., a.
Business, negotium, i.
But, sed, autem.
Buy, emere; *buy up*, coemere.
By, prep. with abl., a or ab, 93, 2.
By night, noctu, adv.

C.

Cæsar, Cæsar, (Cæsar) is.
Call, vocare; *to name*, appellare;
to be called, nominari, appellari.
Call together, convocare.
Call-upon, invocare.
Camp, castra, orum.
Can (to be able), posse, 587; *I can-*
not, non possum, nequeo.
Captive, captivus, i.
Care (noun), cura, æ; (verb), curare.
Carefully, diligenter, studiose.
Carry, portare, vehere; *carry on*,
 gerere, 401, 4, a.
Carthage, Carthago, (Carthagin) is.
Cassius, Cassius, i.
Casticus, Casticus, i.
Catiline, Catilina, æ.
Cause, causa, æ.
Cautious, cantus, a, um.
Cavalry, equitatus, ūs; *belonging*
to cavalry, equestris, e, 104.
Celebrate, celebrare.
Celt, Celta, æ.

Censure, incusare.
Centurion, centurio, (centuriōn) is.
Certain, certus, a, um; *a certain*
one, quidam, 178.
Certainly, adv., certō: profecto, vero.
Chain, vinculum, i.
Change (noun), commutatio, (com-
 mutation) is; (verb), mutare, com-
 mutare.
Champ, mordere, 395, IV.
Chide, increpare, 390.
Chief, princeps, (princip) is, 107.
Child, infans, (infant) is, 107; *chil-*
dren, liberi, orum.
Choose, deligere, 666, V., a.
Christ, Christus, i.
Cicero, Cicero, (Cicerōn) is.
Citadel, arx, (arc) is, 293.
Citizen, civis, (civ) is, c, 25, a.
City, urbs, (urb) is, 293.
Cloud, nubes, (nub) is, 300; *cloud*
of dust, vis pulveris.
Cohort, cohors, (cohort) is, 293.
Cold, frigidus, a, um; (noun), frigus,
 (frigor) is, 344.
Collect, colligere (leg-, lect-); co-
 gere (coeg-, coact-); *collect corn*,
 frumentari, dep.; *collect into a*
flock, congregare.
Colour, color, (colōr) is, 319.
Come, venire, 427, IV.; *come near*,
 appropinquare; *come to*, perve-
 nire; *come together*, convenire.
Coming, adventus, ūs.
Command, imperare, with dat.
Commander, imperator, (imperatōr)
 is, 319.
Commit, committere; *commit sui-*
cide, mortem sibi consciscere.
Common, communis, e, 104.
Common-people, plebs, (pleb) is, 293.
Companion, socius, i; comes, (co-
 mit) is.
Compel, cogere, 416, b.
Complain, queri (quest), dep
Complete, conficere.

Concerning (prep. with abl.), de.
Concerns (it), interest, refert, 584, d.
Condemn, damnare, condemnare, 348.
Conference, colloquium, i.
Confess, fatēri, dep.
Confines, fines, pl. of finis.
Conflict, congressus, ūs.
Confirm, confirmare.
Confound, perturbare.
Congratulate, gratulari, dep.
Conquer, vincere (vic-, vict-); superare.
Conqueror, victor, (victor) is, 319.
Conspiracy, conjuratio, (conjuratiō) is, 333, R.
Consul, consul, (consul) is.
Consult, consulere (consula-, consult-).
Contemplate, contemplari, dep.
Contend, contendere.
Content, contentus, a, um (with abl.).
Continuous, continens, (continent) is, 107.
Continuance, continuatio, (continuatīō) is.
Corn, frumentum, i.
Council, concilium, i.
Counsel, consilium, i.
Course, cursus, ūs.
Covetous, cupidus, a, um.
Cow, vacca, æ.
Cowardice, ignavia, æ.
Creak, crepare, 390.
Create, creare.
Crime, crimen, (crimin) is, 344, a.
Cross over, transire, trajicere.
Crow, corvus, i.
Crown, corona, æ.
Cry out, exclamare.
Cultivation, cultus, ūs; humanitas.
Cup, poculum, i.
Cure, sanare.
Custom, mos, (mor) is, 331, b.
Cut down, rescindere (rescid-, resciss-).

Cut to pieces, cedere, 411, b.
Cyrus, Cyrus, i.

D.

Daily, adj., quotidianus, a, um; adv., quotidie.
Dance, saltare.
Danger, periculum, i.
Danube, Danubius, i.
Dare, audere (ausus sum).
Dart, telum, i; pilum, i.
Daughter, filia, æ.
Day, dies, ei, 116, R., by day; interdiu, adv.; to-day, hodie, adv.
Dragon, draco, (dracō) is.
Dead, mortuus, a, um.
Dear, carus, a, um.
Death, mors, (mort) is, 293.
Deceive, fallere (fefell-, fals-).
Decide on, statuere.
Decree (verb), decernere (decrev-, decret-); (noun), decretum, i; decree of the senate, senatus consultum.
Deep, altus, a, um.
Defeat, pellere, 411, b.
Defend, defendere, 421, c.
Defence, munitio, 333.
Defender, vindex, (vindic) is, 306.
Defiles, angustiae, arum, 57, R.
Delay, cunctari (dep.); active, tardare (to retard).
Deliberate, deliberare.
Delight, delectare.
Delight (with), libenter, adv.
Demand, poscere, 411, a; postulare, imperare, 390; demand back, repetere.
Deny, negare.
Depart, discedere, 401, 3, b.
Depart out of, excedere.
Departure, discessus, ūs.
Dependant, cliens, (client) is, c.
Descend, descendere.
Desert, deserere, 406, a; a desert, desertum, i.

Deserter, perfuga, æ.
Desire, cupiditas, (cupiditāt) is, (verb), cupēre (io) : studium, i.
Desirous, cupidus, a, um.
Despair (verb), desperāre ; (noun), desperatio, 333, R.
Despise, spernēre, 406, III., a : contemnēre.
Destroy, delēre, 394, II.
Destruction, interitus, ūs.
Determine, constituēre, statuēre.
Devoid, expers, 336.
Die, morīri, or mori (mortu-), dep.
Difference (it makes no), nihil interest, nihil refert.
Different, diversus, a, um ; alius, 194, R. 1.
Difficult, difficilis, e, 104.
Dignity, dignitas, (dignitāt) is, 293.
Diligence, diligentia, æ.
Diligent, diligens, (diligent) is. 107 ; *diligently*, adv., diligenter.
Diminish, minuēre, diminuēre.
Direct (of a ship), gubernāre.
Disagree, dissentire, 427, III.
Discipline, disciplina, æ.
Discomfit, fugāre.
Discover, invenire, 427, IV.
Discourse, disserere (disseru-, disert-).
Discretion, consilium, i.
Dismiss, dimittēre (mis-, miss-).
Displease, displicere (displicu-, displicit-), with dat., 161, R.
Dispute, disputāre.
Dissolve, dissolvēre, 421, a.
Distant (to be), distāre.
Distribute, distribuēre, 406, a ; *arrange*, disponere.
District, pagus, i.
Divide, dividēre, 401, 3, a ; *divide among*, distribuere, 423, c.
Divulge, enuntiāre.
Do, agere, facere.
Dock-yard, navale, (naval) is, 312.
Dog, canis, (can) is.


Door, foris, (for) is, 300.
Double, duplicāre.
Doubt, dubitare.
Doubtful, incertus, a, um ; *dubius*, a, um.
Dove, columba, æ.
Draw, trahere (trax-, tract-) ; *duce* (dux-, duct-) ; *draw up*, instruere, 401, 2 ; *draw as a sword*, stringere, 401 ; *draw out*, educere.
Dread, formidare.
Drive, agere ; *drive back*, repellere ; *drive on*, or *together*, compellere.
Druids, Druides, um, pl.
Duty, munus, (muner) is, 344.

E.

Each, quisque, 178 ; *omnis*, e ; *each of the two*, uterque.
Eagle, aquila, æ.
Earth, terra, æ.
Easily, facile (adv.).
East, Oriens.
Easy, facilis, e ; *very easy*, perfacilis.
Educate, educare.
Egypt, Egyptus, i (f.).
Eighty, octoginta.
Eloquent, facundus, a, um ; *disertus*, a, um ; *eloquens*, 107.
Embark (upon), conscendere, 309.
Embrace, amplecti (amplex-), dep.
Emperor, imperator, (imperator) is, 319.
Employ, uti (us-), dep., with abl. adhibere.
End, finis, (fin) is (m.).
Endeavour, conari (conat-), dep.
Endure, durare ; *to bear*, tolerare.
Enemy, hostis, (host) is, c.
Enjoin upon, precipere.
Enmity, inimicitia, æ.
Enough, satis, adv.
Enrol, conscribere.
Entreat, rogare.
Equanimity (with), æquo animo.
Erect, communire.

Err, errāre.
Especially, adv , præsertim.
Establish, confirmāre.
Eternity, æternitas, (æternitāt) is, 293.
Even up to, usque ad.
Ever, unquam.
Everlasting, sempiternus, a, um.
Every, omnis, e, 104.
Evil, malum, i.
Evil-deed, maleficium, i.
Example, exemplum, i.
Excel, præstare (præstit-), with dat.
Excellent, præclarus, a, um; præstans, 107.
Excite, excitāre.
Excuse, excusatio, 333, R.
Exercise, exercere.
Exhort, hortari, dep.
Expedient (it is), expedit, 583.
Expel, expellere.
Expense, sumptus, ūs; *at his own expense*, sumptu suo.
Eye, oculus, i.

F.

Fable, fabula, æ.
Faith, fides, ei.
Fail, deficere.
Fall, cadere, 411, b.
Fame, fama, æ.
Family of slaves, familia, æ.
Far, longe, adv.
Farm (as revenues), redimere.
Farmer, agricola.
Father, pater, (patr) is.
Father-in-law, socer, i.
Fault, culpa, æ; peccatum, i; *find fault with*, culpāre, incusare.
Favour, venia, æ; (verb), favere, 395, V.
Fear, timor, (timor) is, 319; (verb), timere, metuere.
Feather, pluma, æ.
Fell (cut down), cadere, 413, .
Few, pauci, æ, a; *very few*, perpauci.

Fidelity, fides, ei.
Field, ager, gri.
Fierce, ferox, (feroc) is, 107: atrox, 107.
Fifth, quintus, a, um.
Fight, pugnare.
Figure, figura, æ.
Fill, implere; *fill up*, complere 395, II.
Finally, denique, adv.
Find, invenire, 427, IV.; *find out*, reperire, 427, V.
Find fault with, incusare.
Finish, conficere.
Fire, ignis, (ign) is (m.).
Firmament, cælum, i.
First, primus, a, um.
Fish, piscis, (pisc) is (m.).
Fit for, idoneus, a, um, with dat.
Five, quinque; *five at a time*, quini, 189.
Flag, vexillum, i.
Flame, flamma, æ.
Flee, fugere (io), 416, c.
Fleet, classis, (class) is, 300.
Flesh, caro, (carn) is (f.).
Flight, fuga, æ.
Flock, grex, (greg) is (m.); *in flocks*, gregatim, adv.
Flog, verberare.
Flow, fluere; *flow together*, confluere, 401, 2, 422.
Flower, flos, (flor) is, 331, b.
Fly, volare.
Follow sequi (secut-), dep.
Folly, stultitia, æ; ineptiæ, arum, 57, R.
Fool, stultus, i; *foolish*, stultus, a, um.
Foot, pes, (ped) is (m.).
Foot-soldier, pedes, (pedit) is.
For, conj., enim, etenim; *for my sake*, mea causa.
Force, vis, vim, vi, 301, 1; *forces* (troops), copias, arum, 57, a.
Foreign, alienus, a, um.

Forest, sylva, æ.
Forever, in æternum.
Forget, oblivisci, with gen.
Form, forma, æ.
Fortification, munītio, (munition) is.
Fortify, munire.
Fortunate, fortunatus, a, um.
Fortune, fortuna, æ.
Forum, forum, i.
Four, quattuor; *four apiece*, 189.
Founder, conditor, 319.
Fountain, fons, (font) is (m.).
Frail, fragilis, e, 104.
Free from (to be), carēre, 348.
Friend, amicus, i.
Friendship, amicitia, æ.
Frighten, terrere; *frighten completely*, perterrere.
From, a, de; *from every side*, undique, adv.; *from my boyhood*, a puero.
Frugality, parsimonia, æ.
Fruit, fructus, ūs.
Full, plenus, a, um, 348, b.
Future, futurus, a, um.

G.

Galba, Galba, æ.
Gain, potiri, 209; *gain for another*, conciliare.
Game, ludus, i.
Garden, hortus, i.
Garrison, præsidium, i.
Gate, porta, æ.
Gather, colligere, 416, b.
Gaul, Gallia, æ; *the Gauls*, Galli, orum.
General, imperator, 319.
German, Germanus, a, um.
Get sight of, conspiciere (conspex-, conspect-).
Gift, donum, i.
Girl, puella, æ.
Give, dare, 387, III.
Give largess, largiri (it-), dep.
Glare, splendor, 319.

Glory, gloria, æ.
Go, ire, 605; *go straight*, pergere; *go away*, discedere, 401, 3, b; *go forward*, procedere; *go forth*, or out, exire.
Goad, concitare.
God, Deus, i, 62, R. 3.
Gold, aurum, i.
Good, bonus, a, um; *good deed*, beneficium; *good-will*, voluntas, 293.
Govern, gubernare.
Grant (verb), concedere, 401, 3, b, dare: (noun), concessus, ūs.
Great, magnus, a, um; *comp.*, major; *superl.*, maximus.
Greatly, valde.
Greatness, magnitudo, 339.
Greek, Græcus, a, um.
Grief, mœror, 319; luctus, ūs, 113, N.
Grieve, dolere, it grieves one, piget, 579.
Guardian, custos, (custod) is, c, 25, a.
Guest, hospes, (hospit) is, c, 25, a.
Guide, dux, (duc) is.

H.

Hail, grando, (grandin) is, 339
Halt,
Hand, manus, ūs (f.).
Hannibal, Hannibal, (Hannibal) is.
Happen, accidere; it happens, accidit, 580.
Happily, beatē.
Happy, beatus, a, um; felix, 107
Harass, lacessere, 406, III., b.
Harbinger, prænuntia, æ.
Harbour, portus, ūs.
Hard, durus, a, um.
Hasten, festinare, contendere.
Hate (to), odisse, 611.
Hatred, odium, i.
Have, habere (habu-, habit-). *I have a book*, est mihi liber, 125.
He, is, hic, ille.
Headlong, præceps, (præcipit) is 107

Heal, sanare.
Health, valetudo, 339.
Hear, audire.
Heart, cor, (cord) is (n.).
Heaven, cælum, i.
Heavy, gravis, e, 104.
Help, auxilium, i.
Helvetian, Helvetius, a, um.
Herald, præco, (præcon) is.
Herb, herba, æ.
Hesitate, dubitare.
High, altus, a, um; *higher*, superior, comp. of superus, 370.
Hill, collis, is (m.).
Hillock, tumulus, i.
Hinder, impedire, prohibere.
His, suus, a, um: ejus.
History, historia, æ.
Hold, tenere, obtinere: *hold back*, retinere.
Home (at), domi, gen. of domus.
Honest, probus, a, um.
Honour, honor, 319; (verb), colere (colu-, cult-).
Honourable, honestus, a, um.
Hope, spes, ei.
Horn, cornu, 112:
Horned, corniger, a, um, 77, b.
Horse, equus, i.
Horse-soldier, eques, (equit) is.
Hostage, obses, (obsid) is, c, 25, a.
Hour, hora, æ.
House, domus, i and us (f.), 112, 3.
Household, familia, æ.
How great, how many? quantus, 186, obs.; *however great*, quantuscunque, 184; *how long*, quamdiu, adv.
Humanity, humanitas, (humanitat) is, 293.
Hunger, fames, (fam) is, 300.
Hurl, conjicere, 416, c (conjec-, con-ject-).
Hurt, nocere.

I.

I, ego, 120.
Ides, Idus, iduum (f.).
If, si.
Ignorance, ignoratio, 339.
Ignorant, ignarus, a, um; *to be ignorant of*, ignorare, nescire.
Illustrious, clarus, a, um; *præclarus*, a, um.
Image, imago, 339.
Immediately, statim.
Immense, immensus, a, um.
Immortal, immortalis, e, 104.
Impious, impius, a, um.
Implore, implorare.
In, prep., in, with abl.
Incessant, continens, (continent) is, 107.
Increase, augere (aux-, auct-).
Incredible, incredibilis, e, 104.
Indeed, quidem.
Indolence, inertia, æ; ignavia, æ.
Indolent, ignavus, a, um.
Induce, inducere, adducere
Indulge, indulgere, dat.
Infant, infans, (infant) is, c.
Influence, auctoritas.
Inform any one, aliquem certiores facere.
Inhabitant, incola, æ.
Injure, violare.
Injury, injuria, æ; incommodum, i
Innocence, innocentia, æ.
Insect, insectum, i.
Instead of, pro (prep. with abl.).
Instigate, instigare.
In the mean time, interea.
It interests, interest.
Intrust, committere (with dat.).
Invoke, invocare.
Ireland, Hibernia, æ.
Iron, ferrum, i.
Island, insula, æ.
Italy, Italia, æ.
Itself, 159.

J.

Javelin, telum, i; tragula, æ.
Join, jungere (junx-, junct-); *join together*, conjungere.
Journey, iter, (itiner) is (n.).
Junior, junior, 370.
Jupiter, 351.
Just, justus, a, um; *just so many*, totidem.
Justice, justitia, æ.

K.

Keep, tenere, servare.
Kind, benignus, a, um, with dat.: suavis, e, 335.
Kindle, excitare.
King, rex, (reg) is.
Kingdom, regnum, i.
Kill, occidere, interficere, 390.
Know, scire, noscere, 525; cognoscere: *not to know*, nescire.
Knowledge, scientia, æ.

L.

Labour (noun), labor, 319; (verb), laborare.
Lamb, agnus, i.
Land, terra; *by land and sea*, terra marique.
Language, lingua, æ: sermo, 331.
Large, magnus, a, um.
Last (to), durare.
Latin, Latinus, a, um.
Laugh, ridere; *laughter*, risus, ūs.
Law, jus, (jur) is (n.).
Lawful (it is), licet.
Lay aside, deponere, 406, b.
Lay waste, populari (at-), dep.
Lead, ducere (dux-, duct-); *lead back*, reducere; *lead out*, educere; *lead together*, conducere; *lead over or across*, transducere, 113, II.
Leader, dux, (duc) is.
Leaf, folium, i.
League, foedus, (foeder) is, 344.

Leap down, desilire, 428.
Learn, discere, 411, a: cognoscere.
Leave, relinquere.
Legion, legio, (legion) is, 333, R.
Letter, epistola, æ; litteræ, arum, 58, N.
Level, planus, a, um; æquus, a, um.
Levy, conscribere.
Lieutenant, legatus, i.
Lightning, fulgur, (fulgur) is, 325.
Life, vita, æ.
Like, similis, e, 104 (with dat.).
Line of battle, acies, ei.
Lion, leo, (leon) is.
Literature, litteræ, arum, 57, R.
Little, parvus, a, um.
Live, vivere.
Living - being, animans, (animant) is.
Lofty, altus, a, um.
Long, longus, a, um; adv., longe; *a long time*, diu.
Look at, intueri, dep.
Lose, amittere, perdere.
Lot, sors, (sort) is, 293.
Love (verb), amare, diligere; (noun), amor, 319.
Low, humilis, e, 104.
Lycurgus, Lycurgus.

M.

Magnanimous, magnanimus, a, um.
Maid-servant, ancilla, æ.
Maintain, alere.
Make, facere, 199; *make war*, bellare; *make war upon*, bellum inferre, with dat.; *make an attack*, impetum facere.
Maker, faber, bri.
Maltreat, violare.
Man, homo, vir.
Many, multus, a, um.
Marble, marmor, 325.
Master (of school), magister, tri; (of slaves), herus, dominus.
Matters (it), interest, refert, 583.

Measure, metiri, 206.
Medicine, medicina, æ.
Mediterranean, Mediterraneus, a, um.
Meet, convenire.
Memory, memoria, æ.
Merchant, mercator, 319.
Messenger, nuntius, i.
Metal, metallum, i.
Mid-day, merides, ei.
Middle, medius, a, um.
Migrate, migrare.
Mile, millia (passuum), 191, b.
Military command, imperium, i.
Milk, lac, (lact) is (n).
Mind, mens, (ment) is (f); animus, i.
Mine, meus, a, um.
Minerva, Minerva, æ.
Miserable, miser, a, um, 77, b.
Mitigate, mitigare.
Moderation, modus, i.
Money, pecunia, æ.
Moon, luna, æ.
More, plus, pluris; adv., magis.
Mortal, mortalis, e, 104.
Most, plurimus, a, um; *most men*, plerique, 195.
Mountain, mons, (mont) is (m).
Move, movēre.
Much, multus, a, um; *much money*, magna pecunia.
Multitude, multitudo, 339.
My, meus, a, um.

N.

Naked, nudus, a, um.
Name, nomen, (nomin) is, 344, a; *to name*, nomināre.
Narrow, angustus, a, um.
Nation, natio, 333, R.; gens, 293.
Nature, natura, æ.
Navigation, navigatio, 333, R.
Near, prope, juxta; *nearest to*, proximus, a, um.
Neglect, negligere.

Neighbouring, finitimus, a, um; proximus, a, um.
Neither, conj.—*nor*, nec—*neque*; *neither* (of two), neuter, tra, trum, 194, R. 1.
Net, rete, (ret) is.
Never, nunquam (adv.).
Nevertheless, tamen, conj.
New, novus, a, um.
Next, posterus, a, um, 118; proximus, 371.
Night, nox, (noct) is, 293.
Nine, novem.
Ninth, nonus, a, um.
Nobility, nobilitas, (nobilitat) is 293.
Noble, nobilis, e, 104.
Nobody, nemo, (nemin) is, c.
Noise, clamor, 319.
No one, nullus, a, um, 194, R. 1
Not, nōn; *with imper.*, nē.
Nothing, nihil.
Notice, (see) conspiciere.
Nourish, alere.
Novelty, novitas, (novitāt) is, 293.
November, November, bris.
Nurse, nutrix, (nutric) is, 293

O.

Oath, jusjurandum, 351, 4.
Obey, parere (with dat.).
Obscure, obscurare.
Obtain booty, prædari (dep.)
Obviously, prorsus.
Ocean, oceanus, i.
Of, de.
Of one's own accord, ultro.
Old, vetus, (veter) is, 107.
Old man, senex.
Old age, senectus, 293.
On the other side of, trans (acc.); *on account of*, ob, with acc.
One, unus, a, um, 194, 1.
Open, apertus, a, um; *to open*, aperire.
Opinion, opinio, 333, R.; sententia, æ.

Opportunity of (with gerund in gen.), spatium, i.
Oracle, oraculum, i.
Oration, oratio, 333, R.
Orator, orator. 319.
Order, ordo, (ordin) is (m.); *to order*, jubere.
Orgetorix, Orgetorix, (Orgetorig) is.
Origin, origo, 339.
Other, alius, a, ud, 194, R. 1.
Otherwise, aliter.
Ought (one), oportet, 583
Our, noster, tra, trum.
Out of, e, or ex (abl.).
Overcome, superare.
Ox, bos, 351, 2.

P.

Pain, dolor, 319.
Paltry, vilis, e, 104.
Pardon, venia, æ.
Parents, parentes, ium.
Part, pars, (part) is.
Pass, iter facere, 210.
Passage, iter, (itiner) is (n.).
Patience, patientia, æ.
Patiently, patienter, adv.
Pay, pendere.
Peace, pax, (pac) is, 293.
Peninsula, peninsula, æ.
People, populus, i.
Perceive, animadvertere.
Perchance, forsitan, forte, adv.
Persian, Persa, æ.
Persuade, suadere, persuadere.
Phalanx, phalanx, (phalang) is.
Philosopher, philosophus, i.
Philosophize, philosophari, dep.
Pilot, gubernator, 319.
Pious, pius, a, um.
Pirate, prædo, 335.
Pity, miserere; *I pity*, me miseret, 579.
Place, locus, i; pl., i and a: *to place*, ponere.
Place into, imponere

Placid, placidus, a, um.
Plain, planus, a, um; æquus, a, um: *a plain*, æquor, 327.
Plan, consilium, i.
Plant, planta, æ; *to plant*, serere.
Plato, Plato, 334.
Pleading, dictio, 333, R.
Pleasant, jucundus, a, um.
Please, placere (with dat.); *it pleases*, placet, 583.
Pleasure, voluptas, (tat) is, 293.
Plough, arare.
Plunder, diripere: prædari, dep., 491
Poet, poeta, æ (m.).
Pompey, Pompeius, i.
Poor, egens, inops, pauper, 107.
Port, portus, ūs.
Post, statio, 333, R.
Possess one's self of, potiri (with gen. or abl.).
Power, vis, vim, vi, 301, 1; potestas, (tat) is, 293.
Powerful, potens, (potent) is, 107.
Praise, laus, (laud) is, 293; *to praise*, laudare.
Prayers, preces, um, pl. of prex.
Precept, præceptum, i.
Preceptor, præceptor, 319.
Precious, carus, a, um.
Prefer, antepondere.
Prepare, parare.
Present (to be), adesse; interesse, 267.
Preserve, servare; *preserve moderation*, modum habere.
Preside over, præesse.
Prevail upon, permovere.
Prevent, prohibere, obstare.
Principle, principium, i.
Prisoner, captivus, i.
Private information, indicium, i.
Proceed, pergere, 447.
Proclaim, præco, 331, a.
Procure, comparare.
Promise, fides, ei; *to promise*, spondere, 395, IV.

Property, res familiaris : familia, æ.
Providence, Providentia, æ.
Province, provincia, æ.
Prudence, prudentia, æ.
Prudent, prudens, (prudent) is, 107.
Ptolemy, Ptolemæus, i.
Punish, punire.
Punishment, poena, æ : supplicium, i.
Pursue, persequi (dep.).
Put-to-flight, fugare : dare in fugam.
Pyrenees, Pyrenæi (montes).
Pythagoras, Pythagoras, æ.

Q.

Queen, regina, æ.
Quickly, cito, adv.

R.


Race, genus, (gener) is, 344 ; gens, (gent) is.
Rain, imber, bris.
Raise, tollere : excitare.
Rank, ordo, (ordin) is (m.).
Rapidly, celeriter, adv.
Rashly, temere.
Rashness, temeritas, (temeritat) is, 293.
Reach, pervenire.
Read, legere.
Reap, metere.
Reason, ratio, 333, R.
Rebellion, rebellio, 333, R.
Recall, revocare.
Receive, accipere ; *receive back*, recipere.
Reckon, ducere.
Recollection, memoria, æ.
Red, ruber, bra, brum, 77, a.
Refrain, temperare.
Refuse, recusare.
Reign, regnum, i ; *to reign*, regnare.
Rejoice, gaudere.
Relate, narrare : commemorare.
Relieve, levare.
Religion, religio, 333, R.

Remain, manere.
Remains, reliquæ, arum, 57, R.
Remove, removere.
Renew, renovare : redintegrare.
Repair, reficere.
Repel, propulsare (ward off).
Repent, poenitere ; *I repent*, me poenitet, 579.
Repress, opprimere.
Reprove, increpare.
Republic, respublica, 351, 3.
Resist, resistere, with dat.
Restrain, retinere.
Retreat, recedere.
Return (restore), reddere ; (go back), revertere, or reverti.
Revenue, vectigal, (vectigal) is.
Reverc, venerare.
Revoke, revocare, abrogare.
Reward, præmium, i.
Rhine, Rhenus, i.
Rhetoric, rhetorica, æ.
Rich, dives, (divit) is, 107.
Riches, divitiæ, arum, 57, R.
Ride (on horseback), equitare.
Right, jus, (jur) is ; *rightly*, jure (abl. of jus) : recte, adv.
Rise, oriri, dep.
River, fluvius, i ; flumen, (flumin) is.
Robber, latro, 331, a.
Rock, petra, æ.
Roll, volvere.
Roman, Romanus, a, um.
Rome, Roma, æ.
Rose, rosa, æ.
Rouse up, excitare.
Rout, fugare, pellere : fundere, 416, a.
Royal-power, regnum, i.
Rule, regere : imperare, with dat.
Run, currere.

S.

Sacred, sanctus, a, um : sacer, crum ; *sacred rites*, sacræ, orum ;
Sacred Way, Via Sacra ; *Sacred Mount*, Mons Sacer.

Sadness, tristitia, æ: mœror, 319.
Safe, salvus, a, um; tutus, a, um.
Safety, salus, (salut) is, 293.
Sailor, nauta, æ.
Sake—for the sake of, causâ, abl., 135, II., b.
Same, is, ea, id; the very same, idem, 150.
Sand, aridum, i.
Say, dicere; I say, aio, inquam.
Scarcely, vix.
Scatter, spargere.
Scholar, discipulus, i.
School, schola, æ.
Scout, explorator, 319.
Sea, mare, 312; æquor, 325.
Scede, secedere.
Second, secundus, a, um.
Sedition, seditio, 333, R.
See, videre; (notice), conspiciere.
Seek, quærere.
Seize, occupare; seize up, arripere.
Self, ipse.
Senate, senatus, ūs.
Senate-house, curia, æ.
Senator, senator, 319.
Send, mittere; send away, dimittere; send for, arcessere.
Senior, senior, (senior) is, 107 (comp. of senex), 370.
Separate, separare: dividere.
Sepulchre, sepulchrum, i.
Sequanian, Sequanus, i.
Serve (worship), colere.
Set (as heavenly bodies), occidere.
Set out, proficisci; set forth, exponere; set up, proponere.
Setting (of heavenly bodies), occasus, ūs.
Seven, septem; seventh, septimus, a, um.
Seventy, septuaginta.
Severe, gravis, e, 104.
Severity, severitas, (severitât) is, 293.
Shadow, umbra, æ.

Sharp, acutus, a, um.
Sharply, acriter, adv.
Shine, micare, 389, ; shine forth emicare.
Ship, navis, 300.
Shore, littus, (littor) is, 344.
Short, brevis, e, 104.
Show, monstrare, ostendere; (noun) species, ei.
Shower, imber, bris.
Shun, vitare.
Shut, claudere.
Sick, æger, gra, grum.
Sign, signum, i.
Sight, conspectus, ūs; in sight of conspectû.
Silent (to be), tacere.
Silver, argentum, i.
Similar to, similis (dat.).
Sin, peccatum, i; to sin, peccare.
Since, quum, quoniam.
Sing, cantare.
Singing, cantus, ūs.
Sister, soror, (soror) is (f.).
Sit, sedere, 394, V.
Six, sex; sixth, sextus, a, um.
Slave, servus, i.
Slay, occidere, interficere.
Slayer, interfector, 319.
Sleep, somnus, i; to sleep, dormire.
Slinger, funditor, 319.
Small, parvus, a, um.
Snatch up, arripere.
So, ita, tam; so great, tantus; so long, tamdiu; so many, tot.
Socrates, Socrates, is.
Soldier, miles, (milit) is.
Some (persons), nonnulli.
Somebody, some, 178; some one, aliquis.
Sometimes, interdum, nonnunquam.
Somewhat great, aliquantus, 184.
Son, filius, i.
Son-in-law, gener, i.
Song, carmen, 344, a.
Soul, animus, i.

Spain, Hispania, æ.
Spaniard, Hispanus, i.
Spare, parcere (dat.).
Sparta, Sparta, æ.
Speak, dicere, loqui.
Speech, sermo, 331.
Spend, consumere.
Spiritedly, acriter.
Splendid, splendidus, a, um.
Spoil, præda, æ.
Spur, calcar, 325.
Stag, cervus, i.
Stain, maculare.
Stand, stare; *stand in the way*, obstare.
Standard, signum, i.
Star, sidus, (sider) is, 344; stella, æ.
State, civitas, (civitas) is; respublica, 351, 3.
Station, statio, 333, R; *to station*, constituere, collocare.
Stimulate, inducere.
Stir up, instigare.
Stoic, Stoicus, i.
Stone, lapis, (lapid) is (m.).
Stormy, turbidus, a, um.
Strange, novus, a, um.
Strength, vis, 301; robur, 344.
Strengthen, confirmare.
Strive after, persequi, 206.
Strong, validus, a, um.
Strong desire, cupiditas, 293.
Study, studium, i.
Subdue, subigere.
Succour, subsidium, i.
Such, talis, e, 184.
Sudden, repentinus, a, um.
Suddenly, subito, adv.
Sufficiently, satis.
Sum of money, pecunia, æ.
Summer, æstas, (æstat) is, 293.
Sun, sol, (söl) is (m.).
Sup, cænare.
Superior, superior, oris.
Support, alere.

Surrender, deditio, 333, R.
Surround, circumvenire; circumstare, 391; cingere, 401, 2.
Sure, certus, a, um.
Suspicion, suspicio, 333, R.
Sustain, sustinere.
Swallow, hirundo, 339.
Sweet, dulcis, e, 104.
Swift, celer, velox, 107.
Swiftly, celeriter, 217.
Swim, natare; *swim across*, transnare.
Sword, gladius, i.
Syracuse, Syracuse, æ, arum.

T.

Take, sumere; *take away*, eripere; *take back*, recipere; *take captive*, capere; *take care of*, curare; *take by storm*, expugnare; *take possession of*, occupare.
Talent, ingenium, i.
Tame, domare.
Teach, docere.
Teacher, magister, trl.
Tear, lacryma, æ.
Tell, dicere, nuntiare.
Tempest, procella, æ: tempestas.
Temple, templum, i.
Tenacious, tenax, (tenac) is, 107.
Tender, tener, a, um.
Tent, pellis, 322.
Tenth, decimus, a, um.
Terrify, terrere.
Territory, finis (m.).
Than, quam.
That (pron.), ille, is, iste.
That, conj., *in order that*, ut; *that not*, ne.
Themselves, sui, 142.
Then, tum, adv.
There, ibi.
Thick, densus, a, um.
Thine, tuus, a, um.
Thing, res, rei; *this thing*, hoc; *these things*, hæc.

Think, putāre, cogitare, existimāre,
sentire, censere.
Third, tertius, a, um.
Thirst, sitis, 300.
Thirteen, tredecim.
Thirty, triginta.
This, hic, hæc, hoc.
Thither, eo.
Three, tres, ia.
Through, per (prep. with acc.).
Throw, jacere; *throw before*, pro-
jicere.
Thunder (verb), tonare.
Thus, ita.
Thy, tuus, a, um.
Tiber, Tiberis, is.
Time, tempus, (tempor) is, 344.
Timid, timidus, a, um.
To, ad (prep. with acc.).
To-day, hodie.
Together, una (adv.).
Toil, labor, 319: opera, æ.
To-morrow, cras (adv.).
Tongue, lingua, æ.
Too much, nimius, a, um.
Tooth, dens, (dent) is (m.).
Top of, summus, 297, a.
Touch, tangere; *touch upon*, attingere.
Tower, turris, 300: castellum, i.
Town, oppidum, i.
Townsman, oppidanus, i.
Treaty, fœdus, (fœder) is, 344.
Tree, arbor, (arbor) is (f.).
Trial, judicium, i.
Tribune, tribunus, i.
Tributary, stipendiarius, a, um.
Tribute, stipendium, i.
True, verus, a, um.
Truce, indutiæ, arum, 57, R.
Trust to, credere (with dat.).
Turbid, turbidus, a, um.
Turn, vertere.
Twenty, viginti.
Two-a-piece, bini, 189.

U.

Ulysses, Ulysses, is.
Uncertain, incertus, a, um.
Under, sub, prep., 323.
Understand, intelligere.
Undertake, suscipere.
Unfriendly, inimicus, a, um.
Unjust, injustus, a, um.
Unless, nisi (conj.).
Unmindful of, immemor (with
gen.).
Until, donec, dum (conj.).
Use, usus, ūs; *to use*, uti, dep. abl.,
316, b.
Useful, utilis, e, 104.

V.

Vacant (to be), vacare.
Vain—in vain, frustra (adv.).
Valour, virtus, (virtut) is, 293.
Value, pretium, i; *to value*, æstimare.
Vast, vastus, a, um.
Vaunt, ostentare.
Vehemently, vehementer (adv.).
Venetian, Venetus, i.
Very, valde, admodum; *very easy*,
perfacilis, e; *very few*, perpauci:
very near, proximus.
Vice, vitium, i.
Victory, victoria, æ.
Vile, vilis, e, 104.
Village, vicus, i.
Violate, violare.
Virgin, virgo, 339.
Virtue, virtus, (virtut) is, 293
Virtuous, probus, a, um.
Voice, vox, (vōc) is, 293.
Vow, spondere, 395, IV.

W.

Wage (e. g., war), gerere: bellum
inferre.
Wagon, carrus, i.
Wait for, expectare.

Walk, ambulāre.
Wall, murus, i; *walls*, mœnia, um.
Wander, vagāri, errāre.
Want, carēre, 348.
Wanting (to be), deesse, 267, b.
War, bellum, i.
Warlike, bellicosus, a, um.
Warn, monēre.
Wash, alluere.
Watch, *watching*, vigilia, æ; *to watch*, vigilāre.
Water, aqua, æ.
Wave, fluctus, ūs.
Way, via, æ; *to make* (their) *way*, iter facere.
Wearied, defessus, a, um.
Weary of, tædet, 579.
Weep, flēre.
Well (to be), valēre.
West, Occidens.
What (in number)? quotus? *what is the difference?* quid interest?
When, quum (conj.).
Whence, unde (adv.).
Whether, num, 174: utrum.
Where, ubi (adv.).
Which of the two, uter, 194, R. 1.
Whirlwind, turbo, (turbin) is (m.).
Who, qui, quæ, quod; *who?* quis, quæ, quid?
Whole, omnis, e; universus, a, um; totus, a, um; cunctus, 441.
Why? cūr?
Wicked, improbus, a, um.
Wide, latus, a, um; *widely*, latē; *more widely*, latius.
Wild beast, fera, æ.
Wind, ventus, i.
Willingly, libenter.
Wine, vinum, i.
Wing, ala, æ.
Winter, hyems, (hyem) is, 293; *winter*, hiemāre; *winter-quarters*, hiberna, orum (pl.).
Wisdom, sapientia, æ.

Wise, sapiens, (sapient) is, 107; *wisely*, sapienter.
Wish, velle, cupere.
With, cum (prep., abl.).
Without, sine (prep., abl.); *to be without*, carere.
Withstand, resistere, 390.
Wolf, lupus, i.
Woman, femina, æ; *mulier*, is (f.).
Wonder at, admirari, dep.
Wonderful, mirabilis, e, 104.
Wood (a), sylva, æ.
Word, verbum, i; *word is brought*, nuntiātum est.
Work, opus, (oper) is, 344.
World, mundus, i: orbis terrarum.
Worse, pejus, adv.; *worst*, pessimus, 370.
Worship, colere, adorare.
Worthy, dignus, a, um (with abl.).
Would-that, utinam, 526.
Wound, vulnus, (vulner) is, 344; *to wound*, vulnerare.
Wretched, miser, 77, b.
Write, scribere.
Writer, scriptor, 319.

X.

Xenophon, Xenophon, (Xenophont) is.

Y.

Year, annus, adv.
Yearly, quotannis, i.
Yes, immo.
Yesterday, heri.
Yet, tamen.
Yoke, jugum, i.
Young-man, juvenis, is (m.): adolescens.
You, vos (sing., tu).
Your, vester, tra, trum, 134.
Youth, juvenus, (juventut) is, 293 *a youth*. See *young man*.

Z.

Zeal, studium, i.

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS.

WHAT is a *monosyllable*? a *dissyllable*? a *polysyllable*? (8.)—What is *inflection*?—What is the inflection of *nouns* called? of *verbs*? (21, 2 R.)—Name the *vowels*: the *liquids*: the *c-sounds*: *p-sounds*: *t-sounds*: *double consonants*: *diphthongs*, (23.)—Repeat the *general rules of quantity*, (24.)—Repeat the *general rules of gender*, (25, a.)


Has the Latin any *article*? (27.)—What is the *stem* of a noun? (30.)—How many *cases* of nouns are there? (31.)—What is the use of the *nominative*? the *vocative*? the *genitive*? (33.)—How many *declensions*?—How distinguished? (34.)—Give *nom.*, *voc.*, and *gen.* endings of 1st decl. (*nom.* and *voc.*, *ā short*; *abl.*, *ā long*).—What is the *gender* of 1st decl.? (36, c.)

Where do you put the *unemphatic gen.*? (*After* its noun, 38, a.)—The *emphatic*? (*Before* its noun, 38, b.)

What is the *subject* of a sentence? the *predicate*? (41.)—What is an *active verb*? *transitive*? *intransitive*? (42.)—What does the *infinitive* express? the *indicative*? (43.)—What does the *present tense* express? the *imperfect*? the *future*? (44.)—What is the *infinitive-ending* of 1st conj.?—How do you find the *stem* of a verb? (45.)—Give the 3d *person endings* of the indicative, (46.)—Are the *personal pronouns* necessarily used in Latin? (47, R.)—Where do you put the *subject nominative* in a sentence? (48, II.)

What is the case of the *direct object*? (51.)—Give the *accusative-endings* of 1st decl. (52.)—Rule of position for the *object accusative*? (53, II.)

What does the *dative* express? (54): the *ablative*? (55.)—Give the case-endings complete, 1st decl. (618): *quantity* of final syllables (618, R. 1): *gender* (618, R. 2): rule of position for *remote object* (58, II., a): for *preposition and its noun* (58, II., b.)

Case-endings, 2d decl., masc. (61.)—Name the *feminine nouns* of 2d decl. (*alvus*, *cōlus*, *hūmus*, *vannus*).—What nouns have *i* for *vocative-ending*? (62, R. 2.)—When *to* implies *motion*, how do you render it in Latin? (63, )

What nouns of 2d decl. reject the endings *ūs* and *ūs*? (64.)—Which of

these retain the *ě* in the oblique cases ? (65, R.)—What case is used with words of *abounding* and *wanting* ? (66, II., a.)

Case-endings, 2d decl., neut. (68.)—*Short* final syllables in 2d decl. (*űs*, *ě*, *űm*, *ű*).—*Long* final syllables (*i*, *o*, *is*, *os*).—What is the infinitive-ending of verbs, 2d conj. ? (70.)—Give the 3d person endings, indic. present: imperfect: future, (71.)

Give the endings of adjectives of Class I. (76.)—What adjectives reject the endings *űs* and *ě* ? (77.)—Where do you put the unemphatic adjective in a sentence ? (78, II., a.)—Where do you put the adjective belonging to a noun which governs another in the genitive ? (*Before* the genitive, 78 II., b.)

Give the 3d pers. endings of *esse*, indic. (79): rule of syntax for predicate noun (80, a): for predicate adjective, (81, b.)

Infinitive-ending, 3d conj. (83.)—Indic., 3d pers. endings, present: imperfect: future, (84.)—Infinitive-ending, 4th conj. (86.)—Indic., 3d pers., present: imperfect: future, (87.)—Where do you put the adjective belonging to a noun governed by a preposition ? (89, II.)

What syllable forms the 3d pers. *pass.* ending, indic. ? (90.)—In putting an active sentence into the passive form, what changes occur ? (93, II.)—When is the preposition omitted ? (93, II., R.)

Case-endings, 3d decl. (98.)—What is the gender of most nouns which add *s* to form the nom. ? (99.)—Decline *sermo*: *urbs*: *lex*.

What is the gender of nouns in *al*, *ar*, *e* ? (102, R. 2.)—Endings of adjectives of 2d class ? (104.)—Decline *brěvīs*. (105.)—What adjectives take *ě* instead of *i* in abl. ? (105, R. 2.)—What case is used with adjectives of *advantage* or *disadvantage*? of *likeness* or *unlikeness* ? (106, II., c.)

What adjectives form Class III. ? (107.)—Decline *fělix*. (108.)—Which ending do *participles* in *ns* take in *abl. sing.*, *ě* or *i* ? (108, R. 1, b.)

What nouns belong to 4th decl. ? (110.)—Give the case-endings, masc. (111): neut. (111): quantity of final syllables, 4th decl. (621, R. 1): fem. nouns of 4th decl. (621, R. 2.)—What nouns take *űbűs* in *abl. plur.* ? (621, R. 3.)—Decline *dűműs*, (112, 3.)—What does *dűmĩ* mean ? (112, 4.)—Rule of syntax for verbs compounded with *trans*, (113, II., a.)—Is *trans* ever repeated ?

What nouns belong to 5th decl. ? (114.)—Case-endings, 5th decl. ? (116.)—When is the *e* in *ei* *long*? when *short* ? (116, R.)—What nouns of 5th

decl. have plur. complete ? (117, R.)—Time *when* is put in what case ? (118, II., c.)

Decline *ego*, (120.)—What is the *adj. personal* pron. of 1st pers. sing. ? of 1st pers. plur. ? (122.)—Give 1st pers. endings, 1st conj., act. indic. *present : imperfect : future*.—Also, pass. *present : imperfect : future*. (123.)—What case is used with *esse* to denote the possessor ? (125, II., a.)—Is *cū* prefixed or suffixed to the personal pronouns ? (125, II., b.)

What are the 1st person endings, act. and pass., for 2d conj., indic. present ? imperfect ? future ? (126.)—The same for 3d conj. (127.)—Fourth, (128.)

Decline *tu*, (130.)—What are the 2d pers. endings, 1st conj., act. and pass., indic. present ? imperfect ? future ? (131.)—The same for 2d conj. (133.)—What are the *possessive* pronouns of 2d pers. ? (134.)—How is *nō* used ? (135, II., a.)—Where is *causā* placed in a sentence ? (135, II., b.)

What are the 2d pers. endings of verbs, 3d conj., act. and pass., indic. pres. ? imperfect ? future ? (136.)—The same for 4th conj. (137.)

Decline the *reflexive* pronoun *sui*, (142.)—What is the *adjective-personal* pronoun of 3d pers. ? (143.)—What case does *imperāre* govern ? (147.)

Why are *demonstrative* pronouns so called ? (149.)—Decline *is*, *eā*, *id*, (150.)—Inflect *esse*, pres., imperf., and fut. indic. (151.)—Distinguish *suus* and *eius*, (153.)—What is the demonstrative of the 1st person ? (156) : of 2d ? (157) : of 3d ? (158.)

Decline *qui*, (164.)—Syntax of the relative, (167, b.)

Decline *quis*, (170.)—How is the answer *yes* given ? (173.)—What answer does *num* expect ? (175, b.)

Name the seven *indefinite* pronouns, (178.)—How are indef. pronouns used with a genitive ? (180, a.)

Name the *correlative* pronouns, (184.)—Give the Latin for *much gold* (186, a) : for *much money* (186, a).—Distinguish *tantum* and *tantus*, (186, obs.)

Repeat the first twelve numerals in all four classes, (189.)—Give the rule for accus. of *time* or *space*, (191.)

Decline *unus*, *duo*, and *tres*, (194.)—What words are declined like *unus* ? (194, R. 1.)—Is the penult of *unius* *long* or *short* ?

Inflect *capere* in pres., imperf., and fut. indic. (199.)

What are *deponent* verbs? (206.)—How are they conjugated? (Ans., like passives.)

How do you form *derivative adverbs* from adjectives of Class I.? (215, 1): of Class II.? (215, 2.)—What is the general *position* of the adverb in a sentence? (218, a.)—Where is *ferē* placed? (218, b.)—How is *nequidem* used? (218, c.)

What prepositions govern the accus. or ablat.? (223.)—Give the rule of *apposition*, (225, a.)

Give the person-endings, *pres. indic. act.*: tense-stem: connecting-vowel: 1st conj.: 2d: 3d: 4th, (234.)

Imperfect tense, person-endings: tense-stem, four conj's.: connecting-vowel, (237.)—*Future* tense, 1st and 2d conj., person-endings: tense-stems: connecting-vowels (238): 3d and 4th conj., fut., person-ending: tense-stem: connecting-vowel, (240.)

Passive-endings, (243.)—Apparent irregularities, viz., 1st pers. pres. indic.: 3d conj., 2d pers. sing. pres.: 1st and 2d conj., fut., 2d pers. sing. (244.)

Rules of Quantity.—Monosyllables ending in a vowel (247, a.): exceptions.—Monosyllables ending in a consonant: exceptions, (247, b.)—Quantity of *a* final (248): *e* final (249): of *i* final (250): of *o* final (251): of *u* final, (252.)—Final syllables ending in a consonant, (253.)—Final *as*, *es*, *os*: exceptions, (254.)—Final *is* and *us*: exceptions, (255.)—Increase of nouns (257): of verbs, (258.)—Penults of perf. tense, (259.)—Adjectives in *idus*, *icus*: in *inus*: in *ilis*, *bilis*, (260.)

What are the tenses for action *completed*? (262): their endings? (263.)—Give the perf., pluperf., and fut. perf. of *esse*, (264.)—Distinguish perf. pres. from perf. aorist, (265.)—What case do the compounds of *esse* with prepositions govern? (267, b.)

How is perf. stem formed in most verbs of 1st conj.? of 2d? of 4th? (270.)—Give perf. of *amare*, *monere*, *audire*, (271.)

How is perf. stem formed of most verbs of 3d conj.? (276.)—Euphonic rules: (1) *k*-sound before *s*: (2) *b* before *s*: (3) *t*-sound before *s*, (277.)—What answer does *nonne* expect? (280.)—How is the pluperf. formed? the fut. perf.? (283.)

Name the six classes of nouns of 3d decl. (291.)—Euphonic rules, (292.)
 -How do you express "*on the top of the mountain*" in Latin? (297.)

Decline Jupiter: Bos: Respublica: Jusjurandum, (351.)

Repeat the rules of gender, 3d decl., from nominative formation, with the exceptions under each, (355.)

Comparison of Adjectives.—What is the *compar.* ending? (357.)—If the stem ends in a vowel, how is the *compar.* formed? (357, R.)—Syntax of *compar.*, when *quam* is omitted, (360, c.)

Superl. ending, (363.)—Stems in *er* add what ending? (364.)—Stems in *l*, what ending? (365.)—What case is used with superlatives? (367, b.)

Compare bonus, malus, magnus, multus, parvus, senex, juvenis, exterus, inferus, superus, posterus, (370.)—Comp. dives, benevolus.

Are adverbs compared?—How? (376.)


What is the supine? (377.)—Form supine-stem, 1st conj.: 2d: 3d: 4th, (378.)—How is supine in *um* used? (379.)—How is supine in *u* used? (380.)—Name the supines in *u* which are in common use, (381.)—What case answers the question *whither*? (383.)

What are the *four* ways of forming perf. stem, 1st conj.? (387.)—How many verbs does each class contain? (387.)—How do you form perf., pluperf., or fut. perf. of these verbs? (388.)

What are the *five* ways of forming the perf. stem, 2d conj.? (394.)—How many verbs does each class contain? (395.)—What rules of euphony are to be applied here? (395, III., a, b, c.)

Name the *six* ways of forming the perf. stem, 3d conj. (400.)—What rules of euphony are to be applied in forming perf. stems of verbs of 1st class? (401, 1, &c.)

How do verbs of 2d class form perf. stem? (406): verbs of 3d class?—In what sense is *a d* often used by Cæsar? (408, c.)

How do verbs of 4th class form perf. stem? (411.)—What vowel changes must be observed here? (411, a, b, c.)—Give the rule for verbs of demanding (413, 1): for verbs of sparing (413, 4.)—What is the perf. of *cādērē*? of *cādērē*? (413, )

How do verbs of 5th class form perf. stem ? (416.)—Form the perf. stems of the 10 verbs in (416, c).—What is said of the *prænomen* ? (418, c.)

How do verbs of 6th class form perf. stem ? (421.)—What cases are used after *distribuere* ? (423, c.)

What are the *five* ways of forming the perf. stem in 4th conj. ? (426.)—How many verbs does each class contain ? (427.)—How is the *manner* of an action expressed in Latin ? (428, a.)

How are the passive tenses for completed action formed ? (431.)—How is the perf. part. formed ? (432, b.)—How is it inflected ? (432, a.)—Inflect the perf., pluperf., and fut. perf. pass. of *amare*, (433.)—How is the perf. pass. part. sometimes used with *est* ? (435, c.)

How many participles are there in Latin, act. and pass. ? (438.)—Give the endings of the present part. act. in the four conjugations, (439, a.)—How is it declined ? (440.)—Has the Latin any *active* part. to express *complete* action ? (None, excepting in *deponent* verbs, 440, a, b.)—What is the use of the part. in discourse ? (442, c.)—Give the words in which cannot stand first in a clause or sentence, (442, c.)

How is the fut. part. act. formed ? (445.)—Inflect the periphrastic pres., past, and fut. of *amare*, (446.)—Give the rule for the use of the fut. part. with verbs of motion, (448.)

How is the perf. pass. part. formed ? (451, a.)—How is it inflected ? (451, b.)—How do *deponent* verbs use the perf. part. form ? (451, c.)—What is the case of the place *where* ? (453, a) : of the place *whence* ? (453, b) : of the place *whither* ? (453, c.)

When is the part. used in the ablative with a noun ? (456.)—How is the want of a perf. act. part. supplied in Latin ? (457.)—Can a noun be used in the ablative absolute with another noun ? (Yes : 458.)


How does the infin. express action ? (465.)—Give the infin. forms, act and pass., in all the conjugations, (466.)—Give the rule for the complementary infin. (468, a.)

Name the classes of verbs which take after them the accus. and infin. (471.)—Give the method of changing English sentences commencing with *hat* into the Latin accus. and infin. (472, 1, 2, 3.)

Give the formation of the perf. infin. pass. (478.)—When the accus. is used with this infin., with what does its part. agree ? (478.)

How is the infin. fut. act. formed ? (482) : the infin. fut. pass. ? (483.)

Under what form does the gerund express the action of the verb ? (487, *a.*)—How is the gerund-stem formed ? (487, *b.*)—How the *cases* of the gerund ? (487, *c.*)—What rules apply to the cases of the infin. and gerund ? (489.)—Is the infin. or the accus. ger. used with a preposition ? (489, *R.*)—What case does the ger. govern ? (490.)

How does the gerundive express the action of a verb ? (495, *a.*)—How are its cases formed ? (495, *b.*)—How is it used ? (496.)—When *must* the gerundive be used instead of the gerund ?—When *may* it be so used ? (496, *R.*)—After what verbs does the gerundive express a purpose or object ? (498, )

What does the gerundive in the nom. neut. with *esse* express ? (501, *a.*)—What does it express when used with *esse* as a *verbal adjective* ? (502.)—What is the case of the person in both these constructions ? (The dative.)

How does *imper.* mood express the action of the verb ? (507.)—What is *not* with the *imper.* ? (510, *Rule.*)

When is a sentence compound ? (513, *a.*)—Give an example of a principal sentence : of a subordinate sentence, (513, *c.*)—Give some of the classes of subordinate sentences, (514, *a.* & *c.*)

Repeat the copulative conjunctions, (515.)—How are *et* and *que* used ? (517, *a.*) : *ac* ? (517, *b.*)—What does *et* followed by another *et* mean ? (517, *c.*)—What is the Latin for *again and again* ? for *not only—but also* ? (517, *d.*)

Name the disjunctive conjunctions, (519.)—What does *aut* indicate ? *vel* ? (519, *R.* 1 and 2.)—How is *ve* used ? (519, *R.* 3.)—What do these conj. mean when repeated ? (519, *R.* 4.)—Give the adversatives, (520.)—What does *sed* express ? (522, *a.*) : *autem* ? (522, *b.*)

How does the subjunc. mood express affirmation ? (524.)—Inflect subjunc. pres. of *esse*, (525.)—Inflect subjunc. pres. act. and pass. of *amārē*, *mōnērē*, *rēgērē*, *audīre*, (526, *b.*)—How may a *wish* be expressed in Latin ? (528, *a.*)—How may a *softened command* be expressed ? (528, *b.*)—How do you express a direct question when *doubt* is implied ? (528, *c.*)

Inflect subjunc. perf. of *esse*, (531.)—How do regular verbs form subjunc. perf. act. ? (532, 1) : subjunc. perf. pass. ? (532, 2.)—Inflect the subjunc. perf. act. and pass. of *amārē*, *mōnērē*, *rēgērē*, *audīre*, (532, 3.)—How is the subjunc. perf. used imperatively ? (534, *a.*)—How may a *supposed* case be expressed ? (534, *b.*)—How may a *softened assertion* be expressed ? (534, *c.*)—What interrogative sentences take the subjunc. ? (534, *e.*)

How is the subjunc. imperf. formed? (537.)—Repeat the paradigm (538.)—How is the subjunc. pluperf. act. and pass. formed? (539, *a* and *b*.)—Give the paradigm, (539, *c*.)—Repeat the conditional conjunctions, (540, *a*.)—What is a conditional sentence? (540, *b*.)—In conditional sentences how do you express a *real* condition? a *possible* condition? an *unreal* or *impossible* in present time? an *unreal* or *impossible* condition in past time? (542, *b*, Rule.)—Can the perf. or pluperf. indic. ever be used with *si*? (No.)

Inflect *posse* in subjunc. pres.: imperf.: perf.: pluperf. (545.)—State the composition of *posse*.—Repeat the final conjunctions, (546.)—How is purpose or aim expressed in English? how in Latin? (548, *a*.)—How is an object to be provided against introduced in English? how in Latin? (548, *b*.)—Can a purpose or aim be expressed in Latin by an infin.? (No.)

Give the primary tenses of the Latin verb: the historical, (551, 2, *a*, *b*.)—What is the rule for the succession of tenses? (551, 3.)—How is a *result* expressed in English? how in Latin? (553, *a*.)—What is the rule for *ut* signifying *that*? (553, *b*.)

How is the want of a fut. subjunc. supplied in Latin? (556.)—Give the paradigm, periph. conj. subjunc. (556.)—When does *quo* express a purpose instead of *ut*? (558, *a*.)—In what sense is *quin* used? (1) after negative sentences? (2) after *non dubito*, &c.? (558, *b*.)—When is *quominus* used in preference to *ne*? (558, *c*.)

What are the two uses of *quum*? (561.)—What is the first use called? the second? (561.)—When is *quum* followed by the indic.? (563, *a*.)—When is *quum temporal* followed by the imperf. or pluperf. subjunc.? (563, *b*.)—What is the rule for *quum causal*? (563, *c*.)

When is the rel. pronoun followed by the subjunc.? (566.)—Give the rule for the use of subjunc. in a rel. sentence, (568, *d*.)—Is the rel. to express a purpose very common in *Cæsar*? (Yes.)

In what two ways may we relate the words of another? (571.)—What is each method called? (571.)—What kinds of sentences are introduced in *oratio obliqua*? (Either principal or subordinate.)—What mood is used in principal sentences in *oratio obliqua*? (574, *a*): in subordinate sentences? (574, *b*.)

What are impersonal verbs? (577.)—Give the classes of impersonals (578.)—What impersonals are followed by the accus. of the person and the gen. of the cause? (579, *a*.)

Give the rule for *oportet* and *decet* (584, a): for *placet* (584, b). for *licet* and *libet* (584, c): for *interest* and *refert* (584, d).



State the composition of *possum*, and repeat the paradigm, (587.)

Give the composition of *nolo* and *mało*, and repeat the paradigms (592.)—Give the three rules for *velle*, *nolle*, and *mallo*, in (594).

Repeat the paradigm of irregular forms of *ferre*, (596.)—How are the remaining tenses formed? (596, b.)—What is the meaning of *ferunt*? (598, b.)

Of what verb does *fieri* form the pass.? (600.)—How are the tenses formed? (600.)—Give the paradigm.—What is the quantity of *i* in *fieri*? (600, R.)—What forms of *edere* are similar to those of *esse*? (601.)—Give the paradigm.—What is the quantity of *es*, from *esse*? of *es*, from *edere*? (601, R.)

What conjugation does *ire* follow? (605.)—Give the paradigm.—What is said of the compounds? (605, 1, 2.)—How are *queo* and *nequeo* conjugated? (606.)

Inflect *aio* (609): *inquam* (610): *novi* (611).—How do you distinguish between the use of *aio* and of *inquam*? (613, b, )—What form of *cœpi* is used with a pass. infin.? (613, c )

M M

THE END

PROF. M'CLINTOCK AND CROOKS'S
Series of Elementary
GREEK AND LATIN BOOKS.

PUBLISHED AND IN COURSE OF PUBLICATION

By Harper and Brothers, New York.

DESIGNED FOR THE USE OF SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES.

At the request of many teachers, the plan of the Series has been altered for the purpose of introducing a Latin Reader as the "Second Book in Latin." The First and Second Books in Latin and Greek will thus afford all that is necessary in preparatory training, before beginning the regular reading of the classic authors. The "Introduction to Writing Latin" will form the work heretofore announced as the "Second Book in Latin," which has been long in careful preparation.

First Book in Latin.

Containing Grammar, Exercises, and Vocabularies, on the Method of constant Imitation and Repetition. With Summaries of Etymology and Syntax. 12mo, Sheep extra, 75 cents. (*Fifth Edition.*)

Second Book in Latin.

Being a sufficient Latin Reader, in Extracts from Cæsar and Cicero, with Notes and full Vocabulary. 12mo. (*Soon.*)

First Book in Greek.

Containing a full View of the Forms of Words, with Vocabularies and copious Exercises, on the Method of constant Imitation and Repetition. 12mo, Sheep extra, 75 cents. (*Second Edition.*)

Second Book in Greek.

Containing a Syntax, with Reading Lessons in Prose; Prosody and Reading Lessons in Verse. Forming a sufficient Greek Reader, with Notes and copious Vocabulary. 12mo. (*Nearly ready.*)

Introduction to Writing Latin.

Containing a full Syntax, on the Basis of Kühner, with *Loci Memoriales* selected from Cicero, and copious Exercises for Imitation and Repetition. 12mo.

Intended for higher classes in schools and lower classes in colleges.

Practical Introduction to Latin Style.

Principally translated from Grysar's "Theorie des lateinischen Stiles."

This work will supply a want which has long been felt in our high schools and colleges.

Testimonials to the First Books in Latin and Greek.

The "First Book in Latin," by Professors M'Clintock and Crooks, I prefer, on many accounts, to any other of the elementary Latin grammars now used in our schools; and I have no doubt that its philosophical and eminently *practical* character will secure for it great popularity, both among teachers and pupils.—Rev. J. F. SCHROEDER, Rector of St. Ann's Hall, New York.

If the rest of the series are equal to the "First Book in Greek," they form the best introduction to the classical tongues with which we are acquainted.—Prof. HART, Principal of the Central High School, Philadelphia.

The authors have been very happy in the distribution and arrangement of the subjects, so as to introduce the beginner gradually to the difficulties, and yet carry him forward rapidly to an acquaintance with the essential forms and principles of Greek grammar. There is also a perspicuity, definiteness, and conciseness in the language with which I am exceedingly pleased.—Prof. W. S. TYLER, Amherst College, Mass

2 Testimonials to the First Books in Latin and Greek

A pretty careful examination convinces me of its great value as an introductory book, and its decided superiority to every other I have seen. It appears to me to have greatly improved upon Arnold, and been eminently successful in a gradual and not too rapid unfolding of grammatical principles.—Prof. STURGES, *Hanover College, Indiana*.

I had tried all sorts of books, from Adams's and Ross's down to Andrews and Stoddard's, Wells's, Krebs's, Cleveland's, and lastly Arnold's, and think the "First Book" is incomparably superior as a practical work to any other in use.—C. W. BLAKE, *Principal of Prune Street Classical Academy, Philadelphia*.

I have given the classical books of Professors M'Clintock and Crooks a thorough examination, and am highly pleased with them. I have introduced both the First Latin and First Greek into my school, and am convinced that they elicit and keep up a greater interest in the study of those languages than any I have yet used.—Rev. CHARLES REYNOLDS, A.M., *Rector of Williamsburgh Grammar School*.

I have examined with much attention the "First Book in Latin" of Professors M'Clintock and Crooks, and am happy to bear testimony to the practical tact and sound scholarship which they have shown in the preparation of the work. The arrangement is simple and lucid, and the gradual steps by which the youthful student is introduced to the grammatical laws of the language, both as it regards etymology and syntax, are such as, in my estimation, to render the book deserving of the patronage of every instructor. I most heartily wish it the extensive circulation it so eminently deserves.—JOHN J. OWEN, *Principal of the Cornelius Institute*.

I have examined and used in my school M'Clintock and Crooks's First Books in Latin and Greek, and fully approve of the design of the works. I think they are calculated to awaken greatly the interest of the scholar in lessons that have generally been considered tedious, at the same time that they convey a thorough knowledge of elementary principles.—AARON RAND, *Collegiate and Mercantile School, New York*.

I regard the "First Book in Latin" as the best yet published in our country.—Prof. LEWIS, *Woodward College, Ohio*.

The writers have added valuable improvements to the excellent works of Kühner and Arnold. The analysis of the Third Declension is more satisfactory and philosophical than any thing of the kind that I have met with. The rules of syntax are more clearly and briefly expressed than those of any grammar within my knowledge.—Prof. STAFFORD, *University of Alabama*.

I think the "First Book in Latin" better calculated than any work I know to induce students, from the beginning, to study Latin critically. We have made it one of the works required as preparatory to college.—Prof. H. B. LANE, *Wesleyan University, Middletown, Conn.*

We have introduced the "First Book in Latin," and find it far superior to any other elementary work.—Prof. WHEELER, *Indiana Asbury University*.

The solid, well-arranged, and perspicuous "First Book in Latin," completely supplies the want I have long felt, as a teacher of Latin, of a book for beginners. The unusual progress my pupils make in accurate knowledge of the language—knowledge which they can apply without error or difficulty—is the best proof I possess of the practical value of the book.—Rev. J. H. DASHIELL, *Principal of the Light Street Institute, Baltimore*.

The most thorough, practical, and philosophical method of teaching Greek that we have ever seen.—*Savannah Republican*.

The best introduction to the classical tongues with which we are acquainted. The "First Book in Greek" is "Greek made easy," not by leaving out all the hard parts, but by presenting the difficulties one at a time, and in the order most consonant to nature and reason. It does equal credit to the scholarship and the practical goodness of its authors. We have seen no school book for many a long year that has given us more unmingled and entire satisfaction.—SARTAIN'S *Union Magazine*.

The "First Book in Latin" combines all the advantages of recently-improved methods, and contains many decided improvements. A more philosophical and practical system of teaching Latin we have never seen.—Prof. SALKELD, *Naugatuck, Conn.*

The grammatical part of the work is very complete, although condensed into a wonderfully short compass.—*Philadelphia Inquirer*.

Among many other advantages, it contains precisely such remarks and explanations as a student wishes to have in the early part of his course, but which, in common grammars, are strangely omitted.—J. A. DEVINNEY, *High School, Carlisle, Penn.*

M'Clintock and Crooks's First Books in Latin and Greek are incomparable, and certainly the best books for beginners ever published, and I am convinced will meet with the heartiest commendation from teachers throughout the country.—W. C. S. RICHARDSON, *Professor of Languages, Tuscaloosa*.

The lessons in the "First Book in Greek" are so easy, natural, and interesting, that they must win every boy to the study of the language. I shall recommend it to every teacher.—Prof. MARTIN, *Hampton Sydney College*.

YB 36251

924208

THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY

